

BOOK-KEEPING AND ACCOUNTS

SPICER AND PEGLER'S

BOOK-KEEPING AND ACCOUNTS

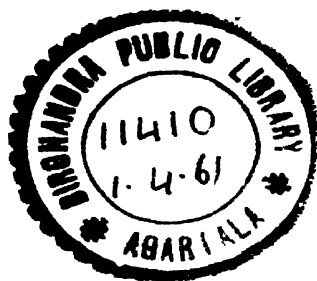
by

W. W. BIGG, F. C. A.

H. A. R. J. WILSON, F. C. A.

and

A. E. LANGTON, LL.B. (LOND.), F. C. A.



H.F.L. (PUBLISHERS) LTD. LONDON

| | | | | |
|----------------------|----|----|----|-------------|
| First Edition | .. | .. | .. | 1908 |
| Second | „ | .. | .. | 1910 |
| Third | „ | .. | .. | 1913 |
| Fourth | „ | .. | .. | 1919 |
| Fifth | „ | .. | .. | 1920 |

Printed in Great Britain by
THE STELLAR PRESS LTD
UNION STREET, BARNET, HERTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter I

DOUBLE ENTRY BOOK-KEEPING

| | | PAGE |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| § 1. | Introduction | 1 |
| 2. | The Theory of Double Entry | 1 |
| 3. | The Various Classes of Assets and Liabilities | 3 |
| 4. | Capital and Revenue Expenditure | 4 |
| 5. | The Books of Prime Entry | 5 |
| 6. | Cash Books | 6 |
| 7. | The Petty Cash Book | 10 |
| 8. | Day Books | 11 |
| 9. | The Journal | 13 |
| 10. | The Ledgers | 16 |
| 11. | The Trial Balance | 18 |
| 12. | The Trading and Profit and Loss Account | 18 |
| 13. | The Balance Sheet | 23 |
| 14. | The Accounts of a Sole Trader | 24 |
| 15. | Methods of dispensing with Day Books and Personal Ledgers | 29 |

Chapter II

TOTAL (OR CONTROL) ACCOUNTS AND SECTIONAL BALANCING

| | | |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------|----|
| § 1. | Total (or Control) Accounts | 32 |
| 2. | Sectional Balancing or Self-balancing Ledgers | 39 |
| 3. | The Location of Errors | 40 |

Chapter III

PROVISIONS AND RESERVES, DEPRECIATION, ETC.

| | | |
|------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| § 1. | Definitions of Reserve, Provision and Reserve Fund | 42 |
| 2. | Provision for Bad Debts | 43 |
| 3. | Provision for Cash Discounts | 45 |
| 4. | Outstanding Liabilities | 46 |
| 5. | Payments in Advance | 47 |
| 6. | Definition of Depreciation, and the considerations necessary to determine its rate | 47 |
| 7. | The Necessity of Providing for Depreciation | 48 |
| 8. | The Principal Methods of Providing for Depreciation | 52 |
| 9. | The Treatment of Repairs, Renewals and Replacements | 65 |
| 10. | The Operation of Sinking Funds for the Repayment of Loans | 67 |
| 11. | Secret Reserves | 69 |
| 12. | Suspense Accounts | 71 |

BOOK-KEEPING AND ACCOUNTS

Chapter IV

MANUFACTURING ACCOUNTS; RECEIPTS AND PAYMENTS ACCOUNTS AND INCOME AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNTS; THE PREPARATION OF FINAL ACCOUNTS FROM INCOMPLETE RECORDS

| | PAGE |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| § 1. Manufacturing Accounts | 73 |
| 2. Receipts and Payments Account and Income and Expenditure Account .. | 80 |
| 3. The Preparation of Accounts from Incomplete Records | 83 |

Chapter V

GOODS ON SALE OR RETURN, CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNTS, Etc.

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| § 1. Treatment of Goods sent on Sale or Return | 90 |
| 2. Consignment Accounts | 93 |
| 3. Entries in the Consignor's Books | 94 |
| 4. Entries in the Consignee's Books | 102 |
| 5. Accounts with Agents | 103 |

Chapter VI

BILLS OF EXCHANGE, PROMISSORY NOTES, Etc.

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| § 1. Definitions | 107 |
| 2. Stamp Duties on Bills of Exchange and Promissory Notes | 108 |
| 3. Specimen Forms of Bills of Exchange and Promissory Notes | 109 |
| 4. Forms of Bill Books | 111 |
| 5. Accommodation Bills | 118 |
| 6. Dishonoured Bills, Retired Bills, Short Bills, etc. | 122 |

Chapter VII

PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| § 1. The Nature of Partnership | 126 |
| 2. The Partnership Agreement | 127 |
| 3. The usual Adjustments necessary in Partnership Accounts | 129 |
| 4. Partners' Fixed Capital Accounts; Current Accounts; Loan Accounts .. | 134 |
| 5. Goodwill in Partnership Accounts | 135 |
| 6. Outgoing Partners | 151 |
| 7. Sleeping, Quasi, and Limited Partners | 158 |
| 8. Dissolution of Partnerships | 160 |
| 9. Joint Venture Accounts | 182 |

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter VIII COMPANY ACCOUNTS

| | PAGE: |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| § 1. The Distinction between Partnerships and Limited Liability Companies .. | 191 |
| 2. Private Companies | 193 |
| 3. The Memorandum and Articles of Association | 196 |
| 4. The Statutory Books and Returns | 197 |
| 5. The Various Classes of Share Capital | 206 |
| 6. The Application and Allotment of Shares | 209 |
| 7. Forfeiture of Shares | 220 |
| 8. The Share Books | 225 |
| 9. Preliminary and Formation Expenses | 228 |
| 10. Mortgages and Debentures | 230 |
| 11. The purchase of a Private Business by a Limited Company | 244 |
| 12. Bonus Shares | 267 |
| 13. The Payment of Interest out of Capital | 269 |
| 14. The Preparation of a Company's Books and Accounts for Audit | 270 |
| 15. The Balance Sheet and Accounts of a Company | 271 |
| 16. The Amalgamation of Companies | 312 |
| 17. The Absorption of one Limited Company by another | 319 |
| 18. Reduction of Capital | 327 |
| 19. Reconstructions and Reorganisations | 335 |

Chapter IX

THE ACCOUNTS OF HOLDING COMPANIES

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| § 1. Holding Companies | 340 |
| 2. Definition of Subsidiary Company | 342 |
| 3. Group Accounts | 343 |
| 4. Consolidated Balance Sheet | 349 |
| 5. Consolidated Profit and Loss Account | 378 |
| 6. Holding Company's Profit and Loss Account framed as a Consolidated Profit and Loss Account | 384 |
| 7. General Illustration | 386 |

Chapter X

DEPARTMENTAL ACCOUNTS; BRANCH ACCOUNTS

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| § 1. Departmental Accounts | 392 |
| 2. Branch Accounts | 394 |
| 3. Branches for which the whole of the accounting records are kept at Head office | 394 |
| 4. Branches which maintain separate accounting records | 411 |
| 5. Foreign Exchanges | 424 |
| 6. Foreign Branches | 425 |

BOOK-KEEPING AND ACCOUNTS

Chapter XI

MECHANISED ACCOUNTING

| | PAGE |
|--------------------------------------------|------|
| § 1. Principles | 440 |
| 2. Writing and Copying Devices | 441 |
| 3. Adding and Calculating Machines | 445 |
| 4. Ledger Posting Machines | 450 |
| 5. Punched Card Systems | 453 |
| 6. Electronic Computers | 460 |

Chapter XII

THE DOUBLE ACCOUNT SYSTEM

| | |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| § 1. Definition | 462 |
| 2. Treatment of Capital Losses | 463 |
| 3. Renewal and Depreciation Funds | 464 |

Chapter XIII

BANKRUPTCY, LIQUIDATION, AND RECEIVERSHIP ACCOUNTS

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| § 1. The Preparation of a Statement of Affairs in Bankruptcy | 466 |
| 2. The Accounts of a Trustee in Bankruptcy | 477 |
| 3. Deeds of Arrangement | 479 |
| 4. The Preparation of a Statement of Affairs of a Company in Compulsory Liquidation | 480 |
| 5. The Accounts of a Liquidator in Compulsory Liquidation | 488 |
| 6. The Accounts of a Liquidator in Voluntary Liquidation | 489 |
| 7. Return to Shareholders | 493 |
| 8. The Accounts of a Receiver | 496 |

Chapter XIV

MISCELLANEOUS ACCOUNTS

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| § 1. Hire-Purchase Agreements and Agreements to pay by Instalments | 500 |
| 2. Mine Rents and Royalties | 512 |
| 3. Farmers' Accounts | 516 |
| 4. Fire Claims for Stock | 517 |
| 5. Claims under Loss of Profits (Consequential Loss) Insurance Policies | 518 |
| 6. Claims for Compensation | 522 |
| 7. Bankers' Accounts | 523 |
| 8. Voyage Accounts | 526 |
| 9. Marine Insurance Accounts | 527 |
| 10. Ledger Accounts for Investments | 529 |
| 11. Tabular Ledgers | 534 |
| 12. Stock Exchange Transactions | 538 |
| 13. Professional Accounts | 541 |
| 14. Insurance Companies' Accounts | 551 |

TABLE OF CONTENTS

MISCELLANEOUS ACCOUNTS (*Continued*)

| | PAGE |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 15. Treatment of Scrip Profits, etc. | 569 |
| 16. Accounts of Containers | 570 |
| 17. The Accounts of Building Societies | 575 |

CHAPTER I

DOUBLE ENTRY BOOK-KEEPING

§ 1. Introduction

Business transactions comprise the exchange of value, either in the form of money, or of goods or services which are measured and expressed in terms of money. Book-keeping is the systematic recording of such transactions in a manner which enables the financial relationship of a business with other persons to be clearly disclosed, and the cumulative effect of the transactions on the financial position of the business itself to be ascertained.

It is by no means easy to draw a clear line of distinction between book-keeping and accountancy. Broadly speaking, however, the function of the book-keeper is to keep the books and make the accounting records, whilst that of the accountant is to decide how such records shall be kept and to appraise the significance of the information disclosed thereby.

The accountant is responsible for directing and co-ordinating the work of the book-keeping staff, and for designing and maintaining accounting systems adequate to the needs of the particular business. It is part of his duty to prepare periodical accounts of profit and loss and financial statements in a form which will be of assistance to the management, not only in appraising past results, but in formulating future policy. By careful and scientific analysis of accounting records he can bring to light significant facts which will enable errors in management and policy to be rectified and reforms and economies to be introduced. He must be competent to devise and consolidate the accounting records of branches and subsidiaries, install and direct costing systems and generally to advise the management and give effect to their policy on all matters affecting the business in its financial and accounting aspects.

The principles of double entry book-keeping are described and illustrated in full detail in Spicer and Pegler's *Practical Book-Keeping and Commercial Knowledge* and are only dealt with in brief outline in this work, which is devoted mainly to the higher functions of accountancy.

§ 2. The Theory of Double Entry

Double Entry Book-keeping takes cognisance of the fact that every transaction which is capable of being recorded in terms of money involves the receiving of value by one or more persons and the giving of equivalent value by another or others. The system accordingly requires entries to be made in the books of a business to give effect to both aspects of the transactions.

The principal book of account is the LEDGER, and although, normally, a number of subsidiary books are also necessary, it is the Ledger in which all transactions are ultimately recorded in double entry form. The Ledger is divided into 'accounts', each

being devoted solely to transactions with a particular person, or of a particular kind. Accounts dealing with persons are called 'PERSONAL ACCOUNTS' and those in which transactions are recorded from the viewpoint of the business, 'IMPERSONAL ACCOUNTS'. The latter class is further subdivided into 'REAL ACCOUNTS' which are concerned with things (e.g., plant and machinery, buildings, etc.) and 'NOMINAL ACCOUNTS' in which the various kinds of expense, income, profit and loss are recorded.

The simplest form of ledger account is divided vertically into two sides, that on the left being called the 'debit' and that on the right the 'credit' side of the account. Accordingly, an entry on the left hand side of a ledger account is called a debit, and one on the right hand side a credit to that account.

The fundamental rule of double entry may now be concisely stated, as follows:

The account which RECEIVES value is DEBITED ;

The account which GIVES value is CREDITED.

Thus, if XY & Co. sells goods of the value of £100 on credit to AB & Co., in the books of XY & Co. the personal account of AB & Co. is debited and the impersonal account for Sales is credited with £100, AB & Co. having received the value, and Sales Account being the account in which the 'giving' of value in the form of sales is recorded. When, later, AB & Co. pay the £100, their account is credited, because they 'give' the value, and Cash Account is debited, because this account 'receives' it.

It must be observed that the value received by, and consequently debited to, an account is not in all cases something tangible, such as goods or cash. The payment of wages, for example, is made as consideration for a *service* received by the business, viz., the labour of employees, and must be debited to Wages Account, which represents that type of service. The value received may even be of a negative character, and constitute a loss, such as a bad debt which, when sustained, must be debited to the account which 'receives' the loss, viz., Bad Debts Account, and credited to the account of the defaulting debtor, which yields it.

Again, the account which gives the value may be an impersonal one, representing the *source* of a benefit, such as income from investments. Here the amount received is debited to Cash Account and credited to Income from Investments Account, the account of the source from which the income is derived.

It will be seen from an examination of these illustrations that the rule of double entry stated above, may be amplified as follows:

- (1) Receipts are debited; payments credited.
- (2) Assets are debited; liabilities credited.
- (3) Losses are debited; profits credited.
- (4) Expenses are debited; income credited.

From the above considerations, the following advantages of the double entry system of book-keeping may be deduced:

- (1) It provides a complete record of every transaction, from both its personal and impersonal aspects.

- (2) It provides an arithmetical check on the records, since the total of the debit entries must equal the total of the credit entries, and as a consequence, the total of the debit *balances* must equal the total of the credit *balances*.
- (3) From the personal accounts the amounts owing to and by each person with whom the business deals can at any given time be ascertained.
- (4) The balances of the nominal accounts can be collected together in a Profit and Loss Account, which discloses the result of the operations, *i.e.*, the profit or loss for any given period.
- (5) By means of a Balance Sheet, in which the balances of accounts representing capital, assets and liabilities are set out, the financial position of the business at any given moment, can be ascertained.
- (6) In association with a reliable system of internal organisation, it reduces the risk, and facilitates the detection of, errors and fraud.

§ 3. The Various Classes of Assets and Liabilities

Assets may be classified as follows:

(a) **FIXED ASSETS** are those which are acquired for continuous use in the business, and not for conversion into cash. The life of such assets usually extends over a number of years, and the operations of many accounting periods derive benefit from them. The cost of fixed assets, therefore, represents capital expenditure, which, instead of being charged wholly against the revenue of the period in which it is incurred, is spread over the effective lifetime of the assets, by charging a proportion thereof against the revenue of each of the years in which they are used. Examples of fixed assets are buildings, plant and machinery, fixtures and fittings, goodwill, etc.

(b) **WASTING ASSETS** are assets which are fixed in nature, but are gradually consumed or exhausted in the process of earning profits, *e.g.*, a mine, a cemetery.

(c) **CURRENT (OR FLOATING) ASSETS**. These consist of goods, which are acquired for the purpose of sale, and assets in the various stages of conversion into cash, such as book debts, bills receivable, and cash itself. Such assets are also referred to as 'circulating assets', because they are constantly changing in form by being 'turned over' in the process of trading. Thus, cash may be applied in purchasing goods, goods may be sold and replaced by book debts, book debts are realised into cash, and so on. It is by the turnover or circulation of current assets that profits or losses are made.

Cash, and assets that are capable of immediate realisation, *e.g.*, bills receivable, are also termed 'liquid assets'.

(d) **FICTITIOUS (OR NOMINAL) ASSETS** are debit balances resulting from expenditure of an exceptional nature, which is not represented by present value, but has not been written off. Examples are preliminary expenses (in the case of a limited company), and deferred revenue expenditure, such as special advertising, the benefit

of which will extend to future periods and which it would be inequitable to charge against the revenue of any one period. Such assets have no intrinsic value, and it is therefore desirable to write them off as soon as possible.

Assets may also be classified as 'tangible' and 'intangible', the former comprising those which have material existence, such as stock, cash, plant, etc., and the latter those which have no tangible form, but represent the value of a right, *e.g.*, goodwill, patents, book debts, etc. The use of these expressions is not recommended, as there is a tendency to depart from the literal interpretation of the terms. Intangible assets must not be regarded as necessarily fictitious; they may, in fact, be of considerable value, as in the case of goodwill and patent rights, whereas a fictitious asset is valueless.

Liabilities are amounts owing by a business. They are not capable of as varied a classification as assets, but care must be taken, in a Balance Sheet, to indicate clearly their nature. Those of a short term character, which have to be met day by day out of the current assets of the business, are classified as 'current liabilities' and the ratio of these to the current assets is important, as indicating the extent and adequacy of the working capital of the business. Cash liabilities, such as bank overdrafts and temporary loans should be clearly designated, whilst those of a more permanent character may be classified as 'fixed' or 'long term' liabilities.

§ 4. Capital and Revenue Expenditure

The distinction between capital and revenue expenditure is broadly analogous to that between fixed and current assets. Capital expenditure is all expenditure incurred in acquiring fixed assets and in placing the business in a position in which it is able to commence or continue operations. Revenue expenditure is incurred in the purchase of goods for resale, in selling those goods, and in administering and carrying on the business.

Since capital expenditure results in some more or less permanent benefit to the business, it is written off piecemeal, the proportion unexpired at the end of each accounting period being carried forward to continue to form part of the capital worth of the business. Revenue expenditure, on the other hand, contributes only once to the earning of profit, and except to the extent that it is represented by unsold stock and payments in advance, is wholly exhausted and written off against revenue in the period in which it is incurred.

For the financial health of the business, capital expenditure should be provided for by long term capital, *i.e.*, capital contributed by the proprietors, or raised in the form of mortgages or debentures, which are not repayable at an early date. Although it may be desirable for revenue expenditure also to be provided, at least partially, by long term capital, it may be financed to some extent by bank overdrafts and credit received from creditors, so long as the current assets are maintained at a figure sufficient to meet the current liabilities as they become due, and to leave an adequate margin of working capital to meet current expenses and contingencies.

TRIAL BALANCE
28TH FEBRUARY, 19..

| Fo. | | | £ | £ |
|------|----|----------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| I.L. | 1 | Capital Account | | 500 |
| " | 2 | Current Account | 15 | |
| " | 3 | Sales | | 740 |
| " | 4 | Purchases | 992 | |
| " | 5 | Wages | 16 | |
| " | 6 | Carriage | 5 | |
| " | 7 | Lighting | 5 | |
| " | 8 | Rent | 8 | |
| " | 9 | Discount | | 5 |
| " | 10 | General Expenses | 7 | |
| " | 11 | Warehouse Fittings | 40 | |
| " | 12 | Petty Cash | 6 | |
| C.B. | 1 | Cash at Bank | 191 | |
| B.L. | 1 | W. Martin | | 190 |
| " | 2 | F. Pearson | | 130 |
| S.L. | 1 | T. Crown | 30 | |
| " | 2 | W. Wilson | 80 | |
| " | 3 | L. Robinson | 170 | |
| | | | <u>£1,565</u> | <u>£1,565</u> |

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR MONTH ENDED 28TH FEBRUARY, 19..

Fo. 20.

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------|-------------|------------------------------|------|-------------|
| To Purchases | L. 4 | £ 992 | By Sales | L. 3 | £ 740 |
| Less P. & L. at 28th Feb. | L. 13 | 325 | | | |
| | | 667 | | | |
| .. Balance, being Gross Profit c/d. . . | | 73 | | | |
| | | <u>£740</u> | | | <u>£740</u> |
| To Wages | L. 5 | 16 | By Gross Profit b/d. | | 73 |
| .. Carriage | L. 6 | 5 | .. Discount | L. 9 | 5 |
| .. Lighting | L. 7 | 5 | | | |
| .. Rent | L. 8 | 8 | | | |
| .. General Expenses | L. 10 | 7 | | | |
| .. Net Profit carried to Current Account | L. 2 | 37 | | | |
| | | <u>£78</u> | | | <u>£78</u> |

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 28TH FEBRUARY, 19..

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----|-------------|----------------------------|------|-------------|
| H. Williams. | | £ | Fixed Assets: | | £ |
| Capital Account | 500 | | Warehouse Fittings | 40 | |
| Current Account: | | | Current Assets: | | |
| Net Profit | £37 | | Stock | £325 | |
| Less Drawings | 15 | | Sundry Debtors | 280 | |
| | | 22 | Cash at Bank | 191 | |
| | | 522 | Cash in hand | 6 | |
| Current Liabilities: | | | | 802 | |
| Sundry Creditors | 320 | | | | |
| | | <u>£842</u> | | | <u>£842</u> |

§ 15. Methods of dispensing with day books and personal ledgers

The imperative need, under modern conditions, of exercising the greatest economy in the field of business administration, as well as in production, is prompting more and more firms, even where a mechanised system of accounting has not been installed, to dispense with the use of day books and personal ledgers, and substitute therefor a

system under which original documents, or carbon copies thereof, are employed to serve the functions hitherto performed by these books of account. The following is an outline of such a system:

(a) *Purchases and Expenses*

- (1) All suppliers' invoices and credit notes, after being checked as to quantity, description and price, are filed in a folder or other container, in alphabetical order. The greatest care must be taken to prevent the possibility of any being lost or mutilated.
- (2) At the end of each month, all invoices and credit notes received from each individual supplier during the month are arranged in order of date, and checked with the statement of account rendered by him.
- (3) Each supplier's invoices and credit notes for the month are then attached to his statement of account, and the whole produced to the director or principal for authentication, when the cheque in payment of the account is presented to him for signature.
- (4) The Cash Book contains on the credit side analysis columns for purchases, capital expenditure, rent, rates, etc., and each principal classification of expenditure. Payments to creditors entered therein are numbered consecutively, the corresponding numbers being entered on the creditors' statements which, with the official receipts (if any) attached, are filed away in numerical order. Each payment is entered in the Cash Book in the total column and extended into the appropriate analysis column, the periodical totals of which are posted to the debit of the relevant accounts in the impersonal ledger.

This system can only be employed where accounts are settled at regular intervals, and the greatest care must be taken in filing the invoices and credit notes received, and in checking them with the creditors' statements, if it is to operate effectively. Where, for any reason, an invoice is not paid on its due date, it should be filed with the invoices for the following month, and a list should be made at the end of each month, of all invoices outstanding, so that none will be overlooked.

When preparing the profit and loss account and balance sheet at the end of an accounting period, the total amount of the invoices outstanding for purchases and other expenses, which have not yet been passed through the books, must be debited to the Purchases Account, or the relevant expense accounts, as the case may be, and carried down therein as a credit balance to the commencement of the new period. The accounts for the old period will thereby be charged with the whole of the expenditure incurred in respect of that period, whilst the credit balances carried down will represent outstanding liabilities, and will be included in the amount of the Sundry Creditors in the Balance Sheet. These credit items will automatically be balanced off when the accounts are paid and the postings made from the columnar Cash Book in the new period.

(b) *Sales*

In businesses where the transactions with individual customers are relatively few in

number and the payment of accounts within a short period of credit can be rigidly enforced, it may be possible to dispense altogether with a Sales Day Book and Sales Ledger, folders containing carbon copies of invoices, etc., taking the place of personal accounts.

Three copies of each sales invoice (or credit note) are prepared simultaneously, the first being sent to the customer, the second placed in the current folder or other receptacle maintained for him, and the third used in building up the total figures for posting to the impersonal ledger.

When the customer sends a remittance the invoices and credit notes discharged thereby are withdrawn from the folder and filed permanently. The balance owing by the customer at any time will thus be the sum of the invoices (less credit notes) remaining in the folder. (If desired, the amounts of all invoices, and credit notes issued to the customer may be entered on the inner page of the folder as a 'recapitulation statement'. When an account is paid, the amount of the remittance is deducted from the total amount due, the balance outstanding being thus clearly indicated.)

To enable the appropriate entries to be made in the impersonal ledger, detailed lists will be prepared (probably by means of an adding and calculating machine) of each day's sales invoices and credit notes, and the net total of sales (less credits) as computed by the machine, posted to the debit of the Debtors Control Account and to the credit of Sales Account. The daily totals of cash received and discounts allowed, as shown by the Cash Book, will be credited to the Debtors Control Account, the balance of which, at any time, will then be the total of the outstanding debtors for sales, and should be capable of reconciliation with the balances disclosed by the customers' folders.

CHAPTER II

TOTAL [OR CONTROL] ACCOUNTS AND SECTIONAL BALANCING

§ 1. Total [or Control] Accounts

A Total Account is an account to which are debited and credited in total all the transactions which have been debited and credited in detail to individual ledger accounts. A Total Account in respect of a particular ledger therefore operates as a control account for that ledger, since the balance of the Total Account at any time should equal the sum of the balances of all the individual accounts within that ledger, and will provide a check on the accuracy of such balances. Total Accounts are alternatively referred to as Control Accounts.

In a business of any magnitude, it is desirable to raise Total Accounts in respect of debtors and creditors ledgers for the following reasons:

(1) Since the balances of the Total Accounts at any time should represent the totals of the balances appearing in the debtors and creditors ledgers, if it is desired to prepare interim Profit and Loss Accounts and Balance Sheets, the balances of the Total Accounts can be entered in the Trial Balance, thus obviating the time and labour involved in extracting schedules of the balances of the individual Debtors' and Creditors' Accounts.

(2) If kept under the control of a responsible official, and not made accessible to the ledger clerks whose duty it is to post to the debtors and creditors ledgers, the Total Accounts operate as a control over those ledgers, and constitute a valuable feature of the system of internal check.

(3) Where the two sides of a Trial Balance do not agree, with the aid of Total Accounts the difference may be located to the particular ledger or ledgers in which the errors exist, and the work of checking can be confined to that ledger or ledgers, thus avoiding waste of time in balancing.

The Total Accounts may, if desired, be kept in the impersonal ledger, from which it will then be possible to extract a Trial Balance without reference to the personal ledgers, since the Total Accounts will provide the totals of the personal account balances. It is preferable, however, to keep the Total Accounts in a separate book under responsible control, so that a check can be imposed upon the personal ledgers, whilst making it unnecessary to expose the impersonal ledger to the clerk in charge of the Total Accounts.

BAD DEBTS ACCOUNT

| 19.. | | £ | £ | 19.. | | £ | £ |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------|-----|--------|-----------|----------------------------|-----|--------|
| Jan./Dec. | To Sundry Debtors, amounts written off as bad: | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance, Provision b/f. | | 500 |
| | A. | 15 | | Jan./Dec. | " Sundry Debtors— | | |
| | B. | 240 | | | Bad debts recovered: | | |
| | C. | 210 | | | G. | 70 | |
| | D. | 60 | | | H. | 110 | 180 |
| | E. | 90 | | Dec. 31 | " Profit and Loss Account: | | |
| | F. | 180 | | | Bad Debts written off less | | |
| | K. | 26 | | | recoveries | 652 | |
| | M. | 11 | | | Increase in Provision | 172 | 824 |
| | | | 832 | | | | |
| Dec. 31 | " Balance, Provision c/d. | | | | | | |
| | N. | 47 | | | | | |
| | P. | 140 | | | | | |
| | Q. | 155 | | | | | |
| | R. | 10 | | | | | |
| | S. | 320 | | | | | |
| | | | 672 | | | | |
| | | | £1,504 | | | | £1,504 |
| | | | | 19.. | | | |
| | | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance, Provision b/d. | | 672 |

The provision for doubtful debts has the effect of reducing the estimated realisable amount of the book debts, and is therefore deducted, inset, from the amount of the asset 'Debtors' in the Balance Sheet.

§ 3. Provisions for Cash Discounts

Where cash discounts are allowed and received, the amounts of the debts and liabilities actually received and paid will be less than the amounts appearing in the books, but opinions differ as to whether provision should be made for discounts to be allowed on outstanding balances when preparing the final accounts. On the one hand, it may be contended that unless the discounts allowable and receivable on outstanding debtors and creditors are taken into account, the book debts and liabilities will be overstated in the Balance Sheet which will not, therefore, disclose the true position of affairs. The counter argument is that as cash discount is an allowance for payment within a specified time, it is analogous to interest on loans and should enter into the computation of profit for the period which enjoys, or is deprived of, the use of the money. The point is not of great importance, and so long as the same procedure is followed consistently, no objection can be taken whichever method is employed. No credit should, however, be taken for discount to be received from creditors unless provision is made for the discount to be allowed to debtors.

Where provision for discounts is made, it may either be carried down in the Discount Account or recorded in a Provision for Discounts Account, which should be operated in the same way as a Provision for Doubtful Debts Account. Care must be taken to calculate the amount of the provision for discounts allowable only on *good* debts, i.e., on the total of the outstanding debts less the provision for doubtful debts (if any).

Where credit is taken for discounts to be received on outstanding liabilities the stock-on-hand should be valued for Balance Sheet purposes at the discounted and not the gross cost.

Where provision for discounts is being created for the first time, an adjustment must be made for the discounts allowable and receivable on the opening debtors and

creditors, which should be eliminated from the Discount Account, and shown separately in the Profit and Loss Appropriation Account.

In the Balance Sheet the provisions for discounts should be deducted, inset, from the trade creditors and debtors respectively.

§ 4. Outstanding Liabilities

It usually happens that at the date of balancing the accounts certain liabilities which have become due or are accruing have not been recorded in the books. These may include such items as rent or rates, charges for gas, water, electric light, telephone, or similar items consumed or incurred during the period, for which no account has yet been received.

All such items must be brought into account either by a journal entry debiting the nominal account concerned, and crediting an 'Outstanding Liabilities' or 'Sundry Creditors' Account, or by carrying down the outstandings in the nominal accounts themselves. The latter method is more usually adopted, and the following illustration shows how the accounts are affected.

Illustration

The books of a manufacturer are closed at 31st December, and the following debit balances appear in the Trial Balance:

| | |
|---------------------------------------|------|
| Rent and Rates | £765 |
| Gas, Electric Light and Water | £112 |

One quarter's rent, amounting to £145, is due but not yet paid. A demand note for local rates for the half-year ending 31st March following, amounting to £90, has been received but has not been paid. There are outstanding liabilities not yet brought into account in respect of gas, £16; water £9.

Show the accounts as they will appear when the books are closed off.

RENT AND RATES ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------|------|
| 19.. | £ | 19.. | £ |
| Dec. 31 | 765 | Dec. 31 | 955 |
| To Expenses paid (detailed) | | By Profit and Loss Account | |
| .. Balance Outstanding c/d. | | | |
| Rent | £145 | | |
| Rates (1 Quarter) | 45 | | |
| | 190 | | |
| | £955 | | £955 |
| | | 19.. | |
| | | Jan. 1 | 190 |
| | | By Balance b/d. | |

GAS, ELECTRIC LIGHT AND WATER ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|------|------------------------------------|------|
| 19.. | £ | 19.. | £ |
| Dec. 31 | 112 | Dec. 31 | 137 |
| To Expenses paid (detailed) | | By Profit and Loss Account | |
| .. Balance Outstanding c/d.: | | | |
| Gas | £16 | | |
| Water | 9 | | |
| | 25 | | |
| | £137 | | £137 |
| | | 19.. | |
| | | Jan. 1 | 25 |
| | | By Balance b/d. | |

It will be seen from the foregoing illustration that the charges to Profit and Loss Account are increased to the extent of the sums outstanding; and the balances brought down are, for the purpose of the Balance Sheet, treated as liabilities.

When the charge is paid during the succeeding period, it will be debited to the nominal account, but will be offset by the balance brought down, so that it is not included in the charge to Profit and Loss Account for that period.

The same principle can be applied to any nominal accounts; but, so far as purchases are concerned, it is better, where possible, to pass all the invoices through the purchases day book (where one is kept) during the period to which they relate.

Where the system of debiting the nominal accounts concerned and crediting a separate account is adopted, all the credits can be passed through an Outstanding Liabilities Account, which may be regarded as a Suspense Account for the purpose of adjusting the outstandings. In this case the items in the Suspense Account must, at the commencement of the succeeding period, be transferred back to the relevant nominal accounts, or care be taken that the payments in respect thereof are debited to the Suspense Account.

§ 5. Payments in Advance

It frequently happens that payments for expenses such as rent, rates, insurances, etc., made during a period, refer wholly or partly to a succeeding period. The treatment of such items is analogous to that of outstanding liabilities, and the following illustration shows the effect of their adjustment upon the accounts.

Illustration

The books of a manufacturer are closed at 31st December, and included in the Trial Balance is a debit balance of £260 for Rent and Rates Account.

The sum of £40 for local rates for the half-year ending 31st March following was paid on the 1st December.

Show the adjustment on the nominal account for the purpose of the Balance Sheet.

RENT AND RATES ACCOUNT

| 19.. | | £ | 19.. | | £ |
|---------|------------------------------|-------------|---------|------------------------------|-------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Expenses (detailed) | 260 | Dec. 31 | By Balance c/d: | |
| | | | | One Quarter's Rates, paid in | |
| | | | | advance | 20 |
| | | | | " Profit and Loss Account .. | 240 |
| | | | | | |
| | | <u>£260</u> | | | <u>£260</u> |
| 19.. | | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 20 | | | |

It will be seen from the foregoing illustration that the charge against profit for the current period is reduced by the amount carried forward to the succeeding period. This amount will appear in the Balance Sheet as an asset and will increase the charge to Profit and Loss Account in the succeeding period. Where there are several items of expenditure paid in advance, it is common for the total to be included in the Balance Sheet under a composite description such as: 'Prepayments' or 'Amounts paid in Advance'.

§ 6. Definition of Depreciation, and the considerations necessary to determine its rate

Depreciation is the measure of the exhaustion of the effective life of a fixed asset owing to use or obsolescence during a given period. It may be regarded as that part of the

cost of the asset which is not recoverable when the asset is finally put out of use. The object of providing for depreciation is to spread the expenditure incurred in acquiring the asset over its effective lifetime, and the amount of the provision made in respect of an accounting period is intended to represent the proportion of such expenditure which has expired during that period.

The term 'use' has been employed in the above definition of depreciation to cover not only the wear and tear, but also exhaustion of the contents of wasting assets such as mines and quarries, and the effluxion of time in the case of assets such as leases, for which there is a time limit of ownership.

Obsolescence occurs when it becomes beneficial to replace an asset before the end of its normal effective life by a new and improved type of asset or process which will perform the same or a similar service more efficiently and more economically. Obviously, it is difficult to provide for obsolescence, as it is an element which is incapable of being foreseen with accuracy; a new invention may arrive most unexpectedly.

Depreciation is sometimes divided broadly into two classes:

(a) Internal, and (b) External.

Internal depreciation is that arising from the operation of any cause natural to or inherent in the asset itself, *e.g.*, wear and tear in the case of plant and machinery.

External depreciation is that arising from the operation of forces apart from the asset itself, *e.g.*, obsolescence in the case of plant and machinery.

The term 'depreciation' must not be confused with 'fluctuation', which implies a temporary change in market value quite distinct from any depreciation which may occur.

In order to assess the rate of depreciation, consideration must be given to three factors: the cost of the asset, its effective life (by which is meant the period during which the asset will be of profitable service to the business) and its probable residual value when its effective life comes to an end. The last two factors are not capable of precise calculation and can only be determined by estimation.

In estimating the effective life, the various forces operating to cause depreciation must be carefully distinguished. It is usually possible to forecast the depreciation by use, such as wear and tear, with reasonable accuracy, given the necessary experience and knowledge of the business concerned; but the external forces such as obsolescence are so uncertain that in many cases they are ignored until the actual loss caused thereby has been ascertained. In making the estimation consideration must be given to the state of repair in which it is intended to maintain the asset, *e.g.*, some machines can have their lifetime considerably extended by the periodical renewal of certain components. The skill of the operatives is also a factor to be taken into account. The effective life has been defined as 'the period beyond which it does not pay either to keep the asset in use by repair, or to renew a part of it'.

§ 7. The Necessity of Providing for Depreciation

At the end of its effective life, the asset ceases to earn revenue, *i.e.*, the capital outlay has expired, and the asset will have to be replaced or a substitute found. Provision for depreciation is the setting aside out of the revenue of an accounting period the

estimated amount by which the capital invested in the asset has expired during that period. It is the provision made for the loss or expense incurred through using the asset for the purpose of earning profits, and should therefore be charged against those profits as they are earned.

If the whole of the profits were withdrawn without providing for depreciation, moneys would not be accumulated out of revenue during the life of the asset for the purpose of replacing it, and consequently when it becomes necessary to replace the asset new capital would have to be found for the purpose.

If depreciation is not provided for, the books will not contain a true record of revenue or capital. If the asset were hired instead of purchased, the hiring fee would be charged against the profits; having been purchased, the asset is, in effect, then hired by capital to revenue, and the true profit cannot be ascertained until an analogous charge for the use of the asset has been made. Moreover, unless provision is made for depreciation, the Balance Sheet will not present a true and fair view of the state of affairs, since the assets will be shown at an amount which is in excess of the true amount of the unexpired expenditure incurred on their acquisition.

It is outside the scope of the present work to discuss the question whether a limited company is under any legal obligation to provide for depreciation on its fixed and wasting assets. The matter is considered here from the point of view of business finance and accountancy. The contention is that depreciation, taking place as it does irrespective of the results of the business, should be recorded in the books in the same way as any other transaction, if those books are to show the true facts of the case.

Under the simplest methods of providing for depreciation, the amount of the provision is credited to the asset account and debited to a Depreciation Account, which, in due course, is transferred to the debit of Profit and Loss Account.

The effect of writing off depreciation in this way is illustrated in the following simple Balance Sheets:

A. is a sole trader, whose summarised Balance Sheet, before providing for depreciation, is as follows:

| | | | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---|----------------|
| Capital | £ | 11,000 | Sundry Assets | £ | 7,500 |
| Creditors | 2,000 | Machinery | 6,000 | | |
| Profit and Loss Account | 3,000 | Cash | 2,500 | | |
| | <u>£16,000</u> | | | | <u>£16,000</u> |

If A. were to withdraw the whole £3,000 profits he would have to realise £500 of the sundry assets, and if he consistently withdrew the whole of the profits for the remainder of the effective life of the machinery, his Balance Sheet on the expiry of that life (assuming other things unaltered), would be as follows:

| | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|---|----------------|
| Capital | £ | 11,000 | Sundry Assets | £ | 7,000 |
| Creditors | 2,000 | Loss on Machinery | 6,000 | | |
| | <u>£13,000</u> | | | | <u>£13,000</u> |

In order to replace the machinery, therefore, fresh capital would have to be introduced.

Reverting to the first Balance Sheet, if A. provided for depreciation to the extent of £800, the effect on that Balance Sheet would be to reduce the profits available for withdrawal to £2,200, and after withdrawing these, £800 would be retained in the business in the form of cash and/or sundry assets. At the end of the effective life (*cf.* second Balance Sheet) instead of there being a loss, there would be £6,000 of cash and/or other assets available for replacing the machinery, the capital outlay having been made good, as it expired, out of revenue.

Provision for depreciation is normally based upon the original capital outlay, plus the cost of all major renewals which increase the revenue earning capacity of the asset (but not those which merely maintain it), less the estimated scrap value.

Depreciation for the accounting period during which an asset is acquired should strictly be calculated on a time basis from the date of acquisition to the date of the balance sheet. In cases where a number of additions to fixed assets are made throughout an accounting year, it is often considered desirable to take the average date thereof for the purpose of computing depreciation. In some businesses, however, it is customary to charge a full year's depreciation on the assets in use at the end of the accounting period, ignoring fractions of years.

The treatment of obsolescence depends upon the facts. It may be shown, from past experience, that important developments or changes in particular types of assets can be expected at fairly regular intervals. If so, this factor should be taken into consideration in estimating the effective life. In most cases, however, obsolescence occurs more or less unexpectedly, and should be provided for as and when it arises. Frequently the loss through obsolescence is of such a large amount that it cannot be met out of the revenue of any one period, and must be provided for either out of capital or by being written off gradually over a period of years as an abnormal loss.

Another question to which increasing emphasis has been given in recent years is the impact of inflation on the replacement cost of assets, and whether in times of rising prices, it is desirable and proper to base the provision for depreciation, not upon the actual historical cost of assets, as has been the practice in periods of relative price stability, but upon estimated expenditure that will be incurred in replacing the assets in respect of which the provision is made.

The provision for replacement of assets and the measurement of profits are complementary problems, and the combined effect of the steep rise in price levels and heavy taxation have caused doubt to be thrown on the validity of the methods of ascertaining profit hitherto generally followed. Broadly, it is contended that the capital employed in a business is to be measured, not by the amount of money contributed by the proprietors, including profits left in the business, but by the capacity of that money to purchase goods and equipment. Accordingly it is maintained that the true profit can only be ascertained after providing out of revenue the funds necessary to replace stocks and fixed assets at the sums which will have to be expended for that purpose. It is pointed out that where the revenue itself is inflated by the rise in price levels, the charges against revenue should be measured by a similar yardstick if true profits are to be ascertained.

The suggestion has been made, and strongly advocated in some quarters, that the

values at which fixed assets appear in the Balance Sheet should be written up to the estimated present cost of replacing them by identical assets in a comparable condition, and that thereafter depreciation charged against profits should be calculated on the written-up values. Certain important British companies, and many continental ones, have adopted this practice in recent years.

The Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales examined this matter in all its aspects and published a memorandum, wherein, whilst recognising the urgent need for the maintenance of industrial efficiency by the making of adequate provision for the replacement of lost capital, they indicated that they saw no need to modify the advice previously given that the charge for depreciation should be based on historical cost, and that any amounts set aside to finance enhanced costs should be treated as transfers to reserve. The Council considered that the proposal to base the charge for depreciation on other than historical cost is at variance with the accountancy practice hitherto generally followed, of treating as charges to revenue the actual monetary cost of stocks consumed and capital expired, and would lead to inconsistency and confusion. It was pointed out that the logical application of the method advocated by those who desire a change would require them not only to make charges against revenue on new bases in respect of stocks and fixed assets, but also to provide for the diminished purchasing power of cash and other liquid assets to be used in the business. It would be illogical, in ascertaining profit, to treat as a necessary charge the cost of maintaining the purchasing power of money provided by the issue of fixed preference or loan capital, whilst ignoring the corresponding reduction in the obligation, expressed in terms of purchasing power, to the holders of that capital. If the new conception were adopted, the holders of preference shares might be deprived of dividends without acquiring any capital benefit.

The Council recommended directors of companies to consider, in relation to the circumstances of their companies, the effects of the rise in price levels and the relative merits of (a) relying upon the company's ability to raise new capital as and when it may be required for the purpose of meeting enhanced replacement costs, and (b) the desirability of setting aside and accumulating out of profits such sums for this purpose as may be practicable. This consideration may be a matter of major importance in determining the amount of profits which, from the standpoint of financial prudence, should be regarded as available for dividend.

The Council further recommended that in order to emphasise that, as a matter of prudence, the amount set aside is, for the time being, regarded as not available for distribution, it should normally be treated as a specific capital reserve for increased cost of replacement of assets. For Balance Sheet purposes, fixed assets should not, as a general rule, be written up on the basis of estimated replacement costs, especially in the absence of a measure of stability in the price level.

The Council of the Association of Certified and Corporate Accountants, on the other hand, comes down on the side of the advocates of the replacement value basis of provision for depreciation. They recommend that the charge for depreciation be divided into two parts:

- (a) the basic charge, calculated on recorded cost and designed to recover such cost over the life of the asset; and
- (b) a supplementary charge for the difference by which the basic charge falls short of the amount which would appear as an expense if it were calculated on a basis homogeneous with maintenance, repair and other expenses.

They pointed out that the practical application of this convention would not create great technical difficulties. The system of accounts would remain unchanged up to and including the Trading or Manufacturing Account, where the basic depreciation would be accounted for. The balance – the trading profit – could be brought to a Depreciation Adjustment Account where the supplementary depreciation could be charged. The balance would be carried to Profit and Loss Account. The basic depreciation would continue to be deducted from the book value of the assets in the Balance Sheet and the supplementary depreciation brought to a special replacement provision account.

In the methods of providing for depreciation described and illustrated in the succeeding section, it is assumed that the charge to Profit and Loss Account for depreciation is based on the original monetary cost of the assets concerned.

It will be observed that the Sinking Fund and Endowment Policy Methods aim at accumulating funds outside the business wherewith to replace the assets in due course, whereas the other methods aim merely at writing off the original cost of the assets, and retaining as working capital the funds thus kept in the business.

§ 8. The Principal Methods of Providing for Depreciation

(a) The Fixed Instalment System, or Straight Line Method

Under this system, a fixed percentage of the original cost of the asset is written off each year so as to reduce the asset to nil or break-up value at the end of its life, repairs and small renewals being charged to revenue.

The method can be used and is commonly applied in the case of leases having a comparatively short life: it is not, however, scientific for such terminable assets, in connection with which the expiration of the capital value is more correctly determined by the Annuity method referred to in (c) *infra*.

Although the reducing instalment system explained in (b) below is frequently employed in connection with plant and machinery, it is often contended that the fixed instalment, or 'straight line' method is the safer to employ, as it is more certain in its results, the only difficulty in applying it being the calculation of depreciation on additions. Proper plant registers should be kept.

It must not be overlooked that, although the depreciation charged for any asset will be constant from year to year, there is really a reducing burden when it is considered that the funds retained thereby will themselves earn income. Moreover, fluctuations in the total depreciation charge may be somewhat violent if blocks of assets are wholly written off and not immediately replaced.

In order to calculate the depreciation charge under this system it is necessary to classify the machinery under effective life periods, separate accounts being utilised for

As already explained in connection with the fixed instalment system, the asset may be left in the books at cost, the depreciation being credited to a Provision for Depreciation Account.

(c) The Annuity System

By this method the capital locked up in the asset is regarded as earning a fixed rate of interest, and such constant annual amount is written off as, after debiting the asset account with the fixed rate per cent. upon the diminishing value, will reduce it to nil or scrap value at the end of its life.

This is the most scientific system when investment is not desired outside the business, but may be criticised from the viewpoint that it introduces an uncertain element, *i.e.*, the rate of interest, which is bound to be arbitrarily arrived at, and also that it is not sufficiently conservative in the early years, so that if obsolescence supervenes the true depreciation will not have been provided; but the latter objection can be met by shortening the estimated life on which the calculations are based. The annuity system is specially applicable to cases such as long leases, where no additions are made to the asset during its life. It is not generally used for plant, since, when additions are made from time to time, these would at once necessitate further calculations.

The interest debited to the asset account is credited to revenue, and this item diminishes each year with the value of the asset, although the amount written off as depreciation remains constant. There is, therefore, an increasing net charge to revenue in respect of the asset. This increasing charge, however, is more apparent than real, as the assets retained as a result of writing off depreciation will presumably earn profits, which will offset the diminution of interest charged to the asset, as can be seen from the table following the next illustration.

Illustration

Lease costing £600 for a term of five years. Depreciation by the Annuity Method at 5% per annum.

LEASE ACCOUNT

| Year 1 | | | | Year 1 | | | | Year 1 | | | | | |
|---------|------------------------|----|----|------------------|----|----|---------|-------------------------|----|----|------------------|----|----|
| Jan. 1 | To Cash | .. | .. | £ | s. | d. | Dec. 31 | By Depreciation Account | .. | .. | £ | s. | d. |
| Dec. 31 | „ Interest Account. 5% | .. | .. | 600 | 0 | 0 | | „ Balance c/d. | .. | .. | 138 | 11 | 8 |
| | | | | 30 | 0 | 0 | | | | | 491 | 8 | 4 |
| | | | | <u>£630 0 0</u> | | | | | | | <u>£630 0 0</u> | | |
| Year 2 | | | | Year 2 | | | | Year 2 | | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | .. | .. | 491 | 8 | 4 | Dec. 31 | By Depreciation Account | .. | .. | 138 | 11 | 8 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Interest Account | .. | .. | 24 | 11 | 5 | | „ Balance c/d. | .. | .. | 377 | 8 | 1 |
| | | | | <u>£515 19 9</u> | | | | | | | <u>£515 19 9</u> | | |
| Year 3 | | | | Year 3 | | | | Year 3 | | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | .. | .. | 377 | 8 | 1 | Dec. 31 | By Depreciation Account | .. | .. | 138 | 11 | 8 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Interest Account | .. | .. | 18 | 17 | 5 | | „ Balance c/d. | .. | .. | 257 | 13 | 10 |
| | | | | <u>£396 5 6</u> | | | | | | | <u>£396 5 6</u> | | |
| Year 4 | | | | Year 4 | | | | Year 4 | | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | .. | .. | 257 | 13 | 10 | Dec. 31 | By Depreciation Account | .. | .. | 138 | 11 | 8 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Interest Account | .. | .. | 12 | 17 | 8 | | „ Balance c/d. | .. | .. | 131 | 19 | 10 |
| | | | | <u>£270 11 6</u> | | | | | | | <u>£270 11 6</u> | | |

LEASE ACCOUNT (*continued*)

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|--------------------|----|------|----|----|---------|-------------------------|----|------|----|----|
| Year 5 | | | £ | s. | d. | Year 5 | | | £ | s. | d. |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d | .. | 131 | 19 | 10 | Dec. 31 | By Depreciation Account | .. | 138 | 11 | 10 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Interest Account | .. | 6 | 12 | 0 | | | | | | |
| | | | £138 | 11 | 10 | | | | £138 | 11 | 10 |

Note. The annual amount of depreciation under this system is calculated from actuarial tables compiled for the purpose. There will usually be differences arising from fractions of a penny which will be adjusted in the last year.

DEPRECIATION AND INTEREST ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|---------------------------------|------|----|----|---------|-----------------------------|------|----|----|
| Year 1 | | £ | s. | d. | Year 1 | | £ | s. | d. |
| Dec. 31 | To Lease Account - Depreciation | 138 | 11 | 8 | Dec. 31 | By Lease Account - Interest | 30 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | „ Profit and Loss Account | 108 | 11 | 8 |
| | | £138 | 11 | 8 | | | £138 | 11 | 8 |
| Year 2 | | | | | Year 2 | | | | |
| Dec. 31 | To Lease Account - Depreciation | 138 | 11 | 8 | Dec. 31 | By Lease Account - Interest | 24 | 11 | 5 |
| | | | | | | „ Profit and Loss Account | 114 | 0 | 3 |
| | | £138 | 11 | 8 | | | £138 | 11 | 8 |
| Year 3 | | | | | Year 3 | | | | |
| Dec. 31 | To Lease Account - Depreciation | 138 | 11 | 8 | Dec. 31 | By Lease Account - Interest | 18 | 17 | 5 |
| | | | | | | „ Profit and Loss Account | 119 | 14 | 3 |
| | | £138 | 11 | 8 | | | £138 | 11 | 8 |
| Year 4 | | | | | Year 4 | | | | |
| Dec. 31 | To Lease Account - Depreciation | 138 | 11 | 8 | Dec. 31 | By Lease Account - Interest | 12 | 17 | 8 |
| | | | | | | „ Profit and Loss Account | 125 | 14 | 0 |
| | | £138 | 11 | 8 | | | £138 | 11 | 8 |
| Year 5 | | | | | Year 5 | | | | |
| Dec. 31 | To Lease Account - Depreciation | 138 | 11 | 10 | Dec. 31 | By Lease Account - Interest | 6 | 12 | 0 |
| | | | | | | „ Profit and Loss Account | 131 | 19 | 10 |
| | | £138 | 11 | 10 | | | £138 | 11 | 10 |

Note. In practice this account might not be used, depreciation and interest being debited and credited respectively to their separate accounts, but it is shown here in order to illustrate the increasing charge each year to Profit and Loss Account.

It will be seen from the above example that the profits available for distribution are decreased in each year to the extent of the net charge to Profit and Loss Account, and it will be evident that, as a result of this charge, there are retained in the business as working capital assets that might otherwise have been distributed as dividend. These assets will themselves earn revenue, and if it is assumed that the profits thereon are only equal to 5% per annum, the equality of the real charge to Profit and Loss Account in each year will be seen from the following table.

| Year to 31st Dec. | Charge to Profit and Loss Account as above | Amount of interest deemed to be earned by accumulations of assets retained in business as a result of the charge for depreciation. | | Real net charge to Profit and Loss Account. |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------------------------------|
| | | 5% on | Amount | |
| | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. |
| Year 1 | 108 11 8 | | | 108 11 8 |
| Year 2 | 114 0 3 | 108 11 8 | 5 8 7 | 108 11 8 |
| Year 3 | 119 14 3 | 222 11 11 | 11 2 7 | 108 11 8 |
| Year 4 | 125 14 0 | 342 6 2 | 17 2 4 | 108 11 8 |
| Year 5 | 131 19 10 | 468 0 2 | 23 8 0 | 108 11 10 |

(d) The Depreciation Fund, or Sinking Fund System

Under this system, a constant amount is debited to the Profit and Loss Account each year, and credited to a Depreciation Fund Account, and an equivalent amount of cash is invested outside the business in gilt-edged securities, and allowed to accumulate at compound interest so as to produce the required amount at the completion of a given number of years.

This system is adopted where it is necessary to replace the asset at the end of its life, and to provide moneys *outside the business* for such purpose. This will avoid any disturbance of the financial position, such as might occur if large sums had to be withdrawn from the business at any particular moment, since money left in the business is liable to be employed as working capital.

Sometimes, instead of being invested outside the business, the sums set aside are used in the business. In that case, a charge for interest on the accumulated fund should be made, by debiting Profit and Loss Account and crediting the Fund Account. This provides for the depreciation, but does not ensure that the cash will be available, when required, to replace the asset, as the fund may be represented by business assets which cannot readily be realised. *Primâ facie*, this method has the disadvantage that the gross charge to Profit and Loss Account increases from year to year, but, as already explained, the assets representing the fund will be earning income, which goes to increase the profits available. Moreover, the use of the term 'depreciation fund' in such a case would be misleading, as the designation 'fund' should only be applied where the amount is represented by a fund of readily realisable and earmarked investments.

The sum to be set aside each year is ascertained by reference to interest tables, or can be computed by ordinary arithmetical calculation, *e.g.*, to find what annual sum must be set aside at the end of each year and invested at 3% compound interest to provide £2,091 16s. 3d. at the end of four years, the following calculation may be made:

| | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|------------------------------------------|
| If the sum set aside at the end of the first year were | .. | .. | .. | £100-0000 |
| Interest for second year @ 3% thereon | .. | .. | .. | 3-0000 |
| | | | | <hr/> 103-0000 |
| Sum set aside at end of second year | .. | .. | .. | 100-0000 |
| | | | | <hr/> 203-0000 |
| Interest for third year @ 3% thereon | .. | .. | .. | 6-0900 |
| | | | | <hr/> 209-0900 |
| Sum set aside at end of third year | .. | .. | .. | 100-0000 |
| | | | | <hr/> 309-0900 |
| Interest for fourth year @ 3% thereon | .. | .. | .. | 9-2727 |
| | | | | <hr/> 318-3627 |
| Sum set aside at end of fourth year | .. | .. | .. | 100-0000 |
| Amount at end of four years | .. | .. | .. | <hr/> £418-3627 |
| If £418-3627 would be produced by the annual investment of £100, | | | | |
| | | | | $\frac{2091-8125 \times 100}{418\ 3627}$ |
| then £2,091 8125 would be produced by the annual investment of £ | | | | £500 |

Illustration

Lease costing £2,091 16s. 3d. for term of four years. Depreciation by the Depreciation Fund System at 3% per annum. Replaced at expiration by lease costing £2,000.

DEPRECIATION FUND ACCOUNT

| | | | £ | s. | d. | | | | £ | s. | d. |
|-------------------|------------------|-------|--------|----|----|-------------------|----------------------------|-------|--------|----|----|
| Year 2 Dec. 31 | To Balance c/d. | .. .. | 1,015 | 0 | 0 | Year 1 Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account | .. .. | 500 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | Year 2 Dec. 31 | " Cash: Interest | .. .. | 15 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | " | " Profit and Loss Account | .. .. | 500 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | £1,015 | 0 | 0 | | | | £1,015 | 0 | 0 |
| Year 3 Dec. 31 | To Balance c/d. | .. .. | 1,545 | 9 | 0 | Year 3 Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | .. .. | 1,015 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | Dec. 31 | " Cash: Interest | .. .. | 30 | 9 | 0 |
| | | | | | | " | " Profit and Loss Account | .. .. | 500 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | £1,545 | 9 | 0 | | | | £1,545 | 9 | 0 |
| Year 4 Dec. 31 | To Lease Account | .. .. | 2,091 | 16 | 3 | Year 4 Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | .. .. | 1,545 | 9 | 0 |
| | | | | | | Dec. 31 | " Cash: Interest | .. .. | 46 | 7 | 3 |
| | | | | | | " | " Profit and Loss Account | .. .. | 500 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | £2,091 | 16 | 3 | | | | £2,091 | 16 | 3 |

INVESTMENT ACCOUNT

| | | | £ | s. | d. | | | | £ | s. | d. |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------|--------|----|----|-------------------|-----------------|-------|--------|----|----|
| Year 1 Dec. 31 | To Cash | .. .. | 500 | 0 | 0 | Year 2 Dec. 31 | By Balance c/d. | .. .. | 1,015 | 0 | 0 |
| Year 2 Dec. 31 | " " | .. .. | 515 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | |
| | | | £1,015 | 0 | 0 | | | | £1,015 | 0 | 0 |
| Year 3 Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | .. .. | 1,015 | 0 | 0 | Year 3 Dec. 31 | By Balance c/d. | .. .. | 1,545 | 9 | 0 |
| Dec. 31 | " Cash | .. .. | 530 | 9 | 0 | | | | | | |
| | | | £1,545 | 9 | 0 | | | | £1,545 | 9 | 0 |
| Year 4 Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | .. .. | 1,545 | 9 | 0 | Year 4 Dec. 31 | By Cash | .. .. | 1,545 | 9 | 0 |
| | | | £1,545 | 9 | 0 | | | | £1,545 | 9 | 0 |

LEASE ACCOUNT

| | | | £ | s. | d. | | | | £ | s. | d. |
|------------------|---------|-------|--------|----|----|-------------------|----------------------|-------|--------|----|----|
| Year 1 Jan. 1 | To Cash | .. .. | 2,091 | 16 | 3 | Year 4 Dec. 31 | By Depreciation Fund | .. .. | 2,091 | 16 | 3 |
| | | | £2,091 | 16 | 3 | | | | £2,091 | 16 | 3 |

NEW LEASE ACCOUNT

| | | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------|-------|--|-------|----|----|
| To Cash | .. .. |  | 2,000 | 0 | 0 |

Notes to Illustration

- (1) For the sake of simplicity the investments have been valued at par, and interest has been brought in yearly, without deduction of income tax, and invested as received.
- (2) The interest received in and the allocation from profit at the end of the fourth year, amounting in all to £546 7s. 3d. would not be invested, but, with the proceeds of £1,545 9s. 0d. from the sale of the investment, would make up the balance on the Depreciation Fund Account of £2,091 16s. 3d.

- (3) In many cases instructions are given to the bankers to collect the interest and to reinvest it in the principal stock as and when received, in which cases the dividends are never actually received, a book entry debiting the Investment Account and crediting the Depreciation Fund Account being made to record the transaction.
- (4) In practice the investment will never realise exactly its book value owing to market fluctuations, brokers' commission, etc., which have, however, in this case been ignored.
- (5) The Depreciation Fund Account is finally disposed of by transferring the balance to the Lease Account, thus closing both accounts. This illustrates the fact that the provision for a depreciation fund is a charge against profits, and not an appropriation thereof.
- (6) Various terms are utilised in place of the phrase Depreciation Fund, e.g., Redemption Fund, Amortisation Fund, Sinking Fund, etc.

Where the cost of replacement is estimated to exceed the cost of the original asset, and it is not desired to introduce new capital to meet such excess, but it is the intention to provide it out of profits, the fund must be computed at such amount as is necessary for the acquisition. As already indicated, the excess of such provision over the true depreciation charge should preferably be regarded as an *appropriation* of profits, not a charge against them.

(e) The Depreciation Fund with Endowment Policy System

In this case (which is merely another method of applying the depreciation fund system), instead of buying securities, an endowment policy is taken out for the life of the asset, so as to produce the amount required at the end of the particular period.

The charge is made to Profit and Loss Account in the same way as under the investment system, but the cash taken out of the business, instead of being invested in gilt-edged securities, is paid over by way of premium to an insurance company.

This method is becoming increasingly popular now that the insurance companies have found it possible to give such favourable terms, for although the interest is lower than could be obtained by investing in gilt-edged securities, there is no risk of loss on realisation as there is in an outside investment, provided a sound insurance company is chosen.

Some authorities consider that it is advisable for the Policy Account to be adjusted at the end of each year to the surrender value of the policy. In that case, when the policy matures, a greater sum will be received than that shown in the books to the debit of the Policy Account. This profit will be debited to the Policy Account and credited to the Depreciation Fund Account.

Other authorities take the view that, since the policy is for a fixed term, and there is no intention of surrendering it, there is no need to write it down to surrender value, but that it can be maintained at cost plus accrued interest, there being the equivalent Fund Account to correspond with it. Both viewpoints have a good deal to be said for them. The surrender value method, of course, is the more conservative, and maintains the policy in the Balance Sheet at its realisable value. This method is here illustrated.

Illustration

Lease costing £10,000 for a term of 50 years. Annual Premium on Endowment Policy is, say, £100. The surrender value of the policy is the amount of the premiums paid, excluding the first, plus 3 per cent compound interest.

DEPRECIATION FUND ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------|------|-----|----------|-------------------------------|------|-------|
| 1st year | | | | 1st year | | | |
| Dec. 31 | To Endowment Policy Account to adjust to surrender value .. | £ | s. | Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account .. | £ | s. d. |
| | | 100 | 0 0 | | | 100 | 0 0 |
| 2nd year | | | | 2nd year | | | |
| Dec. 31 | To Balance c/d. .. | 103 | 0 0 | Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account .. | 100 | 0 0 |
| | | | | | Endowment Policy Account: | | |
| | | | | | Adjustment to surrender value | 3 | 0 0 |
| | | £103 | 0 0 | | | £103 | 0 0 |
| 3rd year | | | | 3rd year | | | |
| Dec. 31 | To Balance c/d. .. | 209 | 1 9 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. .. | 103 | 0 0 |
| | | | | Dec. 31 | Profit and Loss Account .. | 100 | 0 0 |
| | | | | | Endowment Policy Account: | | |
| | | | | | Adjustment to surrender value | 6 | 1 9 |
| | | £209 | 1 9 | | | £209 | 1 9 |
| | | | | 4th year | | | |
| | | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. .. | 209 | 1 9 |

ENDOWMENT POLICY ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------|------|-------|----------|---------------------------------|------|-------|
| 1st year | | | | 1st year | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Cash .. | £ | s. d. | Dec. 31 | By Depreciation Fund Account .. | £ | s. d. |
| | | 100 | 0 0 | | | 100 | 0 0 |
| 2nd year | | | | 2nd year | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Cash .. | 100 | 0 0 | Dec. 31 | By Balance c/d. .. | 103 | 0 0 |
| Dec. 31 | Depreciation Fund Account: | | | | | | |
| | Interest at 3% on £100 to adjust to surrender value .. | 3 | 0 0 | | | | |
| | | £103 | 0 0 | | | £103 | 0 0 |
| 3rd year | | | | 3rd year | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. .. | 103 | 0 0 | Dec. 31 | By Balance c/d. .. | 209 | 1 9 |
| Dec. 31 | Cash .. | 100 | 0 0 | | | | |
| | Depreciation Fund Account: | | | | | | |
| | Interest at 3% on £103 to adjust to surrender value .. | 6 | 1 9 | | | | |
| | | £209 | 1 9 | | | £209 | 1 9 |
| 4th year | | | | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. .. | 209 | 1 9 | | | | |

Notes to Illustration

- (a) Although the premiums are paid on 1st January of each year, the transfers from Profit and Loss Account to Depreciation Fund Account would be made at the end of the year, when the accounts are closed.
- (b) Since the surrender value of the policy is the amount of the premiums paid, excluding the first premium, plus interest, the surrender value at the end of the first year is nil. The whole amount standing to the debit of the Policy Account is therefore written off against the Depreciation Fund Account, and thereby against profit. In subsequent years the balance on the Policy Account is raised to surrender value by debiting the account with 3 per cent on the existing balance, the Depreciation Fund Account being credited.
- (c) When the policy matures, the Endowment Policy Account will be credited and cash debited, any balance remaining on the Policy Account being transferred to the Depreciation Fund Account.

(f) Revaluation

It is advisable to resort to this method of ascertaining the amount of depreciation to be written off in the case of loose tools, plant which rapidly depreciates, live stock, patents, copyrights and similar assets. Should the revaluation disclose an appreciation brought about by additions from revenue, as in the case of loose tools and plant in an engineering business (the cost of which, in the shape of materials and wages, has been charged to the Manufacturing or Trading Account), such appreciation should be carried to the credit of that Account. In some cases, the depreciation or appreciation of assets dealt with on a revaluation basis is automatically brought into the Profit and Loss.

Account by transferring the opening and closing values of the assets to that account in exactly the same way as is done with stock-in-trade.

Where the appreciation has not been brought about by additions from revenue, it will be of a capital nature, and if taken into consideration at all should be placed to the credit of a special reserve account.

(g) Depletion Unit System

In the case of wasting assets, such as mines and quarries, it is a matter of policy whether or not to make provision for depreciation. If the concern has been floated to work the asset, and to terminate when the asset is exhausted, the proprietors must regard each dividend received by them as being in part a return of their invested capital, and they must make personal provision thereout to replace that capital.

If, however, the concern is floated on the basis of working each asset in succession, acquiring a new asset as each old one is worked out, depreciation should be provided for on the depletion unit basis, such a sum being set aside out of profits each year as represents the expired capital outlay, on the basis of the produce extracted compared with the estimated total contents of the mine, etc.

Illustration

A plot of freehold land is acquired at a cost of £1,000 for quarrying. The estimated output of the quarry over its lifetime is 40,000 tons.

For each ton won the sum of 6d. must be written off the book value of the land, *i.e.*, if the tonnage won in a year is 2,000, the sum of £50 should be written off as depreciation.

(h) Machine Hour System

Where it is possible to keep records of the actual running hours of each machine, the 'machine hour' plan can be employed. Under this system, it is necessary to estimate the total effective working hours during the whole life of the machine, and to divide this total into the cost of the machine, less its scrap value, thus giving an hourly rate of depreciation. Depreciation is then written off at the hourly rate in respect of the number of hours the machine has been engaged during the period.

This system burdens each period with the exact amount of depreciation appropriate to its use of the machine, and can only usefully be employed in the case of large machines. Due consideration must be given to the fact that some depreciation must normally take place even when a machine is not in use.

The labour involved in the maintenance of records renders this system more expedient where a costing system is in operation.

(i) Sundry Systems

In some trades, machines are hired on the basis of a royalty payable according to the metered use of the machines, *e.g.*, per 10,000 revolutions. Depreciation can be written off on a similar basis.

In certain cases of small machines, with very short lives, the original expenditure

is capitalised, and all renewals charged to revenue, thus maintaining the original outlay. The renewals system cannot be recommended in many cases, however, as few assets have a short enough life to give a fair charge to revenue from year to year.

The recommendation of the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants as to the methods which should be applied in providing for depreciation of fixed assets is set out hereunder.

RECOMMENDATION

1. Provisions for depreciation, amortisation, and depletion of fixed assets should be applied on consistent bases from one period to another. If additional provisions prove to be necessary, they should be stated separately in the Profit and Loss Account. Where practicable, fixed assets *in existence at the Balance Sheet date* should normally be shown in the Balance Sheet at cost, and the aggregate of the provisions for depreciation, amortisation and depletion should appear as deductions therefrom. The extent to which these provisions are being kept liquid will then be ascertainable from the Balance Sheet as a whole.

2. Such provisions should be computed on the bases mentioned below as being appropriate to the particular class of asset concerned:

(a) *Goodwill and Freehold Land*

Depreciation does not arise through use in the business, except in the case of freehold land acquired for purposes such as are referred to in (d) below. Amounts set aside to provide for diminution in value do not constitute a normal charge against revenue and should be shown separately in the Profit and Loss Account.

(b) *Freehold Buildings, Plant and Machinery, Tools and Equipment, Ships, Transport Vehicles and similar assets which are subject to depreciation by reason of their employment in the business.*

Provision for depreciation should, in general, be computed on the straight-line method. Assets of very short effective life, such as loose tools, jigs and patterns, may, however, frequently be dealt with more satisfactorily by other methods, such as revaluation, which in no case should exceed cost.

(c) *Leaseholds, Patents and other assets which become exhausted by the effluxion of time.*

Provision for amortisation should be made on the straight-line basis, including, in the case of leaseholds, allowance for the estimated cost of dilapidations at the end of the lease or useful life of the asset if shorter. If a leasehold redemption policy is effected with an insurance company, the charge of the annual premiums to Profit and Loss Account provides a satisfactory method of amortisation if supplemented in respect of dilapidations.

(d) *Mines, oil wells, quarries and similar assets of a wasting character which are consumed in the form of basic raw material or where the output is sold as such.*

Provision for depreciation and depletion should be made according to the estimated exhaustion of the asset concerned. In the case of an undertaking, formed for the purpose of exploiting this particular class of asset, if the practice is to make no provision, this should be made clear in the accounts so that shareholders may realise that dividends are, in part, a return of capital.

3. Where a method different from that recommended has hitherto been followed, and it is not considered practicable or desirable to make a change in the case of assets already in use, it is suggested that the methods recommended should be followed in cases of assets subsequently acquired.

4. Details of all fixed assets should be kept (preferably in registers specially maintained) to show the cost of each asset, the provisions made for its depreciation and the basis of the provisions made.

5. Amounts set aside out of profits for obsolescence which cannot be foreseen, or for a possible increase in the cost of replacement, are matters of financial prudence. Neither can be estimated with any degree of accuracy. They are in the nature of reserves and should be treated as such in the accounts.

In subsequent memoranda, in amplification of the above, the Council of the Institute have reiterated their recommendation that historical cost should be the basis on which annual accounts should be prepared and profits computed. Any amount set aside out of profits in recognition of the effects which changes in the purchasing power of money have had on the affairs of the business (including any amount to finance the increase in the cost of replacements, whether of fixed or current assets) should be treated as a transfer to reserve and not as a charge in arriving at profits. If such a transfer is shown in the profit and loss account as a deduction in arriving at the balance for the year, that balance should be described appropriately, since it is not the whole of the profits.

For balance sheet purposes fixed assets should not, except in special circumstances (e.g. where subscriptions for new capital are invited on the basis of a current valuation of the assets), be written up.

§ 9. The Treatment of Repairs, Renewals and Replacements

In considering the question of depreciation, distinction should be made between the cost of upkeep in the shape of repairs and small renewals, and the cost of large renewals or the entire replacement of the asset concerned.

In all cases the cost of upkeep should be charged to revenue in addition to the necessary provision for depreciation. The latter represents the exhaustion of the capital outlay which cannot be made good by repairs, but must ultimately involve the expenditure of large sums on the replacement of the asset. The annual charge for depreciation spreads this loss equitably over the life of the asset. The current expenditure by way of repairs is necessary to preserve the life of the asset to the extent of its normal duration, this being the basis upon which the rate of depreciation is determined. Consequently it is essential that the cost of current repairs should be charged to revenue, otherwise the rate of depreciation would require to be increased.

Where large renewals or replacements become necessary it must be considered whether they have the effect of increasing the revenue-earning capacity of the original asset, or merely of maintaining it. Only expenditure resulting in an increase in earning capacity can properly be capitalised, and this must itself be depreciated, so that it is written off by the same ultimate date as the original asset. This factor renders impracticable the reducing instalment system of depreciation, unless the additional capital outlay is depreciated separately from the original asset and at a higher rate. It would likewise vitiate any system that did not maintain separate records, but the reducing instalment system is peculiarly susceptible as its simplicity of operation so often results in no plant register being maintained.

If the renewal is of the whole asset, the book value of the original asset will (if the rate of depreciation provided has been sufficient) have been reduced to nil or break-up value by the time the expenditure on renewal becomes necessary. This fact determines whether the expenditure on renewal can justifiably be charged to capital. If there remains any book value over and above the break-up value attaching to the asset to be replaced, only such proportion of the cost of replacement as will increase the book value of the asset to the current cost should be capitalised. The balance, which represents accumulated depreciation unprovided for in the past, should be charged to revenue.

It is important to consider whether it is necessary to provide for future expenditure on repairs during the early years of the life of an asset, when, although the current expenditure is comparatively light, it is known that the expenditure at a subsequent date will be considerable. Where large sums are involved, the best method is to estimate the total expenditure on repairs during the life of the asset, and to average it over that period. This may be done by raising a Provision for Maintenance Account, to which a credit is made each year from Profit and Loss Account of an amount equal to the average charge so computed. The actual expenditure, as and when it is incurred, will be debited to this account, the balance of which will be carried forward in the Balance Sheet as a reserve.

It may happen that this account will become temporarily in debit owing to excessive expenditure in any one period. If this excess is likely to be recouped during subsequent periods, it can be carried forward, but care should be taken to see that the average annual charge is sufficient for this purpose. If not recoupable, it must be written off at once, or spread over the remainder of the life of the asset by increasing proportionately the annual charge to revenue.

Dilapidations arising under a lease afford an illustration of expenditure on repairs which accrues at some subsequent period, but for which it is nevertheless advisable to provide during the life of the asset. The most convenient method of doing this is to estimate the charge for dilapidations, and add the amount thereof to the cost of the lease, for the purpose of calculating the amount of depreciation which should be written off each year, thus spreading the cost of the dilapidations over the whole period.

Illustration

A lease was acquired for 20 years, the tenant being liable for all repairs. A premium of £2,000 was paid, and it was estimated that repairs over the 20 years would amount to £1,000. The actual repairs in the first, second and third years were respectively £10, £30 and £25. Write up the Provision for Maintenance Account, bringing down the balance at the beginning of the fourth year.

PROVISION FOR MAINTENANCE ACCOUNT

| 1st year | To Repairs .. | .. | .. | .. | £ | 10 | 1st year | By Profit and Loss Account | £ |
|----------|----------------|----|----|----|-----|----------|---------------------------|----------------------------|-----|
| " | " Balance c/d. | .. | .. | .. | 40 | | " | Annual Charge .. | 50 |
| | | | | | £50 | | | | £50 |
| 2nd year | To Repairs .. | .. | .. | .. | 30 | 2nd year | By Balance b/d. | .. | 40 |
| " | " Balance c/d. | .. | .. | .. | 60 | " | " Profit and Loss Account | .. | 50 |
| | | | | | £90 | | | | £90 |

PROVISION FOR MAINTENANCE ACCOUNT (*continued*)

| | | | | | |
|----------|------------------------|------|----------|-----------------------------------|------|
| 3rd year | To Repairs | £ 25 | 3rd year | By Balance b/d. | £ 60 |
| | " Balance c/d. | 85 | | " Profit and Loss Account | 50 |
| | | £110 | | | £110 |
| | | | 4th year | By Balance b/d. | 85 |

If the repairs estimate proves to be exact there will be no balance at the end of the 20 years, but usually there would be some balance to be transferred to Profit and Loss Account. Depreciation would be provided for as usual.

§ 10. The Operation of Sinking Funds for the Repayment of Loans

A sinking fund for the redemption of a loan is created in a manner similar to the depreciation fund for the replacement of an asset described in § 8 (*d*), except that the annual provision is an appropriation of, and not a charge against profits. An equal amount is debited to the Profit and Loss Account each year, and credited to Sinking Fund Account, and an equivalent sum is invested outside the business in gilt-edged securities, and allowed to accumulate at compound interest, so as to produce the amount required to repay the loan at its due date.

Ultimately, the investments of the fund will be realised and the loan repaid, after which the credit balance remaining on the Sinking Fund Account should be transferred to Reserve Account, since the particular purpose for which the profits were appropriated has ceased to exist, and whereas the profits were formerly represented by specific investments, they are now represented by general assets of the business which have been acquired out of profits. This emphasises the fact that the amount set aside to a sinking fund for the repayment of a liability is an appropriation of profit, whereas the amount set aside to a depreciation fund for the purpose of replacing an asset, is a charge against profits (except, of course, to the extent that it may exceed the original capital outlay on the asset being depreciated). In the case of a sinking fund for the repayment of a loan, the net assets are *increased* by the amount of the fund; a depreciation fund merely *maintains* the net assets at their original book value.

The amounts allocated to a sinking fund are debited to Profit and Loss Account so that moneys may be accumulated and set aside *out of profits* to repay the liability, without having to provide additional capital moneys for that purpose. It would, of course, be possible to accumulate funds outside the business for the repayment of a liability simply by making annual investments of cash without debiting the Profit and Loss Account at all, but if this were done the balance of the Profit and Loss Account would exceed the amount of profits which are available for distribution, because the liquid resources of the business would have been reduced by the amounts invested.

The calculation of the annual amount to be invested is made in the same way as for a depreciation fund, already explained in § 8 (*d*) above.

Illustration (1)

On the 1st January, 19.., a loan to the extent of £500 was raised, repayable at par at the

end of five years, and it was resolved that a sinking fund should be formed to provide for its redemption.

Show the ledger accounts for the five years, assuming that the interest received on the investments representing the sinking fund was at the rate of 5 per cent. on the cost, that Income Tax was ignored, and that the interest was received yearly, and immediately invested.

Note. ·180975 of £1 invested at the end of each year, at 5 per cent. compound interest will produce £1 at the end of five years.

SINKING FUND ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|----|----|------|----|----|----|---|---|---------------------|--------------------|----|----|------|----|----|----|---|---|
| 1st year Dec. 31 | To Balance c/d. | .. | .. | £ | s. | d. | 90 | 9 | 9 | 1st year Dec. 31 | By P. & L. Account | .. | .. | £ | s. | d. | 90 | 9 | 9 |
| 2nd year Dec. 31 | To Balance c/d. | .. | .. | 185 | 10 | 0 | | | | 2nd year Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | .. | .. | 90 | 9 | 9 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | Dec. 31 | " P. & L. Account | .. | .. | 90 | 9 | 9 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | " Cash (Interest) | .. | .. | 4 | 10 | 6 | | | |
| | | | | £185 | 10 | 0 | | | | | | | | £185 | 10 | 0 | | | |
| 3rd year Dec. 31 | To Balance c/d. | .. | .. | 285 | 5 | 3 | | | | 3rd year Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | .. | .. | 185 | 10 | 0 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | Dec. 31 | " P. & L. Account | .. | .. | 90 | 9 | 9 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | " Cash (Interest) | .. | .. | 9 | 5 | 6 | | | |
| | | | | £285 | 5 | 3 | | | | | | | | £285 | 5 | 3 | | | |
| 4th year Dec. 31 | To Balance c/d. | .. | .. | 390 | 0 | 3 | | | | 4th year Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | .. | .. | 285 | 5 | 3 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | Dec. 31 | " P. & L. Account | .. | .. | 90 | 9 | 9 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | " Cash (Interest) | .. | .. | 14 | 5 | 3 | | | |
| | | | | £390 | 0 | 3 | | | | | | | | £390 | 0 | 3 | | | |
| 5th year Dec. 31 | To Transfer to Reserve Account | .. | .. | 500 | 0 | 0 | | | | 5th year Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | .. | .. | 390 | 0 | 3 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | Dec. 31 | " P. & L. Account | .. | .. | 90 | 9 | 9 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | " Cash (Interest) | .. | .. | 19 | 10 | 0 | | | |
| | | | | £500 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | | £500 | 0 | 0 | | | |

SINKING FUND INVESTMENT ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|----|----|----|------|----|----|----|---|---|---------------------|-----------------|----|----|------|----|----|----|---|---|
| 1st year Dec. 31 | To Cash | .. | .. | .. | £ | s. | d. | 90 | 9 | 9 | 1st year Dec. 31 | By Balance c/d. | .. | .. | £ | s. | d. | 90 | 9 | 9 |
| 2nd year Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | .. | .. | .. | 90 | 9 | 9 | | | | 2nd year Dec. 31 | By Balance c/d. | .. | .. | 185 | 10 | 0 | | | |
| Dec. 31 | " Cash | .. | .. | .. | 95 | 0 | 3 | | | | | | | | £185 | 10 | 0 | | | |
| | | | | | £185 | 10 | 0 | | | | | | | | £185 | 10 | 0 | | | |
| 3rd year Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | .. | .. | .. | 185 | 10 | 0 | | | | 3rd year Dec. 31 | By Balance c/d. | .. | .. | 285 | 5 | 3 | | | |
| Dec. 31 | " Cash | .. | .. | .. | 99 | 15 | 3 | | | | | | | | £285 | 5 | 3 | | | |
| | | | | | £285 | 5 | 3 | | | | | | | | £285 | 5 | 3 | | | |
| 4th year Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | .. | .. | .. | 285 | 5 | 3 | | | | 4th year Dec. 31 | By Balance c/d. | .. | .. | 390 | 0 | 3 | | | |
| Dec. 31 | " Cash | .. | .. | .. | 104 | 15 | 0 | | | | | | | | £390 | 0 | 3 | | | |
| | | | | | £390 | 0 | 3 | | | | | | | | £390 | 0 | 3 | | | |
| 5th year Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | .. | .. | .. | 390 | 0 | 3 | | | | 5th year Dec. 31 | By Cash | .. | .. | 390 | 0 | 3 | | | |

**MANUFACTURING ACCOUNTS; RECEIPTS AND PAYMENTS
ACCOUNTS AND INCOME AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNTS;
THE PREPARATION OF FINAL ACCOUNTS FROM
INCOMPLETE RECORDS**

§ 1. Manufacturing Accounts

In a business whose operations include the manufacture, as well as the sale of commodities, it is usual for the Trading Account to be divided into two parts, viz., (1) the Manufacturing (or Production) Account, which contains details of the cost of the goods produced, and (2) the Trading Account, which shows the gross profit realised on the goods sold.

The Manufacturing Account is designed to show not only the total cost of the goods manufactured, but the cost of each of the constituent elements which go to build up the total cost. The account is accordingly debited with the cost of the materials consumed, productive wages, and all other expenses attributable to the manufacturing operations, classified under appropriate headings.

It is desirable to present the items in such a way that reconciliation with the Cost Accounts is facilitated. Accordingly, the account should show the *Prime Cost*, i.e., the total cost of the materials, productive wages and other expenses, which are capable of direct identification with production, and the *Works or Factory Cost*, which comprises the prime cost plus the various works indirect expenses, i.e., expenses incurred in connection with production generally, but which cannot be associated directly with particular units of production. All expenses which contribute directly or indirectly to the cost of the goods, up to the point at which they are brought into a saleable condition, but excluding expenses of distributing or selling the goods, or of general administration, are debited to this account. After eliminating the value of any work in progress or unfinished goods on hand at the end of the period, the balance of the account represents the cost of the finished goods actually produced during the period, and is carried down to the debit of the Trading Account. The latter account is also debited with the opening stock of finished goods, and credited with the sales and with the closing stock of finished goods (the latter being preferably deducted from the sum of the opening stock and finished goods transferred from Manufacturing Account) in order to disclose the cost of, and the gross profit on the goods sold, the amount of which is transferred to the credit of Profit and Loss Account.

In some cases, instead of transferring finished goods produced from Manufacturing Account to Trading Account at cost price, they are transferred at a price approximating to the current market price. Where this is done, there will be a balance on the Manufacturing Account representing the profit or loss arising from manufacturing

the goods instead of purchasing them ready made. This profit or loss must be transferred to Profit and Loss Appropriation Account.

The items in the Profit and Loss Account should be marshalled in logical sequence and grouped under appropriate subheadings to show the total amount of the expenditure under each classification. Suitable groupings in a normal case are Administration, Selling, Distribution, Finance and (possibly) Miscellaneous, but any of these may be subdivided and additional classifications employed to meet the requirements of the particular business. The grouping of items in this way and the disclosure of group totals facilitates comparisons and may be of the greatest assistance to management.

The items in the Balance Sheet should also be grouped to show clearly, on the liabilities side, the total amounts of:

- (i) the proprietor's capital;
- (ii) reserves and other undistributed profits (these being added to the capital to disclose in one sum the amount of the proprietor's interest in the assets);
- (iii) loans and other long-term liabilities; and
- (iv) current liabilities;

and on the assets side the total amounts of:

- (i) the fixed assets; and
- (ii) the current assets.

Other classifications may be used, having regard to the nature of the business.

Illustration

Prepare Manufacturing, Trading and Profit and Loss Account for the year ended 31st December, and Balance Sheet as at that date, of J. Smith, Manufacturer, from the following Trial Balance and information:

| TRIAL BALANCE, 31ST DECEMBER | | | | | | £ |
|----------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|--------|
| Advertising | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 830 |
| Bad Debts | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 605 |
| " " Provision | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 1,000 |
| Bank Charges | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 120 |
| J. Smith, Capital Account, 1st January | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 35,000 |
| J. Smith, Current Account, 1st January | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 1,623 |
| J. Smith, Drawings | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 8,000 |
| Discount | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 412 |
| Factory Power | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 3,614 |
| Furniture | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 900 |
| General Expenses - Factory | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 205 |
| Office | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 346 |
| Insurance | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 902 |
| Light and Heat | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 482 |
| Plant and Machinery, 1st January | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 15,000 |
| " " " bought 30th June | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 2,000 |

Carried forward: £33,004 £38,035

TRIAL BALANCE, 31ST DECEMBER (*continued*)

| | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | | | | | | Brought forward: | £33,004 | £38,035 |
| Purchases | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 33,668 | |
| Packing and Transport | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 1,085 | |
| Rent and Rates | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 1,486 | |
| Repairs to Plant | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 785 | |
| Salaries – Office | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 3,690 | |
| Sales | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | | 79,174 |
| Stocks, etc., 1st January – | | | | | | | | |
| Raw Materials | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 5,230 | |
| Finished Goods | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 7,380 | |
| Work in Progress (at prime cost) | | | | .. | .. | | 1,670 | |
| Wages – Factory | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 20,700 | |
| Trading Debtors and Creditors | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 10,560 | 6,150 |
| Cash at Bank | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 3,926 | |
| Cash in Hand | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 175 | |
| | | | | | | | <u>£123,359</u> | <u>£123,359</u> |

Stocks, etc., at 31st December, were:

| | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|-------|
| | | | | | | £ |
| Raw Materials | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 3,560 |
| Work in Progress | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 1,740 |
| Work in Progress (at prime cost) | | | .. | .. | .. | 1,740 |
| Finished Goods | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 9,650 |
| Packing Materials | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 125 |

The following liabilities are to be provided for:

| | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
| Factory Power | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 562 |
| Rent and Rates | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 386 |
| Light and Heat | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 160 |
| General Expenses – Factory | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 25 |
| Office | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 40 |

Insurance paid in advance is £170.

Five-sixths of Rent and Rates, Light and Heat, and Insurance are to be allocated to the Factory and one-sixth to the Office

Provide Depreciation at 10% per annum on Plant and Machinery and 5% per annum on Furniture.

Increase the Bad Debts Provision by £500.

The following Journal entries indicate how the adjustments required to be made in the above illustration may be incorporated in the accounts before preparing the final accounts.

JOURNAL

| | | | | | | | | | £ | £ |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|---------|---------|
| Dec. 31 | Stock Accounts | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | Dr. | 15,075 | |
| | To Manufacturing Account: | | | | | | | | | |
| | Raw Materials | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | | 3,560 |
| | Work in Progress | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | | 1,740 |
| | Trading Account: | | | | | | | | | |
| | Finished Goods | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | | 9,650 |
| | Profit and Loss Account: | | | | | | | | | |
| | Packing Materials | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | | 125 |
| | Stocks and Work in Progress at 31st December. | | | | | | | | £15,075 | £15,075 |
| | Prepayments | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | Dr. | 170 | |
| | To Insurance | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | | 170 |
| | Insurance paid in advance at 31st December. | | | | | | | | | |
| | Manufacturing Account | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | Dr. | 1,600 | |
| | To Provision for Depreciation: | | | | | | | | | 1,600 |
| | Plant and Machinery | | | | | | | | | |
| | 10% on £15,000 for 1 year | | | | | | | | | £1,500 |
| | 10% on £2,000 for 1/4 year | | | | | | | | | 100 |
| | Profit and Loss Account | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | Dr. | 45 | |
| | To Provision for Depreciation: | | | | | | | | | |
| | Furniture, 5% on £900 | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | | 45 |
| | Provision for depreciation for year. | | | | | | | | | |
| | Profit and Loss Account | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | Dr. | 500 | |
| | To Bad Debts Provision | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | | 500 |
| | Increase in provision for doubtful debts. | | | | | | | | | |

MANUFACTURING, TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31st DECEMBER, 19..

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------|--------|---------|-------------------------------------|---------|
| MATERIALS CONSUMED: | £ | £ | Transfer to Trading Account: | £ |
| Stock, 1st January | 5,230 | | Cost of Goods produced | 65,464 |
| Purchases | 33,668 | | | |
| | 38,898 | | | |
| Less Stock, 31st December | 3,560 | 35,338 | | |
| | | | | |
| PRODUCTIVE WAGES | | 20,700 | | |
| | | 56,038 | | |
| Add Work in Progress, 1st January | | 1,670 | | |
| | | 57,708 | | |
| Deduct: Work in Progress, 31st December | | 1,740 | | |
| PRIME COST OF GOODS PRODUCED | | 55,968 | | |
| WORKS INDIRECT EXPENSES: | | | | |
| Factory Power | 4,176 | | | |
| Rent and Rates | 1,560 | | | |
| Insurance | 610 | | | |
| Light and Heat | 535 | | | |
| General Expenses | 230 | | | |
| Plant Repairs | 785 | | | |
| Depreciation | 1,600 | 9,496 | | |
| | | | | |
| WORKS COST OF GOODS PRODUCED | | £65,464 | | £65,464 |
| | | | | |
| COST OF FINISHED GOODS SOLD: | | | SALES OF FINISHED GOODS | 79,174 |
| Stock 1st January | 7,380 | | | |
| Cost of Finished Goods produced | 65,464 | | | |
| | 72,844 | | | |
| Less: Stock, 31st December | 9,650 | 63,194 | | |
| | | | | |
| GROSS PROFIT, ON SALES: | | | | |
| Transferred to Profit and Loss Account | | 15,980 | | |
| | | £79,174 | | £79,174 |

MANUFACTURING, TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT (*continued*)

FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19..

| | £ | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------------------|-------|---------|-----------------------------|---------|
| ADMINISTRATION: | | | | |
| Salaries | 3,690 | | GROSS PROFIT FOR YEAR, b/d. | 15,980 |
| Rent and Rates | 312 | | | |
| Light and Heat | 107 | | Discounts received .. | 412 |
| Insurance | 122 | | | |
| General Expenses | 386 | | | |
| Depreciation of Furniture .. | 45 | | | |
| | | 4,662 | | |
| SELLING AND DISTRIBUTION: | | | | |
| Advertising | 830 | | | |
| Packing and Transport | 960 | | | |
| | | 1,790 | | |
| FINANCE: | | | | |
| Bank Charges | 120 | | | |
| Bad Debts | 605 | | | |
| Provision for Doubtful Debts .. | 500 | | | |
| | | 1,225 | | |
| NET PROFIT FOR YEAR | | 7,677 | | |
| Transferred to Current Account | | 8,715 | | |
| | | 116,392 | | £16,392 |

Note:

In the above illustration, as the Work-in-Progress has been valued at prime cost, the adjustment for the values of opening and closing work-in-progress has been made before arriving at the prime cost of the goods produced. Where the valuation of work-in-progress includes an amount in respect of works indirect expenses, the adjustment for this part of the valuation should be made in the charge for such expenses in the Manufacturing Account.

J. SMITH

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------|---------|
| J. SMITH: | | FIXED ASSETS: | |
| CAPITAL ACCOUNT: | 35,000 | Plant and Machinery at 1st January .. | £15,000 |
| | | Additions at cost | 2,000 |
| CURRENT ACCOUNT: | | | |
| Balance, 1st Jan. | £1,623 | Less Provision for Depreciation | 17,000 |
| Net Profit for year | 8,715 | | 1,600 |
| | 10,338 | Furniture, at 1st January | £900 |
| Less Drawings | 8,000 | Less Provision for Depreciation | 45 |
| | 2,338 | | 855 |
| | | | 16,255 |
| | 37,338 | CURRENT ASSETS: | |
| CURRENT LIABILITIES: | | Stocks: | |
| Trade Creditors | £6,150 | Raw Materials | £3,560 |
| Expenses | 1,173 | Work in Progress | 1,740 |
| | 7,323 | Finished Goods | 9,650 |
| | | Packing Materials | 125 |
| | | | 15,075 |
| | | Book Debts | £10,560 |
| | | Less Provision for Doubtful Debts | 1,500 |
| | | | 9,060 |
| | | Prepayments | 170 |
| | | Balance at Bank | 3,926 |
| | | Cash in Hand | 175 |
| | | | 28,406 |
| | £44,661 | | £44,661 |

The following is an alternative form of presentation of the Manufacturing, Trading and Profit and Loss Account, which is sometimes preferred.

MANUFACTURING, TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19..

| | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|
| SALES | | 79,174 |
| <i>Deduct:</i> Cost of Sales: | | |
| Cost of Materials consumed | 35,338 | |
| Productive Wages | 20,700 | |
| | 56,038 | |
| <i>Add:</i> Work in Progress, 1st January | 1,670 | |
| | 57,708 | |
| <i>Deduct:</i> Work in Progress, 31st December | 1,740 | |
| PRIME COST OF GOODS PRODUCED | 55,968 | |
| <i>Add:</i> WORKS INDIRECT EXPENSES: | £ | |
| Factory Power | 4,176 | |
| " Rent and Rates | 1,560 | |
| " Insurance | 610 | |
| " Light and Heat | 535 | |
| General Expenses | 230 | |
| Plant Repairs | 785 | |
| Plant Depreciation | 1,600 | |
| | 9,496 | |
| WORKS COST OF GOODS PRODUCED | 65,464 | |
| <i>Add:</i> Stock of Finished Goods, 1st January | 7,380 | |
| | 72,844 | |
| <i>Deduct:</i> Stock of Finished Goods, 31st December | 9,650 | |
| | | 63,194 |
| GROSS PROFIT ON SALES | | 15,980 |
| <i>Add:</i> Discounts received | | 412 |
| | | 16,392 |
| <i>Deduct:</i> | | |
| ADMINISTRATION: | £ | |
| Salaries | 3,690 | |
| Rent and Rates | 312 | |
| Light and Heat | 107 | |
| Insurance | 122 | |
| General Expenses | 386 | |
| Depreciation of Furniture | 45 | |
| | 4,662 | |
| SELLING AND DISTRIBUTION: | | |
| Advertising | 830 | |
| Packing and Transport | 960 | |
| | 1,790 | |
| FINANCE: | | |
| Bank Charges | 120 | |
| Bad Debts | 605 | |
| Provision for Doubtful Debts | 500 | |
| | 1,225 | |
| | | 7,677 |
| NET PROFIT FOR YEAR | | £8,715 |

In cases where the goods produced are charged out from the factory to the selling department at a price in excess of manufacturing cost, it may be necessary, at the end of each accounting period, in order to arrive at the true profit, to provide in the accounts for the unrealised profit included in the valuation of the stock of finished goods carried forward. For example, if in the above illustration goods produced were charged from factory to selling department at a price which includes a profit of, say, 10 per cent on the invoice price, it would be necessary, on 31st December, to create a provision for the unrealised profit of 10 per cent on £9,650 = £965, by debiting Profit and Loss Account and crediting Provision for Unrealised Profit Account, the balance on the latter account being deducted from the stock figure for balance sheet purposes.

If a provision for unrealised profit had been brought forward from the previous period, it would only be necessary, at the end of the current period, to make such a transfer from Profit and Loss Account as would be required to adjust the existing provision by reference to the amount of the closing stock; for example, if in the above illustration a provision of 10 per cent on £7,380 = £738 had been created at the end of the previous period, it would now only be necessary to increase the provision to £965 by debiting Profit and Loss Account and crediting the provision account with £227.

Accounting Ratios

As has already been shown, the utility of Revenue Accounts and Balance Sheets is greatly enhanced by the collection of items of a like nature into appropriate groups, and the presentation of the accounts in a form in which these groups are clearly defined and suitably marshalled. Such accounts will enable various ratios to be calculated from which inferences may be drawn having an important bearing on the efficiency of management, not only in regard to the internal economy of the concern itself, but also by comparison with the achievements of other undertakings within the same industry.

The following are some of the more important Accounting Ratios.

Ratio to Sales of Cost of Sales and of Gross Profit

A comparison of these ratios from year to year may be a useful guide in determining price policy. It may also throw light on possible irregularities, *e.g.* a material overvaluation of closing stock may reduce the apparent cost of sales and increase the ratio of gross profit.

Ratio of Management and Administration Expenses to Sales

This shows the proportion of sales revenue absorbed by these overheads and by comparison of the ratios from year to year may be of assistance in formulating price and administration policy.

Ratio of Net Profit to Sales

This shows the final proportion of revenue accruing to the proprietors.

Ratio of Cost of Sales to Average Stock (Stock turnover)

This shows how many times the average stock is turned over during the accounting period, information which may be of great value in assessing buying efficiency. If, for example, the cost of sales is found to be approximately four times the cost of the stock normally carried, whereas experience of the particular trade shows that stock should be turned over more often than four times in a year, this would suggest that an unnecessarily large amount of capital is being locked up in stock.

Ratio of Sales to Debtors

This may throw light on the efficiency or otherwise of the credit control and debt collecting organisation of the concern, and might indicate whether an undue proportion of the book debts are overdue or possibly doubtful.

Ratio of Current Assets to Current Liabilities

This ratio may indicate whether the concern is normally able to meet its current

liabilities as they fall due out of current assets, and over a period of years may show whether the business is growing or declining in financial strength.

Ratio of Current Assets to Fixed Assets

This may be useful in comparing the pattern of the distribution of the concern's resources with other businesses in the same industry, and may give some indication as to whether the fixed assets are being utilized to their fullest capacity.

Ratio of Net worth (viz. Capital plus retained profits) to Fixed Assets

This ratio has come to be regarded as a test of the soundness of the capital structure of a concern, as it is associated with the view that the proprietors should provide the fixed capital and also some part of the working capital if financial security is to be maintained.

Ratio of Net Worth to Total Liabilities

This gives an indication of the interest in the concern of the proprietors, as compared with those of the creditors. The higher the net worth in relation to total liabilities the stronger the financial position will be.

Ratio of Net Income to Capital employed

This ratio gives an indication of the efficiency with which the business is being managed, and enables effective comparisons to be made between the earning power of the business and that of other businesses in the same industry, and between different periods.

§ 2. Receipts and Payments Account and Income and Expenditure Account

A RECEIPTS AND PAYMENTS ACCOUNT is a summary of cash transactions for a given period. It commences with the opening balance of cash in hand or at the bank, and is debited with all sums actually received, and credited with all cash paid away during the period to which the account relates, whether or not they have accrued during that period, and whether they are of a capital or revenue nature. The final balance is the balance of cash in hand, or the credit or debit balance at the bank, as the case may be, at the end of the period.

AN INCOME AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNT is, in effect, the Profit and Loss Account of a non-trading concern. It contains only items of a revenue nature, being debited with all expenditure, and credited with all income which relates to a particular period, whether or not it has actually been paid or received within that period. The final balance of an Income and Expenditure Account represents the excess of income over expenditure, or the excess of expenditure over income, as the case may be, for the period in question. This balance is analogous to the net profit or loss of a trading concern.

Receipts and Payments Accounts and Income and Expenditure Accounts are used commonly by such non-trading concerns as social clubs, societies, etc., for the purpose of presenting their financial position to their members. The Profit and Loss Account of a non-trading business, such as that of a professional firm, or of a property or investment company, is also often called an Income and Expenditure Account.

It cannot be too strongly emphasised that a Receipts and Payments Account is not

a proper substitute for an Income and Expenditure Account, since it deals only with cash transactions, and is not confined to those actually relating to the period covered by the account, or to transactions of a revenue nature, which alone must be considered in ascertaining the surplus or deficit of income for the period. A Receipts and Payments Account takes no account of income accrued but outstanding at the end of the period, or of expenditure or liabilities due but unpaid. The final balance represents the balance of cash in hand or at the bank, or the amount of the bank overdraft, and nothing more. It will be appreciated that where, for example, fixed assets have been sold and the proceeds received, or revenue has been collected, but a considerable amount of expenses or other liabilities remains unpaid, there may be a substantial cash balance when, in fact, income for the period has been overspent.

In order to prepare an Income and Expenditure Account from a Receipts and Payments Account, it is merely necessary to post all items of a revenue nature appearing in the Receipts and Payments Account to the *opposite* sides of the Income and Expenditure Account, after making such adjustments as may be necessary to give effect to accruals and prepayments at the beginning and end of the period respectively. Thus, such items as subscriptions, entrance fees, income from investments, etc., which have been received in cash and *debited* to the Receipts and Payments Account, must be *credited* to the Income and Expenditure Account, whilst expenditure such as rent, wages, repairs, etc., appearing on the *credit* side of the Receipts and Payments Account must be *debited* to the Income and Expenditure Account. Items of a capital nature appearing in the Receipts and Payments Account will be posted to the debit or credit, as the case may be, of the relevant asset or liability accounts, and will not affect the Income and Expenditure Account.

The Balance Sheet of a non-trading concern is prepared in the usual way, and contains particulars of all the assets and liabilities at the date as at which it is made up. The excess of the assets over the liabilities is analogous to the capital of a trader, but is usually called the Accumulated Fund, or General Fund, since it is normally made up of the excess of income over expenditure which has been accumulated within the concern. Separate accounts should be kept for funds raised for special purposes.

A variation of an Income and Expenditure Account is a RECEIPTS AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNT. This is a revenue account similar in form to an Income and Expenditure Account, in which, however, credit is taken only for income actually received. Accrued income which has not been received in cash is ignored, although all expenditure for the period, whether paid or outstanding, is debited. Such an account is frequently prepared by professional businesses, such as those of solicitors, where it is desired to take no credit for income until it is actually realised, but at the same time to provide for all expenditure, whether paid or not. The balance of the account represents the most prudent estimate of the profit for the period.

Illustration

The Westminster Political Association prepared accounts for the year to December 31st.

- (1) They started the year with £470 in the bank and finished up with an overdraft of £615, which was secured by the deposit of investments.

- (2) They received subscriptions amounting to £835, of which £25 represented arrears, £760 current subscriptions and £50 paid in advance.
- (3) They received £520 donations to the General Fund and £850 to the Election Fund, which had £15 in hand at Jan. 1st, and out of which £720 was paid for election expenses. There was no separate bank account.
- (4) They held Government securities at Jan. 1st, which cost £2,000. Half were sold for £1,250 and the balance was valued at £1,200 at Dec. 31st. These investments produced interest of £35 (gross) during the year.
- (5) Office premises were purchased during the year for £3,000 and a mortgage was arranged through a building society for £1,500. Legal expenses amounted to £105 and one instalment of £80 was paid to the society of which £45 was interest. Alterations and decorations of the premises cost £570, of which £150 was still owing.
- (6) Office furniture was valued at £150 at Jan. 1st. £170 was paid for additions during the year and £70 was still owing. Depreciation is estimated at 10 per cent. per annum.
- (7) The only other receipt was £75 for sale of literature, which cost £120. £60 worth was given away.
- (8) Other payments were:
- Agent's salary and expenses .. £700 (£50 drawn in advance)
 - Office salaries £350
 - Rent and rates £170 (£50 owing at Jan. 1st)
 - Meetings and propaganda .. £165 (£30 in respect of a meeting to be held in the new year.)

Stationery, postage and sundries £150

Prepare a Receipts and Payments Account and an Income and Expenditure Account for the year ended Dec. 31st, and a Balance Sheet as at that date.

THE WESTMINSTER POLITICAL ASSOCIATION
RECEIPTS AND PAYMENTS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | | £ |
|-------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/f. | 470 | Dec. 31 By Election Expenses | 720 |
| Dec. 31 " Subscriptions | 835 | " Cost of Premises | £3,000 |
| " Donations | 520 | " Legal Expenses | 105 |
| " Election Fund | 850 | | £3,105 |
| " Sale of Securities | 1,250 | Less Mortgage | 1,500 |
| " Interest Received | 35 | | 1,605 |
| " Sale of Literature | 75 | " Building Society Payments | 80 |
| " Balance c/f. | 615 | " Alterations and Decorations | 420 |
| | | " Office Furniture | 170 |
| | | " Agent's Salary | 700 |
| | | " Office Salaries | 350 |
| | | " Rent and Rates | 170 |
| | | " Meetings, etc. | 165 |
| | | " Stationery and Postage | 150 |
| | | " Cost of Literature | 120 |
| | <u>£4,650</u> | | <u>£4,650</u> |

INCOME AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Agent's Salary and Expenses | 650 | By Subscriptions Receivable | 760 |
| " Office Salaries | 350 | " Donations | 520 |
| " Rent and Rates | 120 | " Interest on Investments (gross) | 35 |
| " Stationery, Postage and Sundries | 150 | " Balance, being Excess of Expenditure over Income for the year | 219 |
| " Meetings and Propaganda | 135 | | |
| " Cost of Literature distributed | £60 | | |
| Less Profit on Sales | 15 | | |
| | 45 | | |
| " Interest on Mortgage | 45 | | |
| " Depreciation of Office Furniture | 39 | | |
| | <u>£1,534</u> | | <u>£1,534</u> |

BALANCE SHEET AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------|--------|
| General Fund: | | | Office Premises at cost (including legal expenses) | | |
| Balance at Jan. 1st | 2,580 | | Less Mortgage | 3,675 | |
| Add: Profit on Sale of Investment .. | 250 | | | 1,465 | 2,210 |
| | 2,830 | | Office Furniture: | | |
| Less Excess of Expenditure over Income for year | 219 | | Balance at Jan. 1st | 150 | |
| | | 2,611 | Additions at cost | 240 | |
| Election Fund: | | | | 390 | |
| Balance at Jan. 1st | 15 | | Less Depreciation written off | 39 | 351 |
| Donations | 850 | | | | 2,561 |
| | 865 | | Investments at cost | | 1,000 |
| Less Election Expenses | 720 | | (Market Value, £1,200) | | |
| | | 145 | Payments in Advance | | 80 |
| Subscriptions in Advance | | 50 | | | |
| Bank Overdraft | | 615 | | | |
| Sundry Creditors | | 220 | | | |
| | | £3,641 | | | £3,641 |

Note. The balance on the General Fund at January 1st is calculated as follows:

| | |
|------------------------------------------|--------|
| Bank (excluding Election Fund) | £455 |
| Subscriptions in arrears | 25 |
| Investments | 2,000 |
| Office Furniture | 150 |
| | 2,630 |
| Less Rent accrued at January 1st | 50 |
| | £2,580 |

§ 3. The Preparation of Accounts from Incomplete Records

For the purpose of this section the expression 'incomplete records' is intended to signify any accounting records which fall short of complete double entry. There are varying degrees of incompleteness, and the procedure to be adopted in order to prepare final accounts must depend upon the nature of the records and data available. In extreme cases it may be found that there are no records whatever of the day to day transactions, owing either to neglect on the part of the trader to keep them, or to the destruction of the books and vouchers by a fire on the trader's premises, or through some other cause. In such circumstances, accounts would have to be built up largely from estimates obtained by exhaustive enquiry and the careful sifting of whatever evidence can be found. In other instances books may have been kept by 'single entry', or data may be available by means of which double entry can be effected in total and a Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet extracted when this has been done.

Strict 'SINGLE ENTRY' takes account only of the personal aspect of transactions, and leaves the impersonal aspect entirely unrecorded. It is rarely, if ever, met with in practice, as in almost every case it will be found that some cash records, even though incomplete, have been kept. In any event, there will usually be a bank account, and the pass book or statement supplied by the bank will provide details of the operation of that account.

Assuming such to be the case, the following procedure should be followed in order to prepare a Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet.

- (1) A Statement of Affairs at the commencement of the period under review should first be drawn up. In order to prepare this statement, particulars must be obtained of the assets and liabilities of the business at that date. The balance at the bank can be ascertained from the bank statement. The values of any fixed assets can be obtained from such details as the trader is able to supply of their cost and the dates upon which they were acquired, provision for depreciation from the date of acquisition to the commencement of the current period being deducted. The trader must provide an estimate of the value of his stock in trade, and particulars of any book debts and liabilities. Accounts should be opened, to the debit of which the amounts of the estimated values of the assets should be posted. The total of the book debts should be debited to a Total Debtors Account, and the total of the liabilities credited to a Total Creditors Account. The excess of the aggregate of the assets over the liabilities may be taken to represent the amount of the trader's capital at the commencement of the period, and should be credited to his Capital Account.
- (2) A careful analysis should now be made of the bank pass book or statement, and a Cash Summary (or Receipts and Payments Account) prepared. For this purpose, analysis sheets should be used, in which columns should be provided for each of the principal headings of receipts and payments. For example, the lodgments into the bank may be analysed under the headings of cash takings, income from investments, the sale of assets, new capital paid in and private income of the trader. Payments from bank should be analysed as between payments for goods purchased, rent, rates, insurances and other business expenses, cheques cashed for wages, petty cash and personal expenditure, and cheques drawn for the trader's private purposes. It must be seen that the cross-casts of the analysis columns agree with the total columns.
- (3) Enquiry should be made as to the amounts of any cash takings which have not been paid into the bank, but have been used by the trader for the payment of business expenses, goods purchased for cash and personal expenses. An estimate should also be obtained of the value of any stock in trade which may have been withdrawn by the trader for his own personal use or for that of his family.
- (4) On completion of the above analysis, postings will be made as follows:
- (i) From the debit side of the Cash Summary:
 - (a) Cash takings to the credit of Total Debtors Account.
 - (b) Income from investments (if any) to the credit of Income from Investments Account.
 - (c) Proceeds of sale of assets (if any) to the credit of the appropriate asset accounts.
 - (d) Other items to the credit of the relevant accounts.

If a profit or loss on the sale of assets is disclosed, this should be transferred either to Profit and Loss Account or to the proprietor's Capital Account.

(ii) From the credit of the Cash Summary—

- (a) Payments for goods purchased to the debit of Total Creditors Account.
- (b) Payments of expenses to the debit of the relevant nominal accounts.
- (c) Cheques drawn for petty cash to the debit of Petty Cash Account.
- (d) The proprietor's personal drawings to the debit of his Current Account.
- (e) The purchase of assets (if any) to the debit of the respective asset accounts.

The amount of any cash takings used for business or private purposes should be journalised, the appropriate nominal accounts or the proprietor's Current Account (as the case may be) being debited and Total Debtors Account credited. The usual adjustments for outstandings and payments in advance may now be made. A schedule should be compiled from such memoranda as the trader has kept, of the book debts outstanding, the total of which should be credited and carried down in the Total Debtors Account. The balance of this account will now represent the total sales for the period and should be transferred to the credit of Trading Account.

Similarly, a schedule should be made of liabilities outstanding to trade and other creditors, the amounts being checked with the creditors' statements, and the total thereof debited and carried down in the Total Creditors Account. The balance of this account will now represent the total purchases for the period, and should be transferred to the debit of Trading Account.

The whole of the transactions will now be recorded in total in double entry form and it will be possible to extract a Trading and Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet in the usual way.

The percentage of gross profit revealed by the Trading Account may afford some indication as to the accuracy or otherwise of the data and estimates used in compiling the accounts. If it is found that this percentage is substantially lower than the percentage of gross profit normally earned in the particular trade, doubt would be thrown on the accuracy of the opening or closing stocks, purchases or sales, and further enquiry would be necessary. In particular, information should be elicited as to the style in which the trader lives. It will often be found that the amount of cash takings alleged to be withdrawn for private use is wholly incompatible with the size and character of the trader's domestic establishment and mode of life, and a re-estimation of the amount of the personal drawings might be necessary.

Illustration (1)

A is the proprietor of a grocery and general stores. He has not previously engaged an accountant. He informs you that this year the Inspector of Taxes refuses to accept the account A has supplied of his trading results for the year ended 31st March, 1959. That account is as follows:

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------|----------|---------|---------|
| Payments for goods | .. 9,495 | Takings | 10,930 |
| Payments for expenses | .. 1,130 | | |
| Profits | .. 305 | | |
| | <hr/> | | |
| | £10,930 | | £10,930 |
| | <hr/> | | |

He instructs you to examine his records and prepare accounts.

From your examination of the records and from interviews with your client, you ascertain the following information:

(1) The takings are kept in a drawer under the counter; at the end of each day the cash is counted and recorded on a scrap of paper; at irregular intervals Mrs. A transcribes the figures into a notebook; a batch of the slips of paper was inadvertently destroyed before the figures had been written into the notebook, but Mr. and Mrs. A carefully estimated their takings for that period, and the estimated figure is included in the total of £10,930.

(2) The following balances can be accepted:

| | | | | | | | 31st March | |
|----------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|------------|-------|
| | | | | | | | 1958 | 1959 |
| | | | | | | | £ | £ |
| Cash in hand | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 45 | 87 |
| Balance at Bank | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 156 | 219 |
| Good debts | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 458 | 491 |
| Creditors for purchases of stock | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 279 | 243 |
| Stock in trade at cost | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 1,950 | 1,900 |

(3) Debts totalling £356 were abandoned during the year as bad; the takings include £25 recovered in respect of an old debt abandoned in a previous year.

(4) A rents the shop and living accommodation on a weekly tenancy for £3 per week including rates; the rent is included in expenses £1,130. The living accommodation may be regarded as one-third of the whole.

(5) The expenses total also includes:

(i) £35 running expenses of A's private car;

(ii) £60 for exterior decoration of the whole premises, the landlord having refused to have this done;

(iii) £160 for alterations to the premises to enlarge the storage accommodation;

(6) A takes £10 per week from the business and hands it over to his wife, who pays all the household and personal expenses except those referred to below.

(7) A pays for his own cigarettes and beer with cash taken from the drawer; this is estimated at £1 10s. per week.

(8) A competed in a football pool for 30 weeks of the year, staking £1 each week, buying a postal order with cash taken from the drawer; his winnings totalled £59.

(9) During the year A bought a secondhand car (not used for business) from a friend; the price agreed was £350, but as the friend owed A £67 for goods supplied from the business the matter was settled by a cheque for the difference.

(10) An assurance policy on A's life matured and realized £641.

(11) A cashed a cheque for £100 for a friend; the cheque was dishonoured and the friend is repaying the £100 by instalments. He had paid £40 by 31st March, 1959.

(12) Other private payments by cheque totalled £96 plus a further sum of £110 for income tax.

(13) You are to provide forty guineas for accountancy fees.

You are required to prepare:

(a) A Balance Sheet of the business as at 31st March, 1958;

TOTAL DEBTORS

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|----|----|----|----------------|-----------------|----|----|----------------|
| | | | | £ | | | | £ |
| Debtors 1/4/58 | .. | .. | .. | 458 | Cash Takings | .. | .. | 11,182 |
| Balance = Sales | .. | .. | .. | 11,638 | Friend re Car | .. | .. | 67 |
| | | | | | Bad Debts w/o | .. | .. | 356 |
| | | | | | Debtors 31/3/59 | .. | .. | 491 |
| | | | | <u>£12,096</u> | | | | <u>£12,096</u> |

TOTAL CREDITORS

| | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|----|----|----|---------------|----------------------|----|----|---------------|
| | | | | £ | | | | £ |
| Cash | .. | .. | .. | 9,495 | Creditors 1/4/58 | .. | .. | 279 |
| Creditors 31/3/59 | .. | .. | .. | 243 | Balances = Purchases | .. | .. | 9,439 |
| | | | | <u>£9,738</u> | | | | <u>£9,738</u> |

EXPENSES

| | | | | | | | | |
|------|----|----|----|---------------|---------------------------|----|----|---------------|
| | | | | £ | | | | £ |
| Cash | .. | .. | .. | 1,130 | Rent | .. | .. | 156 |
| | | | | | Car Expenses | .. | .. | 35 |
| | | | | | Repairs to premises | .. | .. | 60 |
| | | | | | Alterations | .. | .. | 160 |
| | | | | | Balance = Sundry Expenses | .. | .. | 719 |
| | | | | <u>£1,130</u> | | | | <u>£1,130</u> |

DRAWINGS

| | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------------|----|----|----|---------------|------------------------|----|----|---------------|
| | | | | £ | | | | £ |
| Cash | .. | .. | .. | 520 | Football Pool Winnings | .. | .. | 59 |
| Cheques | .. | .. | .. | 96 | Life Policy Money | .. | .. | 641 |
| Rent (one-third of £3 per week) | .. | .. | .. | 52 | Repayments by Friend | .. | .. | 40 |
| Private Car Expenses | .. | .. | .. | 35 | Balance = Net Drawings | .. | .. | 651 |
| Decorations (House) (one-third of £60) | .. | .. | .. | 20 | | | | |
| Sale of Car | .. | .. | .. | 350 | | | | |
| Cash paid to Friend | .. | .. | .. | 100 | | | | |
| Cigarettes, etc. | .. | .. | .. | 78 | | | | |
| Football Pools | .. | .. | .. | 30 | | | | |
| Income Tax | .. | .. | .. | 110 | | | | |
| | | | | <u>£1,391</u> | | | | <u>£1,391</u> |

Where the available records are so deficient that it is impossible to compile a reasonably complete cash summary, the only method of estimating the profit or loss for the period is to prepare Statements of Affairs showing the 'net worth' of the business at the beginning and at the end of the period respectively.

A Statement of Affairs for this purpose is a document in the form of a Balance Sheet, showing on one side the estimated amounts of the various assets and on the other the liabilities, the difference between the two sides representing the proprietor's 'net worth', or capital at the date of the statement.

If a Statement of Affairs has been drawn up at the end of the preceding period, the opening capital for the current period would be shown thereby. It would then be necessary to prepare a similar statement at the end of the current period, and to find the difference between the opening and closing figures of capital, the amount of which, after adding back any sums withdrawn, and deducting any new capital introduced, would represent the profit or loss for the period.

A personal account must be opened for the consignee. Care must be taken to post to this account only transactions which create or discharge liabilities between the consignor and consignee, *e.g.*, the payment of cash or the charges for expenses and commission. No entry must be made in this account when goods are sent to the consignee, since he does not become a debtor in respect of such goods.

The procedure should be as follows:

- (1) Debit Consignment Account with the *cost* of the goods, and credit a 'Goods sent on Consignment Account'. (Even though the goods are invoiced *pro forma* to the consignee at an inflated price, only their *cost* price should be debited to Consignment Account, since the function of this account is to show the consignor's profit or loss on the consignment.)
- (2) Debit Consignment Account with expenses incurred by the consignor, such as insurance, freight, etc., crediting cash or the relevant personal accounts.
- (3) On receipt of the Account Sales from the consignee, debit the Consignee's Account and credit the Consignment Account with the gross proceeds.
- (4) Debit the Consignment Account with expenses, brokerage and commission deducted by the consignee, crediting the Consignee's Account.
- (5) When the whole of the goods have been sold, the balance of the Consignment Account will represent the profit or loss on the consignment, and be transferred to Profit and Loss Account.
- (6) The balance of the Consignee's Account will represent the amount due by or to him. If he remits by bill, Bills Receivable Account will be debited and the Consignee's Account credited, so closing that account. If a draft or cheque is forwarded, cash will be debited.
- (7) Transfer the balance of the Goods sent on Consignment Account to the credit of Trading Account (or Purchases Account). The total purchases debited to Trading Account include these goods and the cost price of such goods must obviously be eliminated from the Trading Account, since they are fully accounted for in the Consignment Account. If they were not so credited, the cost of sales would be inflated, so that the Trading Account would not show the true gross profit on the ordinary turnover.

Occasionally, by special arrangement, the consignor draws a bill of exchange on the consignee as soon as the goods are forwarded, in which case the amount of the bill will be credited to the Consignee's Account. If the goods are never sold, and therefore returned, the bill will have to be cancelled or the consignee reimbursed. Such an arrangement enables the consignor, if he so desires, to discount the bill and place himself in funds to that extent in anticipation of the sale of the goods. The term of the bill will be such that the consignee can reasonably anticipate that he will have sold sufficient goods to realise the funds to meet the bill by the time it becomes due.

The amount of any such bill will rarely be equal to the full value of the goods, as the consignee will want to retain out of the proceeds, when the goods are sold, a sum to meet expenses, and commission. When the consignee sends in his Account Sales, he takes credit for the bill, in whole or proportionately to the goods sold, according to the arrangement.

Illustration (1)

From the particulars given in the Account Sales on page 94, make the entries in the Consignor's books.

CONSIGNOR'S BOOKS
CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT

| 19.. | | £ | 19.. | | £ |
|---------|--------------------------------|---------------|--------|---------------------------|---------------|
| Mar. 1 | To Goods sent on Consignment - | | July 1 | By B. Jones & Co. - Sales | 1,276 |
| | Ore | 400 | | | |
| | Railway Freight | 140 | | | |
| July 1 | .. B. Jones & Co. - | | | | |
| | Ocean Freight | 360 | | | |
| | Dock Dues | 90 | | | |
| | Marine Insurance | 15 | | | |
| | Brokerage | 16 | | | |
| | Commission | 32 | | | |
| Dec. 31 | .. Profit and Loss Account - | | | | |
| | Profit | 223 | | | |
| | | <u>£1,276</u> | | | <u>£1,276</u> |

B. JONES & CO.

| 19.. | | £ | 19.. | | £ |
|--------|--------------------------------|---------------|--------|--------------------------|---------------|
| July 1 | To Consignment Account - Sales | 1,276 | July 1 | By Consignment Account - | |
| | | | | Sundry Charges | 513 |
| | | | " 23 | .. Cash | 763 |
| | | <u>£1,276</u> | | | <u>£1,276</u> |

GOODS SENT ON CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT

| 19.. | | £ | 19.. | | £ |
|---------|----------------------------|-------------|--------|--------------------------|-------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Trading Account | 400 | Mar. 1 | By Consignment Account - | |
| | | | | Ore | 400 |
| | | <u>£400</u> | | | <u>£400</u> |

Should the consignor prepare his Balance Sheet and accounts prior to the sale of the goods, the debit balance on the Consignment Account will be carried forward, and treated in the Balance Sheet as stock on consignment. If a loss is anticipated, adequate provision therefor should be made.

Where only part of the goods has been sold at the date upon which the Account Sales is rendered, the unsold stock should be brought down as a balance on the Consignment Account, being valued at the cost price of the goods. A relevant proportion of the expenses already incurred by the consignor and consignee in placing the goods in a saleable condition at the consignee's warehouse (but not of the expenses incurred in selling the goods) may be included in the valuation, and thus carried forward. If

the current market value is less than cost, then the stock must be written down accordingly. This procedure discloses the correct profit or loss upon the goods actually sold. On no account should selling expenses be taken into account in valuing stock.

Illustration (2)

Applying the same particulars of the consignment as shown in the Illustration (1), it is found that the A. Mining Co. Limited, consigned to B. Jones & Co., 160 tons of Chrome Ore costing 50s. per ton at the mine = £400, and the railway freight amounted to £140. The A. Mining Co.'s financial year ended on 31st May 19.., and at that date only 79 tons, 10 cwt. of the Ore had been sold, the cost price of Ore at the mine-head on 31st May being 45s. per ton. At the Mining Co.'s request B. Jones & Co. supplied an Account Sales, dated 31st May, giving the following particulars:

| | Tons | cwt. | £ |
|------------------------------------------|-----------|------------|-------------|
| Net landed weight | 159 | 10 | |
| Sold | 79 | 10 @ 160s. | 636 |
| | <u>80</u> | <u>0</u> | |
| Charges on Whole Consignment | | | £ |
| Ocean Freight | | | 360 |
| Dock Dues, etc. | | | 90 |
| Marine Insurance | | | 15 |
| | | | <u>465</u> |
| Brokerage $1\frac{1}{4}\%$ on £636 | | | 8 |
| Commission $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ | | | 16 |
| | | | <u>489</u> |
| Net Proceeds | | | <u>£147</u> |

Show the Consignment Account and Goods sent on Consignment Account in the Consignor's Books.

CONSIGNOR'S BOOKS CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 19.. | | £ | 19.. | | £ |
| Mar. 1 | To Goods sent on Consignment - Ore | 400 | May 31 | By B. Jones and Co. | 636 |
| | .. Railway Freight | 140 | | .. Balance carried down - | |
| May 31 | .. B. Jones & Co. - Charges on whole Consignment | 465 | | .. 80 tons @ 45s. plus shipping and landing charges | 483 |
| | .. B. Jones & Co. - Brokerage on Sales | 8 | | | |
| | .. Commission on Sales | 16 | | | |
| | .. Profit and Loss Account | 90 | | | |
| | | <u>£1,119</u> | | | <u>£1,119</u> |
| June 1 | To Balance brought down | 483 | | | |

GOODS SENT ON CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|--------|--------------------------|-------------|--------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| 19.. | | £ | 19.. | | £ |
| May 31 | To Trading Account | 400 | Mar. 1 | By Consignment Account - Ore | 400 |
| | | <u>£400</u> | | | <u>£400</u> |

Note

The balance carried down in the Consignment Account is made up as follows:

| | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 80 tons of Ore @ 45s. per ton (current market value) | 180 |
| Railway Freight | £140 |
| B. Jones & Co.'s charges on whole consignment | 465 |
| | <hr/> |
| | 80 |
| | 159.5 × £605 |
| | <hr/> |
| | 303 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £483 |
| | <hr/> |

The stock on consignment is treated as an asset at the balancing date. The cost price of the whole of the goods sent out on consignment is eliminated from the Trading Account by the transfer from Goods on Consignment Account.

Where the consignee is authorised to sell goods on credit, and at the date of the Account Sales there is an amount outstanding in respect of credit sales, that amount can be recorded as a balance carried down on the Consignment Account, or by crediting Consignment Account and debiting Consignment Debtors Account. When an Account Sales is subsequently received, showing the receipt of the cash from the debtors, the amount will be transferred to the debit of the Consignee's Personal Account. A consignee, other than a *del credere* agent, should not be debited with the proceeds of sale until he has received them in cash. ✓

Illustration (3)

On 1st April, Emen & Co. had consigned to C. Onsignee, goods costing £4,000, on which they paid freight, insurance, etc., amounting to £500. On 31st August, C. Onsignee's first Account Sales was received, showing that he had effected sales of £2,800, of which £2,500 had been received in cash. His expenses to date were £400, and Commission, 5% on gross sales. On receipt of the Account Sales, the Consignment Account was balanced off, stock being valued at £3,000. A further Account Sales was received on 31st December, shewing that the balance of the goods had been sold for £3,450 and the cash collected: debtors had also paid, less a discount of 5%. The expenses of C. Onsignee were £120, commission 5%. Write up the accounts in the books of Emen & Co. to 31st December, assuming C. Onsignee remitted the balance due with each Account Sales.

CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT

| 19.. | £ | 19.. | £ |
|----------------------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------------|--------|
| April 1 To Goods sent on Consignment | 4,000 | Aug. 31 By C. Onsignee - | |
| " Freight, Insurance, etc. | 500 | Cash Collected <i>re</i> Sales | 2,500 |
| Aug. 31 " C. Onsignee - | | " Sales on Credit c/d. | 300 |
| Expenses | 400 | " Stock c/d. | 3,000 |
| Commission on gross sales at 5% | 140 | | |
| " Profit and Loss Account | 760 | | |
| | <hr/> | | <hr/> |
| | £5,800 | | £5,800 |
| | <hr/> | | <hr/> |
| 19.. | | 19.. | |
| Aug. 31 To Balances b/d. - | | Dec. 31 By C. Onsignee - | |
| Debtors | 300 | Cash Collected <i>re</i> Sales | 3,450 |
| Stock | 3,000 | From Debtors | 285 |
| Dec. 31 " C. Onsignee - | | | |
| Expenses | 120 | | |
| Commission | 173 | | |
| " Profit and Loss Account | 142 | | |
| | <hr/> | | <hr/> |
| | £3,735 | | |

C. ONSIGNEE

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 19.. Aug. 31 | To Consignment Account - Cash Collected | £ 2,500 | 19.. Aug. 31 | By Consignment Account - Expenses Commission Cash | £ 400 140 1,960 |
| | | <u>£2,500</u> | | | <u>£2,500</u> |
| 19.. Dec. 31 | To Consignment Account - Cash Collected .. | 3,735 | 19.. Dec. 31 | By Consignment Account - Expenses Commission Cash | 120 173 3,442 |
| | | <u>£3,735</u> | | | <u>£3,735</u> |

Note

The discount is automatically recorded by bringing into account only the cash collected. There is no point in shewing it as a debit and a credit in the Consignment Account.

GOODS SENT ON CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------|----------------|------------------------|------------|
| 19.. Aug. 31 | To Trading Account | £ 4,000 | 19.. Apr. 1 | By Consignment Account | £ 4,000 |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------|----------------|------------------------|------------|

Where some of the goods are damaged or lost in transit, the loss, if not excessive, may be charged to the Consignment Account automatically by crediting that account only with the reduced value of the stock remaining on hand at the date of balancing the accounts. If it is desired to record the loss separately, the cost price of the damaged goods can be entered on both sides of the account. Goods lost before they reach the consignees, however, should be credited to the Consignment Account and debited to Profit and Loss Account at cost less any amounts recovered from underwriters. Any goods returned to the consignor will be credited to the Consignment Account and debited to the Goods sent on Consignment Account at cost.

Where the agent is authorised to give goods away for advertising purposes, the cost thereof (including the expenses incurred in connection therewith) should be credited to Consignment Account and debited to Advertising Account, which latter account would in due course be transferred to the debit of Profit and Loss Account. Alternatively, if it is desired that the cost of advertising shall be borne by the consignment, the cost of the goods distributed should be both credited and debited to the Consignment Account, the balance of which will then represent the net profit or loss on the consignment, after all expenses incurred in selling the goods have been deducted.

It is not uncommon for the goods to be invoiced to the consignee at a *pro forma* price in excess of cost, in which case columns should be provided in the Consignment Account for recording the price alongside the ordinary entries. The invoice columns are purely memorandum columns for the purpose of reconciling the invoice price of sales and unsold stock with that of the goods consigned. Entries in the invoice columns form no part of the double entry.

Illustration (4)

A, in London, consigns goods to B in Australia, for sale at invoice price or over. B is entitled to a commission of 5% on invoice prices and 25% of any surplus prices realised. A draws on B at 90 days sight for 80% of the invoice price, and, upon sale, B remits the balance of proceeds, after deducting his commission, by sight draft.

Goods consigned by A to B in the year cost A £10,450, including freight and were invoiced at £14,200. Sales made by B were £13,380, and goods in his hands, unsold at 31st December, represented an invoice value of £3,460 (original cost, including freight £2,610). Sight drafts actually received by A from B up to 31st December, were £3,140; others were in transit.

Prepare accounts in A's books of these transactions and show (by ledger accounts) the manner in which the books would be closed at 31st December.

CONSIGNMENT TO B. (AUSTRALIA) ACCOUNT

| | Invoice Price £ | £ | | Invoice Price £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------|-----------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| To Goods | 14,200 | 10,450 | By Sales | 10,740 | 13,380 |
| .. B. Commission: 5% on £10,740 | | 537 | .. Stock c/d. | 3,460 | 2,610 |
| 25% on £2,640 | | 660 | | | |
| .. Profit and Loss Account | | 4,343 | | | |
| | <u>£14,200</u> | <u>£15,990</u> | | <u>£14,200</u> | <u>£15,990</u> |
| To Balance b/d. | 3,460 | 2,610 | | | |

B.

| | £ | | £ |
|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| To Sales | 13,380 | By Bills Receivable | 11,360 |
| .. Balance c/d. | 2,317 | .. Commission | 1,197 |
| | <u>£15,697</u> | .. Cash | 3,140 |
| | | | <u>£15,697</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 2,317 |

Note

No account can be taken of drafts in transit, which amount to £451.

GOODS SENT ON CONSIGNMENT ACCOUNT

| | £ | | Invoice Price £14,200 | £ |
|----------------------------|--------|---------------|--------------------------|--------|
| To Trading Account | 10,450 | By B. | | 10,450 |

Note

Apparently the arrangement is that on sale of the goods, B shall remit the proceeds, *less* commission and *less* the proportion of the bill of exchange applicable to the goods sold, *i.e.*, he owes A. on 31st December:

| | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Proceeds of Sale | 13,380 |
| Less Commission | 1,197 |
| | <u>12,183</u> |
| Less Proportion of Bill applicable to goods sold, 80% of Invoice Price, £10,740 = | 8,592 |
| | <u>Amount due</u> |
| He has already remitted | 3,140 |
| ∴ Drafts in transit amount to | £451 |

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| The balance to B's credit is made up of – | £ |
| Proportion of Bill applicable to goods in Stock, 80% of | |
| Invoice Price, £3,460 = | 2,768 |
| Less Drafts in transit | 451 |
| Balance | <u>£2,317</u> |

Where the goods are consigned to an agent abroad whose accounts are rendered in a foreign currency it will be necessary to provide memorandum currency columns in the consignee's personal account, in which the relevant items will be converted into sterling at appropriate rates. As a general rule it will be found convenient to convert sales made by the agent and the agent's expenses and commission at the average rate for the period. Remittances received from the agent should be converted at the actual sums realised, whilst the closing balance of the agent's account should be converted at the rate of exchange prevailing at the date of the Balance Sheet. The resultant sterling balance on the agent's account will represent profit or loss on exchange. This may, if desired, be transferred to the Consignment Account, which will then show the final profit or loss in sterling realised on the consignment. Alternatively, the amount may be transferred to a Difference on Exchange Account which, if in debit, should be written off to Profit and Loss Account, or, if in credit, carried forward as a provision against future possible losses on exchange.

Illustration (5)

On 2nd January, B bought for cash 200 machines at £33 each f.o.b. London for shipment to his Agent G in Berne, to sell on a consignment basis. On 2nd February, B paid £500 for freight and £140 for insurance.

G sent B an Account Sales dated 31st May showing that he had sold 100 machines at Fr. 550 each and a further 40 machines at Fr. 570 each. G had paid landing charges Fr. 2,750 and selling expenses on the machines sold Fr. 700. His commission was at the rate of Fr. 20 per machine sold, plus one-quarter of the amount by which the gross sale proceeds, less the total commission thereon, exceeded a sum calculated at the rate of Fr. 500 per machine sold. A bank draft dated 31st May was enclosed for the balance due to B, which realised £5,600.

Prepare Consignment Account and G's personal account in B's books as at 30th June, no further machines having been sold by that date.

Sales, expenses and commission are to be converted at the average rate of Fr. 12·5 to £.

CONSIGNMENT TO G. ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Jan. 2 | To Goods sent on Consignment: 200 Machines at £33 each | 6,600 | May 31 | By Sale of 140 Machines as per Account Sales (<i>Fr.</i> 77,800) | 6,224 |
| Feb. 2 | .. Freight | 500 | | .. Stock on hand: | |
| | .. Insurance | 140 | | 60 Machines at £33 | 1,980 |
| Mar. 31 | .. General Expenses as per Account Sales: | | | Proportion of: | |
| | Landing Charges | 220 | | Freight | £500 |
| | Selling Expenses | 56 | | Insurance | 140 |
| | Commission | 30 | | Landing Charges | 220 |
| | | 580 | | | £860 |
| June 30 | .. Loss on Exchange | 44 | | | 258 |
| | .. Profit and Loss Account – Profit on Consignment | 598 | | | 2,238 |
| | | <u>£8,462</u> | | | <u>£8,462</u> |
| June 1 | .. Stock on hand b/d. | 2,238 | | | |

G - PERSONAL ACCOUNT

| | | Francs | £ | | | Francs | £ |
|--------|--------------------------------|------------|--------|---------|-------------------------|------------|--------|
| May 31 | To Consignment Account, Sales: | | | May 31 | By Consignment Account: | | |
| | 100 Machines @ Fr. 350 .. | 55,000 | 4,400 | | Landing Charges .. | 2,750 | 220 |
| | 40 " Fr. 570 .. | 22,800 | 1,824 | | Selling Expenses .. | 700 | 56 |
| | | | | | Commission .. | 3,800 | 304 |
| | | | | June 29 | " Bank Draft .. | 70,550 | 5,600 |
| | | | | | " Consignment Account: | | |
| | | | | | Loss on Exchange .. | | 44 |
| | | Fr. 77,800 | £6,224 | | | Fr. 77,800 | £6,224 |

Note. Total Commission = $x = \text{Fr. } 2,800 + \frac{1}{4} (77,800 - x - 70,000) = \text{Fr. } 3,800.$

§ 4. Entries in the Consignee's Books

When the goods are received by the consignee, particulars thereof should be entered in a consignment stock book ruled for marks and quantities, according to the nature of the goods, and having a column for *pro forma* invoice prices. This book, however, is merely a memorandum book, and no entries should be made in the financial books until a sale takes place. The goods, not being the property of the consignee, must be kept entirely distinct from his own stock, and should not be included in his Balance Sheet.

The entries in the consignee's books will be as follows:

- (1) Debit the Consignor's Account with any expenses incurred in connection with the consignment by the consignee, such as freight, warehousing, etc., crediting cash or the relevant personal account.
- (2) When sales are made, debit the various debtors' accounts with the amounts thereof and credit the Consignor's Account through a consignment sales day book, or, where there are few transactions, through the ordinary journal.
- (3) When the Account Sales is prepared, debit the Consignor's Account with the brokerage, commission, etc., crediting the latter accounts. If any debtors have not yet paid their accounts carry forward a balance to the credit of the Consignor's Account in respect thereof, unless by the terms of the agency, the agent has to remit in full.
- (4) The balance of the Consignor's Account will represent the amount due to him. If a draft is remitted, debit his account and credit Bills Payable or cash, as the case may be, so closing the account.

Illustration

From the particulars given in the Illustration (1) (page 96) make the entries in the consignee's books.

CONSIGNEE'S BOOKS
THE A. MINING COMPANY LIMITED

| | | | | 19.. | | | | |
|------|--------------------------|--------|--|--------|-------------------------|--|--------|--|
| | | £ | | | | | £ | |
| July | To Ocean Freight | 360 | | July 1 | By Sundry Debtors | | 1 276 | |
| | " Dock Dues | 90 | | | | | | |
| | " Marine Insurance | 15 | | | | | | |
| | " Brokerage | 16 | | | | | | |
| | " Commission | 32 | | | | | | |
| | " Bills Payable | 763 | | | | | | |
| | | £1,276 | | | | | £1,276 | |

Detailed particulars will also be entered in the consignment stock book by way of memoranda as described above.

An alternative method for recording consignments in the consignee's financial books, is to debit a Consignment Stock Account and credit the Consignor's Account with the invoice value of the goods. When the goods are sold, the proceeds are credited to the Consignment Stock Account, and the difference on this account, representing profit, is then transferred to the Consignor's Account. The Consignment Stock Account and the corresponding credits to the consignor's Account, must, of course, be eliminated from the consignee's Balance Sheet. It might be considered preferable to credit a Consignor's Suspense Account with the invoice value, in order to preclude the possibility of a payment inadvertently being made to the consignor before the goods are sold.

This method is not to be recommended, as it takes into the consignee's financial books as assets and liabilities items which are not such from his point of view.

§ 5. Accounts with Agents

In many cases, where agencies are situated in different parts of the world, it is not convenient to treat the goods sent to such agents as consignments, and often, even in cases of consignments proper, it is not desired to show the profit or loss on each shipment. In such cases Consignment Accounts, as illustrated in § 3 are not used, but the transactions may be dealt with in the manner described hereunder.

Memorandum quantity stock accounts are kept, showing particulars of goods sent to the agent. No entries are made, otherwise than by way of memoranda, when goods are sent to the agent, except that the proper nominal accounts are debited with any expenses incurred. When the agent's returns are received, Sales Account is credited with the gross sales and the Agent's Account debited. Any expenses incurred by the agent are credited to his account, and debited to the appropriate expense accounts. The Agent's Account is credited with sums remitted by him, and the balance on his account at any time will be the amount due by him for sales effected. In this way the agent will not be debited with the value of any stock unsold, as this will be regarded as stock belonging to the firm and brought into the Balance Sheet at cost plus expenses, or at a lower valuation if necessary.

The agent will forward at regular intervals quantity stock accounts, which will be agreed with the similar accounts kept at the head office, any differences in stock being adjusted.

Illustration (1)

The X Manufacturing Company forwarded goods to the value of £3,400 to their agent, incurring the following expenses:

| | | |
|----------------------|----|------|
| | | £ |
| Carriage and Freight | .. | 140. |
| Insurance | .. | 15 |

Up to the date of balancing the accounts the agent had forwarded returns showing the following transactions:

| | £ |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| Cash Sales | 1,250 |
| Credit Sales | 1,575 |
| Cash collected from Debtors | 1,300 |
| Sundry expenses | 130 |
| Cash remitted | 2,400 |
| Stock on hand at cost .. | 1,340 |

Show by Journal entries how these transactions should be recorded in the books of the X Manufacturing Company, and prepare the agent's Personal Account.

X MANUFACTURING COMPANY JOURNAL

| | Dr. | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------|-------|
| Sundries | | | |
| To Cash | | | 155 |
| Carriage and Freight Account | | 140 | |
| Insurance Account | | 15 | |
| Being expenses incurred in dispatch of goods to agent. | | | |
| Agent's Account | Dr. | 2,825 | |
| To Sundries - | | | |
| Cash Sales Account | | | 1,250 |
| Credit Sales Account | | | 1,575 |
| Being sales effected as per agent's returns. | | | |
| Sundry Expenses Account | Dr. | 130 | |
| To Agent's Account | | | 130 |
| Being agent's expenses as per his returns. | | | |
| Cash | Dr. | 2,400 | |
| To Agent's Account | | | 2,400 |
| Being cash remitted by agent. | | | |

AGENT'S PERSONAL ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|---------------|
| To Sales Account | 2,825 | By Expenses Account | 130 |
| | | Cash | 2,400 |
| | | Balance c/d | 295 |
| | <u>£2,825</u> | | <u>£2,825</u> |
| To Balance b/d. | 295 | | |

NOTE. The memorandum Stock Account will be debited with £3,400 stock sent, and credited with the cost value of sales. The balance should represent the value of stock in agent's hands and will be included in the company's stock when the Trading Account and Balance Sheet are prepared.

Although not recommended, the agent's account is sometimes debited with the cost of the goods sent to him, but care must be taken, if goods are debited at more than cost, to reduce the value of stock in his hands at balancing time to cost price, so that no credit is taken for profit before it is actually realised.

Where the agent is so debited, it is advisable to create a provision of an equal amount. This can readily be done in the following way:

- (1) Debit the Agent's Account and credit a 'Goods sent to Agents Account' with the invoice price.
- (2) When sales are notified (a) debit Goods sent to Agents Account and credit Sales Account with the amount of the sales; (b) debit the Agent's Account and credit

Goods sent to Agents Account with the excess of the selling over invoice price of the goods sold; and (c) debit the various expense accounts and credit Agent's Account with the expenses paid by him.

(3) Debit cash and credit the Agent's Account with remittances received from the agent.

(4) For the purposes of the Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account, the Goods sent to Agents Account will be deducted from the balance on the Agent's Account so that the latter will show only the amount, if any, due from him. Stock will be valued as usual, and included in the accounts as stock in the hands of agents, by debiting a Stock Account and crediting Trading Account. This Stock Account will be closed in due course by transfer to the next period's Trading Account.

Illustration (2)

Goods costing £1,000 were invoiced to an agent at £1,200. In due course the agent submitted a return showing that he had sold three-fourths of the goods for £1,500, paying expenses amounting to £50, and enclosing a draft for £1,100. The Stock was valued at £240, prices having fallen.

Write up the accounts affected.

AGENT'S ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| To Goods at invoice price | £ 1,200 | By Expenses Account | £ 50 |
| " do. excess of selling price over invoice price | 600 | " Cash | 1,100 |
| | | " Balance c/d. | 650 |
| | <u>£1,800</u> | | <u>£1,800</u> |
| To Balance b/d. | 650 | | |

GOODS SENT TO AGENTS ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Sales Account | £ 1,500 | By Agent's Account | £ 1,200 |
| " Balance c/d. | 300 | " " excess of selling price over invoice price | 600 |
| | <u>£1,800</u> | | <u>£1,800</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 300 |

SALES ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|----------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------|---------|
| To Trading Account | £ 1,500 | By Goods sent to Agents Account | £ 1,500 |
|----------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------|---------|

TRADING ACCOUNT

| | |
|------------------------------------|---------|
| By Sales Account | £ 1,500 |
| " Stocks in hands of Agent | 240 |

EXPENSES ACCOUNT

| | |
|----------------------------|------|
| To Agent's Account | £ 50 |
|----------------------------|------|

STOCK IN HANDS OF AGENTS ACCOUNT

| | |
|----------------------------|----------|
| To Trading Account | £ 240 |
|----------------------------|----------|

The Balance Sheet will include £350 as due from the agent, viz., the balance of his account, £650, less the provision on Goods sent to Agents Account, £300. This amount is made up of the following:

| | | |
|------------------------------|-------|-------------|
| | £ | £ |
| Proceeds of sale of goods .. | | 1,500 |
| Less Expenses .. | | 50 |
| Cash remitted .. | 1,100 | |
| | — | 1,150 |
| | | <u>£350</u> |

Where foreign agents are concerned, it may be necessary to record the transactions in currency, in which case currency as well as sterling columns must be utilised, and any difference on exchange dealt with as explained in Chapter X, § 7.

CHAPTER VI

BILLS OF EXCHANGE, PROMISSORY NOTES, ETC.

§ 1. Definitions

(a) Bill of Exchange

A *Bill of Exchange* is defined by the Bills of Exchange Act, 1882, as 'an unconditional ORDER in writing, addressed by one person to another, signed by the person giving it, requiring the person to whom it is addressed to pay on demand, or at a fixed or determinable future time, a sum certain in money to or to the order of, a specified person or to bearer'.

There are three parties to a bill, viz. – (1) the *drawer*, i.e., the party who draws the bill in the first instance and signs it; (2) the *drawee*, i.e., the party to whom the bill is addressed; and (3) the *payee*, i.e., the party to whom the bill is payable. The drawer is the creditor, the drawee the debtor, and the payee may be the drawer himself or some other person to whom the drawer owes money.

A drawee 'accepts' a bill, by signing his name across the face of it, and thereby becomes the *acceptor*. Until the drawee becomes the acceptor he is not liable on the bill. When the bill is negotiated (i.e., transferred from one person to another in such a manner as to constitute the transferee the holder of the bill), each party through whose hands it passes must indorse his name on the back thereof, and thereby becomes an *indorser*, unless the bill is drawn to bearer, when it requires no indorsement but is negotiated by delivery only. If a bill payable to order is indorsed in blank in the first instance it thereby becomes a bearer bill and no further indorsement is legally necessary.

A cheque is the most common form of bill of exchange, being defined by the Bills of Exchange Act, 1882, as 'a bill of exchange drawn on a banker, payable on demand'.

(b) Promissory Note

A *Promissory Note* is an unconditional PROMISE in writing made by one person to another, signed by the maker, engaging to pay on demand, or at a fixed or determinable future time, a sum certain in money to, or to the order of, a specified person or to bearer.

The parties to a promissory note are: (1) the *promisor*, i.e., the party who makes the promise and signs the note; and (2) the *promisee*, i.e., the party to whom the promise is made. There may be a single promisor, or two or more promisors. In the latter case the liability of the promisors may be either *joint*, or *joint and several*. If the liability is joint, any judgment without satisfaction against one of the makers of the note is a bar to proceedings against the other joint maker or makers. This is not the case if the note is joint and several, since an unsatisfied judgment against one can be followed by action against another party.

Bill of exchange drawn and expressed to be payable out of the United Kingdom, when actually paid or indorsed or in any manner negotiated in the United Kingdom: s. d.

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|---|---|
| Where the amount exceeds £50 and does not exceed £100 | .. | .. | - | 6 |
| Where the amount exceeds £100, for every £100 or fractional part of £100 | | | - | 6 |
| Where the amount does not exceed £50, the stamp duty thereon is the same as for inland bills. | | | | |

Bill of exchange of any kind whatsoever, and promissory note of any kind whatsoever (except a bank note), drawn and expressed to be payable, or actually paid or indorsed, or in any manner negotiated, in the United Kingdom (except as above):

| | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|---|---|
| Where the amount or value of money for which the bill or note is drawn or made does not exceed £10 | .. | .. | .. | .. | - | 2 |
| exceeds £10 and does not exceed £25 | .. | .. | .. | .. | - | 3 |
| „ £25 „ „ „ „ £50 | .. | .. | .. | .. | - | 6 |
| „ £50 „ „ „ „ £75 | .. | .. | .. | .. | - | 9 |
| „ £75 „ „ „ „ £100 | . | .. | .. | .. | 1 | 0 |
| exceeding £100, for every £100 and fraction of £100 | .. | .. | .. | .. | 1 | 0 |

§ 3. Specimen Forms of Bills of Exchange and Promissory Notes

The following are specimen forms of bills of exchange:

I.

£100

Stamp
1s.

Three months after date pay to my order the sum of One hundred pounds sterling for value received.
To Messrs. BLACK & CO.
Glasgow.

London, 1st February 19..

F. SMITH.

In this case the drawer and the payee are one and the same person, viz., F. Smith. Black & Co. are the drawees, who, on accepting the bill, become the acceptors.

II.

£436

Stamp
5s.

Three months after date pay to F. Blackmore or order the sum of Four hundred and thirty-six pounds for value received.
To Messrs. A. WHITE & CO.,
London.

London, 1st February 19..

B. WILLIAMS.

In this case the drawer and payee are not the same person.

III.

£1,000

London, 1st February 19..

Stamp
2d.

On demand pay to A. Wilkins or order the sum of One thousand pounds for value received.

To Messrs. A. BLACK & Co.,
York.

A. ROBERTS.

In this case the stamp is only 2d., as the bill is payable on demand. The drawer and the payee are again distinct parties.

£5,000

Calcutta, 1st February 19..

Stamp
£2 10s.

Three months after sight of this first exchange (second and third of even tenor and date unpaid) pay to the order of Mr John Jones the sum of Five thousand pounds for value received.

To Messrs. F. WILKINSON & CO.,
London.

R. PHILLIPS & Co.

This is a form of foreign bill drawn in Calcutta payable in this country, and consequently the stamp duty is the ordinary 1s. per cent. Foreign bills are often drawn in duplicate or in sets of three, each part of the set being numbered, and referring to the other parts. The first part coming to hand will be presented for acceptance, and the others destroyed as and when received.

\$1,750

Bombay, 1st February 19..

Stamp
3s. 6d.

Two months after sight of this our second of exchange (first and third of even tenor and date unpaid) pay to the order of Mr F. Brown the sum of One thousand, seven hundred and fifty dollars for value received.

To JOHN L. SMITH,
New York.

F. WALL & Co.

NOTE. - The rate of exchange has been taken at £2.80 to the £.

This is an illustration of a bill which is drawn abroad and payable abroad, but it is assumed to have been negotiated in this country. Thus the stamp duty is at the rate of 6d. per cent., the conversion being made as at the date of negotiation in this country. The bill would also have to be stamped according to the law of the country in which it is drawn.

The following are some forms of promissory notes:

I.

£50

London, 1st February 19..

Stamp
6d.

Three months after date I promise to pay A. White & Co. or order the sum of Fifty pounds for value received.

JOHN LAKE.

It will be observed that there are only two parties to a promissory note – the promisor and the payee.

II.

£1,000

London, 1st February 19..

Stamp
10s.

On demand we promise to pay to Messrs. F. White & Co. the sum of One thousand pounds for value received.

C. D.

E. F.

This is an instance of a *joint promissory note*. The promisors are jointly liable, *i.e.*, only one action can be brought, and if action is taken and judgment obtained against one of the parties only, and that judgment is unsatisfied, another action cannot subsequently be brought against the other party.

If the note had been worded 'I promise to pay', and had been signed by both parties as above, the liability would have been joint and several.

It will be observed that all promissory notes, whether on demand or otherwise, bear an *ad valorem* stamp duty.

III.

London, 1st February 19..

£530

Stamp
6s.

Three months after date we jointly and severally promise to pay to the order of Messrs. F. Wilkins & Co. the sum of Five hundred and thirty pounds for value received.

F. T.

W. X.

Y. Z.

This is an instance of a *joint and several promissory note* where the parties are jointly and severally liable, and, in the event of any one of the parties not contributing his proportion, the holder will have a right of recovery for the full amount of the note against any one of the promisors, who in his turn will have a right of recovery from the remaining promisors of their respective contributions.

§ 4. Forms of Bill Books

Bill books are subsidiary books for recording the history of all bills of exchange handled by the business, and serving the purpose of day books, from which the bills are posted in detail to the personal accounts affected, and in total to the Bills Accounts in the ledger.

(a) Bills Receivable and Bills Payable Books

The forms of bill books vary considerably in practice, according to the circumstances of the business and the class of bills dealt with. The essential point is that the bill book should record a concise history of each bill.

The following is a convenient form of bills receivable book which can be adapted to the majority of cases:

Illustration (1)

BILLS RECEIVABLE BOOK

| No. of Bill | Date received | From whom received | Drawer | Acceptor | Where Payable | Date of Bill | Term | Date due, including Days of Grace | Folio in Ledger | Amount of Bill | How Disposed of |
|-------------|------------------|--------------------|------------|-------------|---------------------|------------------|----------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1 | 19.. 2nd July | H. Marshall | Self | H. Marshall | London | 19.. 1st July | 1 month | 19.. 4th Aug | 4 | £ s. d. 50 0 0 | Cash received 4th Aug. |
| 2 | 1st Aug. | J. Wilson | Self | J. Wilson | Lloyds Bank, Ltd. | 31st July | 50 days | 22nd Sept. | 5 | 70 0 0 | Dishonoured 22nd Sept. |
| 3 | 9th Sept. | F. Johnson | F. Johnson | L. Taylor | Barclays Bank, Ltd. | 3rd Sept. | 3 months | 6th Dec. | 6 | 90 0 0 | Discounted 12th Sept. |
| | | | | | | | | | | £210 0 0 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | Fo. L.1. | |

Each item in the bills receivable book is posted to the credit of the ledger account of the person from whom the bill is received; periodically the total of the bills is posted to the debit of Bills Receivable Account.

The following is a convenient form of bills payable book:

Illustration (2)

BILLS PAYABLE BOOK

| No. of Bill | Date given | To whom given | Drawer | Payee | Where Payable | Date of Bill | Term | Date due, including Days of Grace | Folio in Ledger | Amount of Bill | How Disposed of |
|-------------|-------------------|---------------|----------|----------|------------------|-------------------|----------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1 | 19.. 15th July | W. Black | W. Black | W. Black | Lloyds Bank Ltd. | 19.. 14th July | 60 days | 19.. 15th Sept. | 7 | £ s. d. 90 0 0 | Paid 15th Sept. |
| 2 | 19th July | F. White | F. White | F. White | " " | 18th July | 3 months | 21st Oct. | 8 | 80 0 0 | |
| 3 | 3rd Aug. | H. Brown | H. Brown | H. Brown | " " | 2nd Aug. | 2 months | 5th Oct. | 9 | 40 0 0 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | £210 0 0 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | Fo. L.2. | |

Each item in a bills payable book is posted to the debit of the ledger account of the person to whom the bill is given, the total being posted periodically to the credit of Bills Payable Account.

In order to obtain cash before the due date of a bill receivable, the holder may discount it with his banker, *i.e.*, negotiate it to the banker for an immediate cash payment. The banker charges interest on the face value of the bill for the period it still has to run, and pays the balance as its present cash value. This interest is called the 'discount'. It is usual to debit the cash book with the face value of the bill and show the discount as a payment, which will be posted to a Discounting Charges Account.

(b) Bills Receivable and Bills Payable Ledgers

These books are ruled in a similar way to ordinary bill books, but are provided with additional money columns to show the disposal of the bills.

They may be made to form part of the double entry, in which case it will not be necessary to have ledger accounts for bills receivable and bills payable.

The great advantage of this form of book is that a complete history of each bill is recorded in a manner capable of arithmetical proof.

The following is a form of bills receivable ledger:

[illegible]

Note to Illustration.

The discount payable column provided in the above form is useful in cases where cash discount is allowed on receipt of an acceptance in the same way as if payment had been made in cash. The detail of each money column on the debit side of this ledger will be posted to the credit of the personal account, the total of the discount payable column being posted to the debit of Discount Payable Account. As already stated, this discount payable must not be confused with the discounting charges on the bill itself.

(c) Bill Diary

Where bill transactions are numerous, it is advisable for all bills, whether receivable or payable, to be entered in special bill diaries, so that the amounts due to be received or paid on any given day can readily be ascertained.

The diaries will be ruled to meet the requirements of the case, a separate space being allotted for each day in the year. The bills are entered under the dates on which they fall due, allowance being made for the three days of grace.

(d) Discounted Bills

The process of discounting a bill is tantamount to selling the bill for its present worth, subject to its being met at maturity, the holder thus obtaining the use of the money before the bill falls due.

The consideration for so obtaining the money in advance is termed 'discount', and is based, in the case of good bills, upon the rates ruling at the date of discounting. This discount has no connection with cash discount or trade discount, and must not be confused therewith, as it is more in the nature of interest.

The entries in the books on discounting a bill are to debit the cash book and credit Bills Receivable Account with the face value of the discounted bill. If the holder's own banker discounts the bill for him, the banker will credit him with the face value of the bill and debit him with the discounting charge, and the entry in the trader's cash book will be made on that basis. Should the holder sell the bill to another bank or to a bill broker, he will receive a cheque for the net amount. He may then debit his cash book with that amount, which will be posted to the credit of Bills Receivable Account, and make a journal entry on the same day, debiting Discounting Charges Account and crediting Bills Receivable Account with the discount charged by the buyer of the bill; or he may record it as explained in the first case above mentioned. The latter treatment is recommended.

A contingent liability remains on a discounted bill until it matures and is met, since, if such a bill is dishonoured, the holder has a right of recourse against the drawer and all previous indorsers. A note should be made on the Balance Sheet of the amount of the contingent liability on discounted bills which have not yet matured, except where it is anticipated that a definite liability will materialise, when specific provision therefor should be made in the accounts.

Illustration

In the books of T. Atkinson, the following debit balances appear on 1st July 19..:

| | | | |
|-------------|----|----|----|
| | | | £ |
| H. Marshall | .. | .. | 50 |
| J. Wilson | .. | .. | 70 |
| F. Johnson | .. | .. | 90 |

Also the following credit balances:

| | | | |
|----------|----|----|----|
| W. Black | .. | .. | 90 |
| F. White | .. | .. | 80 |
| H. Brown | .. | .. | 40 |

Enter these balances in the Ledger, and from the particulars given in the Bills Receivable and Bills Payable books illustrated on page 112, make the necessary entries in T. Atkinson's books.

CASH BOOK

| | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. | | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. |
|----------|------------------------|-----|----|----|----|----------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|---|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | | | 19.. | | | | | |
| Aug. 4 | To Bills Receivable .. | 1 | 50 | 0 | 0 | Sept. 12 | By Discount .. | 3 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Sept. 12 | " " " .. | 1 | 90 | 0 | 0 | " 15 | " Bills Payable .. | 2 | | 90 | 0 |
| | | | | | | " 22 | " Noting Charges - J. Wilson's Dishonoured Bill .. | 5 | | 5 | 0 |

LEDGER

BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT

| | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. | | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. |
|----------|----------------|----------|-----|----|----|----------|-----------------------------------|--------|----|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | | | 19.. | | | | | |
| Sept. 30 | To Sundries .. | B.R.B. 1 | 210 | 0 | 0 | Aug. 4 | By Cash .. | C.B. 1 | 50 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | Sept. 12 | " Cash .. | C.B. 1 | 90 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | " 22 | " J. Wilson - Dishonoured Bill | J. 1 | 70 | 0 | 0 |

BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT

| | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. | | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. |
|----------|------------|--------|----|----|----|----------|----------------|----------|-----|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | | | 19.. | | | | | |
| Sept. 15 | To Cash .. | C.B. 1 | 90 | 0 | 0 | Sept. 30 | By Sundries .. | B.P.B. 1 | 210 | 0 | 0 |

DISCOUNTING CHARGES ACCOUNT

| | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. | | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. |
|----------|----------------|--------|---|----|----|------|--|-----|---|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | | | 19.. | | | | | |
| Sept. 12 | To Sundries .. | C.B. 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | | | | | | |

H. MARSHALL.

| | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. | | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. |
|--------|-------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|--------|-----------------------|----------|----|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | | | 19.. | | | | | |
| July 1 | To Balance brought forward .. | | 50 | 0 | 0 | July 2 | By Bill Receivable .. | B.R.B. 1 | 50 | 0 | 0 |

J. WILSON

| | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. | | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------|--------|----|----|----|--------|-----------------------|----------|----|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | | | 19.. | | | | | |
| July 1 | To Balance brought forward .. | | 70 | 0 | 0 | Aug. 1 | By Bill Receivable .. | B.R.B. 1 | 70 | 0 | 0 |
| Sept. 22 | " Bills Receivable Account - Dishonoured Bill .. | J. 1 | 70 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | |
| | " Noting Charges .. | C.B. 1 | 5 | 0 | | | | | | | |

F. JOHNSON

| | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. | | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. |
|--------|-------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|---------|-----------------------|----------|----|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | | | 19.. | | | | | |
| July 1 | To Balance brought forward .. | | 90 | 0 | 0 | Sept. 9 | By Bill Receivable .. | B.R.B. 1 | 90 | 0 | 0 |

W. BLACK

| | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. | | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. |
|---------|--------------------|----------|----|----|----|--------|-------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | | | 19.. | | | | | |
| July 15 | To Bill Payable .. | B.P.B. 1 | 90 | 0 | 0 | July 1 | By Balance brought forward .. | | 90 | 0 | 0 |

F. WHITE

| | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. | | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. |
|---------|---------------------|----------|----|----|----|--------|-------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | | | 19.. | | | | | |
| July 19 | To Bills Payable .. | B.P.B. 1 | 80 | 0 | 0 | July 1 | By Balance brought forward .. | | 80 | 0 | 0 |

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------|--------------------|----------|----|----|----|--------|-------------------------------|----|----|----|
| 19.. | | Fo. | £ | s. | d. | 19.. | | £ | s. | d. |
| Aug. 3 | To Bill Payable .. | B.P.B. 1 | 40 | 0 | 0 | July 1 | By Balance brought forward .. | 40 | 0 | 0 |

12 Advice from Export Bank Ltd. of payment of bill No.320 for £200, which had been advanced against in full. The bank sent a debit note for interest for £4 15s. 0d. and a cheque was sent for this.

- April 15 Advice from the company's own bankers of the receipt of £185 being proceeds of bill No.312 for that amount, sent to them for collection.
- „ 20 Advice from Export Bank Ltd. that X.Y. of Bombay had refused to take delivery of goods relating to bill No.316 for £125, and that the documents had been handed over to the company's agents. The bank claimed repayment of their advance of £100, plus interest £4 2s. Od., and a remittance was sent to them accordingly.
- Received from A. Y. Co. an acceptance for £200 (bill No.330), against which the Export Bank Ltd. advanced £160.
- „ 30 Export Bank Ltd. advised having received £350, being payment in full of bill No.324. They deducted their advance of £280, plus interest £6 5s. Od., and placed the balance to the credit of the company's Special Margins Account.
- May 20 Received from the Bombay agent a remittance for £70, being the net proceeds of the sale by him of the goods originally sold to X. Y. The agent advised that he had lodged with X. Y. a claim for the shortfall, plus an amount of £10 for warehousing the goods prior to the sale as this may have to be paid by the company.
- „ 23 Advice from Export Bank Ltd. of the receipt by them of £55, being payment on account, against partial delivery, of bill No.317 for £165, upon which they had made an advance of 80%.

The company's own bankers were the Empire Bank Ltd. All amounts received were paid to the credit of the company's account there and all payments made by cheque.

Shew -- by means of ledger accounts -- how the foregoing transactions would be entered in the books of the company, and bring down the balances on the various accounts.

BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------------------------------|---------------|----------|----------|--------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|----------|
| Mar. 31 To Balance b/f. | 8,620 | 0 | 0 | Apr. 3 By Export Bank Ltd., Bill No.308 .. | 150 | 0 | 0 |
| Apr. 20 „ A. Y. Co. Bill No.330 | 200 | 0 | 0 | „ 12 „ Export Bank Ltd., Bill No.320 .. | 200 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | „ 15 „ Cash, Bill No.312 .. | 185 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | „ 20 „ X. Y., Bill No.316 | 125 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | „ 30 „ Export Bank Ltd., Bill No.324 .. | 350 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | May 31 „ Balance c/d. | 7,810 | 0 | 0 |
| | <u>£8,820</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> | | <u>£8,820</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> |
| June 1 To Balance b/d. | 7,810 | 0 | 0 | | | | |

SUSPENSE ACCOUNT - RECEIPT ON ACCOUNT OF BILL NO.317 AGAINST PARTIAL DELIVERY

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|------------------------|----|----|----|----------------------------|----|----|----|
| May 31 To Balance c/d. | 55 | 0 | 0 | May 23 By Export Bank Ltd. | 55 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | June 1 By Balance b/d. | 55 | 0 | 0 |

EXPORT BANK LTD. - ADVANCES ON BILLS ACCOUNT

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------|----------|
| Apr. 3 To Bill No.308 .. | 150 | 0 | 0 | Mar. 31 By Balance brought forward .. | 6,535 | 0 | 0 |
| „ 12 „ Bill No.320 .. | 200 | 0 | 0 | Apr. 3 „ Cash, Bill No.308 .. | 26 | 10 | 0 |
| „ „ Cash .. | 4 | 15 | 0 | „ „ Interest, Bill No.308 .. | 3 | 10 | 0 |
| „ 20 „ Cash, repayment of advance on Bill No.316 | 34 | 2 | 0 | „ 12 „ Interest, Bill No.320 .. | 4 | 15 | |
| „ 30 „ Bill No.324 .. | 350 | 0 | 0 | „ 20 „ Interest, Bill No.316 .. | 4 | 2 | |
| May 23 „ Bill No.317, payment on account | 55 | 0 | 0 | „ 20 „ Cash, advance against Bill No.330 | 160 | 0 | 0 |
| „ 31 „ Balance c/d. | 5,940 | 0 | 0 | „ 30 „ Interest Bill No.324 .. | 6 | 5 | 0 |
| | <u>£6,803</u> | <u>17</u> | <u>0</u> | „ „ Special Margins Account, Balance re Bill No.324 | 63 | 15 | 0 |
| | | | | | <u>£6,803</u> | <u>17</u> | <u>0</u> |
| | | | | June 1 By Balance b/d. | 5,940 | 0 | 0 |

EXPORT BANK LTD. - SPECIAL MARGINS ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|---------------------------------|---|----|----|------|----|---|--------|-----------------------|---|----|----|------|----|---|
| Mar. 31 | To Balance brought forward .. | £ | s. | d. | 816 | 0 | 0 | May 31 | By Balance c/d. | £ | s. | d. | 879 | 15 | 0 |
| Apr. 30 | .. Advances on Bills Account .. | | | | 63 | 15 | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | £879 | 15 | 0 | | | | | | £879 | 15 | 0 |
| June 1 | To Balance b/d. | | | | 879 | 15 | 0 | | | | | | | | |

X.Y.

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|---------------------------------|---|----|----|------|---|---|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|---|----|------|---|---|
| Apr. 20 | To Bill No.316, not accepted .. | £ | s. | d. | 125 | 0 | 0 | May 20 | By Cash - Sale of goods covered by | £ | s. | d. | | |
| May 20 | .. Warehousing Expenses Account | | | | | | | .. Bill No.316 | | | | 70 | 0 | 0 |
| | .. Suspense | | | | 10 | 0 | 0 | .. 31 .. Balance c/d. | | | | 65 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | £135 | 0 | 0 | | | | | £135 | 0 | 0 |
| June 1 | To Balance b/d. | | | | 65 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | |

INTEREST ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------|---------------------|---|----|----|-----|----|---|--------|-----------------|---|----|-----|----|----|---|
| Apr. 3 | To Export Bank Ltd. | £ | s. | d. | 3 | 10 | 0 | May 31 | By Balance c/d. | £ | s. | d. | 18 | 12 | 0 |
| " 12 | .. Export Bank Ltd. | | | | 4 | 15 | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| " 20 | .. Export Bank Ltd. | | | | 4 | 2 | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| " 30 | .. Export Bank Ltd. | | | | 6 | 5 | 0 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | £18 | 12 | 0 | | | | | £18 | 12 | 0 | |
| June 1 | To Balance b/d. | | | | 18 | 12 | 0 | | | | | | | | |

§ 5. Accommodation Bills

An *Accommodation Bill* is one to which a person has put his name, whether as a drawer, acceptor or indorser, without valuable consideration, for the purpose of accommodating some other party who desires to raise money by negotiating it.

There are three common methods of raising money on accommodation bills:

- (1) Where one party, for the convenience of another, accepts a bill without valuable consideration, to enable the drawer to discount the bill and thus raise money, the drawer repaying the acceptor when the bill becomes due.

Illustration (1)

For B's convenience A accepted a bill on 1st January 19.., for £100 at three months.

B discounted the bill forthwith, and paid the proceeds, viz., £98, into his bank.

On the bill falling due A met it and notified B, who had arranged to reimburse A on the due date. B, however, was unable to do this, but arranged to give A immediately a cheque for £50, and a bill at one month for the balance. This bill was duly met at maturity.

Show the entries as they would appear in the books of both A and B, and state at what date the bills fell due.

A's BOOKS

B's ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|--------|------------------|------|---------|---------------------|------|
| 19.. | | £ | 19.. | | £ |
| Jan. 1 | To Bills Payable | 100 | April 4 | By Cash | 50 |
| | | | | .. Bills Receivable | 50 |
| | | £100 | | | £100 |

BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | |
|---------|-----------------|--|--|-----|--------|--------------|--|-----|
| 19.. | | | | £ | 19.. | | | £ |
| April 4 | To Cash | | | 100 | Jan. 1 | By B | | 100 |
| | | | | | | | | |

CASH BOOK

| | | | | | | | | |
|---------|----------------------------|--|--|------|---------|--------------------------|--|------|
| 19.. | | | | £ | 19.. | | | £ |
| April 4 | To B | | | 50 | April 4 | By Bills Payable | | 100 |
| May 7 | " Bills Receivable | | | 50 | | | | |
| | | | | £100 | | | | £100 |

BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | |
|---------|--------------|--|--|----|-------|-----------------|--|----|
| 19.. | | | | £ | 19.. | | | £ |
| April 4 | To B | | | 50 | May 7 | By Cash | | 50 |
| | | | | | | | | |

B's BOOKS

A's ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | |
|---------|-------------------------|--|--|------|--------|-----------------------------|--|------|
| 19.. | | | | £ | 19.. | | | £ |
| April 4 | To Cash | | | 50 | Jan. 1 | By Bills Receivable | | 100 |
| " | " Bills Payable | | | 50 | | | | |
| | | | | £100 | | | | £100 |

BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | |
|--------|--------------|--|--|------|--------|-----------------|--|------|
| 19.. | | | | £ | 19.. | | | £ |
| Jan. 1 | To A | | | 100 | Jan. 1 | By Cash | | 100 |
| | | | | £100 | | | | £100 |

CASH BOOK

| | | | | | | | | |
|--------|-----------------------------|--|--|-----|---------|--------------------------------|--|----|
| 19.. | | | | £ | 19.. | | | £ |
| Jan. 1 | To Bills Receivable | | | 100 | Jan. 1 | By Discounting Charges | | 2 |
| | | | | | April 4 | " A | | 50 |
| | | | | | May 7 | " Bills Payable | | 50 |

DISCOUNTING CHARGES ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | |
|--------|-----------------|--|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| 19.. | | | | £ | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Cash | | | 2 | | | | |

BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----------------|--|--|----|---------|--------------|--|----|
| 19.. | | | | £ | 19.. | | | £ |
| May 7 | To Cash | | | 50 | April 4 | By A | | 50 |

Note. The first bill fell due on the 4th April, and the second on the 7th May.

- (2) Where one person draws a bill on another party, who accepts it, without valuable consideration, for their mutual convenience. The bill is discounted by the drawer, who immediately remits half the proceeds to the acceptor, remitting the cash to meet his half share when the bill becomes due, each party sharing the expenses of discount.

Illustration (2)

For the mutual convenience of A and B, A draws a bill on B for £100 at three months on 1st January 19... B accepts the bill and returns it to A, who discounts it with his bankers on 4th January at 6 per cent., the arrangement being that A and B shall share the proceeds equally.

On the bill falling due A remits his proportion, and the bill is met in due course by B. Show the entries as they would appear in the books of both A and B, making calculations in months.

A's BOOKS**B's ACCOUNT**

| 19.. | | | £ s. d. | 19.. | | | £ s. d. |
|---------|--------------------|--|-----------------|--------|--------------------------|--|-----------------|
| Jan. 4 | To Cash | | 49 5 0 | Jan. 1 | By Bills Receivable .. . | | 100 0 0 |
| | " Discount | | 15 0 | | | | |
| April 4 | " Cash | | 50 0 0 | | | | |
| | | | <u>£100 0 0</u> | | | | <u>£100 0 0</u> |

BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT

| 19.. | | | £ s. d. | 19.. | | | £ s. d. |
|--------|--------------|--|---------|--------|-----------------|--|---------|
| Jan. 1 | To B | | 100 0 0 | Jan. 4 | By Cash | | 100 0 0 |

CASH BOOK

| 19.. | | | £ s. d. | 19.. | | | £ s. d. |
|--------|--------------------------|--|---------|---------|-----------------------------|--|---------|
| Jan. 4 | To Bills Receivable .. . | | 100 0 0 | Jan. 4 | By Discounting Charges .. . | | 1 10 0 |
| | | | | | " B | | 49 5 0 |
| | | | | April 4 | " B | | 50 0 0 |

DISCOUNTING CHARGES ACCOUNT

| 19.. | | | £ s. d. | 19.. | | | £ s. d. |
|--------|-----------------|--|---------|--------|--------------|--|---------|
| Jan. 4 | To Cash | | 1 10 0 | Jan. 4 | By B | | 15 0 |

B's BOOKS**A's ACCOUNT**

| 19.. | | | £ s. d. | 19.. | | | £ s. d. |
|--------|--------------------------|--|-----------------|---------|----------------------------|--|-----------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Bills Payable | | 100 0 0 | Jan. 4 | By Cash | | 49 5 0 |
| | | | | " 4 | " Discounting Charges .. . | | 15 0 |
| | | | | April 4 | " Cash | | 50 0 0 |
| | | | <u>£100 0 0</u> | | | | <u>£100 0 0</u> |

BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT

| 19.. | | | £ s. d. | 19.. | | | £ s. d. |
|---------|-----------------|--|---------|--------|--------------|--|---------|
| April 4 | To Cash | | 100 0 0 | Jan. 1 | By A | | 100 0 0 |

CASH BOOK

| 19.. | | | £ s. d. | 19.. | | | £ s. d. |
|---------|--------------|--|---------|---------|--------------------------|--|---------|
| Jan. 4 | To A | | 49 5 0 | April 4 | By Bills Payable | | 100 0 0 |
| April 4 | " | | 50 0 0 | | | | |

DISCOUNTING CHARGES ACCOUNT

19.. |
Jan. 4 | To A.

£ s. d.
15 0

Note to Illustration.

When it is stated that a bill is discounted at a certain rate per cent., the addition of the words 'per annum' is usually implied, and the calculation of the discount should be made on the term of the bill. In practice, discount is calculated on the number of days, including days of grace, but in these illustrations it has been calculated in months.

- (3) Where two parties each draw a bill of equal amount on the other, and discount the other's bill, meeting their own bills when they fall due, and paying the expenses of discounting each other's bill.

Illustration (3)

On 1st January 19.., A draws a bill on B at four months for £500, and B draws on A for a similar amount and term. Both bills are accepted and discounted respectively at 5 per cent. At maturity A meets his own acceptance, but B's acceptance is dishonoured, with the result that, A, the drawer, is called upon to take it up. The bank charges expenses on the dishonoured bill 6s. 8d. B then accepts a new bill at three months for the amount due by him, plus interest at 5 per cent. per annum, which is duly met at maturity.

Show the entries in the books of both parties, making calculations in months.

A's BOOKS**B's ACCOUNT**

| 19.. | | £ | s. | d. | 19.. | | £ | s. | d. |
|--------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|----|----|--------|---------------------|--------------------|----|----|
| Jan. 1 | To Bills Payable | 500 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By Bills Receivable | 500 | 0 | 0 |
| May 4 | „ Cash: Bill dishonoured and expenses | 500 | 6 | 8 | May 4 | „ „ | 506 | 11 | 9 |
| | „ Interest | 6 | 5 | 1 | | | | | |
| | | <u>£1,006 11 9</u> | | | | | <u>£1,006 11 9</u> | | |

BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT

| 19.. | | £ | s. | d. | 19.. | | £ | s. | d. |
|--------|------|--------------------|----|----|--------|---------|--------------------|----|----|
| Jan. 1 | To B | 500 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By Cash | 500 | 0 | 0 |
| May 4 | „ „ | 506 | 11 | 9 | Aug. 7 | „ „ | 506 | 11 | 9 |
| | | <u>£1,006 11 9</u> | | | | | <u>£1,006 11 9</u> | | |

BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT

| 19.. | | £ | s. | d. | 19.. | | £ | s. | d. |
|-------|---------|-----|----|----|--------|------|-----|----|----|
| May 4 | To Cash | 500 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By B | 500 | 0 | 0 |

CASH BOOK

| 19.. | | £ | s. | d. | 19.. | | £ | s. | d. |
|--------|---------------------|-----|----|----|--------|-------------------------------------|-----|----|----|
| Jan. 1 | To Bills Receivable | 500 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By Discounting Charges | 8 | 6 | 8 |
| Aug. 7 | | 506 | 11 | 9 | May 4 | „ Bills Payable | 500 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | „ B - Bill dishonoured and expenses | 500 | 6 | 8 |

DISCOUNTING CHARGES AND INTEREST ACCOUNT

| 19.. | | £ | s. | d. | 19.. | | £ | s. | d. |
|--------|---------|---|----|----|-------|------|---|----|----|
| Jan. 1 | To Cash | 8 | 6 | 8 | May 4 | By B | 6 | 5 | 1 |

(b) Retired Bills

Bills may be 'retired' before their due date, either under rebate (*see (e) below*) or for 'renewal', as in the following circumstances:

It occasionally happens that a person who has accepted a bill, subsequently discovers that it will be inconvenient or impossible for him to meet it at maturity, and consequently he approaches the drawer of the bill, and endeavours to make arrangements for the withdrawal of the original bill and the substitution of another in its place, thus giving himself additional time wherewith to find the money required. In such cases interest is usually charged by the drawer for the convenience afforded.

In some cases, the drawer may have discounted the bill and may not be aware of the identity of the present holder, or may be reluctant to approach the holder (*e.g.*, his bank), as such a course may tend to damage his own credit. If he wishes to assist the acceptor, he gives him a cheque for the amount of the bill so that it can be met, and draws another bill for an equivalent amount with possibly the addition of interest, for a term to meet the convenience of the acceptor. The drawer would then discount this bill so as to obtain funds to meet the cheque. The charge for interest would compensate him for the discount which he would be called upon to pay in respect of the new bill.

Illustration

(a) K. & K. of New York, on 8th June consigned goods of the invoice value of £4,375 to J. & J., of London, drawing by arrangement on the F. T. Bank Ltd., in London, a three months draft for 80% of the invoice value.

(b) J. & J., whose bankers are Barclays, drew a cheque on 11th Sept. to meet the draft.

(c) In order to finance the transaction, on 10th Sept., J. & J. drew a three month's bill on the F. T. Bank for £3,500, discounting this bill with the F. T. Bank, who held the documents of the consignment as security. The F. T. Bank charged one-half per cent. commission; discount was £49 11s. 6d. The balance was passed by cheque to J. & J., who paid the cheque into their bank.

(d) On 13th December, the bill in (c) was returned, J. & J. giving a cheque to meet it. J. & J. drew a fresh bill at three months for £4,000 on the F. T. Bank, depositing further security. The bill was discounted by the F. T. Bank, commission being again one-half per cent., discount £49 0s. 11d. The balance was passed by cheque to J. and J., who paid in the cheque to their bankers.

Record the transactions in J. & J.'s ledger.

J. & J.'s LEDGER**K. & K.**

| | | £ | s. | d. | | | £ | s. | d. |
|--------|---------------------------------------------------------|-------|----|----|--------|----------|-------|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | | 19.. | | | | |
| June 8 | To F. T. Bank - Bill at 3 months drawn on F. T. Bank | 3,500 | 0 | 0 | June 8 | By Goods | 4,375 | 0 | 0 |

F. T. BANK

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|----|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | 19.. | | | |
| Sept. 10 To Bills Receivable - Bill dated 10th Sept. discounted | 3,500 | 0 | 0 | June 8 By K. & K., Bill at 3 months accepted this day | 3,500 | 0 | 0 |
| " 11 " Cash - Discharge of Bill dated 8th June | 3,500 | 0 | 0 | Sept. 10 " Bills Receivable - Bill at 3 months accepted this day | 3,500 | 0 | 0 |
| Dec. 13 " Cash - Discharge of Bill dated 10th Sept. | 3,500 | 0 | 0 | " Cash for Bill dated 10th Sept. discounted | 3,432 | 18 | 6 |
| | | | | " Commission | 17 | 10 | 0 |
| | | | | " Discounting charge | 49 | 11 | 6 |
| <hr/> | | | | | | | |
| Dec. 13 To Bills Receivable - Bill dated 13th Dec. discounted | 4,000 | 0 | 0 | Dec. 13 By Bills Receivable, bill at 3 months | 4,000 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | " Cash for bill dated 13th Dec. discounted | 3,930 | 19 | 1 |
| | | | | " Commission | 20 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | " Discounting charge | 49 | 0 | 11 |

CASH BOOK

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|------------------------------------------------|-------|----|----|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | 19.. | | | |
| Sept. 10 To F. T. Bank - Bill discounted | 3,432 | 18 | 6 | Sept. 11 By F. T. Bank - Discharge of Bill dated 8th June | 3,500 | 0 | 0 |
| Dec. 13 " F. T. Bank - Bill discounted | 3,930 | 19 | 1 | Dec. 13 By F. T. Bank - Discharge of Bill dated 10th Sept. | 3,500 | 0 | 0 |

BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------|----|----|-----------------------------------------------|-------|----|----|
| 19.. | | | | 19.. | | | |
| Sept. 10 To F. T. Bank - Bill at 3 months | 3,500 | 0 | 0 | Sept. 10 By F. T. Bank, bill discounted | 3,500 | 0 | 0 |
| Dec. 13 " F. T. Bank - Bill at 3 months | 4,000 | 0 | 0 | Dec. 13 " F. T. Bank, bill discounted | 4,000 | 0 | 0 |

COMMISSION AND DISCOUNTING CHARGES ACCOUNT

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|-------------------------------------------|----|----|----|--|---|----|----|
| Sept. 10 To F. T. Bank - Commission | 17 | 10 | 0 | | | | |
| " Discounting | 49 | 11 | 6 | | | | |
| Dec. 13 To F. T. Bank - Commission | 20 | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| " Discounting | 49 | 0 | 11 | | | | |

(c) Short Bills

This is a term applied to bills which have been paid into the bank for collection to await maturity. They must not be confused with discounted bills, and no entry whatever need be made in the books, except by way of memorandum. Sometimes, however, for the sake of convenience, separate bills accounts are kept for the various collecting banks, which accounts are debited with all bills paid in to them for collection, and credited when the bills are met or dishonoured. It should be remembered, however, that the banks are not debtors for these bills, but only hold them as agents for collection.

In no circumstances should a short bill paid into the bank for collection be entered in the cash book until it is met.

(d) Documentary Bills

When the seller of goods which are to be exported wishes to obtain payment therefor, or acceptance of a bill, before the goods are actually delivered, he may, by arrangement with the consignee, draw a bill upon him for the value of the goods, and attach to

the draft a copy of the invoice and the bill of lading. Such a draft is termed a *documentary bill*. The *bill of lading* is the receipt of the master of the ship for the goods, and the document of title thereto. It also provides evidence of the contract of affreightment. These documents are handed by the consignor to his banker, who in turn forwards them to his own correspondent in the place where the consignee carries on business. To obtain the goods, the consignee must obtain the bill of lading, and he cannot get this unless he either meets or accepts the bill, according to the instructions given to the bankers.

As a general rule the consignee is notified of the fact that a bill has been drawn upon him and if he accepts the bill before the arrival of the goods he does so conditionally 'against documents'.

The English banker, upon receiving notification from his correspondent that the bill has been accepted or met, as the case may be, credits the seller of the goods with an equivalent amount, subject to his collecting charges.

Alternatively the bill may be discounted in the first instance, the same procedure being followed.

Where goods are imported, payment is usually effected in a similar manner.

(e) Rebated Bills

In some cases bills are met before their due date, *i.e.*, retired under rebate, usually for the purpose of obtaining possession of goods or documents against which the bill was drawn and which cannot be released until the bill is discharged. Where this is done a rebate is allowed, representing interest on the amount of the bill for the period unexpired, based upon the current market rate of interest.

On retiring a bill under rebate the cash book is credited and Bills Payable Account debited with the net amount paid in discharge of the bill, while the amount of the rebate is credited to Interest Account (or to Discounting Charges Account), and debited to Bills Payable Account.

PARTNERSHIP ACCOUNTS

§ 1. The Nature of Partnership

The law of partnership is contained in the Partnership Act, 1890, and in the Limited Partnerships Act, 1907, the former consolidating the law then existing into the form of a code, and the latter amending it to permit of limited liability under certain conditions.

Partnership is defined by the Partnership Act, 1890, as 'the relation which subsists between persons carrying on a business in common with a view of profit'. The participation in profits is not, however, in itself conclusive evidence of the existence of a partnership, the relationship resting upon mutual intention. Section 2 of the Partnership Act, 1890, sets forth circumstances where a person so participating would not necessarily be deemed to be a partner; *e.g.*, the receipt of remuneration by a servant on the basis of a share of profits, or the payment to the widow of a deceased partner of an annuity consisting of a portion of the profits. It is a matter of considerable importance to the persons interested, since where a partnership exists, each partner incurs unlimited liability for all the debts and obligations of the firm.

In the event of any person advancing money to the firm on loan, and receiving a rate of interest varying with the profits, or an actual share of profits, it is essential for him to see that the agreement is in writing and signed by, or on behalf of, all the parties, in order that he may not be held liable as a partner, with consequent risk of being called upon to meet the liabilities of the firm (Partnership Act, 1890, Section 2). The lender in the circumstances mentioned would be subject to a further disability, inasmuch as in the event of the bankruptcy of the firm, his claim would rank after those of the other unsecured creditors (Partnership Act, 1890, Section 3).

Persons may be co-owners of property, and may derive a profit from the use of such property, but co-ownership does not of itself constitute a partnership. The true test in such cases is whether a business is being carried on and whether every co-owner is empowered to act as agent for the other or others. Partnership entails the mutual agency of the partners. Each partner, while himself a principal, is an agent for the other partners within the scope of the business carried on, and the other partners are bound by his acts so performed. The mere co-ownership of property does not imply such a condition.

Not more than 20 persons (or 10 in the case of a banking business) can constitute a partnership for carrying on a business. If associations with more than this number carry on business they are illegal bodies and are unable to enforce any rights under contracts into which they may have entered, unless they are registered under the Companies Act or under some other Act of Parliament, or are formed under a Royal Charter.

PARTNERS' CURRENT ACCOUNTS

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | | A £ | B £ | C £ |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|------------|------------|---------------------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| To Appropriation Account: Loss .. | 100 | 100 | 100 | By Interest on Capital .. | 500 | 250 | 100 |
| „ Balance c/d. .. | 400 | 150 | — | | | | |
| | <u>£500</u> | <u>250</u> | <u>100</u> | | <u>£500</u> | <u>250</u> | <u>100</u> |
| | | | | By Balance b/d. .. | 400 | 150 | — |

If the agreement provided that such profit as was available should be taken as interest on capital the following would be the position:

APPROPRIATION ACCOUNT

| | £ | £ | | £ |
|---------------------------|-----|-------------|---------------------------|-------------|
| To Interest on Capitals - | | | By Profit for the year .. | 550 |
| A 10/17ths .. | 323 | | | |
| B 5/17ths .. | 162 | | | |
| C 2/17ths .. | 65 | | | |
| | | 550 | | |
| | | <u>£550</u> | | <u>£550</u> |

(b) Interest on Drawings

Frequently partners make drawings in varying amounts and at irregular intervals, and in such cases if interest is charged the rights of the partners are adjusted. In many cases, however, drawings are made by mutual agreement and no interest is charged at all.

Where interest is charged, it is usually calculated at a fixed rate per cent. per annum from the date of each drawing to the date the accounts are closed, the amount being credited to Interest on Drawings Account, and debited to the partners' Drawings Accounts. At the close of the accounting period the Interest on Drawings Account is closed by transfer to the Profit and Loss Appropriation Account.

(c) Partners' Salaries

As already stated, in the absence of agreement no partner is entitled, before arriving at the amount of divisible profits, to remuneration for his services to the firm. In the following cases, however, it may be desirable for the partnership agreement to provide for the payment of salaries to the partners:

- (1) Where some of the partners take a greater or more effective part in the conduct and management of the business than others.
- (2) Where there are junior partners, whom it is desired to remunerate by way of a fixed salary plus, perhaps, a small percentage of the profits.
- (3) Where the partnership business is wholly managed by the partners, and it is desired to ascertain the true profit, after such a charge for managerial services has been made as would have been incurred had the business not been managed by the proprietors.

Where the agreement provides for the payment of salaries to partners, it must be realised that such payments, although designated salaries are, like interest on capital,

- (3) Salaries and Wages include the following monthly drawings by the partners: Duck £50, Drake £30, Cygnet £25.
- (4) Partners had during the year been supplied with goods from stock and it was agreed that these should be charged to them as follows: Duck £60, Drake £40.
- (5) On 31st December, rates paid in advance and office and trade expenses owing were £250 and £240 respectively.
- (6) Depreciation of shop fittings is to be provided at 5 per cent. per annum on cost.
- (7) Professional Charges include £250 fees paid in respect of the acquisition of the leasehold premises, which fees are to be capitalised.
- (8) The cost of and the additions and alterations to the leasehold premises were to be written off over twenty-five years, commencing on 1st January in the year in which the premises were acquired.

You are required to prepare:

- (a) the Trading and Profit and Loss Account for the year ended 31st December, 19...
 (b) the Balance Sheet as on that date; and
 (c) Partners' Current Accounts in columnar form for the year ended 31st December, 19...

DUCK, DRAKE AND CYGNET
TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

(a) For the Year Ended 31st December, 19...

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|---------|--------|
| To Stock, 1st January | £ | 4,200 | By Sales | £ | 46,500 |
| „ Purchases | 28,000 | | „ Goods supplied to partners | 100 | |
| | 32,200 | | | | |
| Less Stock, 31st December | 3,600 | | | | |
| | 28,600 | | | | |
| Cost of Sales | 18,000 | | | | |
| „ Gross Profit, carried down | £46,600 | | | £46,600 | |
| | | | | | |
| To Salaries and Wages | 5,140 | By Gross Profit, brought down | 18,000 | | |
| „ Office and Trade Expenses | 4,760 | | | | |
| „ Rent, Rates and Insurance | 800 | | | | |
| „ Professional Charges | 100 | | | | |
| „ Bad Debts | 110 | | | | |
| „ Amortization of Leasehold Premises | 290 | | | | |
| „ Depreciation of Shop Fittings | 180 | | | | |
| „ Net Profit, carried down | 6,620 | | | | |
| | £18,000 | | | £18,000 | |
| | | | | | |
| To Partners' Salaries: | £ | | By Net Profit, brought down | 6,620 | |
| Duck | 1,000 | | | | |
| Drake | 500 | | | | |
| Cygnet | 500 | 2,000 | | | |
| „ Interest on Capital: | | | | | |
| Duck | 400 | | | | |
| Drake | 250 | | | | |
| Cygnet | 150 | 800 | | | |
| „ Shares of Net Profit: | | | | | |
| Duck, 50 per cent. | 1,910 | | | | |
| Less Transfer to Cygnet | 1,763 | | | | |
| Drake, 30 per cent. | 1,146 | | | | |
| Less Transfer to Cygnet | 89 | 1,057 | | | |
| Cygnet, 20 per cent. | 764 | | | | |
| Add Transfer from Duck and Cygnet | 236 | 1,000 | | | |
| | £6,620 | | | £6,620 | |

(b)

BALANCE SHEET as on 31st December, 19..

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|-----------------------------|-------|----------------|-------------------------------------------|--------|----------------|
| CAPITAL ACCOUNTS: | | | FIXED ASSETS: | | |
| Duck | 8,000 | | Freehold Premises – cost | | 6,000 |
| Drake | 5,000 | | Leasehold Premises – cost | 7,250 | |
| Cygnat | 3,000 | | Less Provision for amortization | 290 | |
| | | 16,000 | | | 6,960 |
| CURRENT ACCOUNTS: | | | Shop Fittings – cost | 3,600 | |
| Duck | 2,403 | | Less Provision for depreciation | 1,580 | |
| Drake | 1,507 | | | | 2,020 |
| Cygnat | 1,250 | | | | |
| | | 5,160 | | | 14,980 |
| | | 21,160 | CURRENT ASSETS: | | |
| CURRENT LIABILITIES: | | | Stock | 3,600 | |
| Trade Creditors | 3,700 | | Debtors | £2,000 | |
| Expense Creditors | 240 | | Less Provision for Doubtful Debts | 100 | |
| | | 3,940 | | | 1,900 |
| | | | Payments in Advance | 250 | |
| | | | Balance at Bank | 4,370 | |
| | | | | | 10,120 |
| | | <u>£25,100</u> | | | <u>£25,100</u> |

(c)

PARTNERS' CURRENT ACCOUNTS

| | Duck £ | Drake £ | Cygnat £ | | Duck £ | Drake £ | Cygnat £ |
|----------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|-------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| To Goods | 60 | 40 | — | By Balances, brought forward | 1,600 | 1,200 | 800 |
| “ Cash | 2,300 | 1,460 | 1,200 | “ Salaries | 1,000 | 500 | 500 |
| “ Balance, carried forward | 2,403 | 1,507 | 1,250 | “ Interest on Capital | 400 | 250 | 150 |
| | | | | “ Share of Profit | 1,763 | 1,057 | 1,000 |
| | <u>£4,763</u> | <u>£3,007</u> | <u>£2,450</u> | | <u>£4,763</u> | <u>£3,007</u> | <u>£2,450</u> |
| | | | | By Balances, brought forward | 2,403 | 1,507 | 1,250 |

§ 4. Partners' Fixed Capital Accounts; Current Accounts; Loan Accounts

(a) Fixed Capital and Current Accounts

Where, as is usual, the partnership agreement provides for a fixed amount of capital to be contributed by each partner, it is preferable for the amounts thereof to be credited to the respective partners' Capital Accounts, and for partners' drawings, salaries, interest on capital and shares of profit to be dealt with in Current Accounts, as in the last preceding illustration. This enables a clear distinction to be made in the accounts between fixed capital (no part of which should be withdrawn, except by agreement) and undrawn profits. If partners' drawings, salaries, interest and shares of profit are passed through the Capital Accounts, the balances on these accounts will be constantly fluctuating, and there may be a danger of a partner's capital being depleted by drawings in excess of his share of profits, etc., without particular attention being drawn to the fact.

(b) Partners' Loan Accounts

Where a partner makes an advance to the firm as distinct from capital, the amount thereof should be credited to a separate Loan Account, and not to the partner's Capital Account. This is important, since under the Partnership Act, 1890, advances by partners are repayable on dissolution in priority to capital. Moreover, even in the absence of agreement on the point, a partner is entitled, under the Partnership Act, 1890, to interest at 5 per cent per annum on advances made to the firm, whereas he is not entitled to interest on capital. Interest on a partner's advance at the agreed rate (or, in the absence of agreement, at 5 per cent per annum) should be credited to his

Current Account, and debited to Profit and Loss Account. In this respect also, an advance by a partner differs from capital contributed by him, since interest on the advance is as much a charge against profit as interest paid on a loan from a person who is not a partner. Interest on capital, on the other hand, is an appropriation of profit, being in the nature of a preferential allocation of divisible profits.

§ 5. Goodwill in Partnership Accounts

(a) Definition and Valuation of Goodwill

The following are some judicial definitions of goodwill:

'The goodwill of a business is the advantage, whatever it may be, which a person gets by continuing to carry on, and being entitled to represent to the outside world that he is carrying on a business, which has been carried on for some time previously' (Warrington, J., in *Hill v. Fearis* (1905), 1 Ch. 466).

'[Goodwill] is a thing very easy to describe, very difficult to define. It is the benefit and advantage of the good name, reputation and connection of a business. It is the attractive force which brings in custom. It is the one thing which distinguishes an old established business from a new business at its first start . . . Goodwill is composed of a variety of elements. It differs in its composition in different trades and in different businesses in the same trade. One element may preponderate here, and another there' (Lord Macnaughten in *Commissioners of Inland Revenue v. Muller* (1901), A.C. 217).

From the accountant's viewpoint, goodwill, in the sense of attracting custom, has little significance unless it is valuable in the sense of having a saleable value. To the accountant, therefore, goodwill may be said to be that element arising from the reputation, connection, or other advantages possessed by a business which enables it to earn profits greater than the return normally to be expected on the capital invested in the assets employed in the business. In considering the return normally to be expected, regard must be had to the nature of the business, the risks involved, fair management remuneration and any other relevant circumstances.

The goodwill possessed by a firm may be due, *inter alia*, to the following:

- (a) The location of the business premises.
- (b) The nature of the firm's products or the reputation of its service.
- (c) The possession of favourable contracts, complete or partial monopoly, etc.
- (d) The personal reputation of the partners.
- (e) The possession of efficient and contented employees.
- (f) The possession of trade marks, patents or a well-known business name.
- (g) The continuance of advertising campaigns.
- (h) The maintenance of the quality of the firm's product, and development of the business with changing conditions.
- (i) Freedom from legislative restrictions.

Although a firm may possess goodwill, it is not customary to raise an account

therefor in the books except to the extent that cash or other assets of the firm have been used to pay for it. It follows, therefore, that when goodwill exists and is unrecorded in the books, the capitals of the partners of the firm are understated to the extent of the value of the goodwill. Even though a Goodwill Account may at some time have been raised in the books, the account therefor would not be adjusted to give effect to every variation in its value, and in most cases, therefore, the partners' capitals are to some extent under-stated or over-stated in the books by their shares of the unrecorded appreciation or depreciation in the value of goodwill.

As the amount by which goodwill is undervalued (or overvalued) in the books is a profit (or a loss) to be shared by the partners in their profit-sharing ratio, any alteration in the proportions in which profits and losses are shared, without first making an adjustment in the book value of goodwill, will result in an advantage to one or more partners and a disadvantage to others.

In each of the following cases a change in the profit-sharing ratio takes place and therefore, unless a Goodwill Account already stands in the books *at its correct value*, some adjustment must be made:

- (1) upon the introduction of a new partner;
- (2) upon the retirement or death of a partner;
- (3) upon an agreed change in profit-sharing ratio between the partners.

Various methods are advocated for the valuation of goodwill. In many cases the method adopted is a purely arbitrary one and is often governed by the custom of the particular trade in which the business is engaged. The more usual bases of valuation are as follows:

- (a) The average profits of a given number of past years multiplied by an agreed number. Thus, 'three years' purchase of the net profits' is commonly spoken of as the basis upon which goodwill is to be valued.

This method is purely arbitrary and will frequently produce a figure for goodwill out of all proportion to its true value.

Illustration (1)

The average net profit made by A, B & Co. for the past five years has been £1,000 per annum before charging interest on capital and partners' salaries.

The average capital employed in the business has been £10,000.

On the basis of three years' purchase of the net profits £3,000 would be payable for the goodwill of the firm, but it is apparent that no goodwill exists and, in fact, there is *badwill*, since no one would be prepared to pay £13,000 for a business which produces only £1,000 per annum before making any provision for fair remuneration to the proprietors in respect of their services to the business. Allowing say £500 per annum for the services of the proprietors, only £500 per annum remains for interest on capital invested and, therefore, at 10% per annum such a business would be worth only £5,000, irrespective of the fact that there is £10,000 invested therein.

- (b) The average *gross* income of the business for a number of past years multiplied by an agreed number.

This method is frequently adopted by professional firms, but is subject to the disadvantages described above. In many cases the gross income of certain years will have been inflated by business of a non-recurring nature, and therefore the purchaser will be paying for goodwill calculated on income which he himself will not enjoy. Further, it is quite conceivable that the expenses incurred in earning the gross income may be so great that there is actually a loss, in which case a sum will be payable for the 'goodwill' of a business from which a loss is to be expected.

(c) The capital value of an annuity for an agreed number of years of an amount equal to the average *super profits* of the business.

The *super profits* of a business are the profits which can be expected in the future over and above those necessary to pay a fair return upon the capital invested in the business, having regard to the risk involved in that particular business, and a fair remuneration for the services of the partners who work therein.

Illustration (2)

The average net profits expected in the future by A, B & Co. are £10,000 per annum.

The average capital employed in the business is £50,000.

The rate of interest expected from capital invested in this class of business, having regard to the risk involved, is 10%.

Fair remuneration to the partners of the firm in respect of their services to the business is £2,500 per annum.

Valuation of Goodwill

| | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------|-------|---------------------|
| Average annual profits .. | | 10,000 |
| Less Interest on capital employed at 10% .. | 5,000 | |
| Partners' remuneration | 2,500 | |
| | <hr/> | 7,500 |
| Annual super-profit | | <hr/> <u>£2,500</u> |

It is now necessary to ascertain the present value of an annuity of £2,500 per annum for a suitable number of years. Alternatively, 'x years' purchase' of £2,500 may be taken as the value of goodwill, according to the number of years that could be regarded as necessary to build up such a goodwill, discounted by reference to the fact that any goodwill purchased is a wasting asset, since the influence of the vendor diminishes as that of the purchaser increases.

(d) The value of the business as a going concern is estimated by reference to the expected earnings and the yield required, and from the figure arrived at the value of the net *tangible* assets is deducted, the difference being taken to represent the value of goodwill.

Illustration (3)

| | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Estimated future annual profit .. | 10,000 |
| Less Partners' remuneration .. | 2,500 |
| | <hr/> |
| Available for interest on capital employed | <u>£7,500</u> |

Assuming a yield of 10% per annum is expected the capital value of the business is £75,000. If the value of the net tangible assets of the business is £50,000 the goodwill is worth a maximum of £25,000. This figure would have to be discounted in many cases, as there is a bigger risk in the earning of super-profits than in the earning of a fair return on money invested in more tangible assets.

(b) Methods of treating Goodwill in the case of an Incoming Partner

It has already been stated that if the value of goodwill is unrecorded in the books the Capital Accounts of the partners are understated.

Assume that the following is the Balance Sheet of the firm of A and B, who share profits, two-thirds and one-third respectively:

A AND B BALANCE SHEET

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------|---------|-----------------------------|---------|
| Capital Accounts: | | Land and Buildings | 5,250 |
| A | £8,500 | Plant and Machinery | 3,075 |
| B | 3,500 | Stock-in-Trade | 4,500 |
| | | Book Debts | £3,000 |
| | 12,000 | Less Provision | 150 |
| Sundry Creditors | 3,975 | Cash at Bank | 2,850 |
| | | | 300 |
| | £15,975 | | £15,975 |

The goodwill of the firm is valued at £6,000 and, therefore, the true capitals of A and B are £4,000 and £2,000 respectively more than the amounts standing to the credit of their Capital Accounts. As these increments arise from the fact that goodwill is not recorded in the books, it is apparent that some adjustment must be made in the event of the introduction of a new partner, in order that he shall not take a share of goodwill without payment.

There are, for all practical purposes, three methods of dealing with the question of goodwill upon the introduction of a new partner.

- (1) An account is raised in the old firm's books for the full value of goodwill, the old partners' Capital Accounts being credited therewith in the proportions in which they share profits or losses. The new partner may or may not bring in capital according to the agreement. In any event, whatever he brings in will be credited to his Capital Account. The effect of this method is to increase the old partners' Capital Accounts to the extent of the value of goodwill previously unrecorded.

Illustration (1)

Assuming the facts given above, A and B agree to admit C into partnership, giving him a one-fifth share of profits; C to bring in capital to the extent of one-quarter of the combined capitals of A and B after adjustment for goodwill. A's and B's proportions of profit in the new firm are to be in the same ratio between themselves as before.

Give journal entries recording these transactions, and prepare the Balance Sheet of the new firm, assuming C to have brought in the requisite cash, stating the proportion in which profits will in future be shared.

JOURNAL

| | Dr. | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------|-------|
| Goodwill | | | |
| To A Capital Account | | 6,000 | 4,000 |
| B | | | 2,000 |
| Being creation of Goodwill as agreed on admittance of C into partnership. | | | |
| <hr/> | | | |
| Cash | | | |
| To C Capital Account | | 4,500 | 4 500 |
| Being Capital brought in, one-fourth of £12,000 + £6,000. | | | |

A, B AND C
BALANCE SHEET

| | £ | | £ |
|-------------------|---------|---------------------|---------|
| Capital Accounts: | | Goodwill | 6,000 |
| A | £8,500 | Land and Buildings | 5,250 |
| Add Goodwill | 4,000 | Plant and Machinery | 3,075 |
| | 12,500 | Stock-in-Trade | 4,500 |
| B | 3,500 | Book Debts | £3,000 |
| Add Goodwill | 2,000 | Less Provision | 150 |
| | 5,500 | | 2,850 |
| C | 4,500 | Cash at Bank | 4,800 |
| Sundry Creditors | 3,975 | | |
| | £26,475 | | £26,475 |

As C is to receive one-fifth of the profits, the remaining four-fifths must be divided — $\frac{4}{5} \times \frac{1}{5}$ to A = $\frac{4}{25}$)
 $\frac{4}{5} \times \frac{1}{5}$ to B = $\frac{4}{25}$) = $\frac{1}{5}$
 leaving $\frac{1}{5}$ C = $\frac{1}{5}$)

Note to Illustration.

Since the goodwill now stands in the books at its full value, and the amounts thereof attributable to A and B are included in the amounts standing to the credit of their Capital Accounts, if the business were sold and the goodwill realised its book value, A and B would automatically receive cash for their shares of the goodwill. If, on the sale of the business, the goodwill realised more or less than its book value, the difference would represent a profit or loss arising *after* the admission of C as a partner, and would be divided between A, B and C in their new profit-sharing ratio, viz. 8 : 4 : 3.

It is sometimes agreed, on the admission of a new partner, that he shall acquire a share of goodwill, without payment, over a period of years. This recognises the fact that the goodwill existing at the date of the new partner's admission is constantly in the process of attenuation and of being replaced by a new goodwill, to the building up of which the new partner has contributed. Effect may be given to such an agreement by writing off the book value of the goodwill over an agreed period of years against the Capital Accounts of the old partners in the proportions in which the goodwill was originally credited to them. For example, if, in the above illustration, it were agreed that C should acquire his share of the firm's goodwill, without payment, over ten years, in each year £600 should be written off the goodwill account, A's capital account being debited with £400 and B's with £200. By this means goodwill would disappear from the books by the end of the ten years, and would become an undisclosed asset, the proceeds of which, if sold, would be divisible between A, B and C in profit-sharing ratio. C would thus have acquired his share of the goodwill without making any payment to A and B. Alternatively, if it is desired to retain goodwill in the books at £6,000 instead of writing down the goodwill by £600 a year C's Capital Account would be credited with one-fifth of that amount, viz., £120, A's Capital Account

By methods (2) and (3) the old partners, A and B, are compensated in cash for the shares of their existing goodwill which they surrender to C, and the goodwill remains an undisclosed asset, the proceeds of which, if sold, would now be divided between A, B and C in their agreed profit-sharing ratio. C would thus recover the sum paid by him for a share of goodwill, plus or minus his share of any increase or reduction in its value since he became a partner.

(4) Where the goodwill stands in the books at less than its true value, on the admission of a new partner either of the following courses may be followed:

- (a) The book value of the goodwill may be entirely written off against the old partners' capital accounts in their original profit-sharing ratio. Any cash paid by the new partner for a share of goodwill would then be credited to the old partners, as in method (2) or (3) above.
- (b) The book value of the goodwill may be written up to its full value by crediting the old partners in profit-sharing ratio, with their shares of the amount by which the goodwill is written up. The position would then be as in method (1) and any sum paid in by the new partner would be credited to his Capital Account.
- (c) If it is desired to retain the goodwill in the books at its existing book value, the incoming partner should only be required to pay for a share of the *undisclosed* goodwill. For example, if in the above illustration the goodwill stood in the books at £1,000, its true value being £6,000, and it was desired to retain the asset in the books at £1,000, C should only pay to A and B in respect of his share of goodwill one-fifth of £5,000 = £1,000, which sum should be credited to A and B in profit-sharing ratio. The capital accounts of A and B are already credited with their respective shares of the £1,000 goodwill appearing in the books and they are, therefore, entitled to no payment from C in respect thereof.

(c) Goodwill affecting Outgoing Partners

When a partner retires or dies, it is usual for his share of the goodwill to be determined, either according to the terms of the original agreement or by valuation, and for such an amount to be credited to his Capital Account as represents his proportion of the value of the goodwill according to his share of the profits.

It will be appreciated, however, that such an adjustment would not be necessary if an account for goodwill, at its correct value, already stood in the books of the firm.

The amount to be credited to the retiring or deceased partner's account in respect of goodwill may be debited to Goodwill Account, or, if it is preferred that no Goodwill Account shall be raised, or that the balance appearing on an existing Goodwill Account shall not be altered, to the Capital Accounts of the remaining partners in their profit-sharing proportions.

Illustration

The following is the Balance Sheet of A, B & Co. on 31st December 19.. on which date A retires. Profits and losses have been shared in the ratio of 3 : 2 : 1, and B and C continue the business sharing profits as 2 : 1. For the purposes of A's retirement goodwill is valued at £5,000.

BALANCE SHEET, as at 31st December 19..

| | | | | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------|----|----|----|---------|-----------------------------|---------|
| Capital Accounts: | | | | | | |
| A | .. | .. | .. | £16,000 | Goodwill | 1,000 |
| B | .. | .. | .. | 5,000 | Freehold Property | 13,500 |
| C | .. | .. | .. | 4,000 | Plant and Machinery | 2,493 |
| | | | | 25,000 | Stock-in-Trade | 6,159 |
| | | | | | Sundry Debtors | 4,832 |
| Current Accounts: | | | | | Cash at Bank | 1,106 |
| A | .. | .. | .. | £400 | | |
| C | .. | .. | .. | 100 | | |
| | | | | 500 | | |
| Sundry Creditors | | | | 3,592 | | |
| | | | | £29,092 | | £29,092 |

Show by journal entries the adjustments necessary on A's retirement, having regard to the fact that the partners do not wish to increase the present book value of goodwill.

JOURNAL

| | | | | Dr. | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|-------|--------|--------|
| Capital Accounts: | | | | | | |
| B two-thirds | .. | .. | .. | 1,333 | | |
| C one-third | .. | .. | .. | 667 | | |
| To Capital Account A | .. | .. | .. | | | 2,000 |
| Purchase from A of one-half of the unrecorded value of Goodwill. | | | | | | |
| Current Account A | | | | Dr. | 400 | |
| To Capital Account A | .. | .. | .. | | | 400 |
| Transfer of balance on retirement. | | | | | | |
| Capital Account A | | | | Dr. | 18,400 | |
| To Loan Account A | .. | .. | .. | | | 18,400 |
| Transfer of balance due to A on his retirement pending settlement. | | | | | | |

Note to Illustration.

As the value of goodwill has been agreed at £5,000, an increase over its book value is disclosed of £4,000. Of this sum A is entitled to one-half, and as the book value of the goodwill is not to be increased, B and C must be debited therewith in their profit-sharing proportions as they have, in effect, purchased this share of goodwill from A.

It will be appreciated that the same amount would have been credited to A had the Goodwill Account been raised to its real value, thus:

| | | | | Dr. | £ | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|-----|-------|-------|
| Goodwill Account | | | | | 4,000 | |
| To Capital Accounts— | .. | .. | .. | | | |
| A one-half | .. | .. | .. | | | 2,000 |
| B one-third | .. | .. | .. | | | 1,333 |
| C one-sixth | .. | .. | .. | | | 667 |
| Adjustment necessary to increase Goodwill Account to its correct value. | | | | | | |

An alternative arrangement is sometimes made whereby the retiring partner or the representatives of the deceased partner receive, in lieu of an amount representing his share of the goodwill, an annuity, or a proportion of the profits, for an agreed number of years. This method is not to be recommended, however, as the ultimate amount which will be paid by the continuing partners for the old partner's share of goodwill will be uncertain and may have little bearing upon the real value of this asset.

(d) Treatment of Goodwill on a change in the ratios in which profits are shared by partners

When partners agree that the proportion in which they share profits and losses shall be changed, it is necessary for all the assets of the firm, including goodwill, to be re-valued, in order that each partner may be credited or charged, before the change in the division of profits take effect, with his proper share of any unrecorded profit or loss in respect of these assets.

Illustration (1)

The following is the Balance Sheet of X, Y & Z, at 31st December 19... The partners agree that from 1st January 19... they will share profits in the ratio of 3 : 2 : 1, instead of in their former ratio of 2 : 2 : 1.

X, Y AND Z**BALANCE SHEET, AS AT 31ST DECEMBER 19..**

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------|---------|-----------------------------|---------|
| Capital Accounts: | | Goodwill | 4,000 |
| X | £10,000 | Land and Buildings | 6,000 |
| Y | 5,000 | Plant and Machinery | 4,000 |
| Z | 3,000 | Stock | 5,500 |
| | | Sundry Debtors | 3,100 |
| Sundry Creditors | 18,000 | Bills Receivable | 2,000 |
| | 7,500 | Cash at Bank | 900 |
| | | | |
| | £25,500 | | £25,500 |

The assets of the firm are revalued as under:

| | £ |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| Goodwill | 6,000 |
| Land and Buildings | 8,500 |
| Plant and Machinery | 3,500 |
| Stock | 5,000 |
| Sundry Debtors | 2,600 |
| Bills Receivable | 2,000 |

Show by journal entries the adjustments which must be made on the occasion of the change in the profit-sharing ratios between the partners.

JOURNAL

| | Dr. | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------|-------|
| Sundries | | | |
| To Revaluation Account | | | 4,500 |
| Goodwill | | 2,000 | |
| Land and Buildings | | 2,500 | |
| Adjustment to record increase in value of assets as at 31st December 19.. | | | |
| Revaluation Account | Dr. | 1,500 | |
| To Sundries | | | |
| Plant and Machinery | | | 500 |
| Stock | | | 500 |
| Bad Debts Provision | | | 500 |
| Adjustment to record decrease in value of assets at 31st December 19.. | | | |
| Sundries | Dr. | | |
| To Capital Accounts: | | | |
| X two-fifths | | | 1,200 |
| Y two-fifths | | | 1,200 |
| Z one-fifth | | | 600 |
| Revaluation Account | | 3,000 | |
| Transfer of balance as at 31st December 19.., in old profit-sharing ratio, 2 : 2 : 1. | | | |

If it is desired to restore the assets to their original book values the above entries may be reversed, the partners being debited with the differences disclosed in their *new* profit-sharing ratio. Alternatively, to avoid writing up the assets in the first place a *Memorandum Revaluation Account* could be prepared to disclose the net increase in the value of the assets, and the following entry made:

STATEMENT SHOWING ADJUSTMENT NECESSARY

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Net increase in value of assets | £3,000 | | | |
| | £ | X £ | Y £ | Z £ |
| Proportion thereof applicable to each partner in old ratio, 2 : 2 : 1 | 3,000 | 1,200 | 1,200 | 600 |
| Proportion thereof applicable to each partner in new ratio, 3 : 2 : 1 | 3,000 | 1,500 | 1,000 | 500 |
| Adjustment | — | +£300 | —£200 | —£100 |

JOURNAL

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------|-----|
| Capital Account X | Dr. | £ 300 | £ |
| To Capital Accounts: | | | |
| Y | | | 200 |
| Z | | | 100 |
| Adjustment between partners consequent upon a change in the profit-sharing ratios as shown by the statement above. | | | |

Alternatively, the net increase in the assets may be credited to the partners' Capital Accounts in their *original* profit-sharing ratio, and then written off by being debited to the Capital Accounts in the *new* ratio.

CAPITAL ACCOUNTS

| | X £ | Y £ | Z £ | | X £ | Y £ | Z £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--------|--------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--------|--------|
| To Revaluation Account - Net increase in value of assets written off in new ratio 3 : 2 : 1 | 1,500 | 1,000 | 500 | By Balance b/f | 10,000 | 5,000 | 3,000 |
| Balance c/d. | 9,700 | 5,200 | 3,100 | .. Revaluation Account - Net increase in value of assets in old ratio 2 : 2 : 1 | 1,200 | 1,200 | 600 |
| | £11,200 | £6,200 | £3,600 | | £11,200 | £6,200 | £3,600 |
| | | | | By Balance b/d. | 9,700 | 5,200 | 3,100 |

In effect, X has purchased $\frac{2}{3}$ th — $\frac{1}{3}$ th = $\frac{1}{3}$ th (or £300) of the net increase and is accordingly debited with that amount, whilst Y has sold $\frac{2}{3}$ th — $\frac{1}{3}$ th = $\frac{1}{3}$ th (or £200) and Z $\frac{1}{3}$ th — $\frac{1}{3}$ th = 0 (or £100) and their accounts are credited with those amounts. If the capitals are to be restored to their original amounts X must pay in £300, Y withdrawing £200 and Z £100.

In more complicated cases it may be desirable to open a special Adjustment Account, in which to record the transactions.

Illustration (2)

A, B, C, D and E are partners in A & Co., making up accounts to 31st December each year. The capital of the firm is contributed in proportion to their shares in profits and losses. No Goodwill Account appears in the books.

As from 1st January, 19.., those shares change under the partnership deed as under:

| | | Previous to 1st January | As from 1st January |
|------|--------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| A .. | 40 per cent. | 30 per cent. | |
| B .. | 30 " " | 25 " " | |
| C .. | 15 " " | 20 " " | |
| D .. | 10 " " | 15 " " | |
| E .. | 5 " " | 10 " " | |

The partnership deed further provides that partners whose shares increase shall purchase goodwill from the partners whose shares diminish on the basis of $2\frac{1}{2}$ years' purchase of the average profits for the preceding five years.

The profits for those years were £20,700, £16,250, £17,000, £16,950 and £16,300 respectively.

The following further arrangements are made at 31st March:

- (1) The capital of the firm, which was £20,000, is to be reduced as from 1st January to £18,000.
- (2) A agrees to lend E £1,250 towards the sum due by E as a result of the adjustment.
- (3) B receives C's personal cheque for £2,500 and A receives D's personal cheque for £2,000.
- (4) E, having regard to the state of his account with the firm obtains from his wife securities, which he sells for £1,750, handing the proceeds over to the firm. D follows his example paying in £1,000.

An additional account, called 'Adjustment Account', is opened for each partner in the firm's ledger, through which the above-mentioned transactions are to be passed.

The entries incidental to the transactions and arrangements indicated above are all made in the firm's books at 31st March, on which date the Adjustment Accounts are closed by the payment in or withdrawal of cash; no record is, however, retained in those books of E's liability to pay and A's right to receive the above-mentioned loan of £1,250.

The accounts will appear as follows:

CAPITAL ACCOUNTS

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | D £ | E £ | | A £ | B £ | C £ | D £ | E £ |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|------------------------------------------------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| To Adjustment Accounts, reduction in capital | 2,600 | 1,500 | — | — | — | By Balances b/f. | 8,000 | 6,000 | 3,000 | 2,000 | 1,000 |
| .. Balances c/d | 5,400 | 4,500 | 3,600 | 2,700 | 1,800 | .. Adjustment Accounts, increase in capital | — | — | 600 | 700 | 800 |
| | £ 8,000 | 6,000 | 3,600 | 2,700 | 1,800 | | £ 8,000 | 6,000 | 3,600 | 2,700 | 1,800 |
| | | | | | | By Balance b/d | 5,400 | 4,500 | 3,600 | 2,700 | 1,800 |

ADJUSTMENT ACCOUNTS

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | D £ | E £ | | A £ | B £ | C £ | D £ | E £ |
|-------------------------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|------------------------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| To Purchase of goodwill | — | — | 2,180 | 2,180 | 2,180 | By Sale of goodwill | 4,360 | 2,180 | — | — | — |
| .. Capital Accounts | — | — | 600 | 700 | 800 | .. Capital Accounts | 2,600 | 1,500 | — | — | — |
| .. C - personal cheque | — | 2,500 | — | — | — | .. B - personal cheque | — | — | 2,500 | — | — |
| .. D - personal cheque | 2,000 | — | — | — | — | .. A - personal cheque | — | — | — | 2,000 | — |
| .. E - personal loan | 1,250 | — | — | — | — | .. Cash | — | — | — | 1,000 | 1,750 |
| .. Cash - to balance | 3,710 | 1,180 | — | 120 | 20 | .. A - personal loan | — | — | — | — | 1,250 |
| | £ 6,960 | 3,680 | 2,780 | 3,000 | 3,000 | .. Cash - to balance | — | — | 280 | — | — |
| | | | | | | | £ 6,960 | 3,680 | 2,780 | 3,000 | 3,000 |

Notes to Illustration.

- (1) The Adjustment Accounts are personal accounts for the partners, being credited with amounts due *to* them and debited with amounts due *by* them respectively in respect of the adjustments. Payments *by* partners are then credited and payments *to* them debited to their respective Adjustment Accounts.
- (2) Transfers are made from Capital accounts to Adjustment Accounts to reduce the total capital to £18,000 and to adjust the holdings of the partners to the new proportions as at 1st January.
- (3) The value of the goodwill, on the basis stated, is £43,600. Since A's share of the total profit is to be reduced by 10 per cent. and B's by 5 per cent., A and B are, in effect, selling similar shares of goodwill, and their Adjustment Accounts must therefore be credited with

£4,360 and £2,180 respectively. C, D, and B are purchasing these shares in equal proportions, since the share of profit of each is to be increased by 5 per cent. Each of their Adjustment Accounts must therefore be debited with £2,180.

- (4) Since no record is to be retained in the books of E's liability to pay and A's right to receive the loan of £1,250 made by A to E, this loan, so far as the firm is concerned, is tantamount to a payment to the firm by E and a withdrawal by A of £1,250. A's Adjustment Account is therefore debited, and E's credited, with £1,250. E then owes this £1,250 to A *outside* the business.

(e) Life Assurance Policies to provide for repayment of share of a deceased partner

In some cases partners effect assurance on their lives, either jointly or severally, in order to provide the cash required to pay out the whole or part of the capital and goodwill of a partner who dies. Such an assurance is of particular advantage where the surviving partners have insufficient resources outside the business to purchase a deceased partner's interest in the partnership.

Partnership life assurance may be dealt with in the accounts by any of the following methods:

- (i) The premiums paid on the policy are written off to Profit and Loss Account, thereby reducing the profits divisible between, and available to be withdrawn from, the business by the partners. This has the effect of charging the partners with the cost of the assurance in the proportions in which they share profits. No account in respect of the policy appears in the books, so that the value of the policy at any time represents a secret reserve which belongs to the partners in profit-sharing ratio. Accordingly, on the death of a partner, each partner's Capital Account must be credited with his proper share of the policy money received. The cash so made available can then be applied in or towards the sum due to the representatives of the deceased partner.

The advantage of this method is that it avoids the danger of the working capital of the firm being depleted by the withdrawal of cash to pay the premiums, the cost of the assurance being borne by the partners out of their shares of profit.

- (ii) A Life Policy Account is opened in the books, to which the premiums are debited as and when they are paid. The policy will thus appear in the books as an asset at cost, and the amount receivable on the death of a partner will be credited to this account, any difference between the amount standing to the debit of the account and the sum received being divided between the partners in profit-sharing ratio, and credited to their respective Capital Accounts.

Although this method has the advantage of disclosing the existence of the asset acquired by the payment of the premiums, if (as is usually the case in the early years of the policy) its surrender value is less than the total amount of the premiums paid, the policy will appear in the books at more than its current realisable value. Furthermore, as the profits disclosed by the accounts are not reduced by the premiums, if the whole of the profits are withdrawn the premiums will, in effect, have been paid out of capital, and the liquid resources of the business may become unduly depleted.

- (iii) The premiums paid are debited to a Life Policy Account, as in method (ii), but the book value of the policy is adjusted each year to its surrender value by a transfer from Profit and Loss Account. This overcomes the objection, referred to in method (ii), to the policy appearing in the books at more than its realisable value. It does not, however, conserve the working capital by reducing the profits divisible between the partners.
- (iv) The premiums paid are debited to a Life Policy Account, and a sum equal to the annual premium is debited each year to Profit and Loss Account and credited to a Life Policy Fund Account. The book value of the policy is then adjusted to surrender value by a transfer from the Life Policy Fund Account instead of from Profit and Loss Account. On the death of a partner the sum received under the policy will be credited to the Life Policy Account, any profit disclosed by the account being transferred to the credit of the Life Policy Fund Account. The final balance on the latter account will now represent a reserve equal to the total sum received under the policy, and will be transferred to the credit of the partners' capital accounts in their profit-sharing proportions.

This method has the advantages of disclosing the existence of the asset at its realisable value and also of avoiding the danger of depleting the working capital of the firm.

Each of the above methods is exemplified by the following illustration:

Illustration

A, B and C are in partnership, sharing profits in the proportion of two-thirds, one-sixth, and one-sixth respectively, and in order to provide cash for the immediate payment of a portion of the amount due to any one of them in the event of death, in respect of both capital and goodwill, an assurance was effected on their lives jointly for £9,000 without profits, at an annual premium of £350.

A died on the 30th June 19... , three months after the annual accounts had been prepared, and in accordance with the partnership agreement, his share of the profits to the date of death was estimated on the exact basis of the profits for the preceding year. In addition to this, the agreement provided for interest on capital at 5 per cent. per annum on the balance standing to the credit of the capital account at the date of the last Balance Sheet, and also for goodwill, which was to be brought into account at two years' purchase of the average profits for the last three years, prior to charging the above-mentioned insurance premiums, but after charging interest on capital.

A's capital on 31st March 19... , stood at £12,000, and his drawings from then to the date of death amounted to £900.

The net profits of the business for the three preceding years amounted to £3,350, £4,150 and £4,050, respectively, after charging interest on capital but before charging insurance premiums, or adjustments of the Policy Account to surrender value (as the case may be).

The total premiums paid on the life policy to 31st March preceding A's death amounted to £4,500, and the surrender value at that date was £4,000. In that year it became necessary to debit Profit and Loss Account with £250 in order to adjust the Policy Account to the surrender value of the policy.

You are instructed to adjust A's capital account as at the date of death, for a settlement with his executors.

METHOD (i)

A's CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Drawings | £ 900 | By Balance b/d. | £ 12,000 |
| „ Balance c/d. | 23,000 | „ Interest on Capital 5% for 3 months | 150 |
| | | „ Profit to date of death | 617 |
| | | „ Goodwill | 5,133 |
| | | „ Insurance Policy, two-thirds of £9,000 | 6,000 |
| | <u>£23,900</u> | | <u>£23,900</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 23,000 |

Notes

(1) The value of goodwill is arrived at as follows:

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------|
| | £ |
| Profit 1st year | 3,350 |
| „ 2nd „ | 4,150 |
| „ 3rd „ | 4,050 |
| | <u>3) 11,550</u> |
| Three years' average profit | <u>£3,850</u> |
| Total amount of Goodwill | <u>£7,700</u> |

A's Share = two-thirds of £7,700 = £5,133

(2) A's share of profit for the 3 months to the date of death, based on the profit of the previous year is $\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{1}{4} \times £(4,050 - 350) = £617$.

METHOD (ii)

A's CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Drawings | £ 900 | By Balance b/d. | £ 12,000 |
| „ Balance c/d. | 20,058 | „ Interest on Capital - 3 months | 150 |
| | | „ Profit to date of death | 675 |
| | | „ Goodwill | 5,133 |
| | | „ Life Policy Account - share of profit | 3,000 |
| | <u>£20,958</u> | | <u>£20,958</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 20,058 |

Note. A's share of profit is $\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{1}{4} \times £4,050 = £675$.

LIFE POLICY ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------|---------|---------------|
| To Balance (Premiums paid to date) b/d. | £ 4,500 | By Cash | £ 9,000 |
| Profit— | | | |
| A two-thirds | £3,000 | | |
| B one-sixth | 750 | | |
| C one-sixth | 750 | | |
| | <u>4,500</u> | | |
| | <u>£9,000</u> | | <u>£9,000</u> |

METHOD (iii)

A's CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Drawings | £ 900 | By Balance b/d. | £ 12,000 |
| „ Balance c/d. | 20,350 | „ Interest on Capital | 150 |
| | | „ Profit to date of death | 633 |
| | | „ Goodwill | 5,133 |
| | | „ Life Policy Account – share of profit.. | 3,334 |
| | <u>£21,250</u> | | <u>£21,250</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 20,350 |

Note

The divisible profit for the previous year was £4,050 less £250 charged to Profit and Loss Account and credited to Policy Account to adjust it to surrender value = £3,800. A's share is $\frac{2}{3} \times \frac{1}{3} \times £3,800 = £633$.

LIFE POLICY ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| To Balance (surrender value) b/d | £ 4,000 | By Cash | £ 9,000 |
| Profit: | | | |
| A two-thirds | £3,334 | | |
| B one-sixth | 833 | | |
| C one-sixth | 833 | | |
| | <u>5,000</u> | | |
| | <u>£9,000</u> | | <u>£9,000</u> |

METHOD (iv)

A's CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Drawings | £ 900 | By Balance b/d. | £ 12,000 |
| „ Balance c/d | 23,000 | „ Interest on Capital | 150 |
| | | „ Profit to date of death | 617 |
| | | „ Goodwill | 5,133 |
| | | „ Life Policy Fund Account | 6,000 |
| | <u>£23,900</u> | | <u>£23,900</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 23,000 |

Note

A's share of profit is as in method (i).

LIFE POLICY ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| To Balance b/d. | £ 4,000 | By Cash | £ 9,000 |
| „ Life Policy Fund – Profit transferred .. | 5,000 | | |
| | <u>£9,000</u> | | <u>£9,000</u> |

LIFE POLICY FUND ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Balance transferred to partners: | | By Balance b/d. | £ 4,000 |
| A two-thirds | £6,000 | „ Life Policy Account, profit transferred .. | 5,000 |
| B one-sixth | 1,500 | | |
| C one-sixth | 1,500 | | |
| | <u>9,000</u> | | |
| | <u>£9,000</u> | | <u>£9,000</u> |

(f) Readjustment of partners' shares of profit over a period of years

When a manager or other servant of the firm is admitted into partnership, it is sometimes agreed that retrospective effect shall be given to the new arrangement, as if, from the point of view of sharing profits, he had become a partner at an earlier date. In such a case an entry must be made at the commencement of the new partnership, debiting the original members of the firm and crediting the incoming partner with the amount (if any) found to be due to him in respect of the earlier period.

Illustration

A and B have carried on business for four years, and their books show the following results:

| | | | £ |
|-------------|----|--------|-------|
| First year | .. | Loss | 788 |
| Second year | .. | Profit | 3,635 |
| Third year | .. | .. | 4,129 |
| Fourth year | .. | .. | 5,362 |

The capital (in which no change has been recorded in the books during the four years) is A £30,000, B £20,000, the profits and losses being divisible in these proportions; and in addition to the capital there is a loan from C (the manager) of £5,000 at 5 per cent. The above results are after charging $4\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. interest on capital, 5 per cent. interest on the loan, and C's salary of £500 per annum.

At the end of the fourth year the partners agree to adjust the accounts by treating C as a partner from the commencement, his loan of £5,000 to be regarded as capital, entitling him to one-eleventh of the profits, and carrying $4\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. interest instead of the 5 per cent. paid on the loan, but his salary is reduced to £400 per annum for the whole period of four years.

Make the necessary entries to adjust the accounts to accord with the new arrangement, and show how the loss of the first year and the profits of the second, third and fourth years are divisible between A, B and C. Calculations to be made to the nearest £.

Under the new arrangement the divisions are as follows:

| | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|---------|----|----|--------|
| First Year: | | | | | | £ |
| Loss £788 - Interest £25 and Salary £100 = Loss £663 | .. | .. | A 30/55 | .. | .. | 362 |
| | | | B 20/55 | .. | .. | 241 |
| | | | C 5/55 | .. | .. | 60 |
| | | | Loss | .. | .. | £663 |
| Second Year: | | | | | | |
| Profit £3,635 + Interest £25 and Salary £100 = Profit £3,760 | .. | .. | A 30/55 | .. | .. | 2,051 |
| | | | B 20/55 | .. | .. | 1,367 |
| | | | C 5/55 | .. | .. | 342 |
| | | | Profit | .. | .. | £3,760 |
| Third Year: | | | | | | |
| Profit £4,129 + Interest £25 and Salary £100 = Profit £4,254 | .. | .. | A 30/55 | .. | .. | 2,320 |
| | | | B 20/55 | .. | .. | 1,547 |
| | | | C 5/55 | .. | .. | 387 |
| | | | Profit | .. | .. | £4,254 |
| Fourth Year: | | | | | | |
| Profit £5,362 + Interest £25 and Salary £100 = Profit £5,487 | .. | .. | A 30/55 | .. | .. | 2,993 |
| | | | B 20/55 | .. | .. | 1,995 |
| | | | C 5/55 | .. | .. | 499 |
| | | | Profit | .. | .. | £5,487 |

By the above arrangement C receives the following:

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Second Year | 342 |
| Third | 387 |
| Fourth | 499 |
| | <hr/> |
| | 1,228 |
| Less First Year Loss | |
| £125 per annum for 4 years, viz., £25 interest (1% on £5,000) and £100 salary to be taken at £400 | £60 |
| instead of £500 per annum | 500 |
| | <hr/> |
| | 560 |
| Net Credit for C | <hr/> |
| | £668 |
| Debit to A three-fifths of £668 | 401 |
| „ „ B two-fifths of £668 | 267 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £668 |

A's Current Account will therefore be debited with £401, and B's with £267, C's being credited with £668.

§ 6. Outgoing Partners

In the absence of any agreement or uniform usage to the contrary, a partner, on retirement, or the representative of a deceased partner, is entitled to have the partnership assets, including goodwill, revalued on a proper basis as at the date of the retirement or death, and any appreciation or depreciation so revealed taken into account in computing the sum due to him or them. The total amount so ascertained to be due is normally a debt due by the firm to the retired partner or the representatives of the deceased partner.

An agreement may be made, however, between the partners whereby, in the event of the death or retirement of a partner, the remaining partners shall assume, personally, the liability for the amount due. In such circumstances the debt is no longer due by the firm but by the partners individually in the ratio agreed upon (*Elliott v. Elliott*). Where there is no agreement as to the proportions in which such liability is to be shared, the profit-sharing ratios should be taken. If an agreement of this description is made, the amount due to the retiring or deceased partner must be transferred to the credit of the capital accounts of the remaining partners in the ratio in which they have assumed the liability.

In the case of *Elliott v. Elliott* (1911), 45 Acct. L.R. 47, the partnership agreement provided that at the death of a partner his share in the assets and goodwill of the business should, as from the time of his death, belong to and be purchased by the remaining partners in proportion to their shares in the business, and that they should execute a joint and several bond for securing the repayment of the amount due, payment being made in eight half-yearly instalments. On the death of one partner his capital was treated as a liability of the firm, and on the death of a second partner the latter's executors brought an action to determine *inter alia* whether the debt due to the estate of the first mentioned partner should be treated as a debt of the partnership.

It was held that the amount in question was to be apportioned between and borne by the partners in the ratio in which they shared profits and losses. In the course of his judgment, Mr Justice Warrington stated that he thought it was a debt due by each partner to the deceased partner's executors as the purchase money for a personal

benefit acquired by such partner. The balance remaining due to the deceased partner's executors must, therefore, be struck out of the balance sheet of the firm.

It must, however, be appreciated that unless an agreement of this description is entered into, the amount due to the retiring partner or to the estate of a deceased partner is, as stated above, a debt due by the firm, and must be shown as such on its balance sheet.

The retiring partner, or the estate of the deceased partner, remains liable for the firm's debts at the date of retirement or death, although, as between the partners themselves, he is only responsible for his share of the liabilities. When the amount due to him has been ascertained and either repaid or taken over by the remaining partners, he should in equity be discharged from further liability, and for this reason care should be taken to obtain an undertaking from the remaining partners to indemnify him, or his estate, against any action which may be brought against him by any creditor in respect of any debt incurred prior to his retirement or death. When a new partner is introduced, the creditors may, by a contract of substituted liability (novation), agree to look to the new partner in place of the old, in which case the latter will be released from his liability to the creditors concerned.

A retired partner may also be held liable for debts contracted after his retirement by reason of the persons subsequently dealing with the firm giving credit on the strength of his supposed continued association with the firm. In order to avoid such liability resulting from being 'held out' as a partner, he must give specific notice of his retirement to all existing creditors, and to all those who have been creditors of the firm and may be such again. He should also give notice of his retirement in the appropriate *Gazette*, and this will operate as notice to the world at large, and will preclude the operation of the doctrine of 'holding out' in favour of any person who might be induced to give credit to the firm on the strength of the supposed partner's financial standing.

The estate of a deceased or bankrupt partner cannot be held liable for debts contracted by the firm after the death, or bankruptcy, as the case may be.

It may not be practicable for the firm to discharge the debt due to a retired partner, or to the deceased partner's estate, out of its existing resources, nor may it be possible for the other partners immediately to bring in additional capital. In such circumstances one of the following methods of settlement may be adopted:

- (a) Repayment may be made by agreed instalments over a period of years, interest being allowed on the diminishing balance of the amount due.
- (b) The amount due may be regarded as a loan to the firm to carry the right to either a fixed rate of interest or a share of the profits of the firm.
- (c) An annuity may be paid to a retired partner for life, or for an agreed number of years, or for the life of some dependant.

(a) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's Capital, etc., by Instalments

Upon the retirement or death of a partner the value of his capital and share of the

goodwill, etc., is ascertained, either in accordance with the provisions of the partnership agreement or by accounts taken at the date of the dissolution, and the amount so ascertained is paid out to him or his representatives forthwith, or credited to a Loan Account, and repaid by instalments, with interest running on the outstanding balance. It is important, where payment is not made at once, that the amount due should be credited to a loan account, and not retained in the books as capital, especially in the case of a retired partner, when retention of the amount due to him as capital might suggest that he was still a partner.

Illustration

M, a partner in a firm, dies on 31st March 19.., and his share of capital and goodwill is ascertained to be £7,600. It is arranged that this shall be paid out by annual instalments of £2,000, to include principal and interest on the outstanding balance at 5 per cent. per annum. The first payment is made one month after death, and succeeding payments are made on the anniversary of the date of death. Show the account in the firm's books relating thereto until completion. Ignore Income Tax.

THE EXECUTORS OF M (DECEASED) LOAN ACCOUNT

| | | | £ | s. | d. | | | | £ | s. | d. |
|------|----------|---------------|--------------------|----|----|------|----------|-----------------------|--------------------|----|----|
| 19.. | April 30 | To Cash | 2,000 | 0 | 0 | 19.. | Mar. 31 | By Capital Account | 7,600 | 0 | 0 |
| | | „ Balance c/f | 5,631 | 13 | 4 | | April 30 | „ Interest, 1 month | 31 | 13 | 4 |
| | | | <u>£7,631 13 4</u> | | | | | | <u>£7,631 13 4</u> | | |
| 19.. | Mar. 31 | To Cash | 2,000 | 0 | 0 | 19.. | May 1 | By Balance b/f | 5,631 | 13 | 4 |
| | | „ Balance c/f | 3,889 | 15 | 8 | | 19.. | „ Interest, 11 months | 258 | 2 | 4 |
| | | | <u>£5,889 15 8</u> | | | | | | <u>£5,889 15 8</u> | | |
| 19.. | Mar. 31 | To Cash | 2,000 | 0 | 0 | 19.. | April 1 | By Balance b/f | 3,889 | 15 | 8 |
| | | „ Balance c/f | 2,084 | 5 | 5 | | 19.. | „ Interest, 1 year | 194 | 9 | 9 |
| | | | <u>£4,084 5 5</u> | | | | | | <u>£4,084 5 5</u> | | |
| 19.. | Mar. 31 | To Cash | 2,000 | 0 | 0 | 19.. | April 1 | By Balance b/f | 2,084 | 5 | 5 |
| | | „ Balance c/f | 188 | 9 | 8 | | 19.. | „ Interest, 1 year | 104 | 4 | 3 |
| | | | <u>£2,188 9 8</u> | | | | | | <u>£2,188 9 8</u> | | |
| 19.. | Mar. 31 | To Cash | 197 | 18 | 2 | 19.. | April 1 | By Balance b/f | 188 | 9 | 8 |
| | | | <u>£197 18 2</u> | | | | 19.. | „ Interest, 1 year | 9 | 8 | 6 |
| | | | | | | | | | <u>£197 18 2</u> | | |

(b) Outgoing Partner's Capital, etc., allowed to remain as a Loan to the firm

Where this course is adopted, the retired partner's capital must be transferred to a Loan Account. Usually the rate of interest payable on this loan and the conditions for repayment are laid down in the partnership agreement or by a contract entered into at the date of retirement, but in the absence of agreement it is provided by Section 42 of the Partnership Act, 1890, that the retired partner is entitled to interest at 5% per annum, or such share of the profits as the court may determine to be attributable to the use of his share of the partnership assets. If a retired partner enforces his right to

a share of profit in these circumstances, the court would deduct a reasonable sum for the services of the remaining partners for carrying on the business, before arriving at the profit to be divided.

Where an option is given to the continuing partners to purchase the share of the retired partner, and the option is exercised, the retired partner is not entitled to any further share of the profits. His capital is, therefore, transferred to the continuing partners, who must pay him according to the terms of the agreement.

When it is agreed that the loan shall carry a rate of interest varying with the profits of the firm or entitle the retired partner to a share of such profits, such an agreement will not of itself cause the retired partner to continue to be liable as a partner of the firm, *provided that the contract is in writing* and signed by or on behalf of all the parties thereto (Section 2, Partnership Act, 1890). If, however, the firm should become bankrupt, the retired partner will be a deferred creditor in respect of any loan made in such circumstances (Section 3, Partnership Act, 1890).

(c) Repayment of Outgoing Partner's Capital, etc., by way of an Annuity

Where a partner retires or dies, the liability of the continuing partners for his capital and share of goodwill, is sometimes discharged by an agreement to pay to him or to his widow, dependants or representatives an annuity, either for a certain term of years or for the lifetime of the retired partner, or his widow, or some named dependants.

In such a case the most convenient method of dealing with the matter in the partnership books is to transfer the amount due to an Annuity Suspense Account, which must be credited with interest at a fixed rate per annum on the diminishing balance, and debited annually with the annuity paid. If the credit balance is exhausted during the lifetime of the annuitant, subsequent instalments of the annuity must be borne by the partners and debited to their Current Accounts (or to Profit and Loss Account before arriving at divisible profits). In the event of the annuitant dying before the credit on the Annuity Suspense Account is exhausted the balance then remaining on the account is a profit to the continuing partners and should be transferred to their Capital Accounts in the proportion in which they share profits. Such a profit will not, normally, be represented by liquid resources available for distribution and, therefore it might be inadvisable to transfer it to Profit and Loss Account or to the partners' Current Accounts.

The balance of the Annuity Suspense Account at the commencement of the transaction and at the date of each balance sheet should, strictly, represent the present worth of the annuity, subject to variation in the expectation of life. An actuarial valuation for the adjustment of the Suspense Account might be made periodically, say every five years, but as with a single annuity there is no scope for the law of average to apply, it is not usual to do this, the simpler procedure outlined above being adopted.

Illustration

A, B and C are partners sharing profits in the ration of 3, 2 and 1. A retires from the firm as from the 31st December 19..., the determined amount of his share being £10,000. It is

agreed that this should be commuted by an annuity of £1,500, the first payment to be made on the following day, and subsequent payments on the 1st January of each year. A dies after the receipt of the fifth annuity payment.

Show the Annuity Suspense Account in the books of the firm, assuming that the amount outstanding is deemed to earn interest at the rate of 6 per cent. Ignore Income Tax.

ANNUITY SUSPENSE ACCOUNT

| | | £ | s. | d. | | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------|--------------------------|----------------|-----------|----------|---------|---------------------------------|----------------|-----------|----------|
| 19.. | | | | | 19.. | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Cash | 1,500 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/f | 10,000 | 0 | 0 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Balance c/f | 9,010 | 0 | 0 | Dec. 31 | „ Interest (on £8,500) | 510 | 0 | 0 |
| | | <u>£10,510</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> | | | <u>£10,510</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> |
| 19.. | | | | | 19.. | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Cash | 1,500 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/f | 9,010 | 0 | 0 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Balance c/f | 7,960 | 12 | 0 | Dec. 31 | „ Interest (on £7,510) | 450 | 12 | 0 |
| | | <u>£9,460</u> | <u>12</u> | <u>0</u> | | | <u>£9,460</u> | <u>12</u> | <u>0</u> |
| 19.. | | | | | 19.. | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Cash | 1,500 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/f | 7,960 | 12 | 0 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Balance c/f | 6,848 | 4 | 9 | Dec. 31 | „ Interest (on £6,460 12s. 0d.) | 387 | 12 | 9 |
| | | <u>£8,348</u> | <u>4</u> | <u>9</u> | | | <u>£8,348</u> | <u>4</u> | <u>9</u> |
| 19.. | | | | | 19.. | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Cash | 1,500 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/f | 6,848 | 4 | 9 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Balance c/f | 5,669 | 2 | 7 | Dec. 31 | „ Interest (on £5,348 4s. 9d.) | 320 | 17 | 10 |
| | | <u>£7,169</u> | <u>2</u> | <u>7</u> | | | <u>£7,169</u> | <u>2</u> | <u>7</u> |
| 19.. | | | | | 19.. | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Cash | 1,500 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/f | 5,669 | 2 | 7 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Profit transferred to: | | | | | | | | |
| | B 1/3rds | £2,779 | 8 | 5 | | | | | |
| | C 1/3rd | 1,389 | 14 | 2 | | | | | |
| | | <u>4,169</u> | <u>2</u> | <u>7</u> | | | | | |
| | | <u>£5,669</u> | <u>2</u> | <u>7</u> | | | <u>£5,669</u> | <u>2</u> | <u>7</u> |

It cannot be assumed that the business would be able to pay the amount of the annuity in all cases out of its liquid resources, as this might result in considerable embarrassment in the course of a few years.

The remaining partners should therefore, if necessary, introduce annually additional capital to the extent of the amount of the annuity less the amount of interest credited to the Annuity Suspense Account for the year. It will be appreciated that the interest credited to the account is not paid to A; it is merely an adjustment to show the true result of the settlement, but as it has been charged to Profit and Loss Account, cash to this extent is retained in the business and it is only necessary for B and C to introduce the balance.

Alternatively, B and C could restrict their drawings each year by the amount required. For example, at the end of the first year the following entry could be made:

JOURNAL

| | | £ | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|
| Current Accounts: | Dr. | | |
| B | | 660 | |
| C | | 330 | |
| To Capital Accounts: | | | |
| B | | | 660 |
| C | | | 330 |
| Transfer from Current Accounts to Capital Accounts of amount necessary to restore the firm's working capital after the payment of annuity of £1,500 to A. | | | |
| B 1/3rd of £(1,500 — 510) = £660. | | | |
| C 1/3rd of £(1,500 — 510) = £330. | | | |

The position is somewhat complicated by the introduction of a new partner. As the business has the benefit of the capital represented by the Annuity Suspense Account, the new partner should bear his share of the interest, which should therefore be debited to Profit and Loss Account. Should the retired partner die before the Annuity Suspense Account is reduced to nil, the credit balance should be divided between the members of the old partnership in the proportions in which they shared profits and losses in the old partnership. If, however, the Annuity Suspense Account is exhausted before the retired partner dies, the subsequent payments should be debited to the Current Accounts of the remaining members of the old partnership in the proportions in which they share profits and losses in the old firm.

(d) Adjustment of values of assets upon change of personnel

When a partner retires, it does not follow that the balance of his Capital Account represents his true interest in the partnership, apart from the question of goodwill, to which reference has already been made, since some assets may have appreciated in value without any adjustment having been made in the books, whilst others may have been insufficiently depreciated, over-depreciated, or entirely written off. It will be necessary, therefore, to correct these values, in order that the outgoing partner shall receive his true share. A Revaluation Account should be opened, to which all differences in values will be debited or credited, the resultant balance being divided among the partners according to the ratio in which they share profits and losses.

Illustration

Brown, Jones and Robinson, sharing profits and losses equally, had been trading for many years, and Robinson decided to retire as at 31st December 19... on which date the Balance Sheet of the firm was as under:

| | £ | £ | | £ |
|-------------------|--------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Capitals: | | | Freehold Premises | 8,000 |
| Brown | 10,000 | | Plant | 4,000 |
| Jones | 8,000 | | Patents | 6,000 |
| Robinson | 6,000 | | Stock | 5,000 |
| | | 24,000 | Debtors | 6,000 |
| Creditors | | 8,000 | Cash | 3,000 |
| | | <u>£32,000</u> | | <u>£32,000</u> |

The value of the goodwill was agreed at £8,000.

The freehold premises had increased in value as a result of general economic conditions, the value being agreed at £11,000. Plant and patents were respectively revalued at £3,600 and £5,300, and it was also agreed to provide 5% in respect of debtors, it having been the practice in the past only to write off bad debts actually incurred.

Show the adjusted Balance Sheet of the firm, and the amount to which Robinson would be entitled.

REVALUATION ACCOUNT

| | £ | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------------------------|-------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| To Plant | | 400 | By Goodwill | 8,000 |
| " Patents | | 700 | " Freehold Premises | 3,000 |
| " Provision for Bad Debts | | 300 | | |
| " Balance transferred to Capital Accounts: | | | | |
| Brown | 3,200 | | | |
| Jones | 3,200 | | | |
| Robinson | 3,200 | | | |
| | | 9,600 | | |
| | | <u>£11,000</u> | | <u>£11,000</u> |

Y CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|-----------------|---------------|---------|---------------------------------------|---------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Cash | £ 1,600 | June 30 | By Balance b/d. | £ 1,300 |
| | | | Dec. 31 | „ Realisation Account: Profit | 300 |
| | | <u>£1,600</u> | | | <u>£1,600</u> |

CASH

| | | | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------|---------------|---------|----------------------|---------------|
| June 30 | To Balance b/d. | £ 600 | Dec. 31 | By Creditors | £ 1,500 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Realisation Account | 4,500 | | „ Capital Accounts: | |
| | | | | X | £2,000 |
| | | | | Y | 1,600 |
| | | <u>£5,100</u> | | | <u>3,600</u> |
| | | | | | <u>£5,100</u> |

(2) Where, on dissolution, the liabilities are paid in full, but there is a loss on the realisation of the assets.

Illustration

D, E and F, sharing profits and losses, one-half, one-third, and one-sixth respectively, dissolve partnership. At the date of dissolution their creditors amount to £2,300, and in the course of winding-up a contingent liability of £200, not brought into the accounts, matured and had to be met. The capitals stood at £6,000, £4,000 and £1,500, respectively. D had lent to the firm as distinct from capital £2,000. The assets realised £10,000. Close the books of the firm.

REALISATION ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Sundry Assets | £ 15,800 | By Cash | £ 10,000 |
| „ Contingent liability matured | 200 | „ Loss transferred to Capital Accounts: | |
| | | D one-half | £3,000 |
| | | E one-third | 2,000 |
| | | F one-sixth | 1,000 |
| | <u>£16,000</u> | | <u>6,000</u> |
| | | | <u>£16,000</u> |

SUNDY CREDITORS

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Cash | £ 2,500 | By Balance b/d. | £ 2,300 |
| | | „ Realisation Account: | |
| | | Contingent liability matured | 200 |
| | <u>£2,500</u> | | <u>£2,500</u> |

D LOAN ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------|------------------------|---------|
| To Cash | £ 2,000 | By Balance b/d | £ 2,000 |
|-----------------|---------|------------------------|---------|

D CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| To Realisation Account: Loss | £ 3,000 | By Balance b/d. | £ 6,000 |
| „ Cash | 3,000 | | |
| | <u>£6,000</u> | | <u>£6,000</u> |

E CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------|
| To Realisation Account: Loss | £ 2,000 | By Balance b/d. | £ 4,000 |
| " Cash | 2,000 | | |
| | <u>£4,000</u> | | <u>£4,000</u> |

F CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------|
| To Realisation Account: Loss | £ 1,000 | By Balance b/d. | £ 1,500 |
| " Cash | 500 | | |
| | <u>£1,500</u> | | <u>£1,500</u> |

CASH

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| To Realisation Account | £ 10,000 | By Creditors | £ 2,500 |
| | | " D Loan Account | 2,000 |
| | | " D Capital Account | 3,000 |
| | | " E " " | 2,000 |
| | | " F " " | 500 |
| | <u>£10,000</u> | | <u>£10,000</u> |

Note

The book value of the assets is equal to the sum of the capitals plus the creditors, viz.,
 $£6,000 + £4,000 + £1,500 + £2,300 + £2,000 = £15,800$.

(3) *Where, on dissolution, there is a loss on the realisation of the assets, placing one partner's Capital Account in debit, which amount he pays into the firm's account in cash.*

Illustration (1)

J and P are in partnership, with capitals of £700 and £100. The creditors are £2,300. The assets realise £1,900. Partners share profits and losses equally. Close the books of the firm, P having brought in the amount due by him.

REALISATION ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| To Sundry Assets | £ 3,100 | By Cash | £ 1,900 |
| | | " Loss to Capital Accounts: | |
| | | J one-half | 600 |
| | | P one-half | 600 |
| | <u>£3,100</u> | | <u>£3,100</u> |

J CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|------------------------|-------------|
| To Realisation Account: Loss | £ 600 | By Balance b/d. | £ 700 |
| " Cash | 100 | | |
| | <u>£700</u> | | <u>£700</u> |

P CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| To Realisation Account: Loss | £ 600 | By Balance b/d. | £ 100 |
| | | „ Cash | 500 |
| | <u>£600</u> | | <u>£600</u> |

CREDITORS

| | | | |
|-----------------|---------|-------------------------|---------|
| To Cash | £ 2,300 | By Balance b/d. | £ 2,300 |
|-----------------|---------|-------------------------|---------|

CASH

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| To Realisation Account | £ 1,900 | By Creditors | £ 2,300 |
| „ P Capital Account | 500 | „ J Capital Account | 100 |
| | <u>£2,400</u> | | <u>£2,400</u> |

Where, on dissolution, the assets are not sold *en bloc*, but are realised separately; or certain assets are taken over by partners on account of the sums due to them, it may be preferable, instead of transferring all the assets to a Realization Account and crediting that account with the total proceeds, to credit each separate asset account with the amount at which it is sold or taken over, transferring the resultant profit or loss to a Realization Profit and Loss Account, the ultimate balance of which will represent the net profit or loss on the dissolution.

Illustration (2)

G and T, having carried on business as drapers and household furnishers at the same premises for a number of years, share profits and losses equally, decide to dissolve partnership.

At the date of dissolution their balance sheet was as follows:

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|--------------------------|-------|----------------|---------------------------|-------|----------------|
| Capital Accounts: | | | Goodwill | | 1,000 |
| G | 7,000 | | Freehold Premises | | 8,000 |
| T | 8,000 | | Fixtures: | | |
| | | 15,000 | Drapery Department | 750 | |
| Sundry Creditors | | 3,200 | Furnishing Department | 400 | |
| | | | | | 1,150 |
| | | | Sundry Debtors | | 1,050 |
| | | | Stock: | | |
| | | | Drapery Department | 1,600 | |
| | | | Furnishing Department | 1,400 | |
| | | | | | 3,000 |
| | | | Cash at Bank | | 4,000 |
| | | <u>£18,200</u> | | | <u>£18,200</u> |

The agreed terms were:

G was to take over the premises at £7,000, the drapery stock at £1,700, and drapery fixtures at £500.

T, having rented another shop nearby, was to take over the furniture stock at £1,500 and the fixtures of that department at £500.

Goodwill was to be written off.

Any loss on debtors was to be shared as to G three-fifths, and T two-fifths.

The creditors were to be paid by G.

The debtors realised £950, the proceeds being retained by G.

Prepare accounts, showing the final settlement between the partners.

REALISATION PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------|-------|---------------|-----------------------------------------|-------|---------------|
| To Goodwill written off | | 1,000 | By Profit on transfer of Stock | | 200 |
| .. Bad Debts | | 100 | .. Loss on Debtors shared by agreement: | | |
| .. Loss on transfer of: | | | G, three-fifths | 60 | |
| Freehold Premises | 1,000 | | T, two-fifths | 40 | |
| Fixtures | 350 | | .. Loss on Realisation of other Assets: | | 100 |
| | | 1,350 | G, Capital Account | 1,075 | |
| | | | T, | 1,075 | |
| | | | | | 2,150 |
| | | <u>£2,450</u> | | | <u>£2,450</u> |

CASH ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|-------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| To Balance | 4,000 | By T, Capital Account | 5,085 |
| .. G, Capital Account | 1,085 | | |
| | <u>£5,085</u> | | <u>£5,085</u> |

DEBTORS

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Balance | 1,050 | By G, Proceeds of Realisation | 950 |
| | | .. Realisation Profit and Loss Account | 100 |
| | <u>£1,050</u> | | <u>£1,050</u> |

FREEHOLD PREMISES

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Balance, b/f. | 8,000 | By G, Capital Account | 7,000 |
| | | .. Realisation Profit and Loss Account | 1,000 |
| | <u>£8,000</u> | | <u>£8,000</u> |

FIXTURES

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Balance, b/f.: | | | |
| Drapery | 750 | By G, Capital Account | 500 |
| Furnishings | 400 | .. T, Capital Account | 300 |
| | | .. Realisation Profit and Loss Account | 350 |
| | <u>£1,150</u> | | <u>£1,150</u> |

STOCK

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| To Balance, b/f. | | By G, Capital Account | 1,700 |
| .. Drapery | 1,600 | .. T, | 1,500 |
| .. Furnishing | 1,400 | | |
| .. Realisation Profit and Loss Account | 200 | | |
| | <u>£3,200</u> | | <u>£3,200</u> |

CAPITAL ACCOUNTS

| | G £ | T £ | | G £ | T £ |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------------|----------------|---------------|
| To Freehold Premises | 7,000 | | By Balance, b/f. | 7,000 | 8,000 |
| .. Stock | 1,700 | 1,500 | .. Creditors taken over | 3,200 | |
| .. Fixtures | 500 | 300 | .. Cash | 1,085 | |
| .. Debtors | 950 | | | | |
| .. Bad Debts | 60 | 40 | | | |
| .. Profit and Loss on Realisation | 1,075 | 1,075 | | | |
| .. Cash | | 5,085 | | | |
| | <u>£11,285</u> | <u>£8,000</u> | | <u>£11,285</u> | <u>£8,000</u> |

(4) *Where, on dissolution, a partner's Capital Account is in debit, and he is unable to discharge his indebtedness, so that the rule in Garner v. Murray must be applied.*

Prior to the decision in *Garner v. Murray* it was generally supposed that any loss occasioned by one of the partners of a firm being unable to make good a debit balance on his account should be borne by the remaining partners in the proportions in which they shared profits and losses.

In this case, however, it was held that a deficiency of assets occasioned through the default of one of the partners must be distinguished from an ordinary trading loss, and should be regarded as a debt due to the remaining partners individually, and not to the firm.

The circumstances of the case, the decision in which gave rise to considerable controversy, were as follows: Garner, Murray and Wilkins were in partnership under a parol agreement by the terms of which capital was to be contributed by them in unequal shares, but profits and losses were to be divided equally. On the dissolution of the partnership, after payment of the creditors and of advances made by two of the partners, there was a deficiency of assets of £635, in addition to which Wilkins' Capital Account was overdrawn by £263, which he was unable to pay. There was thus a total deficiency of £898, and the plaintiff claimed that this should be borne by the solvent partners, Garner and Murray, in their agreed profit-sharing ratio, viz. equally. Mr. Justice Joyce held, however, that each of the three partners was liable to make good his share of the £635 deficiency of assets, after which the available assets should be applied in repaying to each partner what was due to him on account of capital. Since, however, one of the 'assets' was the debit balance on Wilkins' account, which was valueless, the remaining assets were to be applied in paying to Garner and Murray rateably what was due to them in respect of capital, with the result that Wilkins' deficiency was borne by them in proportion to their capitals.

The effect of the decision is shown in the following illustration.

Illustration

A, B and C with unequal capitals, share profits and losses equally. They decide to dissolve partnership, and the following Balance Sheet shows the position of affairs after the assets have been realised and the liabilities discharged.

BALANCE SHEET

| | | | | | | £ | | | | | | | £ |
|-----------|----|----|----|----|----|---------------|----------------------|----|----|----|----|--|---------------|
| Capitals: | | | | | | | Cash | | | | | | 500 |
| A .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 600 | Capital C overdrawn | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 200 |
| B .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 400 | Deficiency of Assets | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 300 |
| | | | | | | <u>£1,000</u> | | | | | | | <u>£1,000</u> |

C is insolvent and is unable to contribute anything towards either his overdraft on Capital or his share of the loss on realisation.

The loss on realisation of £300 should first be debited in profit-sharing ratio to the partners' accounts, thus reducing A's capital to £500 and B's to £300, and increasing C's deficit to £300.

If the ruling in *Garner v. Murray* were followed strictly, A and B would introduce cash of £100 each to make good their shares of the deficiency and thus restore their capitals to £600 and £400 respectively. The balances then remaining in the books would be as shown by the reconstructed Balance Sheet given below.

BALANCE SHEET

| | | £ | | £ |
|-----------|--|---------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Capitals: | | | Cash | 700 |
| A | | 600 | C's Capital overdrawn | 300 |
| B | | 400 | | |
| | | <u>£1,000</u> | | <u>£1,000</u> |

The only true asset, viz., cash of £700, would now be divided between the solvent partners, A and B, in proportion to their capitals, viz.:

| | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| | £ |
| A $\frac{6}{10}$ ths of £700 | 420 |
| B $\frac{4}{10}$ ths of £700 | 280 |
| | <u>£700</u> |

The only balances then remaining in the books would be the debit balance on C's Capital Account, £300, and the credit balances on the Capital Accounts of A and B, £180 and £120 respectively. As C is insolvent, the debit balance on his account will be written off against A and B, in the ratio of their respective capitals, viz. £180 to A and £120 to B, thus closing their accounts.

As has been shown the net effect of the above treatment is to cause A and B to bear C's deficiency in proportion to their respective capitals. The introduction of cash by A and B to meet their share of the loss on realisation is unnecessary, as the balances on their Capital Account are sufficient to meet this loss. C's deficiency should be written off against the Capital Account of A and B in *capital* ratio, viz. 6 : 4, after which the cash in hand will be exactly sufficient to repay to A and B the balances due to them on Capital Account, as shown hereunder.

CAPITAL ACCOUNTS

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | | A £ | B £ | C £ |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| To Balance b/d. | | | 200 | By Balance b/d. | 600 | 400 | |
| " Realisation Account - Loss | 100 | 100 | 100 | " A and B - C's deficiency transferred: | | | |
| " C | 180 | 120 | | A six-tenths | | | 180 |
| " Cash | 320 | 180 | | B four-tenths | | | 120 |
| | <u>£600</u> | <u>£400</u> | <u>£300</u> | | <u>£600</u> | <u>£400</u> | <u>£300</u> |

(5) *Piecemeal Realisation and Interim Distributions*

When assets are realised piecemeal, the partners may desire, as soon as all liabilities have been discharged, to withdraw immediately such cash as is available for division between them rather than wait until all the assets have been sold. In such circumstances the interim payments to the partners should be of such amounts that even though the remaining assets prove to be worthless no partner will have received more

than the amount to which he is ultimately found to be entitled after being debited with his proper share of the total loss sustained on realisation of all the assets.

Illustration (1)

A, B, C and D are in partnership, sharing profits in the ratio 3 : 2 : 1 : 4. It is decided to dissolve the firm on 1st January 19.., on which date the Balance Sheet was as under:

BALANCE SHEET, AS AT 1ST JANUARY 19..

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------------|----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| Capital Accounts: | | Goodwill | 3,000 |
| A | £7,000 | Land and Buildings | 8,500 |
| B | 4,000 | Plant and Machinery | 7,921 |
| C | 3,000 | Investments | 2,000 |
| D | 4,000 | Stock-in-trade | 6,348 |
| | 18,000 | Sundry Debtors | 3,841 |
| Sundry Creditors | 6,923 | Cash at Bank | 313 |
| Leasehold Redemption Fund | 2,000 | | |
| General Reserve | 5,000 | | |
| | <u>£31,923</u> | | <u>£31,923</u> |

The assets are realised piecemeal as under:

| | £ |
|--------------------------------------|-------|
| January 10 Stock (part) | 3,500 |
| „ 14 Debtors (part) | 2,932 |
| „ 28 Investments | 2,420 |
| February 3 Goodwill | 2,000 |
| „ 21 Land and Buildings | 7,000 |
| „ „ Debtors (part) | 500 |
| „ „ Stock (balance) | 2,750 |
| March 15 Plant and Machinery | 6,560 |
| „ „ Debtors (balance) | 351 |

Subject to reserving £500 to meet the probable expenses of realisation, the partners decide that after the creditors have been paid, all cash received shall be divided between them immediately.

The expenses of realisation, which are paid on 15th March, amount to £400.

Prepare a Statement showing how the distributions should be made, and show the Realisation Profit and Loss Account, Cash Account and partners' Capital Accounts. Calculations are to be made to the nearest £.

After transferring the General Reserve to the partners' Capital Accounts in profit-sharing ratio the capitals of the partners will be:

| | A | B | C | D | Total |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| Balance, 1st January | 7,000 | 4,000 | 3,000 | 4,000 | 18,000 |
| General Reserve | 1,500 | 1,000 | 500 | 2,000 | 5,000 |
| | <u>£8,500</u> | <u>£5,000</u> | <u>£3,500</u> | <u>£6,000</u> | <u>£23,000</u> |

The profit-sharing ratio is .. 3 2 1 10

It is apparent that D has the smallest capital in relation to his share of profit, viz., £6,000 ÷ 4 = £1,500 capital per unit of profit. If the capitals of the other partners were held on the same basis, A's capital would be £4,500, B's £3,000 and C's £1,500. A, B and C, therefore, have surplus capital over that of D, as under, which surplus must be repaid to them before any payments are made to D.

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | D £ | Total £ |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| Balances as above | 8,500 | 5,000 | 3,500 | 6,000 | 23,000 |
| Capitals in profit-sharing ratio .. | 4,500 | 3,000 | 1,500 | 6,000 | 15,000 |
| Surplus Capitals | <u>£4,000</u> | <u>£2,000</u> | <u>£2,000</u> | <u>—</u> | <u>£8,000</u> |

As between A, B and C the profit-sharing ratio is as 3 : 2 : 1 and it is obvious, therefore, that of these three B has the smallest surplus capital in relation to his share of profit. If B's surplus capital of £2,000 were in the same proportion to the total surplus capital as his share of profit, the total surplus capital would be £6,000, of which A's share would be £3,000, B's £2,000 and C's £1,000. A and C therefore have surplus capital over B, as under, which must be repaid to them before any payment is made to B.

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | D £ | Total £ |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| Surplus Capital as above .. | 4,000 | 2,000 | 2,000 | — | 8,000 |
| Surplus Capitals in profit-sharing ratio | 3,000 | 2,000 | 1,000 | — | 6,000 |
| Further Surplus Capital .. | <u>£1,000</u> | <u>—</u> | <u>£1,000</u> | <u>—</u> | <u>£2,000</u> |

As between A and C the profit-sharing ratio is as 3 : 1 and A therefore has the smaller surplus capital in relation to his share of profit. If A's surplus of £1,000 represented three-fourths of the total surplus, this would be £1,333. C, therefore has a further surplus over A of £667 as shown hereunder.

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | D £ | Total £ |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------|----------|-------------|----------|-------------|
| Surplus Capital as above .. | 1,000 | — | 1,000 | — | 2,000 |
| Surplus Capital in profit-sharing ratio | 1,000 | — | 333 | — | 1,333 |
| Ultimate Surplus Capital .. | <u>—</u> | <u>—</u> | <u>£667</u> | <u>—</u> | <u>£667</u> |

The amounts becoming available for distribution should accordingly be paid to the partners in the order of priority shown in the following statement.

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | D £ | Total £ |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| The first £667 | | | 667 | — | 667 |
| The next £1,333 | 1,000 | | 333 | — | 1,333 |
| | <u>1,000</u> | | <u>1,000</u> | | <u>2,000</u> |
| The next £6,000 | 3,000 | 2,000 | 1,000 | — | 6,000 |
| | <u>£4,000</u> | <u>£2,000</u> | <u>£2,000</u> | <u>—</u> | <u>£8,000</u> |

After repayment of the above £8,000, the balances remaining on the Capital Accounts will be A £4,500, B £3,000, C £1,500 and D £6,000, these amounts being in the same proportion as that in which profits and losses are shared. By dividing all further realisations in profit-sharing ratio, therefore, each partner will receive his proper share of the profit or bear his proper share of the loss.

STATEMENT OF ACTUAL DISTRIBUTIONS

| 19.. | | Cash available | A | B | C | D | Total |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| | | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| Jan. 10 | Balance b/f. | 313 | | | | | |
| 14 | Realisation | 3,500 | | | | | |
| 28 | " | 2,932 | | | | | |
| | " | 2,420 | | | | | |
| | Less Creditors | 9,165 | | | | | |
| | | 6,923 | | | | | |
| Jan. 28 | Less Reserved for Expenses | 2,242 | | | | | |
| | | 500 | | | | | |
| | Less to C | 1,742 | | | 667 | | 667 |
| | | 667 | | | | | |
| | Divisible between A and C in proportion of 1,000 : 333. | £1,075 | 806 | | 269 | | 1,075 |
| | | | £806 | £— | £936 | £— | £1,742 |
| 19.. | | | | | | | |
| Feb. 3 | Realisations | 2,000 | | | | | |
| | Less Balance of £1,333 to A and C in proportion of 1,000 : 333 | 258 | 194 | — | 64 | — | 258 |
| | Divisible between A, B and C in proportion of 3,000; 2,000; 1,000. | £1,742 | 871 | 581 | 290 | — | 1,742 |
| | | | £1,065 | £581 | £354 | £— | £2,000 |
| 19.. | | | | | | | |
| Feb. 21 | Realisations | 10,250 | | | | | |
| | Less Balance of £6,000 to A, B and C in proportion of 3,000 : 2,000 : 1,000 | 4,258 | 2,129 | 1,419 | 710 | — | 4,258 |
| | Divisible between A, B and C and D in profit-sharing ratio of 3 : 2 : 1 : 4. | £5,992 | 1,798 | 1,198 | 599 | 2,397 | 5,992 |
| | | | £3,927 | £2,617 | £1,309 | £2,397 | £10,250 |
| 19.. | | | | | | | |
| Mar. 15 | Realisations | 6,911 | | | | | |
| | Add amount reserved for expenses no longer required | 100 | | | | | |
| | Divisible between A, B, C and D in profit-sharing ratio 3 : 2 : 1 : 4 | £7,011 | £2,103 | £1,403 | £701 | £2,804 | £7,011 |

The accounts will be closed as follows:

CASH ACCOUNT

| | | £ | | | £ |
|---------|-----------------------|---------|---------|----------------------------------------|---------|
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 313 | Jan. 28 | By Sundry Creditors | 6,923 |
| 10 | " Stock Account | 3,500 | | " Capital Accounts: | |
| 14 | " Sundry Debtors | 2,932 | | A | 806 |
| 28 | " Investments | 2,420 | | C | 936 |
| Feb. 3 | " Goodwill | 2,000 | Feb. 3 | " Capital Accounts: | |
| 21 | " Land and Buildings | 7,000 | | A | 1,065 |
| | " Sundry Debtors | 500 | | B | 581 |
| | " Stock | 2,750 | | C | 354 |
| Mar. 15 | " Plant and Machinery | 6,560 | 21 | " Capital Accounts: | |
| | " Sundry Debtors | 351 | | A | 3,927 |
| | | | | B | 2,617 |
| | | | | C | 1,309 |
| | | | | D | 2,397 |
| | | | Mar. 15 | " Realisation Profit and Loss Account: | |
| | | | | Expenses | 400 |
| | | | | " Capital Accounts: | |
| | | | | A | 2,103 |
| | | | | B | 1,403 |
| | | | | C | 701 |
| | | | | D | 2,804 |
| | | | | | |
| | | £28,326 | | | £28,326 |

REALISATION PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | |
|--------|------------------------------------------|-------|--------|---------|-----------------------------------------|-------|--------|
| Feb. 3 | To Goodwill | £ | 1,000 | Jan. 28 | By Investments | £ | 420 |
| 21 | " Land and Buildings | 1,500 | | Feb. 21 | " Leasehold Redemption Fund | 2,000 | |
| | " Stock | 98 | | Mar. 15 | " Loss transferred to Capital Accounts: | | |
| | " Plant and Machinery | 1,361 | | | A 3/10ths | £599 | |
| | " Sundry Debtors | 58 | | | B 2/10ths | 399 | |
| | " Cash - Expenses of Realisation | 400 | | | C 1/10th | 200 | |
| | | | | | D 4/10ths | 799 | |
| | | | | | | | 1,997 |
| | | | £4,417 | | | | £4,417 |

CAPITAL ACCOUNTS

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------|---------|-------|-------|-------|--------|---------------------------|---------|-------|-------|-------|
| Jan. 28 | To Cash | A | B | C | D | Jan. 1 | By Balances b/d | A | B | C | D |
| Feb. 3 | " | £ | £ | £ | £ | | " General Reserve | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| 21 | " | 806 | 581 | 936 | — | | | 7,000 | 4,000 | 3,000 | 4,000 |
| Mar. 15 | " | 1,065 | 2,617 | 1,309 | 2,397 | | | 1,500 | 1,000 | 500 | 2,000 |
| | " Loss on Realisation | 599 | 399 | 200 | 799 | | | | | | |
| | " Cash | 2,103 | 1,403 | 701 | 2,804 | | | | | | |
| | | £ 8,500 | 5,000 | 3,500 | 6,000 | | | £ 8,500 | 5,000 | 3,500 | 6,000 |

Another, and more cautious method, is to treat the assets remaining unrealised after each realisation as valueless, and to charge each partner with his share of the notional loss according to the agreed profit-sharing ratio. If a partner's capital is thereby thrown into debit, the amount thereof should be charged to the other partners in proportion to their capitals, in accordance with the rule in *Garner v. Murray*. The aggregate of the balances of the partners' Capital Accounts, after deducting the amounts of any previous distributions, will then equal the sum available for distribution. This process will be repeated on each realisation, with the result that after the final distribution, each partner will have borne his proper share of the ultimate loss.

Illustration (4)

A, B and C share profits in the proportion of $\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{1}{3}$ and $\frac{1}{6}$. Their Balance Sheet is as follows:

| | | | | |
|---------------------------|--------|----------------------------------|-------|--------|
| | | £ | | £ |
| A Capital Account | 3,000 | Assets, less liabilities | 8,000 | |
| B Capital Account | 3,000 | | | |
| C Capital Account | 2,000 | | | |
| | £8,000 | | | £8,000 |

The partnership is dissolved, and the assets are realised as follows:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
| | £ |
| First realisation | 1,000 |
| Second realisation | 1,500 |
| Third and final realisation | 2,500 |
| | £5,000 |

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| | £ | A | B | C | Total Distributions |
| Capitals | | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| First Realisation | 1,000 | 3,000 | 3,000 | 2,000 | |
| Balance of assets treated as loss | 7,000 | ($\frac{1}{2}$) 3,500 | ($\frac{1}{3}$) 2,333 | ($\frac{1}{6}$) 1,167 | |
| | £8,000 | Dr. £500 | c/f 667 | 833 | |

| | £ | A £ | B £ | C £ | Total Distribution £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Brought forward | | | 667 | 833 | |
| A's debit balance divided between B and C in <i>capital</i> ratio (<i>Garner v. Murray</i>) | | ($\frac{3}{8}$) 300 | ($\frac{5}{8}$) 200 | | |
| Distribution of First Realisation .. | | <u>£367</u> | <u>£633</u> | | 1,000 |
| | £ | £ | £ | £ | |
| Capitals | | 3,000 | 3,000 | 2,000 | |
| Second Realisation | 1,500 | | | | |
| Balance of assets treated as loss .. | 5,500 | ($\frac{1}{2}$) 2,750 | ($\frac{1}{4}$) 1,833 | ($\frac{1}{4}$) 917 | |
| | <u>£7,000</u> | <u>250</u> | <u>1,167</u> | <u>1,083</u> | |
| Less First Distribution .. | | — | 367 | 633 | |
| Distribution of Second Realisation | | <u>£250</u> | <u>£800</u> | <u>£450</u> | 1,500 |
| | £ | £ | £ | £ | |
| Capitals | | 3,000 | 3,000 | 2,000 | |
| Final Realisation | 2,500 | | | | |
| Loss of assets, being ultimate loss | 3,000 | ($\frac{1}{2}$) 1,500 | ($\frac{1}{4}$) 1,000 | ($\frac{1}{4}$) 500 | |
| | <u>£5,500</u> | <u>1,500</u> | <u>2,000</u> | <u>1,500</u> | |
| Less First and Second Distributions | | 250 | 1,167 | 1,083 | |
| Distribution of Final Realisation .. | | <u>£1,250</u> | <u>£833</u> | <u>£417</u> | 2,500 |

The ultimate loss of £3,000 has thus been borne by the partners in the correct proportions.

The accounts will be closed as follows:

REALISATION ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Net Assets | 8,000 | By Cash: | |
| | | 1st Realisation | 1,000 |
| | | 2nd " | 1,500 |
| | | 3rd " | 2,500 |
| | | Loss transferred to Capital Accounts: | |
| | | A | 1,500 |
| | | B | 1,000 |
| | | C | 500 |
| | | | <u>3,000</u> |
| | <u>£8,000</u> | | <u>£8,000</u> |

CASH ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------------------|-------|----------------------|-------|
| To 1st Realisation | 1,000 | By Capital Accounts: | |
| | | B | 367 |
| | | C | 633 |
| .. 2nd Realisation | 1,500 | .. Capital Accounts: | |
| | | A | 250 |
| | | B | 800 |
| | | C | 450 |
| .. 3rd Realisation | 2,500 | .. Capital Accounts: | |
| | | A | 1,250 |
| | | B | 833 |
| | | C | 417 |

CAPITAL ACCOUNTS

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | | A £ | B £ | C £ |
|---------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| To Cash 1st Realisation .. | | 367 | 633 | By Balances b/f. .. | 3,000 | 3,000 | 2,000 |
| .. " 2nd " .. | 250 | 800 | 450 | | | | |
| .. " 3rd " .. | 1,250 | 833 | 417 | | | | |
| .. Realisation Account: Loss .. | 1,500 | 1,000 | 500 | | | | |
| | <u>£3,000</u> | <u>£3,000</u> | <u>£2,000</u> | | <u>£3,000</u> | <u>£3,000</u> | <u>£2,000</u> |

The basis of distribution adopted may, of course, be different from either of the above methods if the partners so agree.

(b) Dissolution of Partnership by death or bankruptcy

Under Section 33 of the Partnership Act, 1890, any partnership, except where otherwise agreed, is dissolved as regards all the partners by the death or bankruptcy of any partner.

Section 42 of the Act provides that where any member has died, or otherwise ceased to be a partner, and the surviving or continuing partners carry on the business of the firm with its capital or assets, without any final settlement of accounts as between the firm and the outgoing partner or his estate, the outgoing partner or his estate is, in the absence of agreement, entitled to such share of the profits made since the dissolution as the court may find to be attributable to the use of his share of the partnership assets, or to interest at 5 per cent. per annum on the amount of his share of the partnership assets.

Illustration

F, G and H are partners in a manufacturing business. F is entitled to one-fourth of the partnership profits, G to one-eighth, and H to five-eighths. The yearly accounts are made up to 30th September.

F became bankrupt on the 31st March, 1958, and G and H continued the business without paying out F's share of the partnership assets, or settling accounts with his trustee, until the close of the year – 30th September, 1958,

The Balance Sheet at 30th September, 1957, showed F's capital to be £4,000.

The partners' drawings during the year to 30th September, 1958, have been as follows: F £250, G £100, and H £700.

There is no agreement for interest on capital, but the partners F and G are each to be

credited with a salary at the rate of £100 per annum. Subject to this charge, the profits for the year ended 30th September, 1958, are £1,750, which may be assumed to have accrued evenly throughout the year.

Show the balance of profits and salary due to each partner, and the total amount due by G and H to F's Estate at 30th September, 1958, assuming that F's trustee does not propose to apply to the court for a share of profits.

F, G AND H PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR THE SIX MONTHS ENDED 31ST MARCH, 1958

| | £ | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------|----|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| To Partners' Salaries: | | | By Profit for 6 months to date ($\frac{1}{2} \times £1,750$) | 875 |
| F | 50 | | | |
| G | 50 | | | |
| .. Balance c/d. | | 100 | | |
| | | 775 | | |
| | | <u>£875</u> | | <u>£875</u> |
| To F one-fourth | | 194 | By Balance b/d | 775 |
| .. G one-eighth | | 97 | | |
| .. H five-eighths | | 484 | | |
| | | <u>£775</u> | | <u>£775</u> |

G AND H PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR THE SIX MONTHS ENDED 30TH SEPTEMBER, 1958

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| To Partner's Salary: | | By Profit for 6 months to date ($\frac{1}{2} \times £1,750$) | 875 |
| G | 50 | | |
| .. Interest: F | | | |
| 5% per annum on £3,994, balance of Capital and | | | |
| Current Accounts | 100 | | |
| .. Balance c/d. | 725 | | |
| | <u>£875</u> | | <u>£875</u> |
| To G one-sixth | 121 | By Balance b/d | 725 |
| .. H five-sixths | 604 | | |
| | <u>£725</u> | | <u>£725</u> |

F CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------|
| To Drawings | 250 | By Salary to 31st March | 50 |
| | | .. Profit | 194 |
| | | .. Balance to "Capital" Account | 6 |
| | <u>£250</u> | | <u>£250</u> |

F CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Current Account | 6 | By Balance b/d. | 4,000 |
| .. Balance c/d. | 4,094 | .. Interest to 30th September - 6 months - at 5% per annum | 100 |
| | <u>£4,100</u> | | <u>£4,100</u> |
| | | By Balance, being total amount due to F's Estate b/d. | 4,094 |

G CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------|-------------|
| To Drawings | £ 100 | By Salary - F, G and H | £ 90 |
| " Balance c/d. | 218 | " Profit | 97 |
| | | " Salary - G and H | 50 |
| | | " Profit | 121 |
| | <u>£318</u> | | <u>£318</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 218 |

H CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| To Drawings | £ 700 | By Profit - F, G and H | £ 484 |
| " Balance c/d. | 388 | " " G and H | 604 |
| | <u>£1,088</u> | | <u>£1,088</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 388 |

Note

If F's trustee applied to the court for a share of the profits, the latter would probably direct that the profits should be charged with reasonable salaries for the services of the continuing partners, before arriving at the balance of which F was entitled to a share.

(c) Amalgamation of Firms

Where the members of two or more partnerships decide to amalgamate, the transaction resolves itself into the dissolution of the existing partnerships and the formation of a new one. For the purposes of the amalgamation it is probable that the goodwill and other assets of the original firms will be revalued, and the capitals of the respective partners adjusted by reference to the profit or loss arising on such revaluation, before arriving at the amount of capital introduced by each partner into the new firm. Where the capital of the new firm is a fixed amount, to be provided by the partners in specified proportions or sums, it may be necessary, after giving effect to the agreed revaluations of assets, for cash to be withdrawn or paid in by one or more of the partners in order to adjust the capitals to the agreed amounts.

Illustration

Black and Green and Brown and Grey are two partnerships carrying on a similar type of business. They agree to amalgamate the two businesses as on 1st January, 1959, under the name of Tints & Co. Black and Green share profits in the ratio 8 : 7 and Brown and Grey 3 : 2. The respective Balance Sheets at 31st December, 1958, were as under:

| | Black and Green | Brown and Grey |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Trade and Expense Creditors | £ 6,400 | £ 5,600 |
| Current Accounts: | | |
| Black | 1,000 | — |
| Green | 600 | — |
| Capital Accounts: | | |
| Black | 12,000 | — |
| Green | 10,500 | — |
| Brown | — | 11,000 |
| Grey | — | 7,800 |
| | <u>£30,500</u> | <u>£24,400</u> |

| | Black and Green £ | Brown and Grey £ |
|-------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Balance at Bank | 4,200 | 3,100 |
| Investments | 1,500 | — |
| Debtors | 7,100 | 6,500 |
| Stock | 5,900 | 6,700 |
| Vehicles | 2,500 | 1,700 |
| Fixtures | 1,800 | 1,400 |
| Freeholds | 7,500 | 5,000 |
| | <u>£30,500</u> | <u>£24,400</u> |

The amalgamation agreement contained the following provisions:

(1) The freeholds and fixtures of Brown and Grey to be sold – these assets were sold for £10,000 and the sale was completed on 1st January, 1959.

| | Black and Green £ | Brown and Grey £ |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Stock | 5,700 | 6,200 |
| Vehicles | 2,300 | 1,500 |
| Fixtures | 2,000 | — |
| Freeholds | 9,500 | — |

(3) Provision to be made for doubtful debts of £400 by Black and Green, and of £500 by Brown and Grey; the creditors of each firm to be subject to a discount of $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.

(4) Black to take over his firm's investments at £1,200.

(5) The goodwill of Black and Green is to be taken at £7,500, and that of Brown and Grey at £5,000.

(6) Profits in the new firm are to be shared in the proportion of six-twentieths to Black, five-twentieths each to Green and Brown and four-twentieths to Grey.

(7) The capital of the new firm is to be £50,000, to be provided by the partners in their profit-sharing ratios, adjustments to be made in cash.

Close the books of Black and Green and of Brown and Grey, and show the opening balance sheet of of Tints & Co.

BLACK AND GREEN'S BOOKS REALISATION ACCOUNT

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------|-------|----------------|------------------------------------------------|-------|----------------|
| To Sundry Assets | | 30,500 | By Black - Investments | | 1,200 |
| .. Provision for Doubtful Debts | | 400 | .. Provision for Discount on Creditors | | 160 |
| .. Capital Accounts - Profit on Realisation: | | | .. Tints & Co.: Assets taken over: | | |
| Black 8/15ths | 4,672 | | Goodwill | 7,500 | |
| Green 7/15ths | 4,088 | | Freeholds | 9,500 | |
| | | 8,760 | Fixtures | 2,000 | |
| | | | Vehicles | 2,300 | |
| | | | Stock | 5,700 | |
| | | | Debtors | 7,100 | |
| | | | Bank Balance | 4,200 | |
| | | | | | 38,300 |
| | | | | | <u>£39,660</u> |
| | | <u>£39,660</u> | | | |

CAPITAL ACCOUNTS

| | Black £ | Green £ | | Black £ | Green £ |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| To Investments | 1,200 | | By Balances, b/f. | 12,000 | 10,500 |
| .. Capital in Tints & Co. | 15,000 | 12,500 | .. Current Accounts | 1,000 | 600 |
| .. Cash from Tints & Co. | 1,472 | 2,688 | .. Realisation Account - Profit | 4,672 | 4,088 |
| | <u>£17,672</u> | <u>£15,188</u> | | <u>£17,672</u> | <u>£15,188</u> |

Note.

The Bank balance of Tints & Co. is made up as follows:

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------|----------|
| | | £ |
| Taken over from: Black and Green .. | | 4,200 |
| Brown and Grey .. | | 13,100 |
| | | £ 17,300 |
| Less Paid to: Black | 1,472 | |
| Green | 2,688 | |
| Brown | 3,024 | |
| Grey | 816 | |
| | ————— | 8,000 |
| | | £9,300 |

(d) The Conversion of a Private Firm into a Limited Company

Frequently a private business is 'converted' into a limited company, *i.e.* transferred to the company in exchange for shares therein. The company may be either a private one, in which case the shares will be held by the families concerned, or a public company, the shares or debentures of which may be offered for subscription to the public.

The advantages of such a 'conversion' are set out in Section 1 of Chapter VIII.

Such a transaction will necessitate the books of the firm being closed, and new books being opened for the company. The following will be the procedure for closing the firm's books:

- (1) Open a Realisation Account, and transfer to the debit thereof the book value of the assets taken over by the purchasing company, crediting the various asset accounts.
- (2) Transfer to the credit of Realisation Account the liabilities assumed by the company, debiting the respective liability accounts.
- (3) Debit the Purchasing Company's Account, and credit Realisation Account with the agreed purchase price of the net assets taken over by the company.

Note. The term 'net assets' means the assets less the liabilities.

- (4) The balance on the Realisation Account, after debiting expenses (if any), will represent the profit or loss on realisation of the net assets, and will be divided between the partners in the proportions in which they share profits and losses.
- (5) Debit the accounts of the assets (*e.g.* cash, shares, debentures, etc.) received as purchase consideration, and credit the Purchasing Company's Account.
- (6) Pay off any liabilities not taken over by the new company, crediting cash and debiting the liability accounts.
- (7) Distribute between the partners the shares, debentures, etc., received from the company in the proportions agreed between them, debiting their Capital Accounts and crediting the accounts of the shares, debentures, etc.
- (8) Any balances remaining on Capital Accounts must now be cleared by the withdrawal or payment in of cash.

Illustration

The firm of J, S and R decide to turn their business into a limited company, J. S. & R. Ltd. Their Balance Sheet is as follows:

J, S AND R
BALANCE SHEET, 30TH JUNE

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------|----------|------------------------------------------|----------|
| Capital Accounts: | | Freehold Property | 30,000 |
| J | £25,000 | Plant | 10,900 |
| S | 15,000 | Pictures, Fittings and Furniture | 1,500 |
| R | 10,000 | Stock-in-Trade | 19,500 |
| | | Sundry Debtors | £68,830 |
| | | Less Provision | 2,000 |
| Trade Creditors | 63,300 | | 66,830 |
| Loan on Mortgage | 20,000 | Cash at Bank | 4,500 |
| | | .. in Hand | 70 |
| | | | 4,570 |
| | | | £133,300 |
| | £133,300 | | |

They share profits – J four-ninths, S three-ninths, R two-ninths. The purchase consideration was £85,000 (the company taking over all the assets and liabilities except the loan on mortgage), and was payable as to £25,000 in cash, £20,000 in 5 per cent. mortgage debentures, and £40,000 in ordinary shares. Expenses amounting to £600 were payable by the firm.

Assuming the transactions to have been carried through, and the loan on mortgage repaid, close the books of the firm, the debentures and shares being divided between the partners in the following proportions: J one-half, S one-quarter, R one-quarter.

REALISATION ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------|----------|
| To Sundry Assets | 135,300 | By Provision for Bad Debts | 2,000 |
| .. Expenses | 600 | .. Trade Creditors | 63,300 |
| .. Capital Accounts, being profit: | | .. J. S. & R. Ltd., purchase consideration | 85,000 |
| J four-ninths | £6,400 | | |
| S three-ninths | 4,800 | | |
| R two-ninths | 3,200 | | |
| | 14,400 | | |
| | £150,300 | | £150,300 |

LOAN ON MORTGAGE

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------|--------|-------------------------|--------|
| To Cash | 20,000 | By Balance b/d. | 20,000 |

J S & R LTD.

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------------|---------|
| To Realisation Account, purchase consideration | 85,000 | By Cash | 25,000 |
| | | .. Debentures in J. S. & R. Ltd. | 20,000 |
| | | .. Ordinary Shares in J. S. & R. Ltd. | 40,000 |
| | £85,000 | | £85,000 |

DEBENTURES IN J S & R LTD.

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------------------|---------|----------------------------------------|---------|
| To J. S. & R. Ltd. | 20,000 | By J Capital Account, one-half | 10,000 |
| | | .. S | 5,000 |
| | | .. R | 5,000 |
| | £20,000 | | £20,000 |

ORDINARY SHARES IN J S & R LTD.

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---|----------------|----------------------------------------|---|----------------|
| To J. S. & R. Ltd. | £ | 40,000 | By J Capital Account, one-half | £ | 20,000 |
| | | | " S | | 10,000 |
| | | | " R | | 10,000 |
| | | | " one-quarter | | |
| | | | " one-quarter | | |
| | | <u>£40,000</u> | | | <u>£40,000</u> |

J CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------|---|----------------|---------------------------------------|---|----------------|
| To Debentures in J. S. & R. Ltd. | £ | 10,000 | By Balance b/d. | £ | 25,000 |
| " Ordinary Shares in J. S. & R. Ltd. | | 20,000 | " Realisation Account, profit | | 6,400 |
| " Cash | | 1,400 | | | |
| | | <u>£31,400</u> | | | <u>£31,400</u> |

S CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------|---|----------------|---------------------------------------|---|----------------|
| To Debentures in J. S. & R. Ltd. | £ | 5,000 | By Balance b/d. | £ | 15,000 |
| " Ordinary Shares in J. S. & R. Ltd. | | 10,000 | " Realisation Account, profit | | 4,800 |
| " Cash | | 4,800 | | | |
| | | <u>£19,800</u> | | | <u>£19,800</u> |

R CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------|---|----------------|---------------------------------------|---|----------------|
| To Debentures in J. S. & R. Ltd. | £ | 5,000 | By Balance b/d. | £ | 10,000 |
| " Ordinary Shares in J. S. & R. Ltd. | | 10,000 | " Realisation Account, profit | | 3,200 |
| " Cash | | | " Cash | | 1,800 |
| | | <u>£15,000</u> | | | <u>£15,000</u> |

CASH ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------|---|----------------|-----------------------------|---|----------------|
| To J. S. & R. Ltd. | £ | 25,000 | By Loan on Mortgage | £ | 20,000 |
| " Capital Account: R | | 1,800 | " Expenses | | 600 |
| | | | " Capital Accounts: | | |
| | | | J | | £1,400 |
| | | | S | | 4,800 |
| | | | | | <u>6,200</u> |
| | | <u>£26,800</u> | | | <u>£26,800</u> |

Normally, where a partnership is converted into a limited company, the partners of the firm will agree as to the manner in which the shares, debentures, etc., of the company, received as purchase consideration, are to be divided between them. Where, however, the partners cannot agree upon such proportions an independent valuation of the shares, debentures, etc., should be obtained and the profit or loss disclosed thereby divided between the partners in their profit-sharing ratio. The shares, debentures, etc., at their agreed valuation, will then be divided between the partners in proportion to the adjusted balances on their capital accounts. If it is desired by the partners to share the profits of the company in the proportions in which the profits of partnership were formerly divided, the shares, debentures, etc., should be allocated to the partners in their profit-sharing ratio, a cash adjustment being made between the partners in respect of any balances remaining due to or by them individually.

§ 9. Joint Venture Accounts

'Joint venture' is defined in 'Bell's Principles', Art. 392, as follows: 'Joint adventure or joint trade is a partnership confined to a particular adventure, speculation, course of trade or voyage, and in which the partners, either latent or known, use no firm or social name, and incur no responsibility beyond the limits of the adventure.' The incidents of joint venture cannot be distinguished in any way from those of an ordinary partnership, beyond the fact that the agreement is of a specially limited character.

In actual practice joint ventures resolve themselves broadly into two classes:

(a) Where a separate set of books is opened for the transactions of the Joint Venture

In such a case, a joint banking account may be opened and the transactions recorded in a manner precisely similar to those of ordinary partnerships, each partner's Capital Account being credited with the amount which he pays into the Joint Account. Interest on capital is usually taken into consideration, and the profits or losses are divided according to the shares agreed upon.

Illustration (1)

A and B were partners in a joint venture in timber, sharing profits – two-thirds and one-third respectively. A banking account in their joint names is opened on the 1st January, A paying in £700, and B £850.

The transactions were as follows:

| | | | | £ | s. | d. |
|-------|----|--------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------|----|----|
| Jan. | 8 | Purchased from F. Daponta Cargo of Timber valued at | .. | 665 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Accepted draft for same at one month | .. .. | 665 | 0 | 0 |
| " | 11 | Paid Freight and Expenses to Liverpool | .. .. | 142 | 10 | 0 |
| Feb. | 20 | Sold T. Stephens & Sons Logs | .. .. | 180 | 0 | 0 |
| " | 21 | Received Cash less 5% .. | .. .. | 171 | 0 | 0 |
| " | 26 | Bought for Cash from Lehman & Co. Cargo of Timber, net | .. | 800 | 0 | 0 |
| Mar. | 17 | Paid Freight and Expenses to Hull | .. .. | 125 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Sold M. White & Co. Deals, net | .. .. | 300 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Received their acceptance one month | .. .. | 300 | 0 | 0 |
| April | 21 | Sold for Cash to M. Black & Co. Cargo purchased from | | | | |
| | | Lehman & Co. | .. .. | 1,400 | 0 | 0 |
| " | 30 | Stock balance of Daponta's Cargo valued at | .. .. | 320 | 0 | 0 |

The venture was closed on 30th April, by B taking over the unsold stock at an agreed valuation of £320, less 10 per cent.

Adjust the accounts as between the partners at 30th April, allowing interest on capital at 5 per cent. per annum, and show:

(1) The Joint Venture Account.

(2) The Partners' Capital Accounts.

(3) The Joint Cash Account.

(4) The Joint Bills Receivable and Bills Payable Accounts.

JOINT VENTURE ACCOUNT

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|-------------------------------|-----|----|----|--------|----|----|----|------------------------------------------------|-------|----|----|--------|---|----|----|
| To Purchases: | | | | | | | | By Sales: | | | | | | | |
| F. Daponta .. | 665 | 0 | 0 | | | | | T. Stephens & Sons | 180 | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| Lehman & Co. .. | 800 | 0 | 0 | | | | | M. White & Co. .. | 300 | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| | | | | 1,465 | 0 | 0 | | M. Black & Co. .. | 1,400 | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| Freight and Expenses: | | | | | | | | | | | | 1,880 | 0 | 0 | |
| Liverpool .. | 142 | 10 | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hull .. | 125 | 0 | 0 | | | | | B Capital Account: value of stock taken | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 267 | 10 | 0 | | over, £320 less 10% | | | | 288 | 0 | 0 | |
| Discount .. | | | | 9 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | | | |
| Interest on Capital: | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A .. | 11 | 13 | 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| B .. | 14 | 3 | 4 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 25 | 16 | 8 | | | | | | | | | |
| Balance, being Profit: | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| A two-thirds .. | 267 | 2 | 3 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| B one-third .. | 133 | 11 | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 400 | 13 | 4 | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | £2,168 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | £2,168 | 0 | 0 | |

A CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------------------|------|----|----|-----------------------------------|------|----|----|
| April 30 To Cash .. | 978 | 15 | 7 | Jan. 1 By Cash .. | 700 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | April 30 " Interest on Capital .. | 11 | 13 | 4 |
| | | | | " " Profit .. | 267 | 2 | 3 |
| | £978 | 15 | 7 | | £978 | 15 | 7 |

B CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------------------------------|------|----|----|-----------------------------------|------|----|----|
| April 30 To Stock taken over .. | 288 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 By Cash .. | 850 | 0 | 0 |
| " " Cash .. | 709 | 14 | 5 | April 30 " Interest on Capital .. | 14 | 3 | 4 |
| | | | | " " Profit .. | 133 | 11 | 1 |
| | £997 | 14 | 5 | | £997 | 14 | 5 |

CASH BOOK

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------------------------------|--------|----|----|------------------------------------|--------|----|----|
| Jan. 1 To A Capital Account .. | 700 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 11 By Freight and Expenses .. | 142 | 10 | 0 |
| " " B .. | 850 | 0 | 0 | Feb. 11 " Bills Payable .. | 665 | 0 | 0 |
| Feb. 21 " T. Stephens & Sons .. | 171 | 0 | 0 | " 26 " Cash Purchases: | | | |
| April 20 " Bills Receivable .. | 300 | 0 | 0 | Lehman & Co. .. | 800 | 0 | 0 |
| " 21 " Cash Sales: | | | | Mar. 17 " Freight and Expenses .. | 125 | 0 | 0 |
| M. Black & Co. .. | 1,400 | 0 | 0 | April 30 " Balance c/d. .. | 1,688 | 10 | 0 |
| | £3,421 | 0 | 0 | | £3,421 | 0 | 0 |
| April 30 To Balance b/d. .. | 1,688 | 10 | 0 | April 30 By A .. | 978 | 15 | 7 |
| | | | | " B .. | 709 | 14 | 5 |
| | £1,688 | 10 | 0 | | £1,688 | 10 | 0 |

BILLS RECEIVABLE ACCOUNT

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|------------------------------|-----|----|----|---------------------|-----|----|----|
| Mar. 17 To M. White & Co. .. | 300 | 0 | 0 | April 20 By Cash .. | 300 | 0 | 0 |

BILLS PAYABLE ACCOUNT

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|--------------------|-----|----|----|-------------------------|-----|----|----|
| Feb. 11 To Cash .. | 665 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 8 By F. Daponta .. | 665 | 0 | 0 |

In some cases, although a separate set of books is kept for the joint venture, it is not considered necessary to open a special joint banking account therefor. In these circumstances each party to the venture will disburse sums on behalf of the joint account from his own banking account, into which he will also pay cash received by him from time to time. In the books of the joint venture the Capital Accounts of the parties concerned will be credited with the sums paid out on behalf of the venture and debited with the cash collected.

Illustration (2)

A and B are partners in a joint venture in produce, sharing profits in the ratio 2 : 1. A separate set of books is opened for the venture, but all cash transactions are dealt with by the partners through their own banking accounts.

The transactions of the venture were as under:

| | | | | | £ |
|-------|----|----------------------------------------------------------|--|--|-------|
| Jan. | 1 | Purchased produce from J. Smith | | | 1,000 |
| | | Freight and expenses thereon paid by A | | | 120 |
| Feb. | 1 | J. Smith's account met by A subject to 10% cash discount | | | |
| " | 13 | Sold to A. Brown produce for | | | 860 |
| " | 15 | Sold to T. Jones produce for | | | 620 |
| March | 1 | Cash purchase by B for | | | 600 |
| April | 1 | Payment to B by A. Brown in settlement of his account | | | |
| May | 1 | Payment to A by T. Jones in settlement of his account .. | | | |
| June | 1 | Sundry expenses paid by A | | | 61 |
| | | Balance of produce sold by A for £700 cash. | | | |

The accounts of the venture are to be made up to 30th June, on which date a settlement is effected between the parties. Interest is to be calculated to the nearest £ at 5% per annum.

A CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | | | Mos. | Int. | £ | | | | | | Mos. | Int. | £ |
|--------|---------------------------------|----|---|------------|---------------|--------|-------------------------|----|---|------------|---------------|--|------|------|---|
| May 1 | To Cash from T. Jones | .. | 2 | 5 | 620 | Jan. 1 | By Freight and Expenses | .. | 6 | 3 | 120 | | | | |
| June 1 | " Cash Sales | .. | 1 | 3 | 700 | Feb. 1 | " J. Smith | .. | 5 | 19 | 900 | | | | |
| " 30 | " Balance of Interest to contra | .. | | | | June 1 | " Sundry Expenses | .. | 1 | | 61 | | | | |
| | | | | 14 | | " 30 | " Balance of Interest | .. | | | 14 | | | | |
| | | | | <u>£22</u> | | | | | | <u>£22</u> | | | | | |
| | " Cheque from B in settlement | .. | | | 99 | | " Profit | .. | | | 324 | | | | |
| | | | | | <u>£1,419</u> | | | | | | <u>£1,419</u> | | | | |

B CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | Mos. | Int. | £ | | Mos. | Int. | £ | |
|---------|------------------------|------|------|-------------|---------|----------------------------------|------|-------------|-----|
| April 1 | To Cash from A. Brown | 3 | 11 | 860 | Mar. 1 | By Cash Purchase | 4 | 10 | 600 |
| June 30 | .. Balance of Interest | | | 1 | June 30 | .. Balance of Interest to contra | | 1 | |
| | | | | <u>£11</u> | | | | <u>£11</u> | |
| | | | | | | .. Profit | | | 162 |
| | | | | | | .. Cheque to A in settlement | | | 99 |
| | | | | <u>£861</u> | | | | <u>£861</u> | |

JOINT VENTURE ACCOUNT

| To Purchases: | | | | £ | By Sales: | | | | £ |
|----------------------|----|----|----|--------|-------------|----|----|----|--------|
| J. Smith | .. | .. | .. | 1,000 | A. Brown | .. | .. | .. | 860 |
| Cash | .. | .. | .. | 600 | T. Jones | .. | .. | .. | 620 |
| | | | | | Cash | .. | .. | .. | 700 |
| Freight and Expenses | .. | .. | .. | 120 | | | | | 2,180 |
| Sundry Expenses | .. | .. | .. | 61 | Discount | .. | .. | .. | 100 |
| Interest: A | .. | .. | .. | 14 | Interest: B | .. | .. | .. | 1 |
| Profit: | | | | | | | | | |
| A two-thirds | .. | .. | .. | 324 | | | | | |
| B one-third | .. | .. | .. | 162 | | | | | |
| | | | | 486 | | | | | |
| | | | | £2,281 | | | | | £2,281 |

In their respective books A and B will keep accounts to record the payments made by them on behalf of the venture and the cash received therefrom. These accounts will appear as under:

A's BOOKS
JOINT VENTURE WITH B

| | | | | £ | | | | | £ |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|--------|--------|--------------------|----|----|--------|
| Jan. 1 | To Cash - Freight and Expenses | .. | .. | 120 | May 1 | By Cash - T. Jones | .. | .. | 620 |
| Feb. 1 | " J. Smith | .. | .. | 900 | June 1 | " Cash Sales | .. | .. | 700 |
| June 1 | " Sundry Expenses | .. | .. | 61 | " 30 | " Cheque from B | .. | .. | 99 |
| " 30 | " Interest Account | .. | .. | 14 | | | | | |
| | " Profit and Loss Account - two-thirds of profit on venture | .. | .. | 324 | | | | | |
| | | | | £1,419 | | | | | £1,419 |

B's BOOKS
JOINT VENTURE WITH A

| | | | | £ | | | | | £ |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|------|---------|---------------------|----|----|------|
| March 1 | To Cash Purchase | .. | .. | 600 | April 1 | By Cash - A. Brown | .. | .. | 860 |
| June 30 | " Profit and Loss Account - one-third of profit on venture | .. | .. | 162 | June 30 | " Interest Account | .. | .. | 1 |
| | " Cheque to A | .. | .. | 99 | | | | | |
| | | | | £861 | | | | | £861 |

(b) Where no separate set of books is opened for the transactions of the joint venture In such a case each party will record his own transactions on behalf of the joint venture in his own books, and no joint banking account will normally be opened. In order to ascertain the profit or loss, each party must render to the other a complete statement of all transactions entered into by him, and these must then be combined into a *memorandum* Joint Venture Account. This account, which does not appear in the books of either party, but is raised from material supplied by both, is in the nature of a Profit and Loss Account. As soon as the result is ascertained, each partner will debit or credit the account for the joint venture in his own books with his share of the result, and the balance of this account, if the venture has been completed, will then represent the amount due to o. by the other party.

Illustration (1)

M and R were partners in an underwriting venture, sharing profits and losses M three-fifths and R two-fifths. They agree to guarantee the subscription at par of 100,000 shares of £1 each in a company, and to pay all expenses up to allotment, in consideration of a commission of 6 per cent. in cash and 10 per cent. in fully-paid shares of the company.

M provided cash for the following expenses: Registration Fees £620; Advertising £2,700; Printing and Prospectuses £270. R provided the cash for the remainder, viz., Rent of Offices £45; Petty Cash £20; Stamps £90; Law Costs £250. The whole of the commission was received by M.

The public having subscribed only 70,000 shares, the underwriters had to take up 30,000, the cash being provided by and shares allotted to them in the proportions of - M three-fifths and R two-fifths.

In due course they sold all the shares except 5,000, including those received for commission, at an average price of 15s. 3d., less brokerage of 3d. per share, the remaining 5,000 being taken over by M at 12s 6d. per share. The sales were effected as to 21,000 by M and 14,000 by R.

Prepare a Joint Venture Account, and the separate accounts of the partners in their own books, showing the final balance payable by the one to the other, the shares taken over by M being brought into account, and no interest being taken into consideration.

M'S BOOKS JOINT ACCOUNT WITH R

| | Shares £ | £ | | Shares £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| To Cash - Expenses | | 3,590 | By Cash - Commission | | 6,000 |
| Shares taken up | 18,000 | 18,000 | Proceeds of Shares sold | 21,000 | 15,750 |
| Shares received as Commission | 10,000 | | Own Investment Account - Shares taken over | 5,000 | 3,125 |
| .. Profit and Loss Account: three-fifths of £1,380 | | 828 | .. Shares sold by R. | 2,000 | |
| .. Balance due to R | | 2,457 | | | |
| | <u>£28,000</u> | <u>£24,875</u> | | <u>£28,000</u> | <u>£24,875</u> |
| | | | By Balance due to R | | 2,457 |

R's BOOKS JOINT ACCOUNT WITH M

| | Shares £ | £ | | Shares £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| To Cash - Expenses | | 405 | By Cash - Proceeds of Shares sold | 14,000 | 10,500 |
| Shares taken up | 12,000 | 12,000 | .. Balance due from M | | 2,457 |
| Shares drawn from M | 2,000 | | | | |
| .. Profit and Loss Account: Two-fifths of £1,380 | | 552 | | | |
| | <u>£14,000</u> | <u>£12,957</u> | | <u>£14,000</u> | <u>£12,957</u> |
| To Balance due from M | | 2,457 | | | |

MEMORANDUM JOINT VENTURE ACCOUNT

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|-----------------------------|--------|----------------|------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------|
| To Expenses paid by M: | | | By Cash - Underwriting Commission | | 6,000 |
| Registration Fees | 620 | | .. Sale of 35,000 shares at 15s. net: | | |
| Advertising | 2,700 | | M | 15,750 | |
| Printing, etc. | 270 | | R | 10,500 | |
| | | 3,590 | | | 26,250 |
| .. Expenses paid by R: | | | .. Shares taken over by M, 5,000 @ 12s. 6d. .. | | 3,125 |
| Rent | 45 | | | | |
| Petty Cash | 20 | | | | |
| Stamps | 90 | | | | |
| Law Costs | 250 | | | | |
| | | 405 | | | |
| .. Cost of Shares taken up: | | | | | |
| M | 18,000 | | | | |
| R | 12,000 | | | | |
| | | 30,000 | | | |
| .. Balance, being Profit: | | | | | |
| M three-fifths | 828 | | | | |
| R two-fifths | 552 | | | | |
| | | 1,380 | | | |
| | | <u>£35,375</u> | | | <u>£35,375</u> |

Notes to Illustration

- (1) It is preferable to place no value on the shares received as commission until they are sold, when the proceeds are credited to the Joint Account. As these shares were received by M the receipt and sale thereof appear in the Joint Account in his books.
- (2) The shares allotted to M and R respectively are the property of the partnership, not of the individual partners; they represent the stock-in-trade of the venture, part of which is in the custody of M and part of R. Where it is necessary for one partner to draw on stock held by the other for the purpose of effecting delivery of shares sold, this involves no payment of cash between the partners, but each partner must account to the venture for the proceeds of the sales effected by him. Thus, R must credit his Joint Account with the proceeds of the 14,000 shares sold by him, although delivery of 2,000 of these shares must be made out of the shares held by M.
- (3) The 5,000 shares taken over by M represent a purchase by him from the venture, the agreed price being credited to the Joint Account in his books as the proceeds of a sale by venture, and debited to M's Personal Investment Account.

An alternative method is for one (or each) of the partners to record the *whole* of the transactions in his own books, in which, in addition to the Joint Venture Account, a personal account for the other partner will be opened. The Joint Venture Account will be debited with all the payments made, and credited with all the sums received, by *both* partners, the cash book being credited with the payments made and debited with the receipts of the partner in whose books the transactions are being recorded, and the personal account of the other partner credited and debited respectively with the payments and receipts made by him. Any stock taken over by the partners will be credited to the Joint Venture Account, and debited, in the case of the first named partner, to his purchases or other appropriate account, and in the case of the other partner, to his personal account.

The profit disclosed by the Joint Venture Account will be divided between the partners according to the agreement between them, the first-named partner's share being credited to his own Profit and Loss Account or Capital Account, and the other partner's share to his personal account. A loss will be treated in the converse manner. The balance remaining on the personal account of the other partner will now represent the sum due to or from him to close the venture.

Illustration (2)

Bear and Bull agreed to deal in stocks and shares on joint account and to share any profits or losses equally.

The following transactions took place:

- (1) 4th January. Bear purchased 2,000 £1 shares in Washers Ltd. at 35s. per share, expenses amounting to £34.
- (2) 10th January. Bull purchased 1,000 £1 Ordinary Stock units in Assurances Ltd. at 42s. cum div., expenses amounting to £32.
- (3) 30th March. Bull purchased a further 500 £1 Ordinary Stock units in Assurances Ltd. at 40s. ex div., expenses amounting to £16.

- (4) 15th April. A dividend, less tax of £83, for the year ended the previous 31st December, on 1,500 Assurances Ltd. £1 Ordinary Stock units, was received by Bull, who immediately paid to the broker the amount applicable to the seller, £28.
- (5) 30th April. A fully-paid allotment letter was received by Bear from Washers Ltd. in respect of an issue in the proportion of one new £1 share, credited as fully-paid, for every two shares held. These shares ranked for dividend *pari passu* with the old shares as from 1st May. Bear sold the new shares for 22s. 3d. each, less a brokerage of 3d. per share.
- (6) 30th April. A dividend, less tax of £220, for the year ended the previous 31st December, was received by Bear from Washers Ltd.
- (7) 25th June. Bull purchased £250 (1,000 5s. units) Ordinary Stock in Showers Ltd. at 10s. per unit, expenses amounting to £25.
- (8) 31st July. A capital distribution of 1s. per unit was received by Bull on the Showers Ltd. Ordinary Stock.
- (9) 30th August. Bear sold the shares in Washers Ltd. at 25s. per share, expenses amounting to £32.

On 30th September, it was agreed to terminate the venture, Bull taking over the Assurances Ltd. stock at a valuation of 50s. per £1 unit, and Bear the Showers Ltd. stock at a valuation of 15s. per 5s. unit, the balance between them being settled by cash.

You are required to prepare:

- (a) The Joint Venture Account, and
 (b) Bear's Account,
 as they would appear in Bull's books.

JOINT VENTURE ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Jan. 4 To Bear, purchase 2,000 £1 Shares in Washers Ltd. at 35s. a share plus expenses of £34 | 3,534 | Apr. 15 By Cash, Dividend less tax on 1,500 £1 Ordinary Stock units in Assurances Ltd. | 83 |
| 10 " Cash, 1,000 £1 Ordinary Stock units in Assurances Ltd. at 42s. each plus expenses of £32 | 2,132 | 30 " Bear, sale of 1,000 Shares in Washers Ltd. at 22s. net | 1,100 |
| Mar. 30 " Cash, 500 £1 Ordinary Stock units in Assurances Ltd. at 40s. ex div. plus expenses of £16 | 1,016 | " Bear, dividend less tax on 2,000 £1 Shares in Washers Ltd. | 220 |
| Apr. 15 " Cash, Dividend on 500 £1 Ordinary Stock units in Assurances Ltd. paid to seller | 28 | July 31 " Cash, Capital distribution on Showers Ltd. Stock | 30 |
| June 25 " Cash, 1,000 5s. Stock units in Showers Ltd. at 10s. a unit plus expenses £25 | 525 | Aug. 30 " Bear, sale of 2,000 £1 Shares in Washers Ltd. at 25s. a Share less expenses £32 | 2,468 |
| Sept. 30 " Bear, half share of profit on venture | £593 | Sept. 30 " Investment Account, 1,500 £1 Ordinary Stock units in Assurances Ltd. taken over at 50s each | 3,750 |
| " Profit and Loss Account, half share of profit on venture | 593 | " Bear, 1,000 5s. Stock units in Showers Ltd. taken over at 15s. each | 750 |
| | <u>1,186</u> | | |
| | <u>£8,421</u> | | <u>£8,421</u> |

BEAR'S ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Apr. 30 To Joint Venture Account, sale of 1,000 £1 Shares in Washers Ltd. received as bonus shares at 22s. net | 1,100 | Jan. 4 By Joint Venture Account, purchase of Shares in Washers Ltd. | 3,534 |
| " Joint Venture Account, dividend less tax on 2,000 Shares in Washers Ltd. | 220 | Sept. 30 " Joint Venture Account, half share of profit on Venture | 593 |
| Aug. 30 " Joint Venture Account, sale of 2,000 Shares in Washers Ltd. at 25s., less expenses £32 | 2,468 | " Cash | 411 |
| Sept. 30 " Joint Venture Account, Stock units in Showers Ltd. taken over | 750 | | |
| | <u>£4,538</u> | | <u>£4,538</u> |

Note

Since the 500 share in Assurances Ltd. were purchased on 30th March *ex div.* the dividend received thereon on 15th April belongs to the seller and must be paid over to him.

Where the venture is not completed at the time the accounts of one or both parties are normally closed, and it is desired to ascertain the profit or loss to date, the unsold stock must be valued and brought into account.

It is suggested that the basis of valuation should be similar to that adopted in the case of unsold stock on consignment, *viz.*, at cost plus a proportion of the expenses which have been incurred (reducible if necessary to the market value, if lower). The proportions in which the parties provided the stock or bore expenses in connection therewith are, at this stage, irrelevant. As already stated, the stock is the property of the partnership, not of the individual partners, and for the purpose of an interim settlement of account, each party should carry forward in his Joint Account his proportion of the value of the stock in the ratio in which he shares profits. By carrying down the unsold stock in the profit-sharing ratio the profit or loss earned to date will automatically be divided between the partners in the correct proportions.

If an immediate settlement between the parties is not required it will be sufficient for each partner to balance his Joint Venture Account, bringing down the balance disclosed thereon and deferring settlement until the completion of the venture.

Illustration (3)

On 1st January A and B entered into a joint venture, agreeing to share profits and losses in the ratio of 3 : 2. A supplied goods to the value of £3,000 and incurred expenses amounting to £400. B supplied £1,000 in goods and paid £500 expenses. Their agent sold three-fourths of the goods for £5,500, and remitted the proceeds to B after deducting 5 per cent. commission on sales, on 31st March, on which date accounts were prepared, and an interim settlement affected between A and B.

On 30th June the agent reported that he had sold the remainder of the goods for £2,000, and remitted the proceeds to B, less 5 per cent. commission. A financial settlement was then effected between the partners.

A's BOOKS
JOINT ACCOUNT WITH B

| | | £ | | | £ |
|---------|---------------------------|---------------|--------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Goods | 3,000 | Mar 31 | By Balance c/d. – proportion of unsold stock | 735 |
| | „ Cash – Expenses | 400 | | „ Cash from B | 3,595 |
| Mar. 31 | „ Profit to date | 930 | | | |
| | | <u>£4,330</u> | | | <u>£4,330</u> |
| Apr. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 735 | | | |
| June 30 | „ Profit | 405 | | By Cash from B in settlement | 1,140 |
| | | <u>£1,140</u> | | | <u>£1,140</u> |

B's BOOKS
JOINT ACCOUNT WITH A

| | | | | | |
|---------|------------------------------|---------------|---------|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| | | £ | | | £ |
| Jan. 1 | To Goods | 1,000 | Mar. 31 | By Agent - Sales | 5,500 |
| | " Cash - Expenses | 500 | | " Balance c/d. - proportion of unsold stock | 490 |
| Mar. 31 | " Agent's Commission | 275 | | | |
| | " Profit to date | 620 | | | |
| | " Cash to A | 3,595 | | | |
| | | <u>£5,990</u> | | | <u>£5,990</u> |

B's BOOKS
JOINT ACCOUNT WITH A (continued)

| | | | | | |
|---------|---------------------------|---------------|---------|------------------|---------------|
| June 30 | To Balance b/d. | £ 490 | June 30 | By Agent - Sales | £ 2,000 |
| | " Agent's Commission | 100 | | | |
| | " Profit | 270 | | | |
| | " Cash to A in settlement | 1,140 | | | |
| | | <u>£2,000</u> | | | <u>£2,000</u> |

MEMORANDUM JOINT VENTURE ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|---------------------------|---------------|---------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Goods supplied, A | £ 3,000 | Mar. 31 | By Sales | £ 5,500 |
| | " " " B | 1,000 | | " Balance c/d. - stock unsold | 1,225 |
| | | <u>4,000</u> | | | |
| | " Expenses - A | 400 | | | |
| | " " B | 500 | | | |
| | | <u>900</u> | | | |
| Mar. 31 | " Agent's Commission | 275 | | | |
| | " Profit: A three-fifths | 930 | | | |
| | " " B two-fifths | 620 | | | |
| | | <u>1,550</u> | | | |
| | | <u>£6,725</u> | | | <u>£6,725</u> |
| Apr. 1 | To Balance - Stock b/d. | 1,225 | June 30 | By Sales | 2,000 |
| | " Agent's Commission | 100 | | | |
| | " Profit - A three-fifths | 405 | | | |
| | " " B two-fifths | 270 | | | |
| | | <u>675</u> | | | |
| | | <u>£2,000</u> | | | <u>£2,000</u> |

Note. The unsold stock at 31st March is valued as follows:

One-fourth of £4,000, cost of goods .. £1,000

One-fourth of £900, expenses .. 225

£1,225 - apportional A $\frac{3}{5}$ ths .. £735
B $\frac{2}{5}$ ths .. 490

£1,225

At the conclusion of the venture, A has received from B a total of £4,735, being the amount of his expenditure on the venture, £3,400, plus his share of the profit, £1,335. B has received back his expenditure of £1,500 plus his share of the profit £890 - £2,390, represented by:

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| Remittances received from Agent | £7,125 |
| Less paid to A | 4,735 |
| | <u>£2,390</u> |

CHAPTER VIII

COMPANY ACCOUNTS

N.B.—Section references in this chapter are to the Companies Act, 1948, except where otherwise indicated.

§1. The Distinction between Partnerships and Limited Liability Companies

The law relating to companies has evolved slowly, having been amended from time to time to keep pace with the developments of commerce. It is now embodied in the Companies Act, 1948, under which the large majority of companies are governed.

Companies may be registered with limited or unlimited liability, but it is considered necessary to deal here only with the former class, in which the liability of the members for the company's debts is limited to the amount which, on becoming members, they undertake to contribute to the company's capital.

Companies with limited liability may be limited either by guarantee or by shares. In the former class, each member undertakes to contribute a specified sum towards the liabilities of the company in the event of its being wound up. In the case of a company limited by shares, the capital is divided into a number of shares, and the liability of each member is limited to the amount for the time being unpaid on the shares which he has agreed to take up.

The principal distinctions between an unlimited partnership and a limited company are as follows:

1. A partnership has no legal identity apart from its members. A company has a **SEPARATE LEGAL ENTITY**, which is not affected by changes in its membership. It may contract, sue and be sued in its corporate name and capacity.

2. In the case of an unlimited partnership, the **LIABILITY** of each member of the firm for the debts of the firm is unlimited; in the case of a limited company, the liability of each shareholder is limited to the amount he has agreed to pay to the company for the shares allotted to him, and if such shares are fully paid up he is subject to no further liability.

3. In the case of a partnership, the **NUMBER OF PARTNERS IS LIMITED** to twenty, except in the case of a private banking concern, where the number is limited to ten. In the case of a public company, the number of shareholders is only limited by the number of shares authorised and issued, but there cannot be less than seven members. In a private company, the number of members must not exceed fifty, exclusive of past and present employees, and cannot be less than two.

4. If, in a partnership, the **LEGAL NUMBER** of partners is exceeded, the association is an illegal one, and, although this does not affect the question of the partners' liability, seeing that this was unlimited in the first instance, they cannot take legal action for the enforcement of contracts or rights, although they are capable of being sued. In the case of a public company, if the number of members sinks below seven, or in the case of a private company, below two, this is good ground for the presentation of a petition for winding-up; but as regards the liability of the members, six months' grace is given, and after this time has expired all those members cognisant of

the fact that the number has sunk below seven, or two, as the case may be, are severally liable for the whole of the debts of the company contracted after the expiration of the six months.

5. In the case of an unlimited partnership, each member can normally take part in the **MANAGEMENT** of the business, and can legally bind the firm by his actions with the outside world within the scope of his real or apparent authority; whereas in the case of a company, the rights of management are delegated to persons called directors, who alone can act on behalf of, and bind, the company.

6. In the case of a partnership, each member is entitled to have **ACCESS TO THE BOOKS** and accounts of the firm; whereas in the case of a company, the right of the members to inspect the books, with the exception of the books open for inspection by statute, depends on the articles.

7. In the case of a partnership, the **RIGHTS OF THE PARTNERS** as between themselves are governed by agreement, which itself can be varied by agreement between the partners. In the case of a company, the powers, which can only be altered in the manner and within the limits laid down by the Companies Act, are defined by the memorandum of association; and the powers and duties of the directors carrying on the business are defined by the articles of association, which can only be altered by special resolution of the company in general meeting.

8. A partnership is subject to the general provisions of the Partnership Act, 1890, which, however, can be varied to some extent in so far as affects the relationship of the partners *inter se* by mutual agreement (and in appropriate cases to the provisions of the Limited Partnerships Act, 1907, and the Registration of Business Names Act, 1916); a company is subject to the Companies Act, the provisions of which cannot legally be varied by the company.

9. The **CAPITAL** of a partnership is contributed by the partners according to agreement, and is not necessarily fixed in amount, being frequently increased by undrawn profits, or reduced by losses sustained, or by withdrawals; whereas in the case of a company, the authorised capital is fixed by the memorandum, and cannot be reduced without a special resolution and leave of the Court; or increased, except by resolution of the company in general meeting.

10. The share of a partner in a firm cannot be transferred, except by agreement between all the partners; in the case of a company, shares are freely transferable, subject only to any restrictions imposed by the Articles.

11. A limited company is required by statute to keep prescribed **BOOKS OF ACCOUNT**, under serious penalties for default; there is no such statutory obligation on a partnership.

12. In the case of a private firm, an annual **AUDIT** is not compulsory, whereas in the case of a company it is.

13. The **PROFITS** of a partnership may be withdrawn by the partners as and when ascertained, or periodical drawings on account of profits may be made by mutual agreement. In the case of a company, the profits are distributed by means of dividends calculated at a percentage or at a rate per share. Such distribution is only made on the

authority of a resolution passed by the company in general meeting, although the articles may provide for interim dividends to be declared by the directors.

A limited company, as compared with a partnership, offers the following additional advantages:

1. The share of a deceased member is more readily ascertainable and transferable. Moreover, the actual carrying on of the business is not liable to be so disturbed by the death of a member as it is in the case of a partnership. Whereas, subject to any agreement to the contrary, the death of a partner dissolves the firm, the death of a member does not affect the legal existence of a company.

2. The control of a company can be secured by one or more members holding the shares (or a majority of them) which carry the voting rights. Additional capital can be obtained by the issue of further shares, *e.g.*, preference shares, without the disturbance of such controlling interest.

3. Family provision is facilitated; *e.g.*, a parent can transfer shares to children, whilst retaining control, whereas if he took them into partnership, they would have all the rights and liabilities of partners.

4. A larger capitalisation of the business is possible, since it is much easier, as a rule, to raise large or small units of capital where the holders will have the protection of limited liability than where they would be partners.

5. An interest in the business can be given to employees in the form of shares, without loss of control.

6. By transferring a business to a company the proprietor is able to realise the goodwill, either for a cash consideration or for shares, without relinquishing control of the business. A material saving in surtax may be effected on the profits retained in the business, since, provided a reasonable proportion of the profits is distributed, only the distributed profits are liable to surtax in the hands of the company's members, whereas the whole profits of a partnership, whether drawn out of the business or not, are chargeable to surtax on the partners. This advantage may, however, be neutralised by the fact that the company is liable to profits tax, whereas a partnership is not.

On the other hand, limited companies are more subject to statutory and constitutional restrictions, and a certain amount of publicity is given to their affairs; heavy stamp duties and fees are payable upon incorporation; companies are liable to profits tax and dividends from companies are regarded as unearned income for taxation purposes. The last disadvantage can, however, be overcome to the extent that the profits are paid to the members as directors' fees. In some isolated cases, also, the credit of the company may not be so favourably regarded by trade creditors as was that of the former partnership.

§ 2. Private Companies

A PRIVATE COMPANY is defined by Section 28, as a company which *by its articles*:

(a) restricts the right to transfer its shares; and

(b) limits the number of its members to 50 (joint holders being treated as one person), not including persons who are in the employment of the company, and persons

who, having been formerly in the employment of the company were, while in such employment, and have continued after the determination of such employment, to be members of the company; and

- (c) prohibits any invitation to the public to subscribe for any shares or debentures of the company.

Every company which does not contain such clauses in its articles is a **PUBLIC COMPANY**.

If default is made by a company in complying with any of the provisions of its articles which constitute it a private company, the company will cease to be entitled to the privileges and exemptions conferred on private companies, but the Court may give relief if the default is accidental or on other reasonable cause (§ 29).

If a private company alters its articles so that they no longer include the above provisions, the company forthwith ceases to be a private company, and must, within fourteen days, deliver to the registrar of companies a prospectus, or a statement in lieu of prospectus, in the prescribed form (§ 30).

One of the privileges which was accorded to every private company prior to 1st July, 1948, was exemption from the obligation to annex to its annual return (which must be filed with the registrar of companies) a certified copy of its balance sheet, including every document required by law to be annexed thereto. As from 1st July, 1948, however, this exemption only applies to a private company which has at all times since 1st July, 1948 (or the date of its first registration, if later) satisfied the undermentioned conditions, and sends, with its annual return, a certificate signed by a director and the secretary that to the best of their knowledge and belief, the said conditions are and have been, so satisfied. The Board of Trade has power, on application by the directors, to exempt a company which has not previously satisfied the conditions, but is satisfying them at the date of the annual return (§ 129).

A company which satisfies these conditions is referred to as an **EXEMPT PRIVATE COMPANY**.

The conditions are:

- (a) that no body corporate is the holder of any of its shares or debentures;
- (b) that no person other than the holder has any interest in any of the shares or debentures;
- (c) that the number of persons holding debentures of the company is not more than fifty (joint holders being treated as a single person);
- (d) that no body corporate is a director of the company, and neither the company nor any of the directors is party or privy to any arrangement whereby the policy of the company is capable of being determined by persons other than the directors, members and debenture holders.

In the following circumstances, however, the fact that a person other than the holder has an interest in the shares or debentures, or that a body corporate holds shares or debentures in the company, as the case may be, will not affect the exemption of the company:

1. Where any share or debenture is subject to a charge in favour of a banking or finance company by way of security, for the purposes of a transaction entered into in the ordinary course of business, the interest of that banking or finance company is disregarded;

2. If the banking or finance company or its nominee is the holder of any share or debenture as security, then the person entitled to the equity of redemption in that share or debenture shall be treated as the holder;

3. Any interest under a contract for the transfer of any shares or debentures shall be disregarded until execution of an instrument of transfer, unless the execution thereof is unreasonably delayed. On execution of the transfer the transferee will be the holder of the shares unless the company refuses to register the transfer;

4. Any interest of the company itself in any of its shares or debentures and any lien or charge thereon arising by operation of law shall be disregarded;

5. Where shares or debentures form part of the estate of a deceased person, so long as the administration of his estate is not completed;

6. Where shares or debentures are held by a trustee on the trusts of a will or family settlement disposing of those shares or debentures, so long as no body corporate has any immediate interest therein under the trust;

7. Where shares or debentures are vested in a trustee or administrator or other person for a person of unsound mind;

8. Where shares or debentures are held by a trustee for the purpose of a scheme maintained for the benefit of employees of the company, including any director holding a salaried employment or office in the company;

9. Where shares or debentures are held by a banking or finance company or its nominee acquired in the ordinary course of business; but this exception will not apply if one-fifth or more of the shares carrying voting power are held in this way;

10. Where any shares or debentures form part of the assets in a bankruptcy or liquidation of a holder thereof or are held on trusts created for his creditors or are held for the purpose of a composition or scheme made or approved by the Court;

11. The condition that no body corporate is the holder of any shares of or debentures in the company is subject to an exception for shares in the company held by another body corporate which is itself an exempt private company. For this exception to apply, however, the company itself (the 'relevant company'), the company holding shares therein, and any further company which has to be taken into account in determining the right to be treated as an exempt private company of the company holding shares in the relevant company, must together have a total membership of not more than fifty persons, joint shareholders being treated as a single person, and the companies themselves and their employees and former employees being disregarded.

In addition to the exemption from the obligation of filing a copy of its balance sheet with its annual return, an *exempt* private company is entitled to the following special privileges:

1. Its auditor need not possess a professional qualification or be authorised by the Board of Trade (§ 161).

2. A partner or employee of an officer or servant of the company is not disqualified from appointment as auditor (§ 161).

3. Copies of certain resolutions and agreements which must be filed with the registrar of companies, need not be printed (§ 143).

4. Loans may be made by the company to its directors (§ 190).

Apart from the above, which are applicable only in the case of companies which satisfy the conditions necessary to constitute them exempt private companies, the following privileges are enjoyed by *every* private company, whether an exempt private company or not:

1. It may have a minimum of two members (§ 1).
2. It need not issue a prospectus or statement in lieu of prospectus (§ 48).
3. It can commence business immediately on incorporation (§ 109).
4. The minimum number of directors is one instead of two (§ 176).
5. There are no restrictions on the appointment of directors by the Articles (§ 181).
6. The age limit of 70 in respect of directors does not apply (§ 185).
7. A separate resolution is not required for the appointment of each director individually (§ 183).
8. Neither a statutory meeting nor a statutory report is required (§ 130).

A certificate signed by a director and the secretary must be given on the annual return of a private company to the effect that no invitation has been issued to the public to subscribe for any shares or debentures, and where it appears from the list of members that the number of members exceeds fifty, a further certificate must be given stating that the excess comprises employees or ex-employees who were members when employed by the company and have continued to be members since ceasing to be so employed (§ 128).

As already stated, if the company is an exempt private company, an additional certificate must be given that the conditions constituting the company an exempt private company are satisfied (§ 129).

§ 3. The Memorandum and Articles of Association

(a) The **Memorandum of Association** is the document forming the constitution of a company, and defining its objects and powers.

The memorandum of association of a company limited by shares contains five clauses:

1. The name of the company, which must end with the word 'limited'.
2. The domicile of the company, *i.e.*, whether its registered office is to be situated in England (which includes Wales) or Scotland.
3. The objects of the company.
4. A declaration that the liability of the members is limited.
5. The amount of capital, and the shares into which it is divided.

The memorandum must be signed by not less than seven persons, or not less than two in the case of a private company, agreeing to take up not less than one share each.

(b) The **Articles of Association** contain the rules and regulations for conducting the business of the company, and define the rights of the members and the powers and duties of the directors. The principal clauses are as follows:

1. A declaration as to how far the provisions of Table A are expressly excluded. In so far as the articles do not exclude or modify the regulations in Table A, the latter are applicable.

Table A is a model set of articles which automatically applies to any company limited by shares not having articles of its own. The present Table A contained in the Companies Act, 1948 applies to any company registered after 30th June, 1948. Any company working under an earlier Table A can adopt the present Table A by special resolution.

The present form of the revised table, which came into force on the 1st July, 1948, forms a schedule to the Companies Act, 1948.

Many companies register special articles excluding Table A entirely, in which case most of the clauses of Table A, modified where expedient, are in fact reproduced in the special articles.

2. A recital of the basis on which the company is constituted.
3. The regulations as to the issue of capital and variation of rights of members, lien on shares, payment of underwriting commission, etc.
4. The making of calls on shares.
5. The transfer and transmission of shares.
6. The forfeiture and surrender of shares; conversion of shares into stock, and alteration of capital.
7. The holding, notice of, and procedure at general meetings.
8. The votes of members; polls and proxies.
9. The directors—their number, remuneration, qualification, rotation, disqualification and removal.
10. The appointment and powers of managing directors.
11. The proceedings and powers and duties of the board of directors.
12. The borrowing powers of the company.
13. The appointment, remuneration, removal, etc., of the secretary.
14. The use of the company's seal.
15. Accounts and audit.
16. Dividends and reserves.
17. The capitalisation of profits.
18. Notices to members.
19. The rights of members *inter se*.

§ 4. The Statutory Books and Returns

(a) The Register of Members

Under Section 110 every company must keep a register of its members, and enter therein the following particulars:

- (i) The names and addresses of the members, and in the case of a company having a share capital, a statement of the shares held by each member, distinguishing

each share by its number so long as the share has a number, and of the amount paid or agreed to be considered as paid on the shares of each member.

(ii) The date at which each person was entered in the register as a member.

(iii) The date at which any person ceased to be a member.

Where the company has converted any of its shares into stock and given notice of the conversion to the registrar of companies, the register must show the amount of stock held by each member instead of the amount of shares and the particulars relating to shares specified above.

The register of members must be kept at the registered office of the company, unless the work of making it up is done at another office of the company or of the person making it up when it can be kept there, provided that other office is not outside the country of the company's domicile. If the register is not kept at the registered office at all times after 1st July, 1948, the company must file with the registrar of companies the address where it is kept and any change in that address (§ 110).

When the company has more than fifty members, and the register is not in such a form as to constitute, in itself, an index, an index must be kept at the same place as the register for the purpose of facilitating ready reference. Any alteration in the register must be reflected in the index (where necessary) within fourteen days. A loose leaf register kept in alphabetical order therefore appears desirable.

The register and index must be open to the inspection of members of the company without charge, and of other persons at a fee not exceeding one shilling, for at least two hours on each business day. Copies of any part of the register can be required by any person on payment (§ 113). The company has power on giving notice by newspaper advertisement (§ 115) to close the register for an aggregate of thirty days in each year, thus permitting and facilitating the preparation of the annual return and the dividend warrants to shareholders.

The register of members is generally combined with the share ledger, until the shares are fully paid (*see* § 8 (*a*) *post*). Once the shares are fully paid, however, the share ledger can be closed, and where transfers are numerous, the details thereof will not be included in the share register.

(b) The Register of Charges

Under Section 104 every limited company must keep at its registered office a register of charges, and enter therein all charges specifically affecting property of the company, and all floating charges on the undertaking or any property of the company, giving in each case a short description of the property charged, the amount of the charge, and, except in the case of securities to bearer, the names of the persons entitled thereto.

This book and a copy of every instrument creating any charge must be open for inspection by any creditor or member of the company without charge, and by any other person on payment of a fee not exceeding one shilling, for at least two hours on each business day (§ 105).

of stock held by each of the existing members instead of the amount of shares and the particulars relating to shares.

In any year, if the return for either of the two immediately preceding years has given the full particulars mentioned above, there need only be included in the return particulars of persons ceasing to be or becoming members since the date of the last return, and to shares transferred or changes in stock held since that date, *i.e.*, a full return of members who do not change their holdings need only be made every third year.

The return must also state the address of the registered office of the company and if the register of members or of debenture holders is not kept there, the address at which it is kept, and must contain a summary distinguishing between shares issued for cash and shares issued as fully or partly paid up otherwise than in cash, and specifying the following particulars:

- (a) The amount of the share capital of the company, and the number of the shares into which it is divided.
- (b) The number of shares taken from the commencement of the company up to the date of the return.
- (c) The amount called up on each share.
- (d) The total amount of calls received.
- (e) The total amount of calls unpaid.
- (f) The total amount of the sums, if any, paid by way of commission in respect of any shares or debentures.
- (g) The discount allowed on the issue of any shares issued at a discount, or of so much of that discount as has not been written off at the date on which the return is made.
- (h) The total amount of the sums, if any, allowed by way of discount in respect of any debentures, since the date of the last return.
- (i) The total number of shares forfeited.
- (j) The total amount of shares for which share warrants are outstanding at the date of the return, and of share warrants issued and surrendered respectively since the date of the last return, and the number of shares comprised in each share warrant.
- (k) The total amount of the indebtedness of the company in respect of all mortgages and charges which are required (or, in the case of a company registered in Scotland, which, if the company had been registered in England, would be required) to be registered with the registrar of companies under the Act, or which would have been required so to be registered if created after 1st July, 1908.
- (l) All such particulars with respect to the persons who at the date of the return are the directors of the company, and any person who at that date is the secretary of the company as are by the Act required to be contained with respect to directors and the secretary in the register of directors and secretaries of a company.

The return must be in accordance with the form set out in the Sixth Schedule to the Act, or as near thereto as circumstances admit.

In the case of a company keeping a dominion register, the particulars of the entries in that register must, so far as they relate to matters which are required to be stated in the return, be included in the return made next after copies of those entries are received at the registered office of the company, but the full particulars (including existing members) must be included.

A company need not make an annual return in the year of its incorporation, and if no annual general meeting is held in the following year (because the first general meeting, which must be held within eighteen months of incorporation, does not fall in that year (§ 131)), it need not file an annual return in that year either.

The copy to be filed with the registrar must be signed by a director and the secretary and delivered within forty-two days after the annual general meeting for the year. Should no meeting be held in any calendar year, the registrar will require the return to be made up to the 31st December.

Except in the case of exempt private companies, and of assurance companies which have complied with the provisions of Section 8 of the Assurance Companies Act, 1958 (*i.e.* which have submitted a copy of their accounts to the registrar when depositing copies with the Board of Trade), a copy (certified by a director and the secretary to be a true copy) of every **BALANCE SHEET** laid before the company in general meeting during the period to which the return relates, together with a copy of the **AUDITOR'S REPORT**, and including every document (*e.g.*, director's report, profit and loss account and group accounts in the case of a holding company) required by law to be annexed to the balance sheet, must be annexed to the annual return. If the balance sheet does not comply with statutory requirements as to its form, etc., it must be amended accordingly (§ 127). The Act states that a 'written' copy of such balance sheet must be filed, but the registrar will accept a printed or type-written copy if properly certified by a director, or the manager or secretary of the company.

(As to the certificates required from a private company, see the last two paragraphs of § 2 *ante*.)

(e) Minute Books

Every company must cause minutes of all proceedings of general meetings, all proceedings at meetings of its directors and, where there are managers, all proceedings at meetings of its managers, to be entered in books kept for that purpose.

Any such minute, if purporting to be signed by the chairman of the meeting at which the proceedings were had, or by the chairman of the next succeeding meeting, is evidence of the proceedings.

Where minutes have been so kept, then, until the contrary is proved, the meeting is deemed to have been duly held and convened, and all proceedings had thereat to have been duly held, and all appointments of directors, managers or liquidators are deemed to be valid (§ 145).

The minute books containing records of the proceedings at general meetings of the company must be kept at the registered office and for at least two hours on each business day be open to the inspection of any member without charge (copies can be obtained on payment (§ 146)).

There is no provision as to inspection by members of the minutes of meetings of directors, nor would such inspection normally be desirable.

Any register, index, minute book or book of account may be kept either by making entries in bound books or by recording the matters in question in any other manner. If they are not kept in a bound book, adequate precautions must be taken for guarding against falsification and for facilitating its discovery (§ 436).

(f) Register of Directors and Secretaries

Every company must keep at its registered office a register of its directors and secretaries containing with respect to each of them the following particulars:

- (a) in the case of an individual director, his present christian name and surname, any former christian name and surname, his usual residential address, his nationality, his business occupation, if any, particulars of any other directorships held by him, and, in the case of a company that is not a private company (or if a private company, is a subsidiary of a company incorporated in the United Kingdom which is neither a private company, nor registered in Northern Ireland with provisions which, if it were registered in Great Britain would make it a private company), the date of his birth; and
- (b) in the case of a corporation, its corporate name and registered or principal office.

It is not necessary, however, for the register to contain particulars of directorships held in companies of which the company is a wholly-owned subsidiary, or which are the wholly-owned subsidiaries either of the company or of another company of which it is a wholly-owned subsidiary. For this purpose the expression 'company' includes any body corporate incorporated in Great Britain, and a body corporate is a wholly-owned subsidiary of another if it has no members except that other and its wholly-owned subsidiaries or nominee(s) (§ 200).

As regards the secretary or secretaries, the register must contain:

- (a) in the case of an individual, his present christian name and surname, any former christian name and surname and his usual residential address, and
- (b) in the case of a corporation or Scottish firm, its corporate or firm name and registered or principal office.

If all partners in a firm are joint secretaries, the name and principal office of the firm may be stated instead of particulars of each.

The company must, within a period of fourteen days from the appointment of the first directors of the company, send to the registrar of companies a return in the prescribed form containing the particulars specified in the said register, and within fourteen days from the happening thereof a notification in the prescribed form of any change among its directors or secretary or in any of the particulars contained in the register (§ 200).

The register is to be open to the inspection of any member of the company without charge, and of any other person at a charge not exceeding one shilling, for at least two hours on each business day.

(g) Register of Directors' Shareholdings

Every company must keep a register showing as respects each director (not being its holding company), the number, description and amount of any shares in or debentures of the company (or any holding or subsidiary company or subsidiary company of the company's holding company) which are held by or in trust for him or of which he has any right to become the holder (whether on payment or not). The register need not include shares in a wholly-owned subsidiary (*i.e.*, a company in which all the members are the holding company and its wholly-owned subsidiaries and its or their nominees). When any shares or debentures fall to be or cease to be recorded in the register by reason of a transaction entered into after 30th June, 1948, while the owner was a director, the register must shew the date of, and price or other consideration for the transaction (§ 195).

A director may require the nature and extent of his interest or rights in or over the shares or debentures to be recorded.

The register must be kept at the registered office, and must be open to inspection by any member or debenture holder for at least two hours in every business day, during the period beginning fourteen days before the annual general meeting and ending three days after its conclusion, and at any time for inspection by a representative of the Board of Trade. The register must be open and accessible throughout the annual general meeting to any person attending the meeting.

A person in accordance with whose directions or instructions the directors are accustomed to act is deemed to be a director for the above purposes; and a director of a company is deemed to hold, or to have an interest or right in or over, any shares or debentures if a body corporate other than a company holds them or has that interest or right in or over them, and either,

- (i) that body corporate or its directors are accustomed to act on his directions or instructions, or
- (ii) he is entitled to exercise or control the exercise of one-third or more of the voting power at any general meeting of that body corporate.

It is the duty of every director to give notice to the company of such matters relating to himself as are necessary for the above purposes (§ 198).

(h) The Directors' Report for the Statutory Meeting

The STATUTORY MEETING of a PUBLIC COMPANY is a general meeting of the members which must be held not less than one month nor more than three months after the company is entitled to commence business. A STATUTORY REPORT must be prepared, to be laid before the meeting, and this must, at least fourteen days before the date fixed for the holding of the meeting, be forwarded to every member of the company. If the statutory report is forwarded later than fourteen days before the

meeting, it is nevertheless valid if all the members entitled to attend and vote at the meeting so agree. A copy must be filed with the registrar of companies forthwith, after being so forwarded. The provisions relating to the statutory meeting and the statutory report DO NOT APPLY TO PRIVATE COMPANIES.

The report, which must be certified by not less than two directors, must show:

- (a) the total number of shares allotted, distinguishing shares allotted as fully or partly paid up otherwise than in cash, and stating in the case of shares partly paid up the extent to which they are so paid up, and in either case the consideration for which they have been allotted;
- (b) the total amount of cash received by the company in respect of all the shares allotted, distinguished as aforesaid;
- (c) an abstract of the receipts of the company and of the payments made thereout, up to a date within seven days of the date of the report, exhibiting under distinctive headings the receipts of the company from shares and debentures and other sources, the payments made thereout, and particulars concerning the balance remaining in hand, and an account or estimate of the preliminary expenses of the company;
- (d) the names, addresses and descriptions of the directors, auditors (if any), managers (if any), and secretary of the company; and
- (e) the particulars of any contract, the modification of which is to be submitted to the meeting for its approval, together with the particulars of the modification, or proposed modification.

The statutory report, so far as it relates to the shares allotted by the company, and to the cash received in respect of such shares, and to the receipts and payments of the company on capital account, must be certified as correct by the auditors (if any) of the company (§ 130).

Illustration

The Explorations Trust, Limited (directors, H. Martin, J. Williams, and J. Smithson; secretary, T. Mason; auditors, Gilbertson & Co.), was entitled to commence business on 1st April, 1958.

80,000 shares of 10s. each had been applied for and duly allotted, and 2s. 6d. per share payable on application, with 2s. 6d. per share payable on allotment, had been received by the company. An additional 10,000 shares were, under the purchase agreement, allotted to the vendors as fully paid.

Prior to the date of the report, trading receipts and payments amounted to £4,932 and £6,195 respectively, and the following payments had also been made:

| | | | | | £ | s. | d. |
|------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|----|----|
| On account of Preliminary Expenses | ... | ... | ... | | 2,500 | 0 | 0 |
| Investments | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10,000 | 0 | 0 |

The balance of cash is with The London and Northern Bank, on Deposit and Current Account.

The preliminary expenses are estimated in the prospectus at £3,500.

Prepare the statutory report necessary under Section 130 of the Companies Act, 1948.

THE COMPANIES ACT, 1948.

REPORT

(Pursuant to Section 130 of The Companies Act, 1948)

of

THE EXPLORATIONS TRUST, LIMITED.

(a) The total number of shares allotted is 90,000 of 10s. each, of which 10,000 are allotted as fully paid up in consideration of part of the purchase price of sundry assets acquired by the company, and upon each of the remaining shares the sum of 5s. has been paid in cash.

(b) The total amount of cash received by the company in respect of the shares issued wholly for cash is £20,000.

(c) The receipts and payments of the company to 20th June, 1958, are as follows:

| Particulars of Receipts. | | Particulars of Payments. | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| | £ | | £ |
| To Amount received on Application and Allotment of 80,000 Shares | 20,000 | By Preliminary Expenses | 2,500 |
| „ Trading receipts | 4,932 | „ Investments | 10,000 |
| | | „ Trading Payments | 6,195 |
| | | „ Balance on Deposit and Current Accounts with the London and Northern Bank | 6,237 |
| | <u>£24,932</u> | | <u>£24,932</u> |

The following is an Account (or Estimate) of the Preliminary Expenses of the Company :—

| | |
|--------------|---------|
| Estimated at | £ 3,500 |
|--------------|---------|

(d) Notes, Addresses and Descriptions of the Directors, Auditors (if any), Managers (if any), and Secretary of the Company.

DIRECTORS.

| Surname | Christian Name. | Address. | Description. |
|----------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Martin | Henry | The Towers, Blankton. | Director of Exved, Ltd. |
| Williams | John | 16, West Side, Seaside. | Solicitor. |
| Smithson | James | Holm, Essex. | Chartered Accountant. |

AUDITORS.

| Surname. | Christian Name. | Address. | Description. |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Gilbertson & Co. | | 1641, Coleman Street, London, E.C.2. | Chartered Accountants. |

MANAGERS.

| Surname. | Christian Name. | Address. | Description. |
|----------|-----------------|----------|--------------|
|----------|-----------------|----------|--------------|

SECRETARY.

| Surname. | Christian Name. | Address. | Description. |
|----------|-----------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| Mason | Thomas | Braeside, Oxbridge. | Company Secretary. |

(e) Particulars of any Contract the modification of which is to be submitted to the Meeting for its approval, together with the particulars of the modification or proposed modification:

We hereby certify this Report,

H. MARTIN.
J. WILLIAMS. } Directors

We hereby certify that so much of this Report as relates to the shares allotted by the Company and to the Cash received in respect of such shares and to the receipts and payments of the Company on Capital Account is correct.

GILBERTSON & CO., Auditors.

Dated the 21st day of June, 1958.

(i) The Books of Account

The provisions of the Act as to accounting are dealt with *post* in § 15.

§ 5. The Various Classes of Share Capital

A share has been defined as 'the interest of a shareholder in the company measured by a sum of money for the purpose of liability in the first place, and, of interest in the second, but also consisting of a series of mutual covenants entered into by all the shareholders, *inter se*'.

The share capital of a company may be divided into different classes of shares, of which the following are the most usual:

(a) Preference Shares

Preference shares entitle the holders to a fixed rate of dividend before any dividend is paid on other classes of shares. They may also carry the right, by virtue of the articles, to repayment of capital, on a winding-up, in priority to other types of shares.

Preference shares may be either *cumulative* or *non-cumulative*. The latter only carry a right to a fixed dividend out of the profits of any year, and if there are insufficient profits in that year to pay the full amount of dividend they have no right to have the arrears made up out of future profits. They may or may not have a right, in the event of liquidation, to repayment of capital in priority to other classes of shares.

Cumulative preference shares entitle the holders to a fixed rate of dividend in the same way as non-cumulative preference shares, but with the additional right to have any arrears of dividend paid out of future profits before any dividends are paid on other classes of shares.

The rights of preference shareholders are entirely governed by the memorandum and articles of association, and there are other varieties than those enumerated above; for example, a company may have PARTICIPATING PREFERENCE SHARES, which carry a right, in addition to a fixed dividend, to further participation in profits after a dividend of a specified rate has been paid on the ordinary shares. In the absence of express or implied provision in the articles to the contrary, preference shares are *cumulative* as to dividend, but are only entitled to rank *pari passu* with other classes of shares in repayment of capital on liquidation.

If authorised by its articles a company may issue REDEEMABLE PREFERENCE SHARES, as to which *see post*, § 6 (1).

Every share in a company is on an equal footing except in so far as the rights attaching thereto are expressly modified by the memorandum and articles of association and the terms of issue. A preference as to dividend does not of itself exclude other rights, e.g., to share in surplus assets on a winding-up. It has, however, been held that where the articles of a company set out the rights attached to a class of shares to participate in profits while the company is a going concern or to share in the property of the company in liquidation, *prima facie* the rights so set out are exhaustive. The burden of proof that preference shareholders have any further rights is on them and depends upon a true construction of the articles (*Re Isle of Thanet Electricity Supply Co. Ltd.*).

(b) Ordinary Shares

Ordinary shares entitle the holders to the divisible profits remaining after prior interests (if any) have been satisfied. They may be divided into **PREFERRED** and **DEFERRED** ordinary shares, the former carrying a preferential right to a fixed rate of dividend, and the latter being entitled to the whole, or a proportion, of the surplus profits after provision has been made for dividends on all classes of shares having prior rights.

(c) Founders, Deferred or Management Shares

These shares are usually limited in number and are sometimes issued fully paid to the vendors or managers of the business or their nominees, in consideration either of part of the purchase price or of services rendered. Generally, they only rank for dividend after other classes of shares have received specified rates of dividend, when they may be entitled to the whole or a portion of the surplus profits.

As a rule, such shares are of low nominal value, *e.g.* one shilling, and consequently the rate of dividend is often extremely high. This, coupled with the fact that these shares may confer exceptional voting rights, enable the holders to wield a considerable interest in, and control of, the company with comparatively small risk of capital. Unless these shares are available for public subscription, the investing public do not look upon their existence with favour, as they induce a tendency to distribute a high rate of dividend without setting aside adequate reserves.

The allocation of such shares to the vendors in payment for goodwill is unfair to the investing public, as it enables the persons who have sold their goodwill to continue to enjoy the profits arising therefrom. Where such shares are issued, they should be offered proportionately with other classes of shares for public subscription.

Shares which carry the right to the balance of profits after payment of all prior charges, and to any surplus in winding-up, are frequently referred to as 'equity' capital.

(d) The distinction between Stock and Shares

A share in a company is an individual unit of capital and is indivisible. A holding must consist of a number of complete shares, and although there may be two or more joint holders of a share, no fraction of a share can be held or transferred.

Stock consists of capital consolidated into bulk, which can be made divisible in any monetary fractions. It has been aptly termed 'a bundle of shares.' It is customary, where stock has been issued, for the articles of the company to provide for holdings in multiples of one pound sterling only, so as to minimise clerical labour in effecting transfers, calculating dividends, &c.

The chief differences between stock and shares are as follows:

- (a) Stock must be fully paid up, whereas shares need not be.
- (b) Stock may be issued or transferred in fractional parts (subject to provisions in the articles). A share cannot be divided, but can only be transferred as a complete unit.

- (c) Each share must be distinguished by a separate number until all the shares of the class in question are fully paid and rank *pari passu* for all purposes (§ 74); stock need possess no distinguishing numbers.

A company cannot issue stock in the first instance; if it wishes to issue stock it must first issue shares, and then convert them into stock when they are fully paid. Many large concerns whose shares are actively dealt in on the Stock Exchange have converted their shares into stock in order to economise in clerical labour when shares are transferred. The saving in labour will readily be seen when it is realised that a sale of, say, 10,000 shares having distinctive numbers, might involve the entry of numbers which, owing to their not running consecutively, would fill the back of the share certificate. These numbers would have to be written on the transfer in the old member's account, in the new member's account, and on the new share certificate, etc., whereas in the case of stock only the monetary value would have to be shown.

(e) Shares of no Par Value

As has been seen, the memorandum of association of a company must state the amount of the share capital with which the company is registered and the number of shares into which such capital is divided. Each share is of a fixed amount, which is called the 'nominal' or 'par' value, and it has always been a fundamental principal of company law in this country that every share must have a nominal value.

In the United States of America and other countries, however, shares of 'no par value' have been quite common for many years, and there has recently been growing support for amendment of the Companies Act, 1948 to permit the issue of similar shares in this country. Accordingly, in December 1952, the Board of Trade appointed a committee—the Gedge Committee—to report what amendments should be made for this purpose, having due regard to the need for safeguards for investors and for the public interest.

In the report of this Committee, which was published in April 1954, the following principal justifications for the proposed change are adduced:

1. The present system of issuing shares with a fixed nominal value may cause confusion, since many small investors are apt to think that because a share has a nominal value of say £1, it must necessarily be worth £1, which is often very far from being the case.

2. Where shares have a nominal value dividends are usually expressed as a percentage thereof. Frequently, the capital employed is far greater than the nominal amount of the issued share capital, owing to large amounts of profits being retained and used in the business, and a dividend which may be quite moderate when considered in relation to the capital actually employed in the business may appear to be unduly high when expressed as a percentage of the nominal capital. If companies were permitted to issue shares of no par value, dividends would be declared at so much per share, and the illusion of an excessively high rate of dividend, which is liable to evoke a good deal of irresponsible criticism, would be avoided.

The Gedge Committee made, *inter alia*, the following recommendations:

1. Both public and private companies should be permitted to issue *ordinary* shares of no par value.

2. It would be unwise to issue *preference* shares of no par value because 'a fixed dividend must have a relation to the sum on which it is paid' and also because 'the repayment of a fixed sum in a winding-up' is inconsistent with the concept of no par value.

3. Companies should be allowed, by special resolution, to convert their ordinary shares having a nominal value (whether fully paid or not) into shares of no par value; or vice versa, provided that the no par value shares to be converted were fully paid.

4. Where a company has shares of no par value, the total proceeds of a cash issue would have to be credited to a 'stated capital account' and should not be distributable.

5. Where an issue has been made for a consideration other than cash, a sum equal, in the opinion of the directors, to the value of the consideration would also have to be credited to the stated capital account.

Given these safeguards, the committee concluded that shares of no par value would be neither more nor less open to abuse than shares having a nominal value.

At the time of writing no steps have been taken by the Government to implement the committee's recommendations.

§ 6. The Application and Allotment of Shares

(a) Application Letters

When the directors of a public company decide to issue shares, forms of *application letters* are sent out with a *prospectus* to those persons who are considered most likely to subscribe, or the form may be printed at the foot of the advertisements of the prospectus.

In the great majority of cases subscribers are required to remit the amount payable on application (which, under the Companies' Act, must not be less than 5 per cent. of the nominal value of the shares) direct to the company's bankers, who may or may not issue formal receipts therefor. (Where permission to deal in the securities on the London Stock Exchange is applied for, the council of the Stock Exchange require not less than 25 per cent. of the nominal value to be paid on application.)

(b) Application and Allotment Sheets

A separate banking account should be opened for the issue. Each day the company will obtain from the bank the statement of receipts and the application letters, and these will be entered up immediately on *application and allotment sheets*, a form of which is given on p. 210.

Each application letter will be numbered in consecutive order, as received, and the name, address and description of the applicant, the number of shares applied for, and the amount paid on application, will be entered on the application and allotment

sheet. As soon as the lists are closed, and it is ascertained that the minimum subscription (where applicable) has been subscribed, the directors will proceed to allot the shares, and minutes of all allotments will appear in the directors' minute book. The application and allotment sheets should also be initialled by one of the directors at the point to which allotments have been made. The number of shares allotted and the distinctive numbers of such shares (if any), together with the amount payable on allotment, will be entered in the columns provided for that purpose.

No allotment of shares or debentures is permissible in pursuance of a prospectus issued generally, and no proceedings on applications so made, can be taken until the third day after that on which the prospectus is first so issued, or such later time (if any) as may be specified in the prospectus. This time is referred to in the Act as 'the time of the opening of the subscription lists' (§ 50).

Illustration

APPLICATION AND ALLOTMENT SHEET

| Number of Application | Date Received | NAME | ADDRESS | Description | No. of Shares applied for | ALLOTMENT | | Amount paid on application | AMOUNT DUE AND PAID ON ALLOTMENT | | | | Calls paid in advance. | Amount returnable (if any) | Share Ledger Folio | No. of Share Certificate | REMARKS | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|------|---------|-------------|------------------------------|-----------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|---------|----------------|------|----|
| | | | | | | Date | No. of Shares allotted | | Distinctive No. of Shares. | Amount payable. | Date paid | Cash Book Folio | | | | | | Amount paid | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | From | To |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

(c) The Minimum Subscription

In order that prospective applicants for shares may be able to determine whether or not the company is raising enough capital for its immediate purposes, and to prevent the company from going to allotment if such capital is not raised, Section 47 lays down that, *in the case of a first allotment of shares* offered to the public for subscription, no allotment shall be made unless the amount stated in the prospectus as the minimum amount which, in the opinion of the directors, must be raised by the issue of share capital in order to provide for the matters set out below, has been satisfied, and the amount payable on application for the amount so stated has been paid to and received by the company. This amount is called the **MINIMUM SUBSCRIPTION**.

The matters to be provided for by the minimum subscription are:

- (1) the purchase price of any property to be acquired which is to be defrayed in whole or in part out of the proceeds of the issue;
- (2) any preliminary expenses payable by the company, and any commission so payable to any person in consideration of his agreeing to subscribe for, or of his procuring or agreeing to procure subscriptions for, any shares in the company;

- (3) the repayment of any moneys borrowed by the company in respect of any of the foregoing matters;
- (4) working capital.

This amount must be stated in the prospectus and is reckoned exclusively of any amount payable otherwise than in cash.

The amount payable on application must not be less than 5 per cent. of the nominal amount of the share. A cheque received in good faith is regarded as payment.

The provisions relating to minimum subscription do not apply to private companies, which are prohibited from making any invitation to the public to subscribe, nor to public companies which secure their capital without the issue of a prospectus.

If the minimum subscription is not received within forty days of the issue of the prospectus, the application money must be returned, and if such a return is not made within forty-eight days of the issue of the prospectus, the directors are personally liable to repay the money with interest at the rate of 5 per cent. per annum.

Although the details of the minimum subscription must be stated in every prospectus, the restrictions on allotment in respect thereof do not apply in the case of allotments subsequent to the first allotment of shares offered to the public for subscription.

Where a prospectus states that application has been or will be made for permission to deal on any stock exchange, any allotment thereunder is void if permission has not been applied for before the third day after the first issue of the prospectus, or, if permission is refused, before the expiration of three weeks from the date of the closing of the subscription list, or such longer period, not exceeding six weeks, as may, within the said three weeks, be notified to the applicant for permission by or for the stock exchange.

If permission is not so applied for, or is refused, the application money must be repaid. If not repaid within eight days, the directors become personally liable to repay it with interest at 5 per cent. per annum from the expiration of the eighth day.

So long as the company may become liable to repay it, the money must be kept in a separate banking account (§ 51).

(d) Letters of Allotment and Regret

In the event of the issue being over-subscribed, the directors must decide the basis upon which the allotment is to be made—whether by the selection of all applications for over, say, 100 shares, or rateably to all applications; or by a differential allotment, *e.g.*, all under 100 shares in full; from 100—1,000 shares, 50 per cent.; over 1,000 shares, 30 per cent. The course to be adopted will depend upon the nature of the business, and the policy of the directors. Where, for example, the issue is in respect of a departmental store, it would be an advantage to secure as large a number of individual shareholders as possible, as each shareholder is a potential customer, whereas in the case, say, of a ship-building company, the preferential allotment to the applicants for the largest number of shares would save clerical labour.

Where allotment is made of less than the number of shares applied for by an applicant the amount overpaid on application would be deducted from the sums

payable by him on allotment and call. In the case of an applicant who receives no allotment whatever, the application money must be returned to him in full. It is on account of these possible adjustments, and also the fact that the contract to take shares is not complete until the offer has been accepted by notification of allotment that no entry is made in the financial books until the allotment has been made.

Upon allotment a letter of allotment is sent to the applicant setting out the number of shares allotted to him and the amount payable. A letter of regret is sent to those to whom no shares have been allotted.

When the bank statement or pass book (which will usually, and should always in such cases for convenience, be in loose leaf form) is received from the bankers each day, the amounts received on application and allotment will be entered in the cash book, and also in the columns provided for that purpose on the application and allotment sheets. The details will be inserted each day in an inner column of the cash book, and the totals extended into the outer column. Where the issue is a large one, a separate cash book should be used, the daily totals only being carried into the general cash book. After allotment the items will be posted in detail to the credit of the shareholders' cash accounts in the share ledger, and in total to the credit of the Application and Allotment Account in the general ledger. Assuming the shares are issued at par, this account will be debited with the full amount payable on application and allotment, and Share Capital Account credited.

In some cases, the cash columns in the application and allotment sheets are used as the detailed cash account, and only the totals entered in the general cash book.

(e) Vendors' and Signatories' Shares

The shares subscribed for by the signatories to the memorandum and articles of association do not require to be specifically allotted, but should, nevertheless, be entered on the application and allotment sheets in the first instance. As regards shares issued to vendors and others for a consideration other than cash, when these are allotted they should be entered on a separate application and allotment sheet so as to avoid their being confused with shares issued for cash. When shares are issued to nominees of the vendor, a written authority must be obtained from him, authorising the company to allot to such nominees, and containing particulars of their names, addresses and descriptions, and the number of shares to be allotted to each.

(f) Calls

Calls are usually made on dates specified in the prospectus, when one is issued. Where such dates are not specified, subsequent calls are regulated by the provisions in the articles. Table 'A' provides that in such circumstances no call shall exceed one-fourth of the nominal value of the share, or be payable at less than one month from the last call, and each member shall have fourteen days' notice specifying the date of payment. Special articles, however, commonly modify these periods and amounts.

In some cases, columns are provided in the application and allotment sheets for calls, but it is more usual to have separate *call sheets*, which are provided with columns

showing the amount due, and the date and amount of payment. *Call letters* will be issued with forms of bankers' receipts attached calls being payable direct to the company's bankers, in the same way as amounts due on allotment.

In due course share certificates will be made out and issued to the shareholders in exchange for their allotment letters and bankers' receipts for sums due in respect of application, allotment and calls.

(g) The Share Certificate

Within two months of allotment (or within two months after the date of lodgment of any transfer), unless the conditions of issue otherwise provide, the company must complete and have ready for delivery share certificates, indicating the number and class of shares held and the distinctive numbers thereof (where relevant) (§ 80). If all the calls have been made, the shares will be certified as being fully paid. In some cases, however, the date of a call may be some months after that of the allotment, and the certificates would then state that the shares are only partly paid and would give particulars of the payments made, provision being made on the back of the certificate for acknowledgment by the company of the payment of the calls subsequently made.

Where calls are to be made shortly after allotment, the conditions of issue usually provide that share certificates shall not be issued until all calls have been paid, the allotment letters and bankers' receipts constituting the title in the meantime.

(h) Return of Allotments

Under Section 52, whenever a company limited by shares, or limited by guarantee and having a share capital, makes any allotment of its shares, the company must, within one month thereafter, file with the registrar of companies:

- (1) a return of the allotments, stating the number and nominal amount of the shares comprised in the allotment, the names, addresses and descriptions of the allottees, and the amount (if any) paid or due and payable on each share; and
- (2) in the case of shares allotted as fully or partly paid up otherwise than in cash, a contract in writing constituting the title of the allottee to the allotment, together with any contract of sale, or for services or other consideration in respect of which that allotment was made, such contracts being duly stamped, and a return stating the number and nominal amount of shares so allotted, the extent to which they are to be treated as paid up, and the consideration for which they have been allotted.

Where such a contract is not reduced to writing, the following particulars, stamped with the same stamp duty as would be payable if the contract were in writing, must be filed with the registrar:

1. The number and nominal value of shares issued as paid up otherwise than in cash, and the amount so credited on each.
2. The nature of the consideration, and a brief description of any property, and how the purchase price is to be satisfied in shares, cash, and liabilities assumed.
3. Details of the apportionment of the purchase price over the following heads:—
Freehold property and fixed plant and machinery and other fixtures thereon;
Leasehold property;

Fixed plant, and machinery on leasehold property (including tenants' trade and other fixtures);
 Equitable interests in freehold or leasehold property;
 Loose plant and machinery, stock-in-trade and other chattels (no plant and machinery not in an actual state of severance should be included here);
 Goodwill and benefit of contracts;
 Patents, designs, trade marks, licences, copyrights, etc.;
 Book and other debts;
 Cash in hand and at bank on current account, bills, notes, etc.;
 Cash on deposit at bank or elsewhere;
 Shares, debentures and other investments;
 Other property detailed.

(i) Journal entries relating to the issue of Shares

Upon each occasion on which an allotment of shares is made, an entry should be made in the journal, debiting an Application and Allotment Account with the amount payable on application and allotment in respect of the shares so allotted, and (assuming the shares are issued at par) crediting Share Capital Account, reference being made to the minutes of allotment and to the pages in the application and allotment book, where the details are shown. If more than one class of capital is being issued, separate accounts must be opened in the ledger for each class.

Similar entries must be made debiting the vendor or other persons, and crediting Share Capital Account, in respect of all shares issued for a consideration other than cash, reference being made to the minutes of allotment and to the contract under which the shares are issued.

When calls are made, an entry must be made debiting Call Account and crediting Share Capital Account with the total amount due in respect of the call.

(j) Shares issued at a premium

A company may issue shares at a premium, *i.e.*, for an amount in excess of their nominal value. Such an issue might be made by a successful company which has paid high dividends on its existing capital and whose shares, as a consequence, already stand at a premium on the market. When shares are issued at a premium, whether for cash or otherwise, the premium must be credited to an account called 'the Share Premium Account' (§ 56). The amount so credited to this account can only be applied in one of the following ways, pending which it must remain in the account:

1. Subject to the confirmation of the Court, in a scheme for reduction of capital, as if it were paid up share capital of the company (*see post* § 19).

2. In paying up unissued shares of the company to be issued to the members as fully paid bonus shares.

3. In writing off:

(a) preliminary expenses; or

(b) the expenses of, or commission paid or discount allowed on, any issue of shares or debentures of the company.

4. In providing for the premium payable on the redemption of redeemable preference shares or debentures of the company.

Any amount received as a premium on shares issued before 1st July, 1948, is subject to the above provisions if it forms an identifiable part of the company's reserves at that date (§ 56).

The premium is usually payable with the instalment due on allotment, and where this is so the journal entry for allotment must show the amount payable in respect of premium, which must be credited direct to the Share Premium Account, only the proportion of the amount due representing a payment on account of the nominal value of the shares being credited to Share Capital Account.

Illustration

On 30th April, a company goes to allotment, and the following shares are allotted:

80,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each issued at 22s. 6d. per share;

50,000 5 per cent. Preference Shares of £1 each, issued at par.

The ordinary shares are payable 2s. 6d. on application, 5s. (including the premium) on allotment; 5s. one month after allotment and 10s. three months after allotment. The preference shares are payable 2s. 6d. on application, 2s. 6d. on allotment, 5s. one month after allotment, and 10s. three months after allotment. Make the journal and cash book entries recording these transactions.

JOURNAL

| | | | £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------|----|----|---------|----|----|
| April 30 | Application and Allotment Account (Ordinary Shares) | Dr. | 30,000 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | To Sundries— | | | | | | | |
| | Ordinary Share Capital Account | | | | | 20,000 | 0 | 0 |
| | Share Premium Account | | | | | 10,000 | 0 | 0 |
| | Being 2s. 6d. on application and 5s. on allotment (2s. 6d. thereof being premium) on 80,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each, allotted as per minute of this date. | | £30,000 | 0 | 0 | £30,000 | 0 | 0 |
| April 30 | Application and Allotment Account (Preference Shares) .. . | Dr. | 12,500 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | To Preference Share Capital Account | | | | | 12,500 | 0 | 0 |
| | Being 2s. 6d. on application and 2s. 6d. on allotment of 50,000 Preference Shares of £1 each, allotted as per minute of this date | | | | | | | |
| May 31 | First Call Account (Ordinary Shares) | Dr. | 20,000 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | To Ordinary Share Capital Account | | | | | 20,000 | 0 | 0 |
| | Being First Call of 5s. on 80,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each. | | | | | | | |
| May 31 | First Call Account (Preference Shares) | Dr. | 12,500 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | To Preference Share Capital Account | | | | | 12,500 | 0 | 0 |
| | Being First Call of 5s. on 50,000 Preference Shares of £1 each. | | | | | | | |
| July 31 | Final Call Account (Ordinary Shares) | Dr. | 40,000 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | To Ordinary Share Capital Account | | | | | 40,000 | 0 | 0 |
| | Being Final Call of 10s. on 80,000 Ordinary Shares. | | | | | | | |
| July 31 | Final Call Account (Preference Shares) | Dr. | 25,000 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | To Preference Share Capital Account | | | | | 25,000 | 0 | 0 |
| | Being Final Call of 10s. on 50,000 Preference Shares. | | | | | | | |

It will be noted that a single journal entry is made combining the amounts payable on application and allotment. Some accountants prefer to make these entries separately, but the above course is advocated on two grounds, viz., (1) the contract to take shares is not complete until allotment, and the offer may be withdrawn at any time prior to that date, and (2) applications may not be accepted, or accepted only for a portion of the shares applied for.

| | | CASH BOOK | | |
|-------|----|----------------------------------------|--------|---|
| | | £ | | £ |
| April | 30 | To Application and Allotment Accounts: | | |
| | | 2s. 6d. per share on Application for | | |
| | | 80,000 Ordinary Shares | | |
| | | 50,000 Preference Shares | | |
| | | | 10,000 | |
| | | | 6,250 | |
| May | 2 | .. Application and Allotment Accounts: | | |
| | | Ordinary Shares—5s. per share due | | |
| | | on allotment on 80,000 shares ... | | |
| | | Preference Shares—2s. 6d. per share | | |
| | | due on allotment on 50,000 shares | | |
| | | | 20,000 | |
| | | | 6,250 | |
| June | 2 | .. First Call Accounts : | | |
| | | Ordinary Shares, 5s. per share on | | |
| | | 80,000 shares | | |
| | | Preference Shares, 5s. per share on | | |
| | | 50,000 shares | | |
| | | | 20,000 | |
| | | | 12,500 | |
| Aug. | 1 | .. Final Call Accounts : | | |
| | | Ordinary Shares 10s. per share on | | |
| | | 80,000 shares | | |
| | | Preference Shares, 10s. per share on | | |
| | | 50,000 shares | | |
| | | | 40,000 | |
| | | | 25,000 | |

(k) Shares issued at a discount

If its existing shares are quoted below their par value on the market, it would be impracticable for a company to obtain subscriptions for an issue of further shares of the same class at the full nominal value, and it may be thought expedient to issue shares at a discount.

The issue of shares at a discount is illegal, however, except under the provisions of Section 57, which enacts that:

- (1) the shares to be issued at a discount must be of a class already issued;
- (2) the company must authorise the issue by a resolution passed in general meeting, and the sanction of the Court must be obtained. In giving its sanction, the Court may impose such terms and conditions as it thinks fit;
- (3) the resolution must specify the maximum rate of discount at which the shares are to be issued;
- (4) not less than one year must, at the date of the issue, have elapsed since the date on which the company was entitled to commence business;
- (5) the shares must be issued within one month after the date of sanction of the Court, or within such extended time as the Court permits;
- (6) any prospectus issued in connection with the shares must contain particulars of the discount allowed, or of so much of that discount as has not been written off at the date of the issue of the prospectus;
- (7) every balance sheet subsequently issued must contain particulars of the amount of the discount so far as it has not been written off (8th Schedule, Pt. I, § 3).

When the issue has been made, Share Capital Account must be credited with the full nominal value of the shares, and a Discount on Shares Account debited with the amount of the discount, cash being debited with the amount received. The Discount on Shares Account should be written off out of profits over a period of years, since it is not represented by value. There is, however, no legal obligation on a company to write off the discount.

(1) Redeemable Preference Shares

Power is given under Section 58, to a company limited by shares, to issue preference shares which are, or at the option of the company are to be liable, to be

redeemed. Apart from the fact that authority must be contained in the articles, the issue of the shares does not differ from any other form of issue, but there must be included in every balance sheet a statement specifying what part of the issued capital consists of such shares, and the earliest date on which the company has power to redeem them (8th Schedule, Pt. I, § 2). Subject to the remarks which follow, the redemption may be effected on such terms and in such manner as may be provided by the articles.

Redeemable preference shares can only be redeemed out of profits which would otherwise be available for dividend, or out of the proceeds of a fresh issue of shares made for the purposes of the redemption. No shares can be redeemed unless they are fully paid.

If the shares are redeemed at a premium, such premium must have been provided for out of the profits of the company or out of the Share Premium Account before the shares are redeemed.

Where any shares are redeemed otherwise than out of the proceeds of a fresh issue, there must, out of profits which would otherwise have been available for dividend, be transferred to a reserve fund to be called the 'Capital Redemption Reserve Fund' a sum equal to the nominal amount of the shares redeemed, and the provisions of the Companies Act, 1948, relating to the reduction of the share capital of a company shall apply as if the capital redemption reserve fund were paid-up share capital of the company. The fund may, however, be used to pay up unissued shares of the company to be issued to members of the company as fully paid bonus shares.

The redemption of redeemable preference shares does not reduce the authorised share capital of the company.

Where a company has redeemed, or is about to redeem, any preference shares, it is empowered to issue fresh shares (of any class) up to the nominal amount of the shares redeemed or to be redeemed, as if those shares had never been issued. If the new issue is made before the redemption of the old shares, no stamp duty is payable on the new issue provided the old shares are redeemed within one month thereafter. If the redemption is delayed beyond the month, the appropriate duties will have to be paid.

Notice of the redemption of redeemable preference shares must be given to the registrar of companies within one month of the redemption (Section 62).

The purpose of the capital redemption reserve fund is to prevent a reduction of capital, as will be seen from the following simple statements.

A company issued 10,000 redeemable preference shares of £1 each, redeemable at par, and 2 ordinary shares of £1 each. On the date for redemption of the shares the company's balance sheet was as follows:

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|---------|--------|---------------------|-----|-----|-----|---|---------|
| Redeemable Preference Shares | ... | ... | ... | £ | 10,000 | Investments at Cost | ... | ... | ... | £ | 10,002 |
| Ordinary Shares | ... | ... | ... | 2 | | Cash | ... | ... | ... | | 10,000 |
| Profit and Loss Account | ... | ... | ... | 10,000 | | | | | | | |
| | | | | £20,002 | | | | | | | £20,002 |

Immediately after redeeming the shares, the balance sheet would read—

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|--------|-----------------------------|----------|
| Ordinary Shares | £ 2 | Investments at cost | £ 10,000 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 10,000 | | |

Obviously, £10,000 of the assets was provided by the issue of the preference shares, and if the company could now realise investments and pay a dividend of £10,000, the effect would be to reduce its capital to £2. If there were creditors, they might be severely prejudiced. Accordingly, since £10,000 of the profits have been applied in repaying capital, the profits remaining available for distribution as dividends are reduced by this sum, and the Act requires an equivalent amount to be taken out of Profit and Loss Account and capitalised. The capital redemption reserve fund so created can be reduced, as if it were share capital, by passing a special resolution and obtaining the sanction of the Court, or can be used to pay up bonus shares.

Illustration

The Balance Sheet of a company at December 31st, was as follows:

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------------|----------|
| Authorised and Issued Capital : | £ | Sundry Assets | £ |
| 40,000 6% Redeemable Preference Shares of £1 each fully paid | 40,000 | Cash | 84,000 |
| 20,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each fully paid | 20,000 | | 30,000 |
| Share Premium Account | 5,000 | | |
| Profit and Loss Account | 28,000 | | |
| Liabilities | 21,000 | | |
| | £114,000 | | £114,000 |

By the terms of their issue the preference shares were redeemable at a premium of 5 per cent. on the following January 1st, and it was decided to arrange this as far as possible out of the company's resources subject to leaving a balance of £5,000 to remain to the credit of the Profit and Loss Account. It was also decided to raise the balance of funds required by the issue of a sufficient number of ordinary shares at a premium of 5s. per share.

Show the necessary journal entries and ledger accounts giving effect to the transactions and the Balance Sheet thereafter.

JOURNAL

| | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|
| Jan. 1 6% Redeemable Preference Share Capital Dr. | 40,000 | |
| Premium on Redemption of Preference Shares | 2,000 | |
| To Preference Shares Redemption Account | | 42,000 |
| Transferring 40,000 £1 redeemable preference shares redeemable at a premium of 5%. | | |
| Application and Allotment (Ordinary Shares) Dr. | 21,250 | |
| To Ordinary Share Capital | | 17,000 |
| " Share Premium Account | | 4,250 |
| Issue of 17,000 ordinary shares at premium of 5s. per share. | | |
| Cash Dr. | 21,250 | |
| To Application and Allotment | | 21,250 |
| Cash received on issue of 17,000 ordinary shares. | | |
| Preference Share Redemption Account Dr. | 42,000 | |
| To Cash | | 42,000 |
| Redemption of 40,000 6% Redeemable Preference Shares at premium of 5%. | | |
| Profit and Loss Account Dr. | 23,000 | |
| To Capital Redemption Reserve Fund | | 23,000 |
| Transfer out of profits of amount equal to nominal amount of shares redeemed otherwise than out of the proceeds of a new issue. | | |
| Share Premium Account Dr. | 2,000 | |
| To Premium on Redemption of Preference Shares | | 2,000 |
| Providing for premium on redemption out of Share Premium Account. | | |

LEDGER

6% REDEEMABLE PREFERENCE SHARE CAPITAL

| | | | | | |
|--------|----------------------------------------|-------------|---------|----------------|-------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Preference Share Redemption Account | £ 40,000 | Dec. 31 | By Balance b/f | £ 40,000 |
|--------|----------------------------------------|-------------|---------|----------------|-------------|

PREMIUM ON REDEMPTION OF PREFERENCE SHARES

| | | | | | |
|--------|----------------------------------------|------------|--------|--------------------------|------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Preference Share Redemption Account | £ 2,000 | Jan. 1 | By Share Premium Account | £ 2,000 |
|--------|----------------------------------------|------------|--------|--------------------------|------------|

PREFERENCE SHARE REDEMPTION ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|--------|---------|-------------|--------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Cash | £ 42,000 | Jan. 1 | By 6% Redeemable Preference Shares | £ 40,000 |
| | | | | .. Premium on Redemption | 2,000 |

ORDINARY SHARE CAPITAL

| | | | | | |
|--------|-----------------|-------------|---------|------------------------------|-------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Balance c/f. | £ 37,000 | Dec. 31 | By Balance b/f | £ 20,000 |
| | | | Jan. 1 | .. Application and Allotment | 17,000 |
| | | £37,000 | | | £37,000 |
| | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance | 37,000 |

SHARE PREMIUM ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------|------------|---------|------------------------------|------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Premium on Redemption of Preference Shares | £ 2,000 | Dec. 31 | By Balance b/f | £ 5,000 |
| | .. Balance c/f. | 7,250 | Jan. 1 | .. Application and Allotment | 4,250 |
| | | £9,250 | | | £9,250 |
| | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/f | 7,250 |

APPLICATION AND ALLOTMENT (ORDINARY SHARES)

| | | | | | |
|--------|------------------|-------------|--------|---------|-------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Share Capital | £ 17,000 | Jan. 1 | By Cash | £ 21,250 |
| | .. Share Premium | 4,250 | | | |
| | | £21,250 | | | £21,250 |

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|--------|------------------------------------|-------------|---------|----------------|-------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Capital Redemption Reserve Fund | £ 23,000 | Dec. 31 | By Balance b/f | £ 28,000 |
| | .. Balance c/f. | 5,000 | | | |
| | | £28,000 | | | £28,000 |
| | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/f | 5,000 |

CAPITAL REDEMPTION RESERVE FUND

| | | |
|--------|----------------------------|-------------|
| Jan. 1 | By Profit and Loss Account | £ 23,000 |
|--------|----------------------------|-------------|

CASH BOOK

| | | | | | |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|----------------------------------------|----------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Balance b/f. | £ 30,000 | Jan. 1 | By Preference Share Redemption Account | £ 42,000 |
| | .. Application and Allotment: Ordinary Shares | 21,250 | | .. Balance c/f. | 9,250 |
| | | <u>£51,250</u> | | | <u>£51,250</u> |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/f. | 9,250 | | | |

BALANCE SHEET, JANUARY 1ST

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| Authorised Capital— 60,000 Shares of £1 each | £ 60,000 | Sundry Assets Cash | £ 84,000 9,250 |
| Issued and Paid-up Capital— 37,000 Ordinary Shares | 37,000 | | |
| Share Premium Account | 7,250 | | |
| Capital Redemption Reserve Fund | 23,000 | | |
| Profit and Loss Account | 5,000 | | |
| | <u>72,250</u> | | |
| Liabilities | 21,000 | | |
| | <u>£93,250</u> | | <u>£93,250</u> |

Note

(1) Since £5,000 is to be carried forward on Profit and Loss Account, 23,000 of the redeemable preference shares can be redeemed out of profit, leaving 17,000 to be redeemed out of the proceeds of a new issue of ordinary shares.

(2) The premium on redemption of the preference shares has been written off against the company's Share Premium Account in accordance with Section 58 (1) (c) of the Companies Act, 1948.

Where it is necessary to realise assets in order to provide the cash for the redemption of preference shares, losses on the realisation of the assets should be written off to Profit and Loss Account (or charged to any reserve which exists to meet such capital losses), but profits on such realisations should be regarded as a capital reserve not available for dividend purposes.

§ 7. Forfeiture of Shares

The articles of a company usually give power to the directors to forfeit shares in respect of which calls are unpaid and overdue, proper notice (Table 'A' prescribes fourteen days) having been given to the defaulting shareholder that unless the calls are paid, his shares will be forfeited. Table 'A' also gives power to forfeit shares for non-payment of any premium on the shares.

When such forfeiture takes place, the Share Capital Account should be debited with the amount CALLED UP in respect of the shares, and Forfeited Shares Account credited. The calls in arrear in respect of these shares will have remained as a debit balance, either on the Application and Allotment Account or Call Account. These unpaid calls should be written off against the Forfeited Shares Account, the credit balance of which will then represent the cash actually received in respect of the shares forfeited.

Until these shares are re-issued, this balance should appear in the Balance Sheet as a separate item under the heading of Forfeited Shares Account.

Forfeited shares can be re-issued as fully paid at any price, so long as the sum received on re-issue, plus the amount received from the original allottee before

forfeiture, make up together at least the nominal value of the shares in question. If, after the re-issue of the shares, there still remains a credit balance on the Forfeited Shares Account, this would represent an amount received by the company in respect of those shares in excess of their nominal value which, it is submitted, should be regarded as a premium on the issue of such shares and transferred to Share Premium Account.

If the forfeited shares were originally issued at a premium which had been paid prior to the forfeiture, the Share Premium Account need not be disturbed as the premium is not, strictly speaking, a payment for the shares themselves, but is rather in the nature of a payment for the right to acquire the shares. Where, however, shares are forfeited for non-payment of instalments which include the premium, so that the premium has not been received by the company, the debit balance in respect of the unpaid premium should be written off against the Share Premium Account.

Illustration (1)

A company has an issued capital of £20,000 in shares of £1 each, fully paid with the exception of 200 shares on which only 10s. has been paid. The latter are forfeited for non-payment of calls, and subsequently re-issued as fully paid at the price of 15s. per share. Show the entries in the company's journal and ledger recording these transactions.

JOURNAL

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------|----------|
| Share Capital Account | Dr. | £ 200 | £ 200 |
| To Forfeited Shares Account | | | |
| Being 200 shares of £1 each forfeited for non-payment of calls as per minute dated | | | |
| Forfeited Shares Account | Dr. | 100 | 100 |
| To Call Account | | | |
| Being calls in arrear, 10s. per share on 200 shares forfeited, now transferred. | | | |
| Sun. Ines | Dr. | | |
| To Share Capital Account | | | 200 |
| Forfeited Shares Re-issued Account | | 150 | |
| Forfeited Shares Account | | 50 | |
| Being re-issue of 200 forfeited shares of £1 each as fully paid, at 15s. per share. | | | |

LEDGER

SHARE CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------|-----------------|-------------|
| To Forfeited Shares Account... | £ 200 | By Balance b/f | £ 20,000 |
| .. Balance c/d. | 20,000 | .. Sundries | 200 |
| | £20,200 | | £20,200 |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 20,000 |

FORFEITED SHARES ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------|----------|--------------------------|----------|
| To Call Account | £ 100 | By Share Capital Account | £ 200 |
| .. Share Capital Account | 50 | | |
| .. Balance c/d. | 50 | | |
| | £200 | | £200 |
| To Share Premium Account | 50 | By Balance b/d. | 50 |

CALL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|----------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|
| To Balance b/f. | £ 100 | By Forfeited Shares Account | £ 100 |
|----------------------|-------|----------------------------------|-------|

FORFEITED SHARES RE-ISSUED ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------|---------------|-------|
| To Share Capital Account | £ 150 | By Cash | £ 150 |
|--------------------------------|-------|---------------|-------|

Note

As the whole of the shares in question have been re-issued, the balance of the Forfeited Shares Account, after transferring 5s. per share (the amount necessary to make the price of re-issue up to par) is a premium on the issue of the shares and should be transferred to the Share Premium Account.

It may happen that forfeiture takes place upon failure of the allottee to pay the amount due upon allotment, subsequent calls being due prior to the re-issue of the shares.

Illustration (2)

A company invites applications for 20,000 shares of £1 each, payable 2s. 6d. per share on application, 7s. 6d. on allotment, 5s. per share 2 months after allotment, and 5s. 4 months after allotment. An applicant for 200 shares fails to pay the allotment money, and the shares are forfeited prior to the first call becoming due. After all calls have been made, the forfeited shares are re-issued at par. Show the entries in the company's journal and ledger recording these transactions.

JOURNAL

| | £ | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|
| Application and Allotment Account <i>Dr.</i> | 10,000 | |
| To Share Capital Account | | 10,000 |
| Being 2s. 6d. on application and 7s. 6d. on allotment on 20,000 shares of £1 each, allotted as per minute of this date. | | |
| Share Capital Account | 100 | |
| To Forfeited Shares Account | | 100 |
| Being 200 shares of £1 each, 10s. per share called up, forfeited for non-payment of allotment money as per minute dated..... | | |
| Forfeited Shares Account <i>Dr.</i> | 75 | |
| To Application and Allotment Account | | 75 |
| Being allotment money unpaid on 200 shares forfeited, now transferred. | | |
| First Call Account <i>Dr.</i> | 4,950 | |
| To Share Capital Account | | 4,950 |
| Being 1st call of 5s. per share on 19,800 shares, due this day. | | |
| Second Call Account <i>Dr.</i> | 4,950 | |
| To Share Capital Account | | 4,950 |
| Being Second Call of 5s. per share on 19,800 shares, due this day. | | |
| Forfeited Shares Re-issued Account <i>Dr.</i> | 200 | |
| To Share Capital Account | | 200 |
| Being re-issue of 200 forfeited shares, at par. | | |

LEDGER
SHARE CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|------------------------------------|----------|------------------------------------------|-------------|
| To Forfeited Shares Account | £ 100 | By Application and Allotment Account ... | £ 10,000 |
| „ Balance c/d. | 20,000 | „ First Call Account | 4,950 |
| | | „ Second Call Account | 4,950 |
| | | „ Forfeited Shares Re-issued Account ... | 200 |
| | £20,100 | | £20,100 |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 20,000 |

APPLICATION AND ALLOTMENT ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------|------------|
| To Share Capital Account | £ 10,000 | By Cash on application | £ 2,500 |
| | | „ „ on allotment | 7,425 |
| | | „ Forfeited Shares Account | 75 |
| | £10,000 | | £10,000 |

FIRST CALL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------|------------|
| To Share Capital Account | £ 4,950 | By Cash | £ 4,950 |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------|------------|

SECOND CALL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------|------------|
| To Share Capital Account | £ 4,950 | By Cash | £ 4,950 |
|---------------------------------|------------|----------------|------------|

FORFEITED SHARES ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|------------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------------|----------|
| To Application and Allotment Account ... | £ 75 | By Share Capital Account | £ 100 |
| „ Balance c/d. | 25 | | |
| | £100 | | £100 |
| To Share Premium Account | 25 | By Balance b/d. | 25 |

FORFEITED SHARES RE-ISSUED ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------|----------------|----------|
| To Share Capital Account | £ 200 | By Cash | £ 200 |
|---------------------------------|----------|----------------|----------|

Illustration (3)

A company issued a prospectus inviting applications for 200,000 shares of 5s. each at a premium of 1s. 6d., payable as follows :

- On application 1s. 0d. per share.
 „ allotment 2s. 6d. „ „ (including premium).
 „ first call 2s. 0d. „ „
 „ second call 1s. 0d. „ „

Applications were received for 300,000 shares, and allotments made *pro rata* to the applicants for 240,000 shares, the remaining applications being refused. Money overpaid on application was employed on account of sums due on allotment.

X, to whom 400 shares were allotted, failed to pay the allotment money, and on his subsequent failure to pay the first call, his shares were forfeited. Y, the holder of 600 shares, failed to pay the two calls, and his shares were forfeited after the second call had been made.

Of the shares forfeited, 800 were re-issued to Z, credited as fully paid, for 4s. 6d. per share, the whole of X's shares being included. Show the journal entries required to record the above forfeitures and re-issue.

JOURNAL.

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---|-----|----|-----|
| Share Capital Account | Dr. | £ | 80 | £ | |
| To Forfeited Shares Account | | | | | 80 |
| Forfeiture of 400 shares allotted to X, 4s. per share called up, for non-payment of balance due on allotment and first call, per minute of this day. | | | | | |
| Forfeited Shares Account | Dr. | £ | 56 | | |
| Share Premium Account | | | 30 | | |
| To Application and Allotment Account .. | | | | | 46 |
| First Call Account | | | | | 40 |
| Amounts unpaid by X on shares forfeited, viz.— | | | | | |
| Due on application and allotment—400 shares—2s. each | | £ | 40 | | |
| Less paid on application for 480 shares—1s. each | | | 24 | | |
| | | | 16 | | |
| Add Premium on 400 shares—1s. 6d. each | | | 30 | | |
| First Call on 400 shares—2s. each | | | 40 | | |
| | | | £ | 86 | |
| Share Capital Account | Dr. | | 150 | | |
| To Forfeited Shares Account | | | | | 150 |
| Forfeiture of 600 shares allotted to Y for non-payment of 1st and 2nd calls, per minute of this day. | | | | | |
| Forfeited Shares Account | Dr. | | 90 | | |
| To 1st Call Account | | | | | 60 |
| 2nd " | | | | | 30 |
| Amounts not paid by Y on shares forfeited. | | | | | |
| Z | Dr. | | 180 | | |
| Forfeited Shares Account | | | 20 | | |
| To Share Capital Account | | | | | 200 |
| Re-issue of 800 forfeited shares for 4s. 6d. each, credited as fully paid as per minute of this day. | | | | | |
| Forfeited Shares Account | Dr. | | 44 | | |
| To Share Premium Account | | | | | 44 |
| Transfer of capital profit on re-issue of shares, viz.— | | | | | |
| 400 shares formerly held by X : | | | | | |
| Amounts received from X | | £ | 24 | | |
| " " " Z | | | 90 | | |
| | | | 114 | | |
| Less credited as paid | | | 100 | | |
| | | | 14 | | |
| 400 shares formerly held by Y : | | | | | |
| Amount received from Y, 3s. 6d. per share | | £ | 70 | | |
| " " " Z | | | 90 | | |
| | | | 160 | | |
| Less Premium included in allotment money | | | 30 | | |
| | | | 130 | | |
| Less credited as paid | | | 100 | | |
| | | | 30 | | |
| | | | £ | 44 | |

Note

The balance remaining on Forfeited Shares Account, £20, is the amount paid by Y on application and allotment for the balance of 200 shares, ignoring the premium paid thereon (which is in the Share Premium Account).

§ 8. The Share Books

(a) The Share Ledger

This book, which is often arranged so that it can be utilised as the register of members, contains an account for each shareholder, showing the number of shares he has acquired, the number he has transferred, and the balance standing in his name. If shares are issued as partly paid up, cash columns must be provided to record the payment of calls. As soon, however, as the shares become fully paid, the cash columns will no longer be necessary. Where there are different classes of shares, there must either be separate share ledgers for each class, or separate columns must be provided in order to distinguish between the various classes of shares held by each member.

(b) The Form of Transfer

This is regulated by the articles of the company. Transfers must be in writing (Section 75). Clause 23 of Table 'A' provides for transfers to be effected by an instrument in writing in any usual or common form or any other form which the directors may approve.

The transfer, filled in and signed by the transferor, together with the share certificate, is handed to the transferee in return for the consideration. The latter will complete the transfer with his signature, and send it, duly stamped, to the company for registration.

Except where the nominal stamp duty of 10/- is payable in the circumstances usually outlined on the back of the transfer form, the following *ad valorem* duties are payable (*Finance Act, 1947, § 52*):

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|------|
| Where the amount of the consideration does not exceed | £5 | ... | 2/- |
| " | 10 | ... | 4/- |
| " | 15 | ... | 6/- |
| " | 20 | ... | 8/- |
| " | 25 | ... | 10/- |
| For every additional £25 or fractional part up to | ... | 300 | ... |
| For every additional £50 or fractional part | ... | ... | £1 |

When a shareholder desires to transfer part only of the number of shares represented by the certificate in his possession, he should forward the certificate with the form of transfer to the secretary of the company, who will certify on the transfer (which he will return) that a certificate for at least the number of shares sold has been lodged with the company. This is termed a *certified transfer* and can be safely taken by the transferee as good delivery (Section 79). The secretary of the Share and Loan Department of the Stock Exchange will also certify transfers of quoted shares. Where he does so he immediately hands the certificate and particulars to the company.

Upon the completion of the transfer by the transferee, it is lodged with the company for registration, and on its being passed by the directors, a certificate for the number of shares transferred will be issued to the transferee, and a balance certificate for the number of shares retained will be issued to the transferor.

(c) The Register of Transfers

This book is utilised to record particulars of all transfers registered by the company, and from it the postings are made into the share ledger. In some cases it is the practice to dispense altogether with the register of transfers, the transfers themselves being filed, and the postings made direct from them into the share ledger. This, of course, saves a considerable amount of labour, and possesses the possible advantage that error is less likely to arise, since the posting is made direct from the original document, instead of the particulars being first copied into a subsidiary book. At the same time the absence of the register is inconvenient for purposes of reference and check on the transfer fees received. It is usual for the directors, after passing the transfers to any given date, to initial the transfer book accordingly; this advantage is also lost when no register is kept.

The following is a convenient form for general purposes:

Illustration**REGISTER OF TRANSFERS**

| No. of Deed. | Date of Registration. | No. of old Certificate. | Share Ledger Folio. | Transferor. | | | Number of Shares Transferred. | Distinctive Numbers. | | Transferee. | | | No. of New Certificate. | Share Ledger Folio. | Remarks |
|--------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-------------|----------|--------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|----|-------------|----------|--------------|-------------------------|---------------------|---------|
| | | | | Name. | Address. | Description. | | From | To | Name. | Address. | Description. | | | |

(d) The Share Warrant Register

It is a practice for certain companies, particularly those having foreign shareholders, to issue *share warrants to bearer*, instead of certificates which require registration. Since these share warrants are in the nature of negotiable instruments, a precise record must be kept of all those printed, and of all those issued, and to whom. For this purpose a *share warrant register* will be used, to show to whom the warrants were issued, the numbers of such warrants, and the distinctive numbers (if any) of the shares to which they relate.

Share warrants can only be issued in respect of shares which are fully paid (Section 83). They must be stamped with a duty equal to three times the transfer duty on the nominal value of the shares (*Stamp Act*, 1891, § 107).

In order to enable the holders of share warrants to attend and vote at meetings of the company, the date of the proposed meeting must be notified by advertisement, and the holders will be required to lodge their share warrants at the company's registered office on or before a specified date prior to the meeting (such period being in accordance with the terms of the articles). This minimises the risk of persons who

might have improperly obtained temporary possession of the warrants attempting to obtain privileges only to be enjoyed by *bona fide* members.

In connection with the system of exchange control now in operation, all bearer securities, such as share warrants, are required to be deposited with an approved depository, usually a bank.

§ 9. Preliminary and Formation Expenses

These comprise the expenses incidental to the creation and flotation of a company and the fulfilment of the statutory requirements precedent to the commencement of business. The following items are usually included therein:

1. Stamp duties and fees on the nominal capital, and stamps on the contracts transferring the assets.
2. The law costs of preparing the prospectus, memorandum and articles of association and contracts, and of the registration of the company.
3. Accountants' and valuers' fees for reports, certificates, etc.
4. Cost of printing memorandum and articles of association.
5. Cost of the company's seal, statutory books, etc.

In addition to preliminary expenses, the following expenses incurred in connection with the issue of shares and debentures, must be stated separately in the balance sheet of the company (8th Schedule, Pt. I, § 3):

- (i) Any expenses incurred in connection with any issue of share capital or debentures;
- (ii) Any commission in respect of any shares or debentures;
- (iii) Any discount on debentures;
- (iv) Any discount on shares.

The preliminary and formation expenses are sometimes borne entirely by the company, and sometimes by the vendors of the business to the company, or apportioned between these parties, the expenses up to allotment being payable by the vendors, and the expenses afterwards by the company. Care must be taken to see that the company is only charged with expenses properly payable by it.

This expenditure is, strictly speaking, of a capital nature, but as it is unrepresented by assets, it is usual to write it off as soon as possible out of revenue. The balance not written off must be carried forward in the balance sheet, underwriting and other commission on the issue of shares, and also costs of issue of shares or debentures, being shown separately.

(a) Underwriting Commission

This is an amount payable to persons who undertake to subscribe for shares comprised in a public issue, to the extent that they are not subscribed for by the public. An underwriting contract is therefore in the nature of a speculation. If the public respond to the extent of applying for the whole of the shares, the underwriters receive their commission, and do not have to take up any shares. If the public apply for only part of the shares, the underwriters receive their commission but have to take up the shares not subscribed for in proportion to their contracts. It is usual for

the underwriters to make formal application for the shares they underwrite, on the understanding that allotment will be made only to the extent to which the public do not apply for shares.

The provisions mentioned in § 6 (c) *ante* regarding repayment of application money where a stock exchange quotation is refused, apply also to shares underwritten; the allotment is void (Section 51 (6)).

Illustration (1)

The Andorra Engineering Company, Ltd., issued a prospectus inviting applications for 100,000 shares. A underwrote 40% of the total, B 30%, and C 30%, in return for a commission of 5%. A and B also applied firm for 20,000 shares each. The public made applications for 40,000 shares apart from the applications by A and B. There were thus 20,000 shares to be taken up by A, B and C in the ratio in which they had underwritten the issue. A taking 8,000, B 6,000, and C 6,000. The commission received, of course, would be on the total amount underwritten, viz., A £2,000, B £1,500, and C £1,500.

The underwriters may enter into subsidiary agreements with sub-underwriters in order to spread the risk. When such a course is contemplated, the principal underwriters are frequently paid an additional commission, termed an 'over-riding' commission, since they would generally have to pay to the sub-underwriters underwriting commission at the same rate as they themselves have received. The payment of over-riding commission by the company is justified on the ground that the latter is then able to effect an underwriting contract with only one or two underwriters instead of a number, the underwriters usually remaining responsible for the obligations entered into in respect of the subsidiary agreements.

Illustration (2)

X Ltd. issues a prospectus inviting applications for 100,000 shares of £1 each, and enters into a contract with M, who undertakes to underwrite the whole issue at 4 per cent., with an over-riding commission of 1 per cent. M places underwriting with the following sub-underwriters:—

A 40,000 shares, B 30,000 shares, C 20,000 shares.

In this case, the underwriting and over-riding commissions are apportioned as follows—

A 4% on £40,000 = £1,600; B 4% on £30,000 = £1,200; C 4% on £20,000 = £800; and M 4% on the balance of £10,000, plus 1% on £100,000 = £1,400.

Sometimes underwriters apply 'firm' for a number of shares; that is, they request the shares so applied for to be allotted to them, whatever the response of the public to the issue may be. If the issue is under-subscribed, each underwriter may still be called upon to fulfil his obligations under the underwriting contract, irrespective of 'firm' applications, unless the contract provides for relief to be given for firm applications, in which event the number of shares to be taken up under the contract by each underwriter is reduced by the number of shares taken 'firm.'

(b) Commission on placing Shares

This is an amount payable to parties who introduce to the company persons willing to become members, and to take up shares accordingly. This commission, therefore, differs from underwriting commission in so far as it is not a speculative transaction, and is only paid in the event of capital being introduced.

The payment of commission to persons in consideration of their agreeing to subscribe for shares, or procuring or agreeing to procure subscriptions, is authorised by Section 53. The amount or rate per cent. of the commission (which must not exceed 10% of the price at which the shares are issued) must be authorised by the articles of association, and disclosed in the prospectus, or the statement required to be filed with the registrar in lieu thereof, and in any invitation to subscribe for shares not being a prospectus.

This commission is usually payable in cash, but is sometimes satisfied by the issue of fully-paid shares, or partly in one form and partly in the other.

Under the Eighth Schedule to the Companies Act, 1948, Part I, paragraph 3, the total amount of commission paid in respect of any shares or debentures, or so much thereof as has not been written off, must be stated under a separate heading in every balance sheet of the company until the whole amount has been written off.

§ 10. Mortgages and Debentures

(a) Definition of Mortgage

A mortgage of freehold property is of the nature of a long lease (3,000 years) granted by one person (the mortgagor) to another (the mortgagee) as a security for money lent, with a condition that if the money is repaid on a certain day with interest at an agreed rate, the demise made in favour of the mortgagee shall automatically terminate. This right to have the mortgage terminated is called the 'equity of redemption.'

In the case of leasehold property, the term of the lease to the mortgagee is for the unexpired portion of the mortgagor's lease less 10 days.

A second mortgage may be given for one day longer than the first mortgage.

A mortgage must not be confused with an ordinary lease; in the case of a mortgage, the mortgagor remains in possession of the property so long as he fulfils the terms of the mortgage deed, whereas in an ordinary lease the lessor quits possession.

In a mortgage, both the lender and borrower have a legal estate, that of the former being in the nature of a leasehold which he can assign at will, and that of the latter a fee simple or leasehold interest (as the case may be) upon which he can sue, subject to the mortgage.

A limited company can raise money under similar conditions by a charge upon chattels, as well as upon land. A mortgage can therefore be stated shortly as a conditional transfer of property made for the purpose of securing repayment of a loan with interest. Until default is made in the terms of the mortgage, either as regards the payment of interest or the repayment of principal, or in any other way, the mortgagor (*i.e.*, the borrower) retains possession and use of the property, but as he does not possess an unencumbered title thereto he cannot convey it without the consent of the mortgagee (*i.e.*, the lender).

The entries in a company's books when money is borrowed on mortgage will be a debit to cash and a credit to Loan on Mortgage Account. A note should be made in the ledger account of the asset charged under the mortgage. The proper entry

must be made in the register of charges. In the balance sheet the loan must be shown separately on the liabilities side as loan on mortgage (*see* Eighth Schedule, Part I, paragraph 9). Sometimes, however, the amount of the mortgage is deducted from the value of the asset charged, and only the balance extended.

Where a mortgage is repaid out of profits, it is desirable, if not imperative, to transfer from Profit and Loss Account to reserve an amount equal to the cash so applied, otherwise if dividends are declared up to the full amount of the balance of Profit and Loss Account before such a transfer has been made, working capital may become depleted. If, of course, reserves and liquid capital are already adequate, no transfer will be necessary.

(b) Definition of Debenture

A debenture is a written acknowledgement of a debt by a company, usually under seal, and generally containing provisions as to payment of interest and repayment of principal. It may be either a simple or naked debenture, carrying no charge on assets, or a mortgage debenture, carrying either a fixed or floating charge on some or all of the assets of the company, either including or not, as the case may be, the uncalled capital of the company.

A fixed charge is a mortgage, as already described, on specific assets, and the company therefore loses the right to deal with the assets charged, except with the consent of the mortgagee. A floating charge, on the other hand, is not really a mortgage at all, since the nature of the charge is that so long as the company continues to carry on its business and observe the terms of the charge, the directors are entitled to deal in any way they please in the ordinary course of business with the assets of the company and may even make specific charges of property which, subject to the terms of the floating charge given, will have priority to the floating charge. The floating charge is a charge on a class of assets, present and future, which in the ordinary course of business is changing from time to time, and attaches to the property included therein in preference to the general liabilities of the company, *i.e.*, to its liabilities to creditors not secured by specific charge at the moment the floating charge becomes fixed. The floating charge hovers over or 'floats' with the assets, until some event happens (*e.g.*, default in repaying principal or interest) which crystallises the charge into a fixed one.

Under Section 95, all mortgages and charges affecting the property of a company, as defined in that section, must be registered within twenty-one days after the date of creation, with the registrar of companies, otherwise they will be void against the liquidator and any creditor of the company, so far as the security comprised in the charge is concerned. If so rendered void, the principal moneys will immediately become repayable.

Debentures may either take the form of bonds to bearer, or they may be registered in the names of the holders, transmission being by transfer. In such a case, a debenture ledger should be kept, similar in form to the share ledger previously described, in order to record the necessary particulars. Debenture stock may also be issued, the

distinction between this and registered bonds being similar to the distinction between stock and shares mentioned earlier in this chapter. Unlike capital stock, debenture stock can be issued in the form of stock straight away without first being issued in some other form, and may even be issued at a discount.

Where a fixed charge is given, the charge will be in the names of trustees, who may then issue debenture stock for sub-multiples of the amount. In the case of a floating charge it is also common for two or more persons to be appointed as trustees for the debenture holders, for the purpose of looking after their interests, and taking any action that may be necessary to protect their security.

A company may make more than one issue of debentures, in which case issues subsequent to the first may rank *pari passu* (i.e., on an equal footing) with the original issue, or may confer a charge, subject to and following the first, according to whether the original debentures contained clauses allowing or forbidding subsequent *pari passu* issues. Where the debentures carry different priorities, they are usually designated first debentures, second debentures, etc.—a higher rate of interest being payable on those of lower rank to compensate for the lower degree of security.

A company can only issue debentures up to an amount within the limits of its borrowing powers, as set out in its memorandum and/or articles of association. In the case of a trading company, such powers are implied unless there are provisions to the contrary in the memorandum or articles. Debentures attract a stamp duty of 5s. per cent. on the par or redemption price, whichever is higher.

The contractual rate of interest is payable on the debentures whether the company makes profits or not, since the charge given covers principal and interest. Income tax is deductible from the interest payable under the usual rules.

Entries in the books of a company on an issue of debentures are similar to those on an issue of shares, Instalment Accounts being debited with the various instalments as they become due, and Debentures Account credited. If debentures are issued to the vendor as part of the consideration for a business acquired by the company, the Vendor's Account is debited and the Debentures Account credited therewith. The proper entry must also be made in the register of charges kept by the company.

(c) Debentures issued at a premium

When debentures are issued at a premium, the Debentures Account should be credited only with the nominal amount of the debentures, the premium being credited to Debenture Premium Account. The Companies Act, 1948, does not specify the manner in which the Debenture Premium Account shall be dealt with, but it is considered that it cannot be regarded as a profit which is divisible through the Profit and Loss Account, and should therefore be classified as a capital reserve. It is frequently utilised to form the nucleus of a debenture redemption fund; if not employed in this manner it could be applied in writing off fictitious assets. It is usual to charge the expenses of issue of the debentures against the premium received.

(d) Debentures issued at a discount

Debentures can be issued at a discount, and the discount can be regarded as a

lump sum allowed to the lenders at the time of their taking up the debentures, in consideration of a lower rate of interest being payable than would have been the case had the debentures been issued at par. The financial position of the company and the state of the money market at the date of issue are important factors in determining the price of issue.

The effect of issuing debentures at a discount can be seen from the following example :

Illustration (1)

A company issued debentures of £100 each at 95, interest at 5%, repayable at the end of 20 years at par.

Over the 20 years, therefore, ignoring income tax, the holder receives £100 as interest, and at the end of that period is repaid £100 in respect of each £95 advanced. The average return is therefore $\frac{£200 \ 95}{20} = £5.25$ on his investment of £95, or 5.5%. (This rate is not strictly accurate, as it ignores compound interest, but it is sufficiently accurate to show the effect.)

Where debentures are issued at a discount, cash is debited with the net sum received and Discount on Debentures Account with the amount of the discount, Debentures Account being credited with the full nominal value of the debentures, at which value they must appear as a liability in the balance sheet. The Discount on Debentures, or so much thereof as has not been written off, must be shown separately in the balance sheet (8th Schedule, Pt. I).

The discount on the issue is, in effect, deferred interest, and should accordingly be written off over the period having the use of the money raised by the debentures, unless a sinking fund is created to accumulate the full redemption price, including the discount. Where the debentures are redeemable at the end of a specified period, the discount should be written off by equal annual instalments over that period. If, however, the debentures are to be redeemed by annual drawings, the discount should be written off by proportionately reducing instalments, since each succeeding year has the use of a reducing amount of principal.

Illustration (2)

A company issued on 1st January, 19..., thirty debentures of £100 each at 90, repayable by instalments of £1,000 at the end of the first, second, and third years respectively. Show the Discount Account, assuming the discount to be written off over the period proportionately.

DISCOUNT ON ISSUE OF DEBENTURES ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|----------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| 1st year Jan. 1 | To Debenture Account | £ 300 | 1st year Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account— three-sixths of £300 | £ 150 |
| | | | | „ Balance c/d. | 150 |
| | | £300 | | | £300 |
| 2nd year Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 150 | 2nd year Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account— two-sixths of £300 | 100 |
| | | | | „ Balance c/d. | 50 |
| | | £150 | | | £150 |
| 3rd year Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 50 | 3rd year Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account— one-sixth of £300 | 50 |
| | | £50 | | | £50 |

Note

In the above illustration the discount has been written off against the profits of the respective years in the proportions of 3: 2: 1, since the first year has the use of £3,000, the second year £2,000 and the third year £1,000 of the capital provided by the debentures.

Where the redemption of the nominal amount of the debentures repayable is provided for by charges against Profit and Loss Account, such charges should include the provision for discount, in which case the discount can be written off against the credit balance on the redemption account.

(e) Debentures repayable at a premium

These debentures will stand in the balance sheet as a liability at their nominal amount, with a note of the amount at which they are repayable, any discount or premium on issue being treated as described above.

If a sinking fund is raised to provide for repayment, it should include provision for the payment of the premium on redemption. If no sinking fund is created, the premium should be provided for out of profits over the period of the debentures, in a similar manner to that in which discount is written off.

Debentures may even be issued at a discount and repayable at a premium.

Illustration

A company issued 100 debentures of £100 each, at a discount of 5%, repayable at 102 at the end of 10 years.

Over the 10 years, in addition to the interest payable, there must be charged against Profit and Loss Account £7 per £100 debenture, *i.e.*, £700 in all, by yearly amounts of £70. Of this £50 is credited to Discount on Debentures Account, and £20 to a Provision for Premium on the Redemption of Debentures Account.

If the debentures were repayable by equal annual drawings, the £700 would be charged in the ratio of 10, 9, 8, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, *i.e.* $\frac{10}{55}$ ths of £700 = £127 5s. 5d. would be charged to Profit and Loss Account in the first year, $\frac{9}{55}$ ths of £700 = £114 10s. 11d. in the second year, and so on. The premium paid on redemption would be debited to the Reserve Account, and the balance carried forward until the last year, when it would be closed by the last redemption.

(f) Redemption of Debentures

Debentures may be irredeemable (*i.e.*, the company may be under no obligation to repay the debentures at any specified date), but this is unusual in the case of a limited company. It is more usual to find irredeemable debentures or debenture stock in the case of companies formed under special Act of Parliament.

Debentures may either be redeemable at the end of a given period or by annual drawings. The trust deed, or if there is no deed, then the debentures themselves, will contain provision for redemption, and will also usually stipulate for a sinking fund to be established out of the profits for the purpose of repayment. An illustration of the entries in the company's books in a case of this nature is given below.

Another method is for the company to take out a sinking fund policy with an insurance company for the amount of the debentures.

Under Section 90, where a company has redeemed any debentures, it has power to re-issue them, either by re-issuing the same debentures, or by issuing other debentures

in their place, unless provision, express or implied, is contained in the articles or the conditions of issue, or unless the company has, by passing a resolution, or by some other act, manifested its intention that the debentures shall be cancelled. Where a company has redeemed any debentures, particulars with respect to those which can be re-issued must be included in every balance sheet of the company. On re-issue, the debentures must be stamped as if they were an original issue. They have this advantage, however, that they will rank *pari passu* with the outstanding debentures of the same series, *i.e.*, the re-issued debentures will have the same priorities as the original debentures.

In some instances, a company purchases its own debentures, as and when convenient, in the open market, subsequently cancelling the liability *pro tanto*. This procedure would be adopted when the debentures were quoted at a discount, so that a profit would result from the transaction. This profit is of a capital nature and should not be utilised for purposes of distribution as dividend.

Illustration (1)

A company issued £100,000 4% debenture stock at 98 on the 1st January, 1955, the interest being payable half-yearly on 30th June and 31st December. The stock is to be redeemed at the end of 20 years, at 102½, but the company has power to redeem on any earlier date after the first year at 105, upon giving 6 months written notice of its intention. Provision is made for the establishment of a sinking fund, and the annual contribution of £2,000, together with the interest received during the preceding year, is to be invested on the 1st January in each year, the first investment being made at the beginning of the second year. The trustees are empowered to purchase debentures in the open market should they be below par, and to realise the sinking fund investments for this purpose. Investments were realised as follows, in order to purchase debenture stock: —

| | | Original Cost | Produced | Nominal value of Debenture Stock Purchased. |
|--------------------------|-----|---------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 30th April, 1956 ... | ... | £1,050 | £1,060 | £1,100 |
| 30th September, 1957 ... | ... | 2,000 | 2,100 | 2,150 |

The amounts of interest received on the sinking fund investments for 1956, 1957 and 1958 were £40, £80 and £120, respectively.

Prepare accounts showing the transactions up to 31st December, 1958. Ignore income tax and calculate to the nearest £.

DEBENTURE STOCK ACCOUNT

| 1956 | | £ | 1955 | | £ |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Debenture Redemption Account, cancellation of £1,100 Debenture Stock | 1,100 | Jan. 1 | By Sundries | 100,000 |
| | .. Balance c/d. | 98,900 | | | |
| | | <u>£100,000</u> | | | <u>£100,000</u> |
| 1957 | | | 1956 | | |
| Dec. 31 | To Debenture Redemption Account, Cancellation of £2,150 Debenture Stock | 2,150 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d | 98,900 |
| | .. Balance c/d. | 96,750 | | | |
| | | <u>£98,900</u> | | | <u>£98,900</u> |
| | | | 1957 | | |
| | | | Jan. | By Balance b/d. | 96,750 |

DISCOUNT ON DEBENTURES ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|----------------|------------------------|------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|------------|
| 1955 Jan. 1 | To Sundries | £ 2,000 | 1956 Dec. 31 | By General Reserve Account ... | £ 1,100 |
| | | | | „ Balance c/d. | 900 |
| | | £2,000 | | | £2,000 |
| 1956 Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 900 | 1957 Dec. 31 | By General Reserve Account ... | 900 |

SINKING FUND ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 1956 Dec. 31 | To General Reserve Account .. | £ 1,100 | 1955 Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account .. | £ 2,000 |
| | „ Balance c/d. | 3,005 | 1956 Dec. 31 | „ Sinking Fund Investments Account—Profit on sale .. | 10 |
| | | | | „ Debenture Redemption Account—Profit on purchase .. | 55 |
| | | | | „ Interest on Investments .. | 40 |
| | | | | „ Profit and Loss Account .. | 2,000 |
| | | £4,105 | | | £4,105 |
| 1957 Dec. 31 | To General Reserve Account .. | 2,150 | 1957 Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | 3,005 |
| | „ Balance c/d. | 3,106 | 1957 Dec. 31 | „ Sinking Fund Investments Account—Profit on sale .. | 100 |
| | | | | „ Debenture Redemption Account—Profit on purchase .. | 71 |
| | | | | „ Interest on Investments .. | 80 |
| | | | | „ Profit and Loss Account .. | 2,000 |
| | | £5,256 | | | £5,256 |
| 1958 Dec. 31 | To Balance c/d. | 5,226 | 1958 Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | 3,106 |
| | | | 1958 Dec. 31 | „ Interest on Investments .. | 120 |
| | | | | „ Profit and Loss Account .. | 2,000 |
| | | £5,226 | | | £5,226 |
| | | | 1959 Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | 5,226 |

SINKING FUND INVESTMENTS ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------------|------------------------|------------|
| 1956 Jan. 1 | To Cash | £ 2,000 | 1956 Apr. 30 | By Cash | £ 1,060 |
| 1956 Dec. 31 | „ Sinking Fund Account—Profit on sale of investments .. | 10 | | „ Balance c/d. | 950 |
| | | £2,010 | | | £2,010 |
| 1957 Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 950 | 1957 Sept. 30 | By Cash | 2,100 |
| 1957 Dec. 31 | „ Cash | 2,055 | 1957 Dec. 31 | „ Balance c/d. | 1,005 |
| | „ Sinking Fund Account—Profit on sale of investments .. | 100 | | | |
| | | £3,105 | | | £3,105 |
| 1958 Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 1,005 | 1958 Dec. 31 | By Balance c/d. | 3,106 |
| | „ Cash | 2,101 | | | |
| | | £3,106 | | | £3,106 |
| 1959 Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 3,106 | | | |

DEBENTURE REDEMPTION ACCOUNT

| | | £ | | | £ |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1956 | | | 1956 | | |
| Apr. 30 | To Cash, Purchase of £1,100 Debentures <i>cum. div.</i> .. | 1,060 | Apr. 30 | By Debenture Interest Account, 4 months accrued interest on £1,100 Debentures purchased <i>cum. div.</i> .. | 15 |
| Dec. 31 | " Sinking Fund Account—Profit on Debentures purchased for cancellation .. | 55 | Dec. 31 | " Debentures Account, Debentures cancelled .. | 1,100 |
| | | <u>£1,115</u> | | | <u>£1,115</u> |
| 1957 | | | 1957 | | |
| Sept. 30 | To Cash, Purchase of £2,150 Debentures <i>cum. div.</i> .. | 2,100 | Sept. 30 | By Debenture Interest Account, 3 months accrued interest on £2,150 Debentures purchased <i>cum. div.</i> .. | 21 |
| Dec. 31 | " Sinking Fund Account—Profit on Debentures purchased for cancellation .. | 71 | Dec. 31 | " Debentures Account, Debentures cancelled .. | 2,150 |
| | | <u>£2,171</u> | | | <u>£2,171</u> |

DEBENTURE INTEREST ACCOUNT

| | | £ | | | £ |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| 1955 | | | 1955 | | |
| June 30 | To Cash— ½ yrs.' Interest on £100,000. .. | 2,000 | Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account .. | 4,000 |
| Dec. 31 | " " " " .. | 2,000 | | | |
| | | <u>£4,000</u> | | | <u>£4,000</u> |
| 1956 | | | 1956 | | |
| Apr. 30 | To Debenture Redemption Account—Interest on £1,100 Debentures purchased <i>cum. div.</i> .. | 15 | Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account .. | 3,971 |
| June 30 | " Cash— ½ yrs.' Interest on £98,900 .. | 1,978 | | | |
| Dec. 31 | " " " " .. | 1,978 | | | |
| | | <u>£3,971</u> | | | <u>£3,971</u> |
| 1957 | | | 1957 | | |
| June 30 | To Cash— ½ yrs.' Interest on £98,900 .. | 1,978 | Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account .. | 3,934 |
| Sept. 30 | " Debenture Redemption Account—Interest on £2,150 Debentures purchased <i>cum. div.</i> .. | 21 | | | |
| Dec. 31 | " Cash— ½ yrs.' Interest on £96,750 .. | 1,935 | | | |
| | | <u>£3,934</u> | | | <u>£3,934</u> |
| 1958 | | | 1958 | | |
| June 30 | To Cash— ½ yrs.' Interest on £96,750 .. | 1,935 | Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account .. | 3,870 |
| Dec. 31 | " " " " .. | 1,935 | | | |
| | | <u>£3,870</u> | | | <u>£3,870</u> |

SINKING FUND CASH ACCOUNT

| | | £ | | | £ |
|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1955 | | | 1956 | | |
| Dec. 31 | To General Cash—Annual Instalment .. | 2,000 | Jan. 1 | By Sinking Fund Investment Account .. | 2,000 |
| 1956 | | | Apr. 30 | " Debenture Redemption Account, Debentures purchased .. | 1,060 |
| Apr. 30 | " Sinking Fund Investment Account, Proceeds of sale .. | 1,060 | Dec. 31 | " Balance c/d. .. | 2,055 |
| Dec. 31 | " Interest on Investments .. | 40 | | | |
| | " General Cash—Annual Instalment .. | 2,000 | | | |
| | " General Cash—Refund of Interest on Debentures cancelled .. | 15 | | | |
| | | <u>£5,115</u> | | | <u>£5,115</u> |

SINKING FUND CASH ACCOUNT—*continued*

| 1957 | | £ | 1957 | | £ |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 2,055 | Jan. 1 | By Sinking Fund Investment Account | 2,055 |
| Sept. 30 | „ Sinking Fund Investment Account, Proceeds of Sale | 2,100 | Sept. 30 | „ Debenture Redemption Account, Debentures purchased | 2,100 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Interest on Investments | 80 | Dec. 31 | „ Balance c/d. | 2,101 |
| | „ General Cash—Annual Instalment | 2,000 | | | |
| | „ General Cash—Refund of Interest on Debentures cancelled | 21 | | | |
| | | <u>£6,256</u> | | | <u>£6,256</u> |
| 1958 | | | 1958 | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 2,101 | Jan. 1 | By Sinking Fund Investment Account | 2,101 |
| Dec. 31 | „ Interest on Investments | 120 | Dec. 31 | „ Balance c/d. | 2,120 |
| | „ General Cash—Annual Instalment | 2,000 | | | |
| | | <u>£4,221</u> | | | <u>£4,221</u> |
| 1959 | | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 2,120 | | | |

GENERAL RESERVE ACCOUNT

| 1956 | | £ | 1956 | | £ |
|---------|-----------------------------------|---------------|---------|-------------------------|---------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Discount on Debentures Account | 1,100 | Dec. 31 | By Sinking Fund Account | 1,100 |
| 1957 | | | 1957 | | |
| Dec. 31 | To Discount on Debentures Account | 900 | Dec. 31 | By Sinking Fund Account | 2,150 |
| | „ Balance c/d. | 1,250 | | | |
| | | <u>£2,150</u> | | | <u>£2,150</u> |
| 1958 | | | 1958 | | |
| Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | 1,250 | | | |

Notes

(1) The accrued interest included in the *cum. div.* price of the debentures purchased must be debited to Debenture Interest Account, and only the balance of the price treated as the cost of the debentures cancelled, in arriving at the profit or loss on cancellation. The amount of such accrued interest, having been paid out of sinking fund cash, must be reimbursed thereto out of general cash, and reinvested.

(2) No purpose is served by apportioning the proceeds of sale of the investments between capital and income, as both the interest earned and any profit or loss on realisation of the investments must be transferred to the Sinking Fund Account.

(3) An amount equal to the nominal amount of the debenture stock cancelled has been transferred from the Sinking Fund Account to General Reserve, as the assets representing it are now part of the general assets and are not included in the Sinking Fund Investment Account.

(4) The discount allowed on the issue of the cancelled debenture stock must be written off, since the debentures are no longer outstanding. As, however, the general reserve is available, it has been thought advisable to write off the whole discount against it immediately.

Another method of dealing with debentures purchased in the open market is to keep them alive, and treat them as investments of the sinking fund. The annual appropriation of profits is credited to Sinking Fund Account, and the amount expended in the purchase of debentures debited to Sinking Fund Investment Account. Interest on such debentures is credited to the Sinking Fund Account and invested as if it were from an 'outside' investment of the fund.

The sinking fund instalments are originally computed on the basis that they will accumulate at compound interest over the term of the debentures. Where, therefore, investments are realised and debentures purchased at an earlier date, the sinking fund is deprived of interest, and its basis vitiated. On each purchase of debentures, this fact must be borne in mind, and, if necessary, the sinking fund compensated for the loss of interest. This can be done by—

- (a) recomputing the annual instalments, having regard to the nucleus available and the remainder of the term of the debentures; or
- (b) computing the interest on the debentures purchased, and adding this amount to the annual instalment to be set aside and invested; or
- (c) charging as an addition to the annual instalment the interest lost to the sinking fund by the sale of investments.

Methods (b) and (c) have no exactitude; they are mere expedients. Method (b) involves an increasing annual appropriation of profits; method (c) may fail to provide adequate funds. Accordingly, method (a) is strongly advised.

Where no sinking fund is provided, an amount equal to the cash applied in purchasing or redeeming debentures should be transferred from Profit and Loss Account to reserve (unless the necessary funds are already in that account) in order to preserve working capital, the cash utilised being accumulated profits withheld from distribution. This automatically adjusts for any premium or discount.

Illustration (2)

On 1st January, 19... a company had outstanding £50,000 5% debentures. On the following 31st December, the company purchased for cancellation £20,000 debentures at 98, the expenses being £100. The profits for the year amounted to £34,000.

Show journal entries recording the above transactions, including the cash transactions

JOURNAL

| | Dr. | £ | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------|--------|
| 5% Debentures Account | | 20,000 | |
| To Debenture Redemption Account | | | 20,000 |
| Transfer of £20,000 Debentures for cancellation as per Minute dated .. | | | |
| Debenture Redemption Account | Dr. | 20,000 | |
| To Cash | | | 19,700 |
| Reserve | | | 300 |
| Purchase and cancellation of £20,000 Debentures at 98, Expenses £100, and transfer of profit. | | | |
| Profit and Loss Account | Dr. | 19,700 | |
| To Reserve | | | 19,700 |
| Transfer of amount equal to cost of Debentures purchased. | | | |

Note

As the company's liquid resources have been reduced by £19,700, it is desirable to transfer an equivalent amount to reserve from Profit and Loss Account, so that the balance of the latter account will not overstate the amount which is available for distribution. This entry reflects that the purchase of the debentures has been effected out of profits, and to the extent that profits have been used for this purpose they cannot be distributed as dividend, without seriously depleting the company's working capital.

Debentures may be redeemable by annual drawings, in which case an amount equal to the cash applied each year in the redemption should be transferred to reserve (unless already therein) for the reasons already stated, any premium

or discount being debited or credited to reserve as in the case of the purchase of debentures in the open market.

If there is no sinking fund, it is unusual for a company to acquire its own debentures as an investment, although on occasion, it may be economical to do so, *e.g.*, where the rate of interest payable is more than can be earned on other investments, and the market price of the debentures is favourable, or the terms of the debentures forbid cancellation at the time. In such a case, it is desirable to debit the interest on the debentures so purchased to the Debenture Interest Account and credit Profit and Loss Account as a separate item, so that the exact position is disclosed.

Illustration (3)

Wyzed Ltd. had outstanding £60,000 5% debentures at the beginning of the year 19..., interest payable 31st March and 30th September. During the year, debentures were purchased in the open market as follows:—

15th March, £10,000 nominal, *ex interest*, cost £9,890.

1st August, £8,000 „ *cum* „ „ £8,050.

The debentures were retained as an investment. Write up the Investment Account, Debenture Account, and Debenture Interest Account for the year to 31st December. Apportion in months and ignore income tax.

The debentures were cancelled on the following 31st March. Write up the accounts to that date, making calculations to the nearest £. Ignore income tax.

DEBENTURE ACCOUNT

| £ | | | £ | | |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|-----------------|----------------|
| Mar 31 | To Own Debenture Investment Account—cancellation of debentures purchased ... | 18,000 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/f. | 60,000 |
| | „ Balance c/f. | 42,000 | | | |
| | | <u>£60,000</u> | | | <u>£60,000</u> |

OWN DEBENTURES INVESTMENT ACCOUNT

| Nominal. | | | Interest. | | | Principal. | | | Nominal. | | | Interest. | | | Principal. | | |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------|--|--|------------|--|-------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------|-----|----|-------------|--|----------------|
| £ | | | £ | | | £ | | | £ | | | £ | | | £ | | |
| Mar. 15 | To Cash—purchase <i>ex interest</i> ... | 10,000 | | | | | | 9,890 | Mar. 15 | By Principal—contra .. | | | | 21 | | | |
| | „ Interest—contra, $\frac{1}{4}$ month to 31st March ... | | | | | | | 21 | Sept. 30 | „ Debenture Interest Account, $\frac{1}{2}$ year's interest ... | | | 450 | | | | |
| Aug. 1 | „ Cash—purchase <i>cum interest</i> ... | 8,000 | | | | | | | Dec. 31 | „ Balance, interest accrued, <i>c/d.</i> ... | | | 225 | | | | |
| | Cost .. £8,050 | | | | | | | | | „ Balance <i>c/d.</i> ... | 18,000 | | | | 17,828 | | |
| | Less accrued interest 4 months ... | 133 | | | | | | 133 | | | | | | | | | |
| Dec. 31 | „ Profit and Loss Account | | | | | | | 563 | | | | | | | | | |
| | | <u>£18,000</u> | | | | | | <u>£696</u> | | | <u>£18,000</u> | | | | <u>£696</u> | | <u>£17,828</u> |
| 19... Jan. 1 | To Balances b/d. ... | 18,000 | | | | | | 17,828 | 19... Mar. 31 | By Debenture Interest Account ... | | | 450 | | | | |
| Mar. 31 | „ Reserve—Profit on cancellation ... | | | | | | | 172 | | „ Debentures Account cancellation ... | | | | | | | |
| | „ Profit and Loss Account | | | | | | | 225 | | | 18,000 | | | | 18,000 | | |
| | | <u>£18,000</u> | | | | | | <u>£450</u> | | | <u>£18,000</u> | | | | <u>£450</u> | | <u>£18,000</u> |

DEBENTURE INTEREST ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------------------------------------|---|---------------|---------|-----------------------------------|---|---------------|
| Mar. 31 | To Cash | £ | 1,500 | Jan. 1 | By Balance, accrued interest b/f. | £ | 750 |
| Sept. 30 | „ Own Debenture Investment Account | | 450 | Dec. 31 | „ Profit and Loss Account | | 3,000 |
| | „ Cash | | 1,050 | | | | |
| Dec. 31 | „ Balance, accrued interest c/d. | | 750 | | | | |
| | | | <u>£3,750</u> | | | | <u>£3,750</u> |
| Mar. 31 | To Own Debenture Investment Account | | 450 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | | 750 |
| | „ Cash | | 1,050 | Mar. 31 | „ Profit and Loss Account | | 750 |
| | | | <u>£1,500</u> | | | | <u>£1,500</u> |

RESERVE ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------------|---|---------------|
| Mar. 31 | By Own Debenture Investment Account | £ | 172 |
| | „ Profit and Loss Account | | 17,828 |
| | | | <u>18,000</u> |

Notes

(1) The interest credited to Profit and Loss Account at 31st December, 19... is made up as follows:

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------|
| 9½ months at 5% on £10,000 | £395 16 8 |
| 5 „ „ „ „ £8,000 | 166 13 4 |

£562 10 0 (say £563)

(2) Whilst it is prudent to keep the profit on redemption of debentures in reserve, owing to its being a capital profit, there is nothing to prevent its being credited to revenue if it is in fact intact on a revaluation of the assets and liabilities. In order to maintain working capital, a transfer has been made from Profit and Loss Account of the amount required to increase the reserve to a sum equal to the nominal value of the debentures redeemed.

(g) Debentures issued as security for a loan

It is a common practice for companies to issue their own debentures as security against a loan or overdraft from a bank or other parties. Section 90 (4), expressly refers to this procedure, and provides that such debentures shall not be deemed to have been redeemed by reason only of the account of the company having ceased to be in debit whilst the debentures remained so deposited.

The term 'collateral' is commonly applied to such a security, since the amount of the debentures will not appear in the company's accounts as a liability in addition to the loan or overdraft; but this description is not strictly correct, since the debentures are in fact issued by the company itself and not by a third party, as the expression would seem to imply. The term 'additional security' appears to be a more accurate one to employ.

When debentures are issued in this manner, they should be shown 'in short' in the balance sheet, and stated as having been issued as security. The loan against which they are issued will be extended as a liability in the usual way. A note of the issue should be made at the head of the Debenture Account in the ledger. The debentures require registration in the ordinary way.

The transaction is sometimes recorded by crediting the Debenture Account with the amount of these debentures, and debiting a Debenture Suspense Account with the same amount, the latter item appearing on the assets side of the balance sheet. When the debentures are released, the entry is written back, and consequently disappears from both sides of the balance sheet. There does not appear to be any particular advantage in adopting this method, as the whole of the facts are clearly disclosed in the balance sheet by the first method of treatment described above; moreover, the introduction to the assets side of the balance sheet of unnecessary suspense accounts is apt to cause confusion.

No interest is payable on such debentures; the interest on the bank loan or overdraft is paid in the usual way, and the bank will only resort to the debentures in the event of this becoming necessary to protect their security, *e.g.*, where liquidation ensues or a receiver is appointed.

(h) Debenture interest in the final accounts

Interest on debentures is a definite liability which is payable whether or not the profits earned are sufficient to provide for it. When preparing the final accounts for an accounting period, therefore, provision must be made for any interest accrued to the date of the balance sheet, so that the Profit and Loss Account will be charged with interest for the whole period, and any accrued liability not yet paid will appear in the balance sheet. Although interest on debentures, being 'annual interest' for income tax purposes, must be paid less tax, the tax deducted has to be accounted for, either as part of the assessments on the company's income or (where the interest exceeds the total income) under a separate assessment, and the true measure of the charge is thus the gross interest. The correct practice is therefore to debit the gross amount of the interest to Profit and Loss Account, crediting the income tax recouped by deduction to Income Tax Account. This practice has the approval of the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales, and appears to be sanctioned by the provision in the 8th Schedule, Pt. I, which requires the amount of the interest to be shewn in the Profit and Loss Account.

(i) Conversion of debentures into new debentures carrying a lower rate of interest

In some circumstances the low rates of interest prevailing make it necessary for companies to review their position regarding debentures. Where the debentures permit the company to redeem on 6 months' notice, the company is able to give the necessary notice and at the same time offer new debentures carrying a lower rate of interest in exchange. Where the holders of the old debentures do not take up the new debentures in full, the balance is offered to the public for subscription or placed privately. In such a case, the entries are simple, *viz.*, Old Debentures Account is debited and New Debentures Account credited with the debentures exchanged, in so far as the holders accept; Old Debentures Account is debited, and cash credited in respect of the old holders who desire to be paid out; the usual entries for the issue of debentures in respect of those issued to the public or private subscribers.

In some cases, however, there is no power of redemption at the date when the company desires to reorganise its position, and it is necessary to come to an arrangement with the debenture holders whereby some consideration is given for their agreeing to accept a lower rate of interest in future, *e.g.*, a cash payment, or an issue of new debentures repayable at a premium. The relevant entries are shown in the following illustration which embodies a cash payment and an issue of new debentures repayable at a premium.

Illustration

A company came to an arrangement with its debenture holders, who held £100,000 5½% debentures, whereby the debentures were to be repaid at 103, the holders having the option to convert into 4½% debentures repayable by annual drawings over 20 years at 104. Holders of £60,000 5½% debentures exercised the option, and the company invited applications from the public for the remaining £40,000 4½% £100 debentures at 101, payable as follows: On application £20; on allotment £31, and at intervals of one month thereafter, £25 per instalment. Applications from the public for £90,000 debentures were received. Allotment was made in full to existing holders who, in addition to converting their own holdings, applied for £25,000 4½% debentures; no allotments were made to other applicants for less than £500 stock (amounting to £20,000 nominal); *pro rata* allotments were made to other applicants.

Show the journal entries recording the above transactions. Journalise the cash transactions.

JOURNAL

| | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------|
| 5½% Debentures Account | Dr. | 100,000 |
| To 4½% Debentures Account | | 60,000 |
| Sundry Debenture Holders | | 40,000 |
| Conversion by holders of £60,000 5½% debentures into 4½% debentures, and transfer of balance for repayment. | | |
| Profit and Loss Account | Dr. | 1,200 |
| To Sundry Debenture Holders | | 1,200 |
| Premium on repayment of £40,000 5½% debentures. | | |
| Cash | Dr. | 18,000 |
| To 4½% Debentures Application and Allotment Account | | 18,000 |
| £20 per debenture on £90,000 Debentures applied for. | | |
| 4½% Debentures Application and Allotment Account | Dr. | 24,400 |
| To 4½% Debentures Account | | 20,000 |
| Premium on Issue of Debentures Account | | 400 |
| Cash | | 4,000 |
| Allotment per minute of this day of £25,000 debentures to existing holders in full; £15,000 debentures to applicants for £45,000, <i>pro rata</i> , £51 being due on application and allotment on each £100 debenture and refund of application money on application for £20,000 debentures. | | |
| Cash | Dr. | 7,750 |
| To 4½% Debentures Application and Allotment Account | | 7,750 |
| Allotment moneys received on £25,000 debentures allotted in full, £31 per £100 debenture. | | |
| 4½% Debentures Application and Allotment Account | Dr. | 1,350 |
| To 4½% Debentures First Instalment Account | | 1,350 |
| Transfer of amounts overpaid on application towards amount payable on instalments on £15,000 allotted <i>pro rata</i> to applicants for £45,000 debentures, made up as follows: | | |
| £31 per £100 on £15,000 Debentures now due | | £4,650 |
| £20 " " £30,000 " not allotted | | 6,000 |
| Excess carried forward | | £1,350 |
| 4½% Debentures First Instalment Account | Dr. | 10,000 |
| To 4½% Debentures Account | | 10,000 |
| £25 per £100 debenture due on £40,000 Debentures. | | |
| Cash | Dr. | 8,650 |
| To 4½% Debentures First Instalment Account | | 8,650 |
| Balance due now received. | | |

JOURNAL—continued

| | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------|--------|
| 4½ % Debentures Second Instalment Account | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | Dr. | £ | £ |
| To 4½ % Debentures Account | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 10,000 | 10,000 |
| Final instalment of £25 per debenture now due. | | | | | | | | |
| Cash | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | Dr. | 10,000 | |
| To 4½ % Debentures Second Instalment Account | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | | 10,000 |
| Balance due now received | | | | | | | | |
| Sundry Debenture Holders | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | Dr. | 41,200 | |
| To Cash | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | | 41,200 |
| Redemption of £40,000 debentures at 103. | | | | | | | | |

NOTE.—The premium on the new issue could be applied towards writing off the premium payable on the debentures redeemed, the balance of the premium being written off to Profit and Loss Account.

§ 11. The purchase of a Business by a Limited Company

As already explained in § 1 of this chapter, many advantages may stem from the 'conversion' of a private business into a limited company, one of the most important being the attribute of perpetual succession, which enables a member of a company to transfer his shares therein, or to transmit them by will on his death, without the constitution of the company or its financial resources being disturbed.

The so-called 'conversion' may take the form of the transfer to a private company of the assets and goodwill of the business in consideration of the allotment of shares in the company, which the vendors of the business will continue to hold, and by means of which they will retain the control of the business. Alternatively, a public company may be formed for the purpose of acquiring the business, a common procedure being for a promoter or syndicate to purchase the business from the original owners, and then resell it to the company at a profit, the capital of the company being raised by public subscription. Or again, a public company may be formed to take over the business of a private company, the shareholders of the latter receiving shares or other interests in the public company in exchange for their existing holdings.

In either case, the transactions to be recorded, from the new company's point of view, are the same, as will be seen hereunder. If by no means follows, however, that the assets acquired by the company will be taken into its books at the same valuations as those at which they stood in the books of the firm. Where a public issue of capital is made, a revaluation of all the fixed assets is usually undertaken, and frequently the vendors guarantee the payment of the book debts. In many cases the company assumes the trade liabilities as part of the purchase consideration. In others the company discharges the liabilities and collects the book debts as agents for the vendors, interest being charged or allowed, as the case may be, until a final settlement between the company and the vendors is effected.

When the book debts are taken over by the company, they are usually acquired at their book values less an agreed percentage for bad and doubtful debts. Should the book debts realise more than the net amount at which they are taken over, the excess is strictly of the nature of a capital profit to the company.

In addition to the purchase price of the tangible assets, a further sum is usually payable in respect of goodwill. A company making a public issue for the purpose of acquiring a business must state in the prospectus the amount of the purchase consideration attributable to goodwill. From the book-keeping point of view the

goodwill will be represented by the excess of the total amount of the purchase consideration over the value of the other assets acquired, less the amount of any liabilities assumed by the company.

(a) Entries in the purchasing company's books

The entries in the company's books necessary to record the purchase of the business are as follows:

1. Debit the respective asset accounts with the assets acquired, and credit the liability accounts with the amounts of any liabilities taken over by the company, crediting the Vendor's Account with the amount of the purchase consideration. If the total assets exceed the liabilities taken over plus the consideration, the balance is in the nature of a capital profit and should be credited to a Capital Reserve Account. If the liabilities plus the consideration exceed the amount of the total assets, the resulting debit balance is the price paid for goodwill and must be debited to Goodwill Account.

2. Debit the Vendor's Account and credit Share Capital Account, Debentures Account, Cash, etc., with the shares, debentures, cash, etc., issued or paid by the company in discharge of the purchase consideration.

Some accountants prefer to pass the transactions relating to the purchase of the business through an account called 'Purchase of Business Account', which takes the place of the Vendor's Account, being credited with the assets acquired and debited with the liabilities taken over and with the purchase consideration.

Illustration (1)

A company takes over the following assets and liabilities of a private business:

| | |
|----------------------|---------|
| Leasehold Property | £7,000 |
| Plant and Machinery | 3,000 |
| Stock-in-Trade | 4,600 |
| Sundry Debtors | 3,000 |
| Cash | 1,500 |
| | <hr/> |
| | 19,100 |
| Less Trade Creditors | 2,100 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £17,000 |

The purchase consideration is £20,000, and is payable to the vendor as follows: £10,000 in ordinary shares of £1 each fully paid, £5,000 in 5 per cent. preference shares of £1 each fully paid, all issued at par, and the balance in cash. Show the opening journal entries in the books of the company.

JOURNAL

| | Dr. | £ | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------|---------|
| Sundries. | | | |
| To Sundries .. | | | |
| Leasehold Property | | 7,000 | |
| Plant and Machinery | | 3,000 | |
| Stock-in-Trade | | 4,600 | |
| Sundry Debtors | | 3,000 | |
| Cash | | 1,500 | |
| Goodwill | | 3,000 | |
| Sundry Creditors | | | 2,100 |
| Vendor (or Purchase of Business Account) | | | 20,000 |
| Being sundry assets and liabilities taken over as per contract dated. | | <hr/> | <hr/> |
| | | £22,100 | £22,100 |
| <hr/> | | | |
| Vendor (or Purchase of Business Account) .. | Dr. | £ | £ |
| To Sundries— | | | |
| Ordinary Share Capital—10,000 Shares of £1 each fully paid | | | 10,000 |
| Preference Share Capital—5,000 Shares of £1 each fully paid | | | 5,000 |
| Cash | | | 5,000 |
| Being discharge of purchase consideration as per contract dated..... | | | |
| | | <hr/> | <hr/> |
| | | £20,000 | £20,000 |

Note

The amount debited to Goodwill Account is the excess of the amount of the purchase consideration, £20,000, over the total amount of the assets acquired, less the amount of the liabilities assumed, £17,000.

Where the purchase consideration is less than the value at which the net assets stood in the books of the vendor, but the values of the assets taken over are correctly stated (as ascertained by revaluation), the surplus, instead of being treated in the company's books as a capital reserve, may be applied in writing down fixed assets to the level of the consideration. In no case should such surplus be distributed as a profit or credited to such an account as general reserve, which is a revenue reserve and may only be credited with amounts which are available for distribution.

No account for goodwill should be raised in the company's books unless goodwill is actually paid for, even though valuable goodwill may, in fact, be acquired. The absence of a Goodwill Account would merely indicate that no expenditure of capital has been incurred in acquiring this asset.

Where a partnership business is transferred to a limited company some difficulty may be experienced in capitalising the company in such a way that the rights of the partners as shareholders will be similar to those they enjoyed in the firm. If the capitals of the partners are in the same ratio as that in which profits are shared, the problem is simplified, as the allotment of ordinary shares in that ratio will preserve the relationship as nearly as possible. In the many cases, however, where the capitals are not held in profit-sharing ratio, the problem is more complicated, particularly when the income tax position is borne in mind.

The following example shows a typical problem of the latter description, with a suggestion for its solution.

Illustration (2)

A, B and C carried on business in partnership. On 31st March their Balance Sheet was as follows:

| | £ | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------|--------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Capital Accounts— | | | Goodwill | 50,000 |
| A | 49,000 | | Freehold Premises at cost | 22,000 |
| B | 21,000 | | Plant and Machinery at cost, less depreciation | 9,000 |
| C | 10,000 | | Furniture, etc., at cost less depreciation | 500 |
| | | 80,000 | | |
| 5% Loan A | | 10,000 | Stock in Trade | 17,000 |
| Current Accounts— | | | Sundry Debtors | 18,000 |
| A | 1,400 | | Less Bad Debt Provision | 400 |
| B | 700 | | | 7,600 |
| | | 2,100 | Payments in Advance | 50 |
| Sundry Creditors | | 17,820 | Cash in Hand | 3,420 |
| | | | Current Account—C | 350 |
| | | | | |
| | | £ 109,920 | | £ 109,920 |

It was decided to form a limited company to take over the business as from 1st November. You are consulted by A, B and C as to the terms of the transfer and the rights of the partners in the company, having regard to the following information:

- The partners are entitled to interest at 6 per cent. per annum on their Capital Accounts, but no interest is charged or allowed on Current Accounts or on additions to capital.
- C is entitled to a salary of £1,000 per annum.
- Profits are shared in the ratio 5 : 3 : 2.
- It is desired to retain their respective rights in capital and profits as nearly as possible.

- (e) A's loan is not to be repaid, but his rights in respect thereof are to remain similar to those he now enjoys, as nearly as may be practicable, having regard to the fact that he is to be allotted shares therefor.
- (f) Current Accounts are to be cleared by cash payments.
- (g) The assets, other than goodwill, are taken over at book values. Goodwill is revalued at £30,000.
- (h) The partners wish to have the benefit of the maximum earned income allowance for income tax purposes.

Draft proposals for carrying the scheme into effect, and show the initial balance sheet of the company after giving effect thereto, taking the preliminary expenses at £1,200.

SUGGESTED SCHEME

1. The capitals of the partners in the business are not in proportion to their shares in profits and losses, with the result that if there were a heavy loss on realisation of the assets, some cash adjustment might be necessary between the partners. In order to retain a similar position in the proposed company, the adjustments mentioned in paragraph 3 hereunder are recommended.

2. The Capital Accounts, after writing down the goodwill, will be as follows :—

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | Total £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| Existing Capitals | 49,000 | 21,000 | 10,000 | 80,000 |
| <i>Deduct</i> Reduction in value of Goodwill in profit-sharing ratio (5 : 3 : 2) | 10,000 | 6,000 | 4,000 | 20,000 |
| Adjusted Capitals | <u>£39,000</u> | <u>£15,000</u> | <u>£6,000</u> | <u>£60,000</u> |

3. If the capitals were in profit-sharing ratio, and C's capital was in the same proportion to the total capital as his share of profit, *viz.*, one-fifth, the total capital would be £30,000, and the relative excess capitals would be as follows:

| | A £ | B £ | C £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------|--------|
| Capitals as above | 39,000 | 15,000 | 6,000 |
| <i>Less</i> Capitals in the profit- sharing ratio | 15,000 | 9,000 | 6,000 |
| Surplus capital held by A and B over C | 24,000 | 6,000 | - |
| As between A and B profits are divided in the proportion of 5 : 3. Assuming B's surplus to represent three-eighths of the total capital, A's proportionate surplus would be £10,000 | 10,000 | 6,000 | |
| A's absolute surplus capital over that of B and C is therefore | <u>£14,000</u> | | |

In the event of a winding-up, therefore, A should receive out of the realisation of the assets £14,000 before B and C are repaid anything. The next £16,000 should be shared by A and B in the ratio of 5 : 3, and the balance by A, B and C in their profit-sharing ratio.

4. To achieve the desired result, the scheme must embody the following principles:

(a) In order that the ultimate net profit shall continue to be shared in the proportions of 5 : 3 : 2, ordinary shares must be issued to the partners in those proportions in respect of that part of their capital which is in their profit-sharing ratio; i.e., £15,000, £9,000 and £6,000 respectively.

(b) To equate the rights of the partners as to interest on capital, two classes of preference shares must be issued for the balance of the respective capitals: 'A' shares to A for his £14,000 absolute surplus, and 'B' shares (ranking after the 'A' shares) to A and B for £10,000 and £6,000 respectively. If deemed desirable, these shares may carry a fixed rate of dividend of 6%, but it is suggested that they carry no interest, this being adjusted for as explained hereunder.

(c) 10,000 5% cumulative redeemable preference shares of £1 each to be issued to A in respect of his loan, such shares to have priority over all other classes of shares as to dividend and as to repayment of capital in the event of liquidation. The shares should be redeemable, in case the company should at any time find itself in a position to dispense with the capital represented thereby.

(d) None of the above preference shares are to be entitled to share in any surplus of assets remaining after the repayment of the nominal value of all share capital on a winding-up, but all arrears of preference dividend due on such shares to be paid off before repaying capital.

(e) The ordinary shares to rank for dividend and repayment of capital after the preference shares, and to carry the right to any surplus of assets on a winding-up.

(f) C to receive a salary of £1,000 per annum.

(g) Directors' emoluments, payable out of the profits remaining after providing for the 5% preference dividend and C's salary, to be paid to A, B, and C, of an amount sufficient to enable each partner to obtain the maximum earned income allowance where the profits are sufficient for that purpose. In respect of the former interest on excess capital, A must receive fees of £1,440, and B £360, being 6% on their respective excesses over the capital of C. The balance could be voted as salaries each year by way of a percentage of the profits available, the total amount so voted being divided between A, B and C in the proportions of 50 per cent., 30 per cent., and 20 per cent. respectively.

Alternatively, the articles may provide that the directors shall receive as salaries the whole of the profits remaining after the payment of the 5% preference dividend and C's salary, such salaries to be divided among them as they shall agree. The directors can then enter into an agreement amongst themselves to divide such amount as they would have divided the profits if the partnership had continued.

5. The distribution of profits in the partnership and the company respectively is illustrated by the following statements:

Profits assumed £10,000.

| PARTNERSHIP. | A. | B. | C. | COMPANY. | A. | B. | C. |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| | £ | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ |
| Loan Interest ... | 500 | | | 5% Preference Shares Dividend | 500 | | |
| Interest on Capital— | | | | Salary ... | | | 1,000 |
| 6% on £39,000 ... | 2,340 | | | Director's Fees ... | 1,440 | 360 | |
| 6% on £15,000 ... | | 900 | | Balance as Salaries in proportions | | | |
| 6% on £6,000 ... | | | 360 | of 5 : 3 : 2 ... | 3,350 | 2,010 | 1,340 |
| Salary, C. ... | | | 1,000 | | | | |
| Balance 5 : 3 : 2 ... | 2,450 | 1,470 | 980 | | | | |
| | <u>£5,290</u> | <u>£2,370</u> | <u>£2,340</u> | | <u>£5,290</u> | <u>£2,370</u> | <u>£2,340</u> |

It will thus be seen that the division of profits is identical in both cases, whilst the priorities as to repayment of capital are preserved, and the maximum available earned income allowance is obtained for all partners.

A, B & C LTD.
BALANCE SHEET AS AT 1ST APRIL.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------|--------|---------|---------------------------------|-------|--------|---------|
| Share Capital— | £ | £ | Fixed Assets— | £ | £ | £ |
| Authorised, Issued and Fully Paid— | | | Goodwill at cost | | 30,000 | |
| 10,000 5% Cumulative Redeemable | | | Freehold Premises at cost ... | | 22,000 | |
| Preference Shares of £1 each ... | 10,000 | | Plant and Machinery at cost ... | | 9,000 | |
| 14,000 'A' Preference Shares of £1 | | | Furniture, etc., at cost ... | | 500 | |
| each | 14,000 | | | | | 61,500 |
| 16,000 'B' Preference Shares of £1 each | 16,000 | | Current Assets— | | | |
| 30,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each | 30,000 | | Stock-in-Trade | | 17,000 | |
| | | 70,000 | Sundry Debtors | 8,000 | | |
| Sundry Creditors | | 17,820 | Less Bad Debt Provision ... | 400 | 7,600 | |
| | | | | | 50 | |
| | | | Payments in Advance | | 470 | |
| | | | Cash in Hand | | | 25,120 |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | Preliminary Expenses | | | 1,200 |
| | | £87,820 | | | | £87,820 |

Note

Owing to the limitation of liability, it is impossible to provide entirely for the position which might arise in the event of the company proving unsuccessful, e.g., in a partnership a partner's capital account may become in debit on dissolution, and he would have to introduce cash, whereas in a company a member cannot be called upon to contribute more than the amount (if any) unpaid on his shares.

The following illustration shows the effect on the books of the firm of the conversion of a private firm into a limited company, and also the entries in the books of the company:

Illustration (3)

The X Company, Limited, was formed to purchase the business of A and B, who share profits, two-thirds and one-third respectively, and whose balance sheet was as follows:

BALANCE SHEET A AND B

| | | | | | |
|---------------|-----|---------|------------------------------|-----|---------|
| | | £ | | | £ |
| Creditors ... | ... | 2,700 | Goodwill ... | ... | 1,000 |
| Bills Payable | ... | 900 | Freehold Property | ... | 5,000 |
| Loan Account | ... | 400 | Plant and Machinery | ... | 2,500 |
| Capital— | | | Stock | ... | 3,000 |
| A | ... | 18,000 | Debtors | ... | £3,100 |
| B | ... | 5,000 | Less Provision for Bad Debts | ... | 200 |
| | | 13,000 | | | 2,900 |
| | | | Bills Receivable | ... | 800 |
| | | | Investments | ... | 600 |
| | | | Cash | ... | 1,200 |
| | | £17,000 | | | £17,000 |

The company takes over the assets at book value, with the exception of the freehold property, which is taken over at £6,000. The investments are retained by the firm, and sold by them for £450. They also discharge the loan of £400, but the company takes over the remaining liabilities.

The purchase consideration for the net assets taken over is fixed at £18,950, payable as follows : £9,500 5 per cent. debentures, 7,600 fully paid ordinary shares of £1 each, both at par, and the balance in cash. A and B agree to divide the assets forming the purchase consideration in proportion to the balances standing to the credit of their respective capital

accounts. after the adjustments rendered necessary by the sale of the business and investments have been completed.

Show the ledger accounts closing the firm's books, and the journal entries opening the company's books.

FIRM'S BOOKS REALISATION ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| To Freehold Property | £ 5,000 | By Creditors | £ 2,700 |
| " Plant and Machinery | 2,500 | " Bills Payable | 900 |
| " Goodwill | 1,000 | " Provision for Bad Debts | 200 |
| " Stock | 3,000 | " X Co. Ltd. | 18,950 |
| " Debtors | 3,100 | | |
| " Bills Receivable | 800 | | |
| " Cash | 1,200 | | |
| " Loss on Investments | 150 | | |
| " Balance, being profit on realisation c/d | 6,000 | | |
| | <u>£22,750</u> | | <u>£22,750</u> |
| | £ | | £ |
| To Capital Accounts :— | | By Balance b/d. | 6,000 |
| A two-thirds | 4,000 | | |
| B one-third | 2,000 | | |
| | <u>£6,000</u> | | <u>£6,000</u> |

X COMPANY LTD.

| | | | |
|------------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| To Realisation Account | £ 18,950 | By Debentures | £ 9,500 |
| | | " Ordinary Shares | 7,600 |
| | | " Cash | 1,850 |
| | <u>£18,950</u> | | <u>£18,950</u> |

DEBENTURES IN X CO. LTD.

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------------------|---------------|
| To X Co. Ltd. | £ 9,500 | By A Capital Account | £ 6,000 |
| | | " B | 3,500 |
| | <u>£9,500</u> | | <u>£9,500</u> |

ORDINARY SHARES IN X CO. LTD.

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------------------|---------------|
| To X Co. Ltd. | £ 7,600 | By A Capital Account | £ 4,800 |
| | | " B | 2,800 |
| | <u>£7,600</u> | | <u>£7,600</u> |

A CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| To Balance c/d | £ 12,000 | By Balance b/f. | £ 3,000 |
| | | " Profit on Realisation | 4,000 |
| | <u>£12,000</u> | | <u>£12,000</u> |
| | £ | | £ |
| To Debentures in X Co. Ltd.— | | By Balance b/d | 12,000 |
| twelve-nineteenths of £9,500 | 6,000 | | |
| " Shares in X Co. Ltd.— | | | |
| twelve-nineteenths of £7,600 | 4,800 | | |
| " Cash— | | | |
| twelve-nineteenths of £1,900 | 1,200 | | |
| | <u>£12,000</u> | | <u>£12,000</u> |

B CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| To Balance c/d. | £ 7,000 | By Balance b/f. | £ 5,000 |
| | | .. Profit on Realisation | 2,000 |
| | <u>£7,000</u> | | <u>£7,000</u> |
| To Debentures in X Co. Ltd.— seven-nineteenths of £9,500 | £ 3,500 | By Balance b/d. | £ 7,000 |
| .. Shares in X Co. Ltd.— seven-nineteenths of £7,600 | 2,800 | | |
| Cash— seven-nineteenths of £1,900 | 700 | | |
| | <u>£7,000</u> | | <u>£7,000</u> |

CASH BOOK

| | | | |
|----------------|---------------|----------------------|---------------|
| To X Co. Ltd. | £ 1,850 | By Loan Account | £ 400 |
| .. Investments | 450 | .. Balance c/d.... | 1,900 |
| | <u>£2,300</u> | | <u>£2,300</u> |
| To Balance b/d | £ 1,900 | By A Capital Account | £ 1,200 |
| | <u>£1,900</u> | .. B | 700 |
| | | | <u>£1,900</u> |

INVESTMENTS

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| To Balance c/f. | £ 600 | By Cash | £ 450 |
| | | .. Realisation Account—loss | 150 |
| | <u>£600</u> | | <u>£600</u> |

LOAN

| | | | |
|---------|-------------|------------------------|-------------|
| To Cash | £ 400 | By Balance b/f. | £ 400 |
| | <u>£400</u> | | <u>£400</u> |

X COMPANY LTD.'S BOOKS
JOURNAL

| | Dr. | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------|-----|----------------|----------------|
| Sundries. | | | |
| To Sundries | | | |
| Freehold Property | | 6,000 | |
| Plant and Machinery | | 2,500 | |
| Stock | | 3,000 | |
| Debtors | | 3,100 | |
| Bills Receivable | | 800 | |
| Cash | | 1,200 | |
| Goodwill | | 6,150 | |
| Creditors | | | 2,700 |
| Bills Payable | | | 900 |
| Provision for Bad Debts | | | 200 |
| Vendors (or Purchases of Business Account) | | | 18,950 |
| | | <u>£22,750</u> | <u>£22,750</u> |

Being sundry assets and liabilities taken over as per contract dated.

Note

The amount debited to Goodwill Account is the difference between the total of the assets, less the liabilities taken over, and the purchase consideration payable to the vendors.

| | £ | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Vendors (or Purchase of Business Account) Dr. | 18,950 | |
| To Sundries— | | |
| Ordinary Share Capital | | 7,600 |
| Debentures | | 9,500 |
| Cash | | 1,850 |
| | <u>£18,950</u> | <u>£18,950</u> |

Being 7,600 ordinary shares of £1 each, and £9,500 5% debentures issued fully paid, and cash paid in settlement of purchase consideration as per contract dated.

Sometimes a company acquiring a business does not take over the book debts and liabilities of the vendor, but collects the book debts and pays the liabilities out of the proceeds thereof, accounting to the vendor for the balance. In such a case the company should provide special columns in its cash book, into which receipts from debtors and payments to creditors made on behalf of the vendor are entered, and from which they are posted to the personal accounts of the vendor's debtors and creditors. These postings, however, form no part of the double entry from the point view of the company, since the accounts to which the amounts are posted are not in the company's ledgers. The double entry in the company's books in respect of these transactions is completed by posting periodically the *totals* of the receipts and payments made on behalf of the vendor to the credit and debit respectively of the Vendor's Account. If the company wishes to continue to use the old debtors' and creditors' accounts, a line should be ruled across each account some distance below the last entry prior to the transfer, and the company's own transactions should be entered below this line, in order that the debts owing to and by the company may not be confused with those owing to and by the vendor.

It, however, the company carries on the old debtors and creditors accounts without a break, suspense accounts should be opened to provide contraes in the company's books for the amounts of the vendors' debtors and creditors. Thus, in the illustration given below, since by continuing to operate upon the vendor's debtors and creditors accounts, the ledgers contain assets of £5,400 and liabilities of £3,700 which do not belong to the company, a Debtors Suspense Account must be credited with £5,400 and a Creditors Suspense Account debited with £3,700 to counteract these items. Periodically transfers are made from these suspense accounts to the Vendor's Account of amounts equal to the sums collected from debtors and paid to creditors respectively on behalf of the vendor. The amounts of any of the vendor's debtors which are written off as bad must be transferred from the company's Bad Debts Account to the debit of the Debtors Suspense Account, whilst discounts allowed and received in respect of the vendor's debtors and creditors must be transferred from the company's Discount Accounts to the appropriate suspense accounts.

Any balances remaining on the suspense accounts when the company prepares its balance sheet represent the amounts of the debtors and creditors applicable to the vendor still appearing in the company's books, and must be deducted from the totals of the debtors and creditors respectively to arrive at the figures to be shown in the company's balance sheet.

Illustration (4)

On 1st January YZ Ltd. acquired the business of X, taking over all the assets with the exception of the book debts, which it undertook to collect on behalf of X, and out of the proceeds pay the liabilities owing at the date of the transfer. At that date the book debts amounted to £5,400 and the liabilities to £3,700.

The company continued to operate on the old debtors and creditors accounts without a break, and at the following 31st December the total of the book debts amounted to £6,200, of which £400 represented debts owing to X, whilst the total creditors were £5,300, the whole of X's liabilities having been discharged. During the year the company had written off £700 debts as bad, of which £300 was in respect of X's debtors. Discounts allowed by the company during the year amounted to £680, of which £185 was allowed to X's debtors. Discounts allowed to the company amounted to £1,400 of which £104 was in respect of pre-transfer liabilities.

Show the relevant ledger accounts in the company's books.

TOTAL DEBTORS ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|--------------------|------------|--|--|--|
| Dec. 31 | To Balance | £ 6,200 | | | |
|---------|--------------------|------------|--|--|--|

TOTAL CREDITORS ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|--|--|--|---------|--------------------|------------|
| | | | Dec. 31 | By Balance | £ 5,300 |
|--|--|--|---------|--------------------|------------|

X's DEBTORS SUSPENSE ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|--------------------------------------|---------------|--------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Bad Debts Account | £ 300 | Jan. 1 | By Balance— | £ |
| | „ Discounts Allowed Account | 185 | | Debts not taken over from X... | 5,400 |
| | „ X's Account—Cash collected | 4,515 | | | |
| | „ Balance c/d | 400 | | | |
| | | <u>£5,400</u> | | | <u>£5,400</u> |
| | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | 400 |

X's CREDITORS SUSPENSE ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|--------|-------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|---------------------------------|---------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Balance— | £ | Dec. 31 | By Discounts Received Account | £ 104 |
| | Liabilities not taken over from X | 3,700 | | „ X's Account—Cash paid | 3,596 |
| | | <u>£3,700</u> | | | <u>£3,700</u> |

X's ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|------------------------------------|---------------|---------|------------------------------------|---------------|
| Dec. 31 | To X's Creditors Suspense Account— | £ | Dec. 31 | By X's Debtors Suspense Account— | £ |
| | Cash paid to Creditors | 3,596 | | Cash received from Debtors | 4,515 |
| | „ Balance c/d. | 919 | | | |
| | | <u>£4,515</u> | | | <u>£4,515</u> |
| | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | 919 |

BAD DEBTS ACCOUNTS

| | | | | | |
|---------|---------------------------------------------|-------------|---------|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Sundry Debtors—Debts written off | £ 700 | Dec. 31 | By X's Debtors Suspense Account— | £ |
| | | | | Amounts applicable to X's | |
| | | | | debtors | 300 |
| | | | | „ Profit and Loss Account | 400 |
| | | <u>£700</u> | | | <u>£700</u> |

DISCOUNTS ALLOWED ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|-----------------------------------------|-------------|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Sundry Debtors— Discounts Allowed | £ 680 | Dec. 31 | By X's Debtors Suspense Account— Discounts allowed to X's debtors | £ 185 |
| | | | | Profit and Loss Account | 495 |
| | | <u>£680</u> | | | <u>£680</u> |

DISCOUNTS RECEIVED ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Dec. 31 | To X's Creditors Suspense Account— Discounts received in respect of X's liabilities | £ 104 | Dec. 31 | By Sundry Creditors Accounts— Discounts Received | £ 1,400 |
| | Profit and Loss Account | 1,296 | | | |
| | | <u>£1,400</u> | | | <u>£1,400</u> |

Note

As a result of the above entries there will appear in the company's balance sheet a liability to X of £919, whilst the sundry debtors will be £5,800, viz., £6,200, less the credit balance of £400 carried down in the Debtors Suspense Account. The bad debts and discounts transferred to the company's Profit and Loss Account are reduced by the amounts transferred to the suspense accounts, and thus borne by the vendor.

(b) Apportionment of Profit or Loss prior to Incorporation

In view of the inconvenience that would be caused by an additional stock-taking and the balancing off of the books when a company is formed to take over an existing business, it is common to pre-date the purchase to the date of the last balance sheet, *i.e.*, for the company to take over the business as from a date prior to its incorporation. In such an event any profits earned prior to the date of incorporation cannot be regarded as available for dividend, but are of a capital nature, since the company cannot earn profits before it comes into existence. In fact, such profits merely increase the net assets acquired by the company on its formation and come to it as capital, not revenue. When the vendor is not entitled to take such profits himself, he is usually paid interest on the purchase consideration from the date when the business was taken over to the date on which the purchase consideration is discharged. The interest payable to the vendor for the period from the date of taking over the business to the date of incorporation of the company should be charged against the profits earned during that period, any interest payable in respect of any period after the date of incorporation being charged to Profit and Loss Account. The remaining balance of profits earned prior to incorporation (if any) should either be credited to the Goodwill Account, or, if there is no Goodwill Account, applied in writing down some other asset which is deemed to be over-valued, or carried forward as a capital reserve not available for distribution.

If stock is not taken at the date of incorporation, and consequently the profits prior to that date cannot be ascertained exactly, it is usual to arrive at the profits applicable to the period either by apportioning the profits for the whole accounting period on a time basis, or in proportion to the turnover of the periods prior to and after incorporation respectively, or by a combination of these methods.

Obviously, since no business can be expected to earn its profits evenly week by week, neither the time method nor the turnover method may be entirely satisfactory. The most equitable method is normally to apportion the gross profit on the basis of the turnover, and the expenses on their respective merits, those varying with turnover being apportioned on that basis, and those which do not vary with the turnover being apportioned on a time basis.

In apportioning the profits it should be remembered that any expenditure which relates solely to the company must be charged against the profits applicable to the period subsequent to the date of incorporation. This would apply to directors' fees and other similar expenditure. On the other hand, any expense wholly applicable to the period prior to incorporation, *e.g.*, vendors' salaries, should be charged accordingly.

Any contracts entered into by a public company prior to the issue of the certificate entitling it to commence business are provisional only, but on the issue of that certificate they become binding according to their terms (§ 109 (4)), *i.e.*, they are ratified. The date of division in such cases would therefore still be the date of incorporation.

If it is found that a loss has been sustained during the accounting period the following alternative courses are open:

1. To make no apportionment at all, but to carry forward the total loss for the whole period to be written off out of subsequent profits. This is the most conservative method.

2. To debit the amount of the pre-incorporation loss to Goodwill Account. The justification for this treatment is that a loss incurred between the date as from which the business is taken over and the date of incorporation of the company reduces the net assets acquired at the date of incorporation, and thus increases the price paid for goodwill.

3. To debit the loss prior to incorporation to a suspense account, which can be subsequently written off as circumstances permit, in the same way as other fictitious assets.

Illustration (1)

The A B Co., Ltd., was formed on 1st April to take over the business formerly carried on by Messrs. Brown & Smith as from 1st January. It was agreed that all profits made subsequently to this latter date should belong to the company, but that interest on the purchase consideration (£50,000), at the rate of 6% per annum, should be paid to the vendors until the final settlement, which took place on 1st June.

The following was the Profit and Loss Account as prepared at 31st December, for the year ending on that date:

| | | | |
|------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| | | | £ |
| Expenses of Management | 3,050 | Gross Trading Profit | 20,000 |
| Bad Debts | 200 | | |
| Directors' Fees | 1,000 | | |
| Interest to Vendors | 1,250 | | |
| Preliminary Expenses, amount written off | 500 | | |
| Depreciation | 1,000 | | |
| Balance being net Profit | 13,000 | | |
| | <u>£20,000</u> | | <u>£20,000</u> |

It was found that of the bad debts written off, £100 related to debts taken over by the company.

Apportion the profit earned as between the periods prior and subsequent to the date of incorporation, assuming the turnover to be spread evenly over the year.

| | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| | £ |
| Net Profits | 13,000 |
| Add— | |
| Bad Debts | 200 |
| Directors' Fees | 1,000 |
| Interest to Vendors | 1,250 |
| Preliminary Expenses | 500 |
| | <hr/> £15,950 <hr/> |

| | Prior to Incorporation. | Subsequent to Incorporation. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| | £ | £ |
| Share of Profits one-quarter of £15,950 three-quarters of £15,950 | 3,987 | |
| Less Bad Debts | £100 | £100 |
| Directors' Fees | | 1,000 |
| Interest to Vendors | 750 | 500 |
| Preliminary Expenses | | 500 |
| | <hr/> 850 <hr/> | <hr/> 2,100 <hr/> |
| | £1,137 | £9,863 |

Note

The amount of £3,137 should be treated as a capital profit not available for dividend. It has been arrived at after charging the loss of £100 in respect of the diminished value of the book debts taken over.

Illustration (2)

A company was formed to take over a business as from 1st January, but was not incorporated until 30th April. The turnover for the year to 31st December was £20,000, of which £4,000 was prior to 30th April.

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | Ratio. | Prior to Incorporation. | Subsequent to Incorporation. | | Ratio. | Prior to Incorporation. | Subsequent to Incorporation. |
|----------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------|--------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| | | £ | £ | | | £ | £ |
| Rent, Rates and other standing charges | 1 : 2 | 1,200 | 2,400 | By Gross Profit b/d. | 1 : 4 | 1,500 | 6,000 |
| Travellers' Commission | 1 : 4 | 40 | 160 | | | | |
| Discounts | 1 : 4 | 30 | 120 | | | | |
| Directors' Fees | — | — | 250 | | | | |
| Interest on Purchase consideration | — | 200 | 50 | | | | |
| Net Profit to Capital Reserve | — | 30 | | | | | |
| Appropriation Account | — | — | 3,020 | | | | |
| | | £1,500 | £6,000 | | | £1,500 | £6,000 |

Notes

1. The ratio of turnover is $4,000 : 16,000 = 4 : 16$ or $1 : 4$. The time ratio is four months to eight months $= 1 : 2$.

2. Standing charges continue irrespective of turnover, and are apportioned on a time basis.

3. Travellers' commission and discounts vary with turnover. Strictly, they may vary with the turnover of a period ending earlier than 31st December, owing to the lag in

payment, but the turnover of the period is sufficiently accurate for practical purposes unless the items are very large in amount.

4. Directors' fees do not require apportionment.

5. Interest on the purchase consideration is apportioned according to the time during which it accrued.

In some instances where a private business is transferred to a company formed for the purpose of its acquisition, it is found that no entries relating to the transfer have been made at the time, the books of the business being carried on without a break until the usual or the new accounting date. Adjustments are therefore necessary to give effect to the true position for the purposes of the final accounts.

Illustration (3)

The following is the Trial Balance of A Ltd. on 31st December:

| | £ | £ |
|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| A—Capital Account | | 20,000 |
| Sundry Fixed Assets | 8,000 | |
| Debtors | 10,000 | |
| Stock | 12,000 | |
| Cash | 2,000 | |
| Sundry Liabilities | | 8,000 |
| Profit and Loss Account | | 4,000 |
| | <u>£32,000</u> | <u>£32,000</u> |

It is ascertained that on the preceding 1st March the business had been transferred to a limited company as from 1st January in consideration of £6,000 cash and £24,000 shares, the company taking over all the assets and liabilities at their book value. No entries relating to the transfer had been made in the books, nor had any entries been made in A's Capital Account since 1st January, except that he had been debited with the £6,000 cash paid to him as part of the purchase consideration.

A's Capital Account at the end of the year stands at £20,000, after having been debited with the £6,000 cash forming part of the purchase consideration, hence his capital at the beginning of the year must have been £26,000, which must therefore be the amount of the assets, less liabilities, as at 1st January, which were taken over by the company. If the company had opened a new set of books at that date, the opening journal entries would have been :

COMPANY'S JOURNAL

| | £ | £ |
|-------------------------|------------|--------|
| Sundry Net Assets | Dr. 26,000 | |
| Goodwill Account | 4,000 | |
| To Vendor—A | | 30,000 |
| Vendor—A | Dr. 30,000 | |
| To Cash | | 6,000 |
| „ Share Capital Account | | 24,000 |

Since, instead of opening a new set of books, the company has continued to operate upon the existing asset and liability accounts, A's Capital Account can be treated as the Vendor's Account, the balance on which at the commencement of the year, £26,000, represents the credit for the net assets taken over from him. A has already received, and been debited with, £6,000 of the purchase consideration and the only entries now necessary to put the books in order are as follows :

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------|--------|
| Goodwill Account | Dr. | £ | £ |
| To A | | 4,000 | 4,000 |
| A | Dr. | 24,000 | |
| To Share Capital Account | | | 24,000 |
| Purchase of goodwill and discharge of balance of purchase consideration. | | | |

If any adjustment in the book value of the assets is to be made, the amount of such adjustment will be debited or credited to the particular asset accounts, and credited or debited to A's Capital Account. The effect will merely be to increase or decrease the balance of A's Account to be transferred to Goodwill Account.

As already mentioned, it is quite common, on the sale of a private business to a company, for the vendor to retain the book debts and to pay off the creditors, thus saving stamp duty on the transfer. In such cases, the company usually collects the book debts and discharges the creditors as the vendor's agent. Where the book debts and liabilities of the vendor are not taken over by the company, the balance of the vendor's capital account at the date as from which the business is transferred does *not* represent the net assets taken over by the company under the agreement until the debtors and creditors at that date have been eliminated therefrom. Strictly, therefore, the vendor's account should be debited and the various debtors' accounts credited with the amount of the sundry debtors at the date of the transfer of the business; and the sundry creditors' accounts debited and the vendor's account credited with the liabilities not taken over by the company in order to eliminate from the company's books assets and liabilities not taken over. As the amounts are collected from debtors and paid to creditors, they would be debited and credited respectively to the cash book, and credited and debited respectively to the vendor's account, the balance of which would then represent the balance to be accounted for by the company to the vendor, or *vice versa*. Frequently, in practice, only differences will be adjusted, but great care must be taken, if such a short cut is adopted, to ensure that the final result is accurate.

If the company has continued to post to the old debtors' and creditors' accounts as if no change had taken place, the actual personal accounts of debtors and creditors will have been credited and debited during the period following the transfer with the cash received and paid by the company respectively, and the above entries will not be practicable. It is then necessary to create suspense accounts, as indicated below.

Illustration (4)

Assume that in Illustration (3) the debtors and creditors amounting on 1st January to £8,000 and £6,000 respectively, were not taken over by the company, but were collected and paid by them as agent for the vendor, and that the old accounts were continued by the company without a break, the debts being collected during the year, subject to discounts of £400, and the creditors paid, subject to discounts of £150.

COMPANY'S JOURNAL

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|-------|-------|
| A's Account | Dr. | £ | £ |
| To Debtors' Suspense Account | | 8,000 | 8,000 |
| Creditors' Suspense Account | Dr. | 6,000 | |
| To A's Account | | | 6,000 |
| Adjusting debtors and creditors not taken over. | | | |

The above entries reduce the credit on A's account to £18,000 and thereby increase the price paid for goodwill to £6,000.

At the end of the period, when the amounts collected from debtors and paid to creditors have been ascertained, the following further entries will be necessary :

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------|-------|
| Debtors Suspense Account | Dr. | £ 8,000 | £ |
| To A's Account | | | 7,600 |
| Discount Allowed Account | | | 400 |
| Debits collected and discounts allowed on behalf of vendor. | | | |
| A's Account | Dr. | 5,850 | |
| Discount Received Account | | 150 | |
| To Creditors Suspense Account | | | 6,000 |
| Liabilities paid and discounts received on behalf of vendor. | | | |

A's Account will then be closed by the payment to him of £1,750 cash, being the excess of receipts over payments. It will be seen that by the above entries the discounts allowed and received respectively on behalf of the vendor have been eliminated from the company's discount accounts, but the personal accounts of the debtors and creditors are not affected.

Illustration (5)

XY, the proprietor of a business, wishing to realise part of his capital, decided to convert his business into a limited company as from 1st January, and invite his friends to take up shares.

The company was duly incorporated on 1st February, on which date 9,000 shares of £1 each were issued for cash, XY retaining the remaining 1,000 shares as part consideration.

Out of the proceeds of the issue, XY was paid £7,000 as the balance of the purchase price and £750 for outlays incurred by him connected with the company's incorporation.

XY agreed to be manager of the company, as from 1st January, at a salary of £500 per annum.

It was not considered necessary to open up a new set of books and accounts.

The Trial Balance, before adjustment, at 31st December is as follows :

| | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Capital Account (XY) | £ 1,250 | £ |
| New Company Account (XY & Co. Ltd.) | | 9,000 |
| Sales | | 30,000 |
| Stock Account | 22,900 | |
| Wages and Salaries | 2,750 | |
| Other Expenses | 2,500 | |
| Bad Debts written off during year | 175 | |
| Sundry Creditors | | 3,325 |
| Sundry Debtors | 5,000 | |
| Property | 6,000 | |
| Cash on hand and in Bank | 1,750 | |
| | <u>£42,325</u> | <u>£42,325</u> |

XY has not been credited with salary to date nor has he received anything on account. Interest on the purchase price at 5 per cent., falls to be credited to him as from 1st January to the date of settlement. The Stock at 31st December is valued at £400.

A re-valuation at 1st January showed that the property was worth £6,500, and that £250 of the debts were doubtful or bad. Against the latter it was agreed to provide £200.

Actually only debts to the value of £100 have proved to be bad, the balance having been collected by the company.

XY's capital at 1st January was £6,500.

Prepare Balance Sheet of XY & Co. Ltd. as at 31st December with relative Profit and Loss Account to that date, giving effect to the adjustments necessary, but yet unrecorded, on account of the change of ownership. Ignore income tax.

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19

| | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| To Stock Account | £22,900 | £ | By Sales | £30,000 |
| Less Stock in Hand | 400 | 22,500 | | |
| " Gross Profit c/d. | | 7,500 | | |
| | | <u>£30,000</u> | | <u>£30,000</u> |
| | | £ | | £ |
| To Wages and Salaries | 2,750 | By Gross Profit b/d. | 7,500 | |
| " Manager's Salary | 500 | | | |
| " Other Expenses | 2,500 | | | |
| " Bad Debts | 75 | | | |
| " Net Profit c/d. | 1,675 | | | |
| | <u>£7,500</u> | | | <u>£7,500</u> |
| | £ | | | £ |
| To Interest on purchase price at 5% on | | By Net Profit b/d. — | | |
| £8,000 prior to incorporation, 1 month | 34 | Prior to Incorporation, 1 month | 140 | |
| " Net Profit prior to incorporation earned | | After Incorporation, 11 months | 1,535 | |
| to Capital Reserve | 106 | | | |
| " Net Profit carried forward .. | 1,535 | | | |
| | <u>£1,675</u> | | | <u>£1,675</u> |

XY LTD, BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER, 19

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------|--------|----------------|
| Share Capital, authorised, issued and fully paid | 10,000 | Fixed Assets :— | £ | £ |
| Capital Reserve— | | Goodwill | £1,200 | |
| Profits prior to Incorporation .. | £106 | Less Capital Reserve per contra | 206 | 994 |
| Balance of Bad Debt Provision on debts taken over | 100 | Property at cost | | 6,500 |
| Deducted contra from Goodwill .. | £206 | | | <u>7,494</u> |
| Profit and Loss Account | 1,535 | Current Assets :— | | |
| | <u>11,535</u> | Stock | 400 | |
| Sundry Creditors | 3,325 | Debtors | 5,000 | |
| XY—Salary and Interest | 534 | Cash on hand and in Bank .. | 1,750 | 7,150 |
| | <u>£15,394</u> | Preliminary Expenses | | 750 |
| | | | | <u>£15,394</u> |

Notes

(1) The account of XY will be adjusted as follows:

XY (VENDOR)

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Feb. 1 To Cash | £7,750 | Jan. 1 By Balance (capital) .. | £6,500 |
| | | Dec. 31 " Balance c/d (as per Trial Balance) .. | 1,250 |
| | <u>£7,750</u> | | <u>£7,750</u> |
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/d. | 1,250 | Dec. 31 By Property Account—Increase in value | 500 |
| " Share Capital Account—Shares issued as part consideration .. | 1,000 | " Preliminary Expense Account amounts paid by XY | 750 |
| " Bad Debt Provision | 200 | " Balance, being cost of Goodwill debited to Goodwill Account | 1,200 |
| | <u>£2,450</u> | | <u>£2,450</u> |

(2)

PROVISION FOR BAD DEBTS ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| To Bad Debts written off | £100 | By XY—Provision created at acquisition of business | £200 |
| Balance—excessive Provision transferred to Capital Reserve | 100 | | |
| | <u>£200</u> | | |

By debiting £100 of the bad debts written off against the provision for bad debts, only £75 remains to be debited to Profit and Loss Account as representing bad debts incurred by the company. The balance of the provision for bad debts taken over from the vendor may now be treated as a capital reserve and deducted from the cost of goodwill.

(3) In the absence of information as to the incidence of sales, the gross profit and the Profit and Loss Account items have all been apportioned between the periods prior to and after incorporation on a time basis. Strictly the gross profit and other items varying with turnover should be apportioned on the basis of turnover.

Illustration (6)

Ernest Dundas and Arthur Banbury were in partnership as Ernest Dundas & Co., sharing profits and losses as 20 to 17.

Accounts were prepared and the books closed off as at 31st December, 19...

On the following 1st May, Dundas & Banbury, Ltd., was registered to acquire the business of Ernest Dundas & Co. as from the 1st January.

The sale and purchase agreement provides :

(a) Purchase consideration 6,000 Preference shares £1 each fully paid.

6,000 Ordinary shares 2/- each fully paid.

(b) Vendors to retain cash and debtors and to pay off liabilities.

(c) Each of the vendors to subscribe in cash for one-half of the balance of authorised capital, 850 Preference shares and 500 Ordinary shares.

The articles of association appoint E. Dundas and A. Banbury sole directors with fees of £100 per month each.

You are requested to assist the directors in the preparation of accounts to 30th September. You find that the books have been carried on without a break since 1st January, and that no entries arising from the formation of the company or its acquisition of the business have been made.

The Trial Balance at 30th September was as follows :—

| | £ | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|
| A. Banbury—Capital at 1st January | | 2,860 |
| Drawings during period | 250 | |
| E. Dundas — Capital at 1st January | | 3,000 |
| Drawings during period | 300 | |
| E. Dundas and A. Banbury for shares | | 900 |
| Buildings | 3,800 | |
| Creditors (£1,500 owing at 1st January, having been paid) | | 700 |
| Debtors (£1,000 due at 1st January, having been received) | 950 | |
| Formation of Company Expenses | 150 | |
| Furniture and Fittings (Balance at 1st January, £360) | 460 | |
| Office Expenses | 350 | |
| Plant and Machinery (Balance 1st January, £1,200) | 1,500 | |
| Purchases | 2,000 | |
| Sales | | 8,200 |
| Salaries | 400 | |
| Selling Expenses | 600 | |
| Stock 1st January | 500 | |
| Wages | 800 | |
| Cash (Balance at Bank at 1st January, £500) | 3,600 | |
| | £15,660 | £15,660 |

You obtain the following additional information:

E. Dundas and A. Banbury have agreed between themselves to take preference shares for the amount of their capital at 1st January.

The average of the monthly sales (which are of one commodity at a fixed price) for the first four months was one-half that of the remainder of the period.

The expenditure each month on items in the Profit and Loss Account was equal.

The stock at 30th September is valued at £700.

Plant and machinery is to be depreciated at 5% per annum, and furniture and fittings at 10% per annum, in both cases on commencing figures.

Preliminary expenses are to be written off.

You are required—

- (i) To prepare the journal entries necessary to put the books in order.
 - (ii) To show the shareholdings acquired by the partners.
 - (iii) To prepare the company's Trading and Profit and Loss Account, and Balance Sheet as at 30th September.
- Ignore income tax.

(i) JOURNAL

| Capital Accounts : | Dr. | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------|-------|
| A. Banbury | | 2,860 | |
| E. Dundas | | 3,000 | |
| To Vendors | | | 5,860 |
| Transfer of Capital at 1st January. | | | |
| Goodwill | Dr. | 740 | |
| To Vendors | | | 740 |
| Excess of purchase consideration over value of net assets. | | | |
| Vendors | Dr. | 6,600 | |
| To Preference Share Capital Account | | | 6,000 |
| Ordinary Share Capital Account | | | 600 |
| Issue of 6,000 Preference Shares of £1 each, fully paid, and 6,000 Ordinary Shares of 2s. each, fully paid, in satisfaction of purchase consideration. | | | |
| E. Dundas and A. Banbury | Dr. | 900 | |
| To Preference Share Capital Account | | | 850 |
| Ordinary Share Capital Account | | | 50 |
| Issue of 850 Preference Shares of £1 each, fully paid and 500 Ordinary Shares of 2s. each, fully paid, as per application received. | | | |

Note

The cash at bank on 1st January has been applied in settlement of the difference between the debtors and creditors outstanding at that date, and which have subsequently been received and discharged.

(ii) SHAREHOLDINGS OF PARTNERS

| | E. Dundas. | A. Banbury. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Capital Accounts, 1st January | £ 3,000 | £ 2,860 |
| Profit on sale of firm | 400 | 340 |
| Cash subscribed for shares | 450 | 450 |
| Amount to be discharged | £3,850 | £3,650 |
| Preference shares for capital | Shares. 3,000 | Shares. 2,860 |
| Preference shares subscribed | 425 | 425 |
| Balance of preference shares allotted in profit-sharing ratio | 76 | 64 |
| Total Preference shares | 3,501 | 3,349 |
| Ordinary shares subscribed | 250 | 250 |
| Balance of ordinary shares allotted in profit-sharing ratio | 3,243 | 2,757 |
| Total Ordinary Shares | 3,493 | 3,007 |

SUMMARY.

| | E. Dundas. | | | A. Banbury. | | |
|------------|------------|--------|-------|-------------|--------|-------|
| Ordinary | Shares. | £ | s. d. | Shares. | £ | s. d. |
| Preference | 3,493 | 349 | 6 0 | 3,007 | 300 | 14 0 |
| | 3,501 | 3,501 | 0 0 | 3,349 | 3,349 | 0 0 |
| | | £3,850 | 6 0 | | £3,649 | 14 0 |

A cash payment of 6/- must be made by Dundas to Banbury.

(iii)

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

FOR THE 9 MONTHS ENDED 30TH SEPTEMBER, 19..

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------------------|---------------|
| To Stock, 1st January | £ | £ | By Sales | £ |
| „ Purchases | | 500 | „ Stock, 30th September | 8,200 |
| „ Wages | | 2,000 | | 700 |
| „ Gross Profit : | | | | |
| Prior to Incorporation | | | | |
| (two-sevenths) | 1,600 | | | |
| Subsequent to Incorporation | | | | |
| (five-sevenths) | 4,000 | | | |
| | | 5,600 | | |
| | | <u>£8,900</u> | | <u>£8,900</u> |
| | | | | |
| | | Profits | Profits | |
| | | Prior to | Subsequent to | |
| | | Incorporation | Incorporation | |
| | | (4 months). | (5 months). | |
| To Salaries | £ | £ | By Gross Profit b/d. | £ |
| „ Office Expenses | 400 | | | 1,600 |
| „ Selling Expenses | 350 | | | 4,000 |
| „ Depreciation : | 600 | | | |
| Plant | 45 | | | |
| Furniture | 27 | | | |
| | <u>£1,422</u> | 632 | | |
| „ Directors' Fees | | | | |
| „ Formation Expenses | | | | |
| „ Capital Reserve | | 1,000 | | |
| „ Balance c/f. | | 150 | | |
| | | 968 | | |
| | | 2,060 | | |
| | | <u>£1,600</u> | | <u>£1,600</u> |
| | | | | <u>£4,000</u> |

BALANCE SHEET

AS AT 30TH SEPTEMBER, 19..

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|-------|----------------|
| Share Capital : | £ | Fixed Assets :— | £ | £ |
| Authorised and Issued : | | Goodwill at cost | 740 | |
| 6,850 Preference Shares of £1 each, | | Buildings at cost | 3,800 | |
| fully paid | £6,850 | Plant and Machinery, at cost £1,500 | | |
| 6,500 Ordinary Shares of 2s. each, | | Less Depreciation | 45 | |
| fully paid | 650 | | 1,455 | |
| | 7,500 | Furniture and Fittings at cost | 460 | |
| Capital Reserve | 968 | Less Depreciation | 27 | |
| Profit and Loss Account | 2,060 | | 433 | |
| | <u>10,528</u> | | | 6,428 |
| Sundry Creditors : | | Current Assets :— | | |
| Trade | 1,700 | Stock | 700 | |
| Directors' Fees | 450 | Sundry Debtors | 950 | |
| | <u>1,150</u> | Cash at Bank | 3,600 | |
| | | | | 5,250 |
| | <u>£11,678</u> | | | <u>£11,678</u> |

Notes

1. The drawings made by the partners since 1st January, have been applied in part payment of the directors' fees accruing to them since 1st May, leaving £450 directors' fees still outstanding.

2. The formation expenses may, alternatively, be written off against the profits prior to incorporation.

3. Since the average of the monthly sales for the first four months was one-half that of the remainder of the period, the proportion of turnover is 2 : 5.

Illustration (7)

A and B, trading in partnership, shared profits and losses in the proportions A three-fifths and B two-fifths. On 1st June they executed an agreement for the sale to a company,

AB Ltd., as on the previous 1st April, of the following assets for a consideration of £120,000 allocated as follows: Goodwill £25,000, Freehold Land and Buildings £60,000, Plant and Machinery, £30,000, Stocks £5,000.

The company was incorporated on 1st June, with an authorised capital of £250,000 in shares of £1 each, of which 120,000 were issued forthwith in satisfaction of the purchase consideration. The business was deemed to have been carried on by the vendors on behalf of the purchasers from 1st April, and A and B, whose last accounts were made up to 31st March, continued their book-keeping records to 30th June without regard to the sale of the assets, although, for the month of June, sales had been invoiced and purchases ordered in the name of AB Ltd.

The following Trial Balance was drawn up from the books of A & B as on 30th June:

| Debits. | £ | Credits. | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Goodwill | 25,000 | Creditors (including £3,000 for June purchases) | 5,500 |
| Freehold Land and Buildings | 60,000 | Sales | 50,000 |
| Plant and Machinery (including £2,000 purchased since 31st March) | 30,000 | Discounts | 300 |
| Stock as on 31st March | 5,000 | Capital Account - A | 35,000 |
| Debtors (including £4,000 for June sales) | 6,000 | B | 25,000 |
| Wages and Salaries (including Directors' Fees, £200) | 20,000 | Current Account—A | 300 |
| Rent | 200 | | |
| Purchases | 18,000 | | |
| A.B. Ltd. Account | 7,000 | | |
| Discounts | 600 | | |
| Expenses | 2,000 | | |
| Current Account, B | 800 | | |
| Balance at Bankers | 500 | | |
| | <u>£116,100</u> | | <u>£116,100</u> |

Stocks were valued by the company's officials on 30th June at £4,000.

The balance of £7,000 on AB Ltd. account represented cash paid for 7,000 shares of £1 each allotted to A & B on 1st June, which was paid by them into a banking account in the name of AB Ltd. on that date. Cheques were drawn on this account on 28th June to pay for Preliminary and Formation Expenses, £1,500, and for Office Furniture, £500. On 30th June the account was credited with £10 for interest allowed by the Bank.

A & B were to pay for purchases made prior to 1st June, and debtors for sales before that date were paid to A. & B. There were no purchases or sales for cash. Trading profits accrued regularly over the period.

You are required:

- to show the account of AB Ltd. as it should be written up in the books of A & B, ignoring interest;
- to prepare the Balance Sheet of A & B as on 30th June; and
- to prepare the Profit and Loss Account of AB Ltd. for the 3 months ended 30th June, and the Balance Sheet as on that date, ignoring depreciation and taxation;

In this case, although the business was sold to the company as from 1st April, the books of the partnership were not closed, but the firm carried on the business on behalf of the company, recording the transactions through its own accounts. As at 30th June the balances of all accounts representing payments and expenses incurred and sales made on behalf of the company must be transferred to the company's account in the firm's books. This account must also be debited with the transfer price of the assets sold to the company, the balances on the asset accounts, representing profit on realisation, being divided between the partners in profit-sharing ratio and credited to their capital accounts. The balance of the company's account will then represent the amount due by the firm to the company as a result of all these transactions.

(a) BOOKS OF A AND B
A B LTD.

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| To Cash for 7,000 Shares in A B Ltd. | 7,000 | By Shares in A B Ltd. | 127,000 |
| " Goodwill | 25,000 | " Creditors (for June Purchases) | 3,000 |
| " Freehold Land and Buildings | 60,000 | " Sales | 50,000 |
| " Plant and Machinery | 32,000 | " Discounts received | 300 |
| " Stocks | 5,000 | | |
| " Debtors (June Sales) | 4,000 | | |
| " Wages and Salaries | 20,000 | | |
| " Rent | 200 | | |
| " Purchases | 18,000 | | |
| " Discounts allowed | 600 | | |
| " Expenses | 2,000 | | |
| " Balance c/f | 6,500 | | |
| | <u>£180,300</u> | | <u>£180,300</u> |
| | | By Balance b/f. | 6,500 |

Note

The company is debited with all purchases and credited with all sales to date, but since A and B are only to pay for purchases, and receive payments from debtors for sales prior to 1st June, the creditors for purchases and debtors for sales after 1st June are transferred to the company. A and B will themselves pay the creditors for purchases, and receive the amounts due from debtors in respect of sales prior to 1st June, having charged the company with these purchases and credited it with these sales.

(b) A AND B
BALANCE SHEET AS AT 30TH JUNE

| | £ | £ | | £ |
|-------------------|--------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| A—Capital Account | 71,600 | | Shares in A B Ltd. | 127,000 |
| Current Account | 300 | | Debtors | 2,000 |
| | | 71,900 | Balance at Bank | 500 |
| B—Capital Account | 49,400 | | | |
| Current Account | 800 | | | |
| | | <u>48,600</u> | | |
| | | 120,500 | | |
| A B Ltd | | 6,500 | | |
| Trade Creditors | | <u>2,500</u> | | |
| | | <u>£129,500</u> | | <u>£129,500</u> |

Note: The partners' Capital Accounts are as follows :

| | A. £ | B. £ | | A. £ | B. £ |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| To Balance c/f. | 71,600 | 49,400 | By Balance c/f. | 35,000 | 25,000 |
| | | | " Profit on realisation | 36,600 | 24,400 |
| | <u>£71,600</u> | <u>£49,400</u> | | <u>£71,600</u> | <u>£49,400</u> |
| | | | By Balance b/f. | 71,600 | 49,400 |

The profit on realisation is:

| | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| Consideration for assets— | Goodwill | £25,000 |
| | Land and Buildings | 60,000 |
| | Plant and Machinery | 30,000 |
| | Stocks | 5,000 |
| | | <u>120,000</u> |

| | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| Less Book Values— | Goodwill | £9,000 |
| | Land and Buildings | 25,000 |
| | Plant and Machinery | 20,000 |
| | Stock | 5,000 |
| | | <u>59,000</u> |

Profit—divisible A 3/5ths, B 2/5ths £61,000

**A B LTD.
TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR 3 MONTHS ENDED 30TH JUNE**

(c)

| | | £ | | | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| To Stock, 1st April | | 5,000 | By Sales | | 50,000 |
| " Purchases | | 18,000 | " Stock, 30th June | | 4,000 |
| " Gross Profit c/d. | | 31,000 | | | |
| | | <u>£54,000</u> | | | <u>£54,000</u> |
| | Prior to Incorporation £ | Since Incorporation £ | | Prior to Incorporation £ | Since Incorporation £ |
| To Wages and Salaries | 13,200 | 6,600 | By Gross Profit b/d. | 20,667 | 10,333 |
| " Directors' Fees | | 200 | " Discounts | 200 | 100 |
| " Rent | 133 | 67 | " Bank Interest | | 10 |
| " Discounts | 400 | 200 | | | |
| " Expenses | 1,334 | 666 | | | |
| " Profit prior to Incorporation transferred to Capital Re- serve | 5,800 | | | | |
| " Net Profit since Incorporation c/f. | | 2,710 | | | |
| | <u>£20,867</u> | <u>£10,443</u> | | <u>£20,867</u> | <u>£10,443</u> |

Note. Gross profit and expenses which move with turnover should more correctly be apportioned on the basis of sales.

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 30TH JUNE

| | Authorised £ | Issued and fully paid £ | | £ | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| Share Capital : | | | Fixed Assets, at cost: | | |
| Shares of £1 each | 250,000 | 127,000 | Goodwill | 25,000 | |
| Capital Reserve | 5,800 | | Freehold Land and Buildings | 60,000 | |
| Less Preliminary Expenses written off | 1,500 | | Plant and Machinery | 32,000 | |
| | | 4,300 | Office Furniture | 500 | 117,500 |
| Profit and Loss Account | | 2,710 | Current Assets: | | |
| | | 134,010 | A & B | 6,500 | |
| Creditors | | 3,000 | Stocks | 4,000 | |
| | | | Trade Debtors | 4,000 | |
| | | | Cash at Bank | 5,010 | 19,510 |
| | | <u>£137,010</u> | | | <u>£137,010</u> |

Notes

1. The following journal entries will be necessary to open the company's books:

JOURNAL

| | £ | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Cash | Dr. 7,000 | |
| Goodwill | | 25,000 |
| Freehold Land and Buildings | | 60,000 |
| Plant and Machinery | | 30,000 |
| do. Additions | | 2,000 |
| Stock | | 5,000 |
| Debtors (for June Sales) | | 4,000 |
| Wages and Salaries | | 19,800 |
| Directors' Fees | | 200 |
| Rent | | 200 |
| Purchases | | 18,000 |
| Discounts allowable | | 600 |
| Expenses | | 2,000 |
| To A & B | | 173,800 |
| | <u>£173,800</u> | <u>£173,800</u> |
| Assets taken over from, and expenses paid and incurred by A & B on behalf of the company. | | |
| A & B | Dr. 180,300 | |
| To Share Capital | | 127,000 |
| Creditors (for June Purchases) | | 3,000 |
| Sales | | 50,000 |
| Discounts receivable | | 300 |
| | <u>£180,300</u> | <u>£180,300</u> |

120,000 Shares issued to A & B as purchase consideration and 7,000 for cash, liabilities assumed from and sales made by A & B on behalf of the company.

2. The company's bank balance is made up as follows:

| | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----|--------|-------|--------|
| Paid in by A & B | ... | ... | ... | £7,000 |
| Bank Interest | ... | ... | ... | 10 |
| | | | | <hr/> |
| | | | | 7,010 |
| Less Preliminary Expenses | ... | £1,500 | | |
| Furniture | ... | ... | 500 | |
| | | | <hr/> | 2,000 |
| | | | | <hr/> |
| | | | | £5,010 |
| | | | | <hr/> |

§ 12. Bonus Shares

(a) Issue of Bonus Shares

When a company has a large amount of undistributed profits, either on Reserve Account or on Profit and Loss Account, the real capital employed in the business tends to be obscured. Usually, such accumulations will have been employed in the acquisition of fixed assets, and as working capital, which will be required permanently. To bring the issued share capital into a truer relationship with the capital actually employed in the business, the accumulations can be capitalised and applied in paying up the amounts due on shares to be issued to the members as bonus shares.

No cash passes between the company and its members in respect of these transactions, the resolution to pay the bonus being so framed as to give the company authority to apply the bonus in paying up the shares.

A bonus issue of shares adds nothing to the net assets of the company, and its effect, therefore, is merely to divide the capital employed in the business into a larger number of shares. Nevertheless, it is usual to find that where the shares are quoted on the stock exchange, the issue of bonus shares is a bull point, which forces up the market value of the shares and enables the shareholders who wish to do so to realise an immediate profit. This can be explained by an illustration.

Illustration (1)

A company's summarised Balance Sheet is as follows:

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| SHARE CAPITAL in £1 Shares . . | £100,000 | SUNDRY ASSETS, less Creditors . . | £150,000 |
| REVENUE RESERVES . . | 50,000 | | |

If the assets and goodwill are fully valued, each £1 share is worth £1 10s. 0d. *cum* dividend. On the profits being capitalised, if the bonus shares are issued at par, the share capital becomes £150,000 in £1 shares. Each share is now worth £1, but each shareholder has 50 per cent. more shares. The shareholders are no better off.

In few cases, however, will the net assets as shewn in the balance sheet reflect the true market value of the shares, which will depend primarily on the income they yield. The company may have paid a dividend of 12 per cent. and if a reasonable yield were 6 per cent. the shares would be quoted round about £2 each, and the total value of the capital would be £200,000. The real value of the shares after the bonus issues would still be £200,000, or £1 6s. 8d. each, if it is anticipated that the company will only distribute the same amount of profits as before and will reduce the rate of dividend

proportionately, *i.e.*, to 8 per cent. The market, however, will usually gamble on the dividend not being reduced so much, and may quote the shares at, say, £1 10s. 0d. or £1 15s. 0d. in the expectation of 9 per cent. or more being paid. A member who shares in this expectation might then sell part of his shares, while retaining the anticipation of the same income.

It is obvious that the distribution of bonus shares cannot always be effected without complications arising from fractions. The distribution may be on the basis of, say, one bonus share for every five held, in which case the holder of 24 shares would be entitled to four complete shares and four-fifths of a share, which must be made up to a complete share by the acquisition of the title to a further one-fifth of a share before registration can finally be effected. This difficulty is normally overcome in one of two ways, *viz.* :

1. The articles and the resolution voting the bonus issue may provide for each shareholder to be allotted the whole number of shares appropriate to his holding. The shares representing the sum of the fractions are then sold, and the proceeds paid to the shareholders entitled to the fractions.

2. Members may be notified that they must either acquire or surrender fractions at a stated price before a specified date, such exchange generally being arranged through the medium of the secretary (the directors having previously arranged for one or more large shareholders to be ready to acquire any rights not otherwise disposed of) unless the rights are saleable on the stock exchange. Fractional 'certificates' are frequently issued to the members affected, to facilitate transfer within the period allowed. These certificates are not share certificates, but merely certificates of 'rights'.

Sometimes, it is left to the members to deal with their fractions, in which case any fractions outstanding on the prescribed date are cancelled. This is not recommended, as it is to the detriment of shareholders, and the effect is that the whole bonus is not allotted.

In other cases, the articles empower the directors to issue the nearest whole number of shares. This again is unsatisfactory, as the whole profits intended to be capitalised are not so applied.

Illustration (2)

A company having a reserve of £25,000 and a paid-up capital of £100,000 in £1 shares, resolves to pay a bonus of 20 per cent. out of its reserve by the issue of one fully-paid share for each 5 shares held. Show the journal entries recording the transaction.

JOURNAL

| | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------|
| Reserve Account | | |
| To Bonus Account | Dr. | 20,000 |
| Being Bonus of 20% payable out of the Reserve Account in fully-paid shares as per Resolution dated | | 20,000 |
| Bonus Account | | |
| To Share Capital Account | Dr. | 20,000 |
| Being issue of 20,000 shares of £1 each fully paid in satisfaction of Bonus at the rate of one share for every five held. | | 20,000 |

(b) Application of Bonus to payment of calls

Another method, when the existing shares are only partly called up, is to apply the bonus to the payment of a call on the shares.

Illustration (3)

A company having a nominal and issued capital of £100,000 in 10,000 shares of £10 each, £7 10s. Od. per share called up, declares a bonus out of the reserve account at the rate of $33\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. on the paid-up capital, to be applied for the purpose of making the shares fully paid.

Show the journal entries necessary to record these transactions.

JOURNAL

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------|--------|
| Call Account | Dr. | £ | £ |
| To Share Capital Account | | 25,000 | 25,000 |
| Being final call of £2 10s. per share on 10,000 shares as per Resolution of the Board dated... | | | |
| Reserve Account | Dr. | 25,000 | |
| To Bonus Account | | | 25,000 |
| Being Bonus of £2 10s. per Share on 10,000 shares payable out of the Reserve Account as per Resolution of shareholders dated ... | | | |
| Bonus Account | Dr. | 25,000 | |
| To Call Account | | | 25,000 |
| Being application of Bonus of £2 10s. per share on 10,000 shares to payment of Call as per Resolution dated ... | | | |

§ 13. Payment of Interest out of Capital

Although a company can, indeed must, pay interest out of capital, where there are no profits out of which to pay it, to meet its obligations in respect of debentures and loans, it is a rule of law that no interest can be paid to members on the share capital of the company (except interest on moneys paid in advance of calls). The only exception to this rule is that provided by Section 65, whereby, to enable companies to construct works or buildings or provide plant with money raised as share capital, interest may be paid to members out of capital in the following circumstances:

Where any shares of a company are issued for the purpose of raising money to defray the expenses of the construction of any works or buildings, or the provision of any plant which cannot be made profitable for a lengthened period, the company may pay interest on so much of that share capital as is for the time being paid up for the period and subject to the conditions and restrictions mentioned below, and may charge such interest to capital as part of the cost of construction of the work or buildings, or the provision of plant.

The conditions and restrictions are that:

- (1) no such payment shall be made unless it is authorised by the articles, or by special resolution;
- (2) no such payment, whether authorised by the articles or by special resolution, shall be made without the previous sanction of the Board of Trade;
- (3) before sanctioning any such payment the Board of Trade may, at the expense of the company, appoint a person to inquire and report to them as to the circumstances of the case, and may, before making the appointment, require the company to give security for the payment of the costs of the inquiry;
- (4) the payment shall be made only for such period as may be determined by the Board of Trade, and that period shall in no case extend beyond the close of the half year next after the half year during which the works or buildings have been actually completed or the plant provided;

- (5) the rate of interest shall in no case exceed 4 per cent. per annum, or such other rate as may for the time being be prescribed by statutory instrument*;
- (6) the payment of such interest shall not operate as a reduction of the amount paid up on the shares in respect of which it is paid;
- (7) the accounts of the company shall show the share capital on which, and the rate at which, interest has been paid out of capital during the period to which the accounts relate (8th Sch., Pt. I, § 2).

It should be observed that the payment of 'interest' is not a dividend; it is definitely interest on the shares pending the completion of the work which is designed to earn profits out of which dividends will thereafter be payable. The interest is to be treated as capital expenditure and debited to the asset account in respect of which it is paid. The debit will be the gross amount, since the income tax deductible will be paid over to the Inland Revenue under Sec. 170, Income Tax Act, 1952. Interest is only payable on the paid-up amount of the shares.

§ 14. The Preparation of a Company's Books and Accounts for Audit

Proper arrangements should always be made to facilitate as much as possible the work of the auditor and to enable him to examine the books and accounts with the least amount of inconvenience to himself and to the company's staff.

First and foremost, a proper system of accounting must be in force. The books must be balanced, since it is not the duty of an auditor to balance them, nor can he be called upon to do so, unless separately instructed in his capacity as accountant. All subsidiary books should be cast in ink, and the totals posted to the proper accounts in the impersonal ledger. The various bought and sold ledgers should be proved individually by means of Total (or Control) Accounts, and their balances brought down in ink, or, if it is inconvenient to rule off and bring down such balances, a note of the amount of the balance should be made on each ledger account in red ink at the side. (This will, of course, be unnecessary where machine accounting is employed, as the balance will be extended into the balance column of the accounts after each entry.)

The cash book should be balanced off and a record of the reconciliation of the balance with the pass book or bank statement entered in it. All vouchers should be numbered consecutively, and the numbers entered in the cash book, the vouchers themselves being filed on some proper system, care being taken to see that, in the event of a voucher being missing, a note is inserted in the file, giving a reference to any other evidence available. Bought invoices should either be attached to the statements when filed as vouchers, or should be numbered and filed consecutively, the corresponding numbers being entered in the bought journal.

When the Trial Balance has been extracted, proper provision must be made for bad debts, depreciation, etc., and all other necessary adjustments must be made. The Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account can then be drafted, and, after having been passed by the directors, presented to the auditor. In many cases it is usual for the auditor to prepare the accounts himself, in the capacity of accountant.

*The rate at present allowable is 6 per cent.

Any important provisions and reserves, *e.g.*, for contingent liabilities, revaluations of fixed assets, etc., should be supported by directors' minutes.

In the final accounts, ledger folios should be inserted against each item which refers to a single ledger account, schedules being attached showing folios and details of all items composed of several balances taken collectively. In this manner a full and clear record is obtained of the way in which the various totals, particularly of Balance Sheet items, are arrived at.

§ 15. The Balance Sheet and Accounts of a Company

(a) The Books of Account

By Section 147 (1) of the Companies Act, 1948, every company must keep proper books of account with respect to:

- (a) all sums of money received and expended by the company, and the matters in respect of which the receipt and expenditure takes place;
- (b) all sales and purchases of goods by the company;
- (c) the assets and liabilities of the company.

A company will not be deemed to have kept proper books of account unless it has kept such books as are necessary to give a true and fair view of the state of the company's affairs and to explain its transactions.

The books of account are to be kept at such office as the directors think fit, and are to be always open for their inspection. If books are kept at a place outside Great Britain there must be sent to and kept at a place in Great Britain, and be at all times open to the inspection of the directors, such accounts and returns with respect to the business dealt with in those books as will disclose with reasonable accuracy the financial position of that business, at intervals not exceeding 6 months, and will enable to be prepared in accordance with the Act the company's Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account or Income and Expenditure Account and any documents required to be annexed thereto (§ 147 (3)).

If any director of the company fails to take all reasonable steps to secure compliance with the above provisions, or has by his own wilful default been the cause of any default by the company thereunder, he may, in respect of each offence, be liable, on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 6 months, or to a fine not exceeding £200. It will be a defence, however, for the director to prove that he had reasonable ground to believe, and did believe, that a competent and reliable person was charged with the duty of seeing that the requirements were complied with and was in a position to discharge that duty; and a person shall not be sentenced to imprisonment for such an offence unless in the opinion of the Court, the offence was committed wilfully (§ 147 (4)).

If, when a company is wound up, it is shown that proper books of account have not been kept throughout the two years immediately preceding the commencement of the winding-up, every officer of the company who is in default shall, unless he shows that he acted honestly and that in the circumstances in which the business was carried on the default was excusable, be liable on conviction on indictment to

imprisonment for not more than one year, or, on summary conviction, for not more than 6 months. For this purpose, proper books of account include, in addition to the books already mentioned, books containing entries from day to day in sufficient detail of all cash received and paid, and, where the business involves dealing in goods, statements of the annual stocktakings, and (except in the case of retail sales) of all goods sold and purchased, showing the goods and the buyers and sellers thereof in sufficient detail to enable the goods and the buyers and sellers to be identified (§ 331).

(b) The Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet

By Section 148 the directors of every company shall at some date not later than eighteen months after the incorporation of the company, and subsequently once at least in every calendar year, lay before the company in general meeting:

- (1) a Profit and Loss Account, or, in the case of a company not trading for profit, an Income and Expenditure Account; and
- (2) a Balance Sheet as at the date to which the Profit and Loss Account or the Income and Expenditure Account, as the case may be, is made up.

This date must be not more than nine months or, in the case of a company carrying on business or having interests abroad, not more than twelve months earlier than the date of the meeting.

The Profit and Loss Account, or Income and Expenditure Account, must be for the period:

- (1) in the case of the first account, since the incorporation of the company; and
- (2) in any other case, since the preceding account.

These periods may be extended by the Board of Trade if for any special reason they think fit so to do.

The penalties for failure to comply with these provisions, and the defences available in respect of an offence under this section are similar to those referred to in § 147 (4) in respect of the failure to keep proper books of account (*see ante*).

Every Balance Sheet of a company must give a true and fair view of the state of affairs of the company as at the end of its financial year, and every Profit and Loss Account must give a true and fair view of the profit or loss for the financial year (§ 149 (1)).

The contents of the Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account must be such as will comply with the requirements of the Eighth Schedule of the Act, so far as applicable thereto, but the Board of Trade may, on the application or with the consent of a company's directors, modify any of the requirements of the Act, as to the matters to be stated in the Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account, for the purpose of adapting them to the circumstances of the company (§ 149 (2) and (4)).

Subject to the requirements of the Act, the amount of detailed information disclosed in the published accounts must be carefully considered, as it should not be such as to injure the company by affording valuable information to trade rivals; *e.g.*, it is not usual to find a published Trading Account disclosing turnover, although some of the larger concerns do nowadays publish this information in notes on the accounts.

The provisions of Section 149 (1) and (2) as to the *contents* of the Profit and Loss Account do not apply if:

- (a) the company has subsidiaries; and
- (b) the Profit and Loss Account is framed as a consolidated Profit and Loss Account, dealing with all or any of the company's subsidiaries as well as the company, and:
 - (i) complies with the requirements of the Act relating to consolidated Profit and Loss Accounts; and
 - (ii) shows how much of the consolidated profit or loss for the financial year is dealt with in the accounts of the company (§ 149 (5)).

The following definitions are given in Part IV of the Eighth Schedule for use in relation to matters required by that Schedule to be disclosed in the Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account:

- (1) (a) the expression 'provision' shall, subject to (2) below, mean any amount written off or retained by way of providing for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets or retained by way of providing for any known liability of which the amount cannot be determined with substantial accuracy;
- (b) the expression 'reserve' shall not, subject to (2) below, include any amount written off or retained by way of providing for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets or retained by way of providing for any known liability (and the expression 'liability' shall include all liabilities in respect of expenditure contracted for and all disputed or contingent liabilities);
- (c) the expression 'capital reserve' shall not include any amount regarded as free for distribution through the Profit and Loss Account, and the expression 'revenue reserve' shall mean any reserve other than a capital reserve;
- (2) Where:
 - (a) any amount written off or retained by way of providing for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets, not being an amount written off in relation to fixed assets before 1st July, 1948; or
 - (b) any amount retained by way of providing for any known liability;
 is in excess of that which in the opinion of the directors is reasonably necessary for the purpose, the excess shall be treated as a reserve and not as a provision.
- (3) The expression 'quoted investment' means an investment as respects which there has been granted a quotation or permission to deal on a recognised stock exchange, or on any stock exchange of repute outside Great Britain, and the expression 'unquoted investment' shall be construed accordingly.

It will be recognised from the above definitions that the meaning given to the expression 'provision' is much narrower than that usually attributed to it in framing accounts. For the purposes of the Companies Act, the word 'provision' must not be used, as it commonly is used in practice, to describe amounts set aside to provide for prospective or even potential losses or liabilities; it must only be employed to indicate *known* depreciation or diminution in the value of assets, and *known* liabilities, the amount of which, however, cannot be estimated with reasonable accuracy. If the amount of a known liability *can* be estimated with substantial precision, it must be classified as a liability, and not as a provision. The sum which it is customary and prudent to set aside for the purpose of meeting United Kingdom income tax based on the current year's profits must not be called a provision since it is not a liability at the

date of the Balance Sheet but is an amount set aside to provide for a liability which will arise in the following year.

There is in fact no universally accepted practice in describing in a company's balance sheet amounts set aside for this purpose. Shortly after the passing of the Companies Act, 1948, the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants recommended that as such amounts could not be classified as liabilities or provisions they should be treated as reserves. In a more recent recommendation, however, the Council appear to have modified this view. They point out that whilst some companies treat these amounts as specific reserves and group them with reserves in their balance sheet, an increasing number of others show them separately under descriptions such as 'Amounts set aside for future income tax' without attaching the description of reserve or aggregating them with their reserves. The latter procedure has manifest practical advantages, especially that of separating reserves which are within the free disposition of the company from amounts which will normally be payable at some future date. Accordingly, the Council do not now insist on amounts set aside for future income tax being treated as reserves. They recommend, however, that whether described as reserves or not, such amounts should be shown separately and should preferably *not* be aggregated with reserves.

It will also be observed that where any amount set aside as a provision is greater than the amount which, in the opinion of the directors, is reasonably necessary for the purpose, the excess must be shown in the accounts as a reserve, not as a provision. This, however, does not apply to amounts *written off* by way of depreciation prior to 1st July, 1948, although it would appear to apply to sums *retained*, but not written off, prior to that date, *e.g.*, it would seem that an amount credited to a depreciation fund account prior to 1st July, 1948, in excess of the amount considered reasonably necessary, should be treated as a reserve.

There should be shown under the heading 'capital reserves' any reserves which for statutory reasons (*e.g.*, a Share Premium Account, or a Capital Redemption Reserve Fund) or because of the provisions of the memorandum or articles of the company, or for other legal reasons (*e.g.*, an unrealised capital profit) are not free for distribution through the profit and loss account. Capital reserves may also include reserves which, although legally distributable are regarded by the directors as not available for distribution at the date of the balance sheet (*e.g.*, a Fixed Asset Replacement Reserve). Such a reserve shown as a capital reserve in one balance sheet may, owing to a change of circumstances, properly be shown as a revenue reserve in the next balance sheet.

A 'revenue reserve' is any reserve other than a capital reserve. By implication, therefore, revenue reserves are those which are available for distribution, and include any unappropriated balance on profit and loss account itself. The Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants recommend that where revenue reserves are retentions of distributable profits available for general use in the business and none of them is created in accordance with statutory requirements or in pursuance of any obligation or policy, the sub-division of such reserves under a variety of headings is unnecessary.

(c) Contents of the Profit and Loss Account

By the Eighth Schedule, Part I, there must be shown in the Profit and Loss Account:

- (1) (a) †The amount charged to revenue by way of provision for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of fixed assets;
 - (b) the amount of the interest on the company's debentures and other fixed loans;
 - (c) the amount of the charge for United Kingdom income tax and other United Kingdom taxation on profits, including, where practicable, as United Kingdom income tax any taxation imposed elsewhere to the extent of the relief, if any, from United Kingdom income tax and distinguishing where practicable between income tax and other taxation;
 - (d) the amounts respectively provided for redemption of share capital and for redemption of loans;
 - (e) †the amount, if material, set aside or proposed to be set aside, to, or withdrawn from, reserves;
 - (f) †the amount, if material, set aside to provisions other than provisions for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets or, as the case may be, the amount, if material, withdrawn from such provisions and not applied for the purposes thereof. (The Board of Trade may direct that a company shall not be obliged to show an amount so set aside to provisions if the Board is satisfied that that is not required in the public interest and would prejudice the company, but subject to the condition that any heading stating an amount arrived at after taking into account the amount set aside as aforesaid shall be so framed or marked as to indicate that fact);
 - (g) the amount of income from investments, distinguishing between trade investments and other investments;
 - (h) *the aggregate amount of the dividends paid and proposed.
- (2) *If the remuneration of the auditors is not fixed by the company in general meeting, the amount thereof must be shown under a separate heading; for this purpose any sums paid by the company in respect of the auditors' expenses shall be deemed to be included in the expression 'remuneration.'
- (3) The following matters must be stated by way of note, if not otherwise shown:
- (a) If depreciation or replacement of fixed assets is provided for by some method other than a depreciation charge or provision for renewals, or is not provided for, the method by which it is provided for or the fact that it is not provided for, as the case may be.
 - (b) The basis on which the charge for United Kingdom income tax is computed.
 - (c) *Whether or not the amount stated for dividends paid and proposed is for dividends subject to deduction of income tax.
 - (d) *Except in the case of the first Profit and Loss Account laid before the company after 30th June, 1948, the corresponding amounts for the immediately preceding financial year for all items shown in the Profit and Loss Account.
 - (e) Any material respects in which any items shown in the Profit and Loss Account are affected:
 - (i) by transactions of a sort not usually undertaken by the company or otherwise by circumstances of an exceptional or non-recurrent nature; or
 - (ii) by any change in the basis of accounting.

*Banking, discount and assurance companies are exempted from the above requirements except those marked with an asterisk (8th Sch., Pt. III; see § 15-(i) *post*).

†The Board of Trade may, in the national interest, exempt classes of companies from these requirements (8th Sch., Pt. III).

(d) Payments to Directors

By § 196, in any accounts laid before a general meeting, or in a statement annexed thereto, there must be shewn, so far as the information is contained in the company's books and papers or the company has the right to obtain it from the persons concerned:

- (a) the aggregate amount of the directors' emoluments;
- (b) the aggregate amount of directors' and past directors' pensions; and
- (c) the aggregate amount of directors' or past directors' compensation for loss of office.

The amounts to be shown must include all relevant sums paid by or receivable from:

- (i) the company; and
- (ii) the company's subsidiaries; and
- (iii) any other person;

except sums to be accounted for to the company or any of its subsidiaries, or undisclosed compensation for loss of office, etc., for which Section 193 requires the director(s) to account to the vendors of shares (see p. 277).

Where necessary, the directors may apportion any payments between the matters in respect of which they have been paid or are receivable in such manner as they think appropriate.

The amount to be shown under (a) must include any emoluments paid to or receivable by any person in respect of his services as director of the company, or in respect of his services, *while a director of the company*, as director of any subsidiary company (or of any company of which he was a director on the nomination of the principal company while a director of the latter) or otherwise in connection with the management of the affairs of the company or any subsidiary thereof, and must distinguish between emoluments in respect of services as director, whether of the company or its subsidiary, and other emoluments. (It will be observed that payments by subsidiary companies to their directors need only be included in the directors' emoluments disclosed in the holding company's accounts to the extent that they are made to persons who are also directors of the holding company.)

'Emoluments' include fees and percentages, any sums paid by way of expense allowances in so far as chargeable to U.K. income tax (*i.e.*, expenses which are not allowed as deductions from emoluments under Rule 9, Schedule E, or which are disregarded under Section 164, Income Tax Act, 1952), any contribution paid in respect of a director under any pension scheme and the estimated money value of any other benefits received by him otherwise than in cash.

The amount in (b) is not to include any pension paid or receivable under a pension scheme if the scheme is such that the contributions are substantially adequate for the maintenance of the scheme. Otherwise it must include any pension in respect of services of a director or past director of the company, whether paid to or receivable by him or on his nomination, or, by virtue of dependence on or other connection with him, paid to or receivable by any other person. The amount must distinguish

between pensions in respect of services as a director and other pensions. 'Pension' does not include any payment in respect of two or more persons if the amount paid in respect of each of them is not ascertainable.

In (a) and (b) the references to subsidiary companies are to those subsidiaries which were such when the services were rendered.

The amount to be shown under (c) must include compensation for loss of office as a director, or for loss of any other office while a director, or on ceasing to be a director either of the company or its subsidiary. It must also include sums paid in consideration of retirement from office. The amount must distinguish between compensation in respect of the office of a director and of other offices and between amounts paid by or receivable from the company, its subsidiaries, and other persons.

It is pointed out that the payment to a *director* of compensation for loss of office is illegal unless previously disclosed to the members and approved by the company (§§ 191 and 192). Where in connection with the transfer of any shares in a company, resulting from:

- (a) an offer to the general body of shareholders; or
- (b) any offer made by another body corporate with a view to the company becoming its subsidiary; or
- (c) an offer by an individual with a view to his being able to control not less than one-third of the voting power of the company; or
- (d) any other offer which is conditional on acceptance to a given extent;

a payment is to be made to a director as compensation for loss of or retirement from office, he must take all reasonable steps to see that particulars of the payment are sent to the shareholders with the offer for their shares. If these requirements are not complied with, or the making of the proposed payment is not first approved by a meeting called for that purpose of the holders of the class of shares affected, any sum received by the director shall be deemed to have been received by him in trust for any persons who have sold their shares as a result of the offer (§ 193).

The provisions of §§ 191, 192 and 193, as set out above, do not, however, apply to a *bona fide* payment to a director by way of damages for breach of contract, or by way of pension, superannuation allowance, superannuation gratuity or similar payment in respect of past services (§ 194).

The amounts to be shown for any financial year in respect of payments to directors are the sums receivable in respect of that year, whenever paid, or, if the sums are not paid in respect of any period, the sums paid during that year. If, however, sums are not shown in the accounts for the relevant financial year because they represent amounts to be accounted for to the company, its subsidiaries or past or present members of the company by virtue of §193, but the liability is released or not enforced within 2 years, they must be shown separately in the first accounts in which it is practicable to show them, or in a statement annexed to such accounts. The same applies to expenses allowances charged to United Kingdom income tax after the end of the financial year.

If the accounts do not comply with these provisions, the auditors must include in their report, so far as they are reasonably able to do so, a statement giving the required particulars (§196).

Every director of the company and every person who has been an officer of the company within the preceding 5 years, must give notice to the company of the requisite particulars relating to himself (§ 198).

After 30th June, 1948, it is illegal to pay directors' remuneration (whether as director or otherwise) 'free of tax' or in any way varying with rates of tax, unless it is payable under a contract which was in force on 18th July, 1945, providing expressly, and not by reference to the articles, for such payment. Any provision for payment free of tax, otherwise than under a contract as mentioned, is regarded as providing for a payment, as a gross sum subject to income tax and surtax, of the net sum provided (§ 189).

(e) Contents of the Balance Sheet

By the Eighth Schedule, Part I, the following information must be given in the Balance Sheet:

(1) *The authorised share capital, issued share capital, liabilities and assets must be summarised, with such particulars as are necessary to disclose the general nature of the assets and liabilities, and there must be specified:

(a) any part of the issued capital that consists of redeemable preference shares, and the earliest date on which the company has power to redeem those shares;

(b) so far as the information is not given in the Profit and Loss Account, any share capital on which interest has been paid out of capital during the financial year, and the rate at which interest has been so paid;

(c) the amount of the Share Premium Account;

(d) particulars of any redeemed debentures which the company has power to re-issue.

(2) *There must be stated under separate headings, so far as they are not written off:

(a) the preliminary expenses;

(b) any expenses incurred in connection with any issue of share capital or debentures;

(c) any sums paid by way of commission in respect of any shares or debentures;

(d) any sums allowed by way of discount in respect of any debentures; and

(e) the amount of the discount allowed on any issue of shares at a discount.

(3) *The reserves, provisions, liabilities and fixed and current assets must be classified under headings appropriate to the company's business;

Provided that:

(a) where the amount of any class is not material, it may be included under the same heading as some other class; and

(b) where any assets of one class are not separable from assets of another class, those assets may be included under the same heading.

(4) *Fixed assets must also be distinguished from current assets.

(5) *The method or methods used to arrive at the amount of the fixed assets under each heading must be stated.

(6) The method of arriving at the amount of any fixed assets must, subject to (7) below, be to take the difference between:

- (a) its cost or, if it stands in the company's books at a valuation, the amount of the valuation; and
- (b) the aggregate amount provided or written off since the date of acquisition or valuation, as the case may be, for depreciation or diminution in value; and for this purpose the net amount at which any assets stand in the company's books at 1st July, 1948 (after deduction of the amounts previously provided or written off for depreciation or diminution in value) shall, if the figures relating to the period before 1st July, 1948, cannot be obtained without unreasonable expense or delay, be treated as if it were the amount of a valuation of those assets made at that date and, where any of those assets are sold, the said net amount less the amount of the sales shall be treated as if it were the amount of a valuation so made of the remaining assets.

(7) The above paragraph (6) does not apply:

- (a) to assets for which the figures relating to the period beginning with the 1st July, 1948, cannot be obtained without unreasonable expense or delay; or
- (b) to assets the replacement of which is provided for wholly or partly:
 - (i) by making provision for renewals and charging the cost of replacement against the provision so made; or
 - (ii) by charging the cost of replacement direct to revenue; or
- (c) to any investments of which the market value (or, in the case of investments not having a market value, their value as estimated by the directors) is shown either as the amount of the investments or by way of note; or
- (d) to goodwill, patents or trade marks.

The Board of Trade, in the National interest, may exempt classes of companies from certain of these requirements (8th Schedule, Part III).

(8) For the assets under each heading whose amount is arrived at in accordance with paragraph (6) above, there must be shown:

- (a) the aggregate of the amounts referred to in (6) (a); and
- (b) the aggregate of the amounts referred to in (6) (b).

(9) As respects the assets under each heading whose amount is not arrived at in accordance with (6) above because their replacement is provided for as mentioned in (7) (b) above, there shall be stated:

- (a) the means by which their replacement is provided for; and
- (b) the aggregate amount of the provision (if any) made for renewals and not used.

(10) The aggregate amounts respectively of capital reserves, revenue reserves and provisions (other than provisions for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets) shall be stated under separate headings;

Provided that:

- (a) a separate statement is not required of any of the said three amounts which is not material; and

(b) the Board of Trade may direct that it shall not require a separate statement of the amount of provisions where they are satisfied that that is not required in the public interest and would prejudice the company, but subject to the condition that any heading stating an amount arrived at after taking into account a provision (other than as aforesaid) shall be so framed or marked as to indicate that fact.

(11) There must also be shown (unless it is shown in the Profit and Loss Account or a statement or report annexed thereto, or the amount involved is not material):

(a) where the amount of the capital reserves, of the revenue reserves or of the provisions (other than provisions for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets) shows an increase as compared with the amount at the end of the immediately preceding financial year, the source from which the amount of the increase has been derived; and

(b) where:

(i) the amount of the capital reserves or of the revenue reserves shows a decrease as compared with the amount at the end of the immediately preceding financial year; or

(ii) the amount at the end of the immediately preceding financial year of the provisions (other than provisions for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets) exceeded the aggregate of the sums since applied and amounts still retained for the purposes thereof;

the application of the amounts derived from the difference.

Where the heading showing any of the reserves or provisions aforesaid is divided into sub-headings, these requirements apply to each of the separate amounts shown in the sub-headings instead of applying to the aggregate amount thereof.

(12) (i) There must be shown under separate headings:

(a) *†the aggregate amounts respectively of the company's trade investments, quoted investments other than trade investments and unquoted investments other than trade investments;

(b) *if the amount of the goodwill and of any patents and trade marks or part of that amount is shown as a separate item in or is otherwise ascertainable from the books of the company, or from any contract for the sale or purchase of any property to be acquired by the company, or from any documents in the possession of the company relating to the stamp duty payable in respect of any such contract or the conveyance of any such property, the said amount so shown or ascertained so far as not written off or, as the case may be, the said amount so far as it is so shown or ascertainable and as so shown or ascertained, as the case may be;

(c) *the aggregate amount of any outstanding loans made under the authority of provisos (b) and (c) of subsection (1) of section 54;

(d) the aggregate amount of bank loans and overdrafts;

(e) *the net aggregate amount (after deduction of income tax) which is recommended for distribution by way of dividend.

Nothing in the foregoing is to be taken as requiring the amount of the goodwill, patents and trade marks to be stated otherwise than as a single item.

(ii) †The heading showing the amount of the quoted investments other than trade investments must be sub-divided, where necessary, to distinguish the investments as respects which there has, and those as respects which there has not, been granted a quotation or permission to deal on a recognised stock exchange.

(13) *Where any liability of the company is secured otherwise than by operation of law on any assets of the company, the fact that that liability is so secured must be stated, but it is not necessary to specify the assets on which the liability is secured.

(14) *Where any of the company's debentures are held by a nominee of or trustee for the company, the nominal amount of the debentures and the amount at which they are stated in the books of the company must be stated.

(15) *The following matters must be stated by way of note, or in a statement or report annexed, if not otherwise shown:

- (i) The number, description and amount of any shares in the company which any person has an option to subscribe for, together with the following particulars of the option, that is to say:
 - (a) the period during which it is exercisable;
 - (b) the price to be paid for shares subscribed for under it.
- (ii) The amount of any arrears of fixed cumulative dividends on the company's shares and the period for which the dividends or, if there is more than one class, each class of them are in arrear, the amount to be stated before deduction of income tax, except that, in the case of tax free dividends, the amount shall be shown free of tax and the fact that it is so shown shall also be stated.
- (iii) †Particulars of any charge on the assets of the company to secure the liabilities of any other person, including, where practicable, the amount secured.
- (iv) †The general nature of any other contingent liabilities not provided for and, where practicable, the aggregate amount or estimated amount of those liabilities, if it is material.
- (v) †Where practicable the aggregate amount or estimated amount, if it is material, of contracts for capital expenditure, so far as not provided for.
- (vi) †If in the opinion of the directors any of the current assets have not a value, on realisation in the ordinary course of the company's business, at least equal to the amount at which they are stated, the fact that the directors are of that opinion.
- (vii) The aggregate market value of the company's quoted investments, other than trade investments, where it differs from the amount of the investments as stated, and the stock exchange value of any investments of which the market value is shown (whether separately or not) and is taken as being higher than their stock exchange value.

- (viii) The basis on which foreign currencies have been converted into sterling, where the amount of the assets or liabilities affected is material.
- (ix) †The basis on which the amount, if any, set aside for United Kingdom income tax is computed.
- (x) Except in the case of the first Balance Sheet laid before the company after 30th June, 1948, the corresponding amounts at the end of the immediately preceding financial year for all items shown in the Balance Sheet

*Banking and Discount companies must comply with these paragraphs (except (15) (vii)); they need not comply with the other requirements.

†Assurance companies are exempt from the requirements so marked, otherwise they must comply with the requirements marked with an asterisk, but not others.

Where the company is a holding company there must be shown separately in the Balance Sheet:

- (a) the aggregate of shares in subsidiaries;
- (b) the aggregate of indebtedness of subsidiaries to the company;
- (c) the aggregate of indebtedness of the company to subsidiaries.

There must also be a note on the Balance Sheet, or in a statement or report annexed thereto, of the number, description and amount of the shares in and debentures of the company, held by its subsidiaries or their nominees.

The special provisions of the Act relating to the accounts of holding companies are set out and fully considered in Chapter IX.

(f) Fixed Assets

While the Act requires fixed assets to be distinguished from current assets, the Board of Trade have intimated that no objection will be taken to an asset not being described as 'fixed' or 'current' if to do so would not be a true and fair description, provided the nature of the asset is stated clearly.

The normal method of arriving at the amount of any fixed asset is to take the difference between:

- (a) its cost or, if it stands in the company's books at a valuation, the amount of that valuation, and
- (b) the aggregate amount provided or written off since the date of acquisition or valuation, as the case may be, for depreciation or diminution in value.

For assets under each heading, the aggregate of (a) and the aggregate of (b) must each be stated.

Where, however, the records do not enable the normal basis to be used, and the figures relating to the period before 1st July, 1948, cannot be obtained without unreasonable expense or delay the net amount at which the assets stood in the company's books at 1st July, 1948 (after deducting the amounts previously provided or written off for depreciation or diminution in value), is to be regarded as a valuation of the assets made on that day. This is referred to as 'the net book amount basis'. In such cases, there are likely to be two groups of assets, one to which the normal basis can be applied and one for which the net book amount basis has to be used.

Care must be taken that a true and fair view of the assets is disclosed. The Act is satisfied if, under an asset heading with appropriate wording one aggregate figure is shewn embodying both cost and valuation (including net book amount where this has to be treated as a valuation) with one aggregate deduction for depreciation.

In recommendations made by the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants the following alternative methods of disclosure, which have been approved by counsel, as complying with the Act, are made:

SUGGESTION A

| PLANT AND MACHINERY | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------|
| At Cost* (and, where figures for cost or valuation are not reasonably obtainable, at the net amount standing in the company's books on 1st July, 1948, less sales) | 825,000 | |
| Less: Depreciation | 225,000 | |
| | | <u>£600,000</u> |

*Or 'independent valuation in 19...', or 'partly cost and partly independent valuation in 19...', according to the circumstances.

SUGGESTION B

(Adapting A to circumstances where several fixed assets can be grouped conveniently under the same heading.)

| | Cost, etc. | Depreciation | Net |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| FREEHOLD AND LEASEHOLD LAND AND BUILDINGS, PLANT, MACHINERY AND EQUIPMENT | | | |
| At Cost* (and, where figures for cost or valuation are not reasonably obtainable, at the net amount standing in the company's books on 1st July, 1948, less sales) less depreciation: | | | |
| Freehold land and buildings | 225,000 | 25,000 | 200,000 |
| Leasehold land and buildings | 85,000 | 10,000 | 75,000 |
| Plant, machinery and equipment | 825,000 | 225,000 | 600,000 |
| | <u>£1,135,000</u> | <u>£260,000</u> | <u>£875,000</u> |

*As in 'A' above.

SUGGESTION C

(Distinguishing the totals for items dealt with on the normal basis and items dealt with on the net book amount basis.)

| | Cost, etc. | Depreciation | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| PLANT AND MACHINERY | £ | £ | |
| At Cost* less depreciation | 650,000 | 200,000 | |
| At the net amount standing in the company's books on 1st July, 1948 (where figures for cost or valuation are not reasonably obtainable), less sales and depreciation | 175,000 | 25,000 | |
| | <u>£825,000</u> | <u>£225,000</u> | <u>£600,000</u> |

*As in 'A' above.

SUGGESTION D

(A variant of Suggestion C)

The following alternative arrangement, giving the same information and again showing the two aggregates referred to under suggestion C, might facilitate the insertion of comparative figures:

| PLANT AND MACHINERY | £ | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|----------|
| (a) At Cost* | 650,000 | | |
| (b) At the net amount standing in the company's books on 1st July, 1948, where figures for cost or valuation are not reasonably obtainable, less sales | 175,000 | | |
| | | 825,000 | |
| <i>Deduct depreciation on amounts stated at:</i> | | | |
| (a) above | 200,000 | | |
| (b) above | 25,000 | | |
| | | 225,000 | |
| | | | £600,000 |

*As in 'A' above.

The division of the totals between normal basis and net book amount basis (suggestion C or D) will usually give a fairer view of the assets than is the case where one total only is shown and it approaches nearest to the intention behind the requirement to show cost less accumulated provisions.

It may be considered desirable for purposes of clarity and to enable the Balance Sheet to be read easily (particularly as the comparative figures for the previous year must be given) to show in the main part of the Balance Sheet an abbreviated description thus:

PLANT AND MACHINERY

Per Schedule £600,000

the details, under whichever method of presentation is adopted, being shown in the schedule.

(g) Loans to Officers

By § 197 the accounts which are required by the Act to be laid before the company in general meeting must also contain particulars showing:

(a) the amount of any loans made during the company's financial year to:

(i) any officer of the company; or

(ii) any person who, after the making of the loan, became during that year an officer of the company;

by the company or a subsidiary thereof (*i.e.*, a company which was a subsidiary at the end of the company's financial year (whether or not a subsidiary at the date of the loan)) or by any other person under a guarantee from or on a security provided by the company or a subsidiary thereof (including any such loans which were repaid during that year); and

(b) the amount of any loans made in manner aforesaid to any such officer or person as aforesaid at any time before the company's financial year and outstanding at the expiration thereof.

The foregoing does not, however, require the inclusion in accounts of particulars of:

(a) a loan made in the ordinary course of its business by the company or a subsidiary thereof, where the ordinary business of the company or, as the case may be, the subsidiary, includes the lending of money; or

(b) a loan made by the company or a subsidiary thereof to an employee of the company or subsidiary, as the case may be, if the loan does not exceed £2,000 and is certified by the directors of the company or subsidiary, as the case may be, to have been made in accordance with any practice adopted or about to be adopted by the company or subsidiary with respect to loans to its employees;

not being, in either case, a loan made by the company under a guarantee from or on a security provided by a subsidiary thereof or a loan made by a subsidiary of the company under a guarantee from or on a security provided by the company or any other subsidiary thereof.

If, in the case of any such accounts as aforesaid, the requirements of this section are not complied with, it is the duty of the auditors of the company by whom the accounts are examined to include in their report on the Balance Sheet of the company, so far as they are reasonably able to do so, a statement giving the required particulars.

By § 455, the expression 'officer' (unless the context requires otherwise) includes a director, manager or secretary.

By § 190, it is illegal for a company (other than an exempt private company) to make a loan to a person who is its director or a director of its holding company, or to give a guarantee or security for such a loan.

This does not, however, apply:

- (a) to anything done by a subsidiary, where the director is its holding company; or
- (b) to funds provided to enable a director properly to perform his duties as an officer of the company; or
- (c) in the case of a company whose ordinary business includes the lending of money, to anything done by the company in the ordinary course of business.

Exception (b) only applies where the loan is first approved by the company at a general meeting at which the purposes of the expenditure and the amount of the loan are disclosed; or on condition that, if the approval of the company is not given at or before the next following annual general meeting, the loan shall be repaid within six months from the conclusion of that meeting. Where the approval of the company is not given, the directors authorising the loan will be jointly and severally liable to indemnify the company against any loss arising therefrom.

Under Section 155, the Balance Sheet must be signed on behalf of the board by two of the directors, or if there is only one, by that director.

In the case of a banking company registered after 15th August, 1879, the Balance Sheet must be signed by the secretary or manager, if any, and where there are more than three directors of the company, by at least three of those directors, and where there are not more than three directors by all the directors.

The Profit and Loss Account, and, so far as not incorporated in the Balance Sheet or Profit and Loss Account, any group accounts laid before the company in general meeting, shall be annexed to the Balance Sheet, and the auditor's report shall be attached thereto.

Any accounts so annexed shall be approved by the board of directors before the Balance Sheet is signed on their behalf (§ 156).

(h) The Director's Report

There must be attached to every Balance Sheet laid before a company in general meeting a report by the directors with respect to the state of the company's affairs, the amount, if any, which they recommend should be paid by way of dividend, and the amount, if any, which they propose to carry to reserves.

The report must deal, so far as is material for the appreciation of the state of the company's affairs by its members and will not in the directors' opinion be harmful to the business of the company or of any of its subsidiaries, with any change during the financial year in the nature of the company's business, or in the company's subsidiaries, or in the classes of business in which the company has an interest, whether as member of another company or otherwise (§ 157).

(i) Exceptions for Special Classes of Companies (Eighth Schedule, Part III)

1. A banking or discount company (*i.e.*, any company which satisfies the Board of Trade that it ought to be treated for those purposes as a banking company or a discount company) is not required to comply with the provisions of Part I of the Eighth Schedule, except:

- (a) as regards the Balance Sheet, those listed on pp. 278-82 under paragraphs 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 (so far as relates to fixed and current assets), 12 (except 12 (d)), 13, 14 and 15 (except 15 (vii)); and
- (b) as respects its Profit and Loss Account, those shewn on p. 275 under paragraphs 1 (h), 2 and 3 (c) and (d);

but where in its Balance Sheet capital reserves, revenue reserves or provisions (other than provisions for depreciation, renewals or diminution in value of assets) are not stated separately, any heading stating an amount arrived at after taking into account such a reserve or provision shall be so framed or marked as to indicate that fact, and its Profit and Loss Account shall indicate by appropriate words the manner in which the amount stated for the company's profit or loss has been arrived at.

The accounts of a banking or discount company are not to be deemed, by reason only of the fact that they do not comply with any requirements of Part I of the 8th Schedule from which the company is exempt by virtue of the above, not to give the true and fair view required by the Act.

2. In relation to an assurance company within the meaning of the Insurance Companies Act, 1958, which is subject to and complies with the requirements of that Act as respects the preparation and deposit with the Board of Trade of a Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account, the foregoing paragraph shall apply as it applies in relation to a banking or discount company, and such an assurance company shall also not be subject to the requirements set out in paragraphs 12 (i) (a) and 12 (ii), (15) (iii), (iv), (v), (vi) and (ix) on pp. 280-3.

The Board of Trade may, however, direct that any such assurance company whose business includes to a substantial extent business other than assurance business shall

comply with all the requirements of the said Part I or such of them as may be specified in the direction and shall comply therewith as respects either the whole of its business or such part thereof as may be so specified.

Where an assurance company is entitled to the benefit of the above paragraph, then any wholly owned subsidiary thereof shall also be so entitled if its business consists only of business which is complementary to assurance business of the classes carried on by the assurance company. For this purpose a company shall be deemed to be the wholly owned subsidiary of an assurance company if it has no members except the assurance company and the assurance company's wholly owned subsidiaries and its or their nominees.

3. (i) A company of any class prescribed for the purposes by the Board of Trade, where it considers it desirable in the national interest will not be subject to the following requirements of the Schedule:

- (a) as respects its Balance Sheet, those set out on pp. 278-80 under paragraphs (3) (4) and (5) (except so far as the said paragraphs relate to fixed and current assets) ; and paragraphs (6) (7) (8) (9) (10) and (11); and
- (b) as respects its Profit and Loss Account, those set out on p. 275 under paragraphs (1) (a) (e) and (f);

but a company taking advantage of this exemption is subject to any prescribed conditions as respects matters to be stated in its accounts or by way of note thereto and as respects information to be furnished to the Board of Trade or a person authorised by them to require it.

(ii) The accounts of a company shall not be deemed, by reason only of the fact that they do not comply with any requirements of Part I of the Schedule from which the company is so exempted, not to give the true and fair view required by the Act.

If the Board of Trade are satisfied that any of the conditions prescribed has not been complied with in the case of any company, they may direct that so long as the direction continues in force the exemption shall not apply to the company.

4. Where a company entitled to the benefit of any provision contained in Part III of the Schedule is a holding company, the reference in Part II of the Schedule to consolidated accounts complying with the requirements of the Act shall, in relation to consolidated accounts of that company, be construed as referring to those requirements in so far only as they apply to the separate accounts of that company.

(j) Presentation of Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account

Whilst the form in which accounts are submitted to shareholders is (subject to compliance with the Companies Act) a matter within the discretion of directors, the following recommendations, made in October 1958 by the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales, are designed to indicate what is regarded as the best practice.

Balance Sheet

Headings for groups of items

The terms used in paragraphs 2, 3 and 4, of the Eighth Schedule to the Companies Act 1948, such as issued share capital, reserves, liabilities, fixed assets and current assets, are normally

appropriate headings for summaries and classifications. Other headings should be used if it is considered that they will be better for the purpose of presenting a true and fair view of the state of affairs of the company. The use of general main headings such as 'Liabilities' and 'Assets' is unnecessary.

Redeemable preference shares

In addition to the earliest date on which the company has power to redeem redeemable preference shares, other material facts relating to redemption of those shares should be indicated; examples are the latest date on which redemption may take place and any premium payable on redemption.

Reserve fund

The description 'reserve fund' should not be applied to a reserve unless it is represented by specifically earmarked investments (or other assets) realizable as and when required at not less than the amount of the 'reserve fund'. Exceptions arise from the statutory requirement to describe a 'capital redemption reserve fund' as such and from any provision of the memorandum or articles of association, or other instrument constituting or regulating a company, requiring a reserve to be described as a 'fund'.

Capital reserves

The expression 'capital reserves' should be used to describe reserves which for statutory reasons or because of the provisions of the memorandum or articles of a company or for other legal reasons are not free for distribution through the profit and loss account.

The expression 'capital reserves' may also be applied to other reserves which although legally distributable, are regarded by the directors as not available for distribution at the date of the balance sheet. Such a reserve shown as a capital reserve in one balance sheet may, owing to a change of circumstances, properly be shown in the next balance sheet as a revenue reserve.

Sub-division of revenue reserves (including unappropriated profits)

Where revenue reserves are retentions of distributable profits available for general use in the business and none of them is created in accordance with statutory requirements or in pursuance of any obligation or policy, the sub-division of such reserves under a variety of headings is unnecessary.

Additions to and withdrawals from reserves

All profits and losses of a revenue nature should normally be reflected in the profit and loss account. Additions to or utilizations of revenue reserves and the application of capital reserves to the relief of charges on revenue should therefore normally be passed through that account. They should be dealt with either as items entering into the ascertainment of the results shown for the year or as adjustments of the unappropriated balance from the accounts of the current and prior years as may be appropriate. This does not, however, prevent wholly exceptional items of material amount which do not relate to the accounting period from being taken direct to reserves if a true and fair view will be better presented in that way.

If the inclusion in the profit and loss account of capital losses and of realized capital profits (so far as these may lawfully be included) will facilitate the presentation of a true and fair view of the results of the transactions of the year they should be passed through that account.

When movements in reserves are not shown in the profit and loss account and are of material amount they should be disclosed in the balance sheet or in notes on the accounts. Such items may include movements on capital reserves not dealt with as mentioned above, transfers between reserves, transfers from reserves to share capital account and applications of reserves in writing-off items such as preliminary and issue expenses.

Sub-total of share capital and reserves

A sub-total of share capital and reserves, including any credit balance carried forward on profit and loss account, should be shown and any description should be factual, such as 'share capital and reserves'. Descriptions such as net worth, which lend themselves to being misunderstood as tending to suggest that a balance sheet purports to be a statement of values, or to show the value of the undertaking, should be avoided.

Adverse balance on profit and loss account

Available reserves should be appropriated to extinguish an adverse balance on profit and loss account. Where this practice is not adopted, the adverse balance should be grouped with and be a deduction in arriving at the sub-total of share capital and reserves. Preferably such deduction should be made first from revenue reserves; if these are insufficient then from the aggregate of revenue and capital reserves. If both are insufficient the adverse balance should be deducted from the aggregate of share capital and reserves.

Amounts set aside for future income tax

Amounts set aside for future income tax, whether described as reserves or not, should be shown separately and should preferably *not* be aggregated with reserves. Income tax assessable for any income tax year commencing after the balance sheet date should not be grouped with liabilities.

Provisions

Where the replacement of fixed assets is dealt with by making provision for renewals and charging the cost of replacement against the provision so made, the accumulated amount of provision for renewals, so far as not used, should be shown separately. Such a provision should not be shown as a deduction from the assets.

Where depreciation is provided on fixed assets, an amount set aside in recognition of the increased cost expected to be incurred in replacing fixed assets, as compared with the amount at which they are carried in the books, is not a 'provision'; it is a reserve and should be shown as such.

On a proper grouping of the balance sheet some provisions may not be suitable for aggregation with other provisions; for example, where some provisions are current liabilities and others are not. The statutory requirement (paragraph 6 of the Eighth Schedule) to give an 'aggregate' should not be treated as a restriction operating against the presentation of a true and fair view.

Reasonableness of provisions

Paragraph 27 (2) of the Eighth Schedule provides that where any amount written off or retained by way of providing for depreciation, renewals, or diminution in value of assets, or retained by way of providing for any known liability, is in excess of that which in the opinion of the directors is reasonably necessary for the purpose, the excess shall be treated as a reserve and not as a provision. Directors should be advised that an opinion expressed in accordance with paragraph 27 (2) should be based on a consideration of all relevant information and have regard to recognised accounting principles.

Grouping of liabilities and proposed dividends

Current liabilities and proposed dividends should normally be shown in one group classified under appropriate descriptions and will include *inter alia*:

- (a) trade liabilities, bills payable, accrued charges;
- (b) short-term loans;
- (c) bank loans and overdraft;
- (d) current taxation;
- (e) provision for any current liability of which the amount cannot be determined with substantial accuracy;

(f) proposed dividends (less income tax).

In respect of all liabilities other than current liabilities, a specific description, such as debenture stock, mortgages, or unsecured notes, should be given. The dates and material conditions of redemption or conversion should be indicated.

Secured liabilities

Paragraph 9 of the Eighth Schedule provides that where any liability is secured otherwise than by operation of law on any assets of the company, the fact that the liability is so secured shall be stated. In complying with this paragraph the word 'secured' should not be used without amplification if there is evidence from the documents that the charge on the assets is for an amount less than the liability.

Bank overdrafts

To comply with paragraph 8 (1) (d) of the Eighth Schedule the aggregate amount of bank loans and overdrafts must be shown under a separate heading. Where there are debit and credit bank balances with no legal right of set-off the full amounts of bank loans and overdrafts and of bank balances should be shown.

Contingent liabilities

Where some contingent liabilities are not suitable for aggregation with others the amount or estimated amount of each contingent liability or group of contingent liabilities should be shown if practicable.

Future capital expenditure

In a statement of the aggregate amount or estimated amount of contracts for capital expenditure, given to comply with paragraph 11 (6) of the Eighth Schedule, the description 'contracts for capital expenditure' is appropriate and, as a description of this item, is preferable to 'commitments for capital expenditure' which may have a wider significance.

Where a company has entered into contracts for only part of the work on a project of capital expenditure a matter which directors might be recommended to consider is whether, in addition to stating the amount of contracts outstanding, further information might usefully be given indicating the estimated total expenditure involved in the project they have approved.

Other forward contracts

The existence of uncompleted or forward contracts for the purchase and sale of goods or services in the ordinary course of business is not generally referred to in the balance sheet, but consideration should be given to the possibility of losses arising from open positions on forward contracts and the necessity for providing for such losses.

Assets

Paragraph 4 (2) of the Eighth Schedule requires that fixed assets shall be distinguished from current assets. The division of assets into either 'fixed' or 'current' is not always practicable and could be misleading. (This is sometimes the case with interests in subsidiaries.) Where neither 'fixed' nor 'current' is a true and fair description, the assets should not be described as either but the nature of the assets should be stated clearly.

Where an asset is classified as neither fixed nor current the method of arriving at and stating the amount of a fixed asset, set out in paragraph 4 (3) and (except in the case of interests in subsidiaries) paragraph 5 of the Eighth Schedule, should be applied.

Fixed assets

The fundamental characteristic of fixed assets is that they are held with the object of earning revenue, directly or indirectly, and not for the purpose of sale in the ordinary course of business. They will normally include such assets as:

(a) goodwill, patents and trade-marks;

- (b) freehold land and buildings;
- (c) Leaseholds;
- (d) plant, machinery and equipment;
- (e) investments intended to be held continuously by the business.

Interests in subsidiaries

Interests in subsidiaries, which may consist of shares in subsidiaries and amounts owing by subsidiaries in respect of debentures or otherwise, should generally be shown as one group in the balance sheet of the holding company. It may, however, be desirable to group with current assets the aggregate of the temporary advances and/or the amounts due on current accounts which are regularly paid, provided it is possible to segregate the whole of such amounts from other indebtedness of the subsidiaries to the holding company.

A holding company's indebtedness to its subsidiaries should normally be grouped with liabilities but should be stated separately. Such indebtedness may, however, be shown as a deduction from interests in subsidiaries in appropriate circumstances, for example where the subsidiaries lend their surplus funds to the holding company.

Fellow subsidiaries

Shares held by a subsidiary in a fellow subsidiary should be shown separately.

Associated companies

Where interests in associated companies are material they should be stated separately under the general heading of 'Trade Investments' or under a heading of their own.

Current assets

Items classified as current assets should include:

- (a) stock-in-trade and work in progress;
- (b) trade and other debtors, bills receivable and prepayments (other than those on capital expenditure or of a long-term nature);
- (c) quoted and other realizable investments (other than trade investments, investments in subsidiaries and fellow subsidiaries and other investments intended to be held continuously even though they may happen to be quoted or otherwise readily realizable);
- (d) tax reserve certificates;
- (e) bank balances and cash.

Overseas assets

If there are material amounts of assets in overseas countries where restrictions on remittances are in force this fact should be disclosed and there should be given such other information, if any, as may be needed to give a true and fair view.

Investments

(a) Classification

Investments which it is intended to hold continuously, e.g., trade investments and interests in subsidiaries, should be classified as *fixed assets*.

Investments which are fixed assets may be distinguished from other fixed assets by showing them under a separate heading.

Where interests in associated companies are material they should be stated separately under the general heading of 'Trade Investments' or under a heading of their own.

'Trade investments' comprise:

- (a) investments acquired and held primarily in order to protect the company's goodwill, or to facilitate or further its own existing business, rather than for income or appreciation in value;

(b) investments representing a substantial but not a controlling interest in another company, particularly where the company has the right to appoint its own representatives to take part in the arrangement. Such holdings are often referred to as 'Investments in associated companies'.

Quoted and other readily realizable investments (other than trade investments, investments in subsidiaries and fellow subsidiaries, and other investments intended to be held continuously, even though they happen to be quoted or are otherwise readily realizable), should be classified as *current assets*.

When calculating the market value of a quoted investment by reference to a stock exchange quotation, it is usual to use the mean of the two quotations shown in the *Stock Exchange Official List*. If any other basis is used it may be desirable to indicate its nature.

Special considerations applicable to holding companies

Interests in subsidiaries, which may consist of shares in subsidiaries and amounts owing by subsidiaries in respect of debentures or otherwise, should generally be shown as one group in the balance sheet of the holding company. It may, however, be desirable to group with current assets the aggregate of the temporary advances and/or amounts due on current accounts which are regularly paid, provided it is possible to segregate the whole of such amounts from other indebtedness of the subsidiaries to the holding company.

A holding company's indebtedness to its subsidiaries should normally be grouped with liabilities, but should be stated separately. Such indebtedness may, however, be shown as a deduction from interests in subsidiaries in appropriate circumstances, e.g., where the subsidiaries lend their surplus funds to the holding company.

(b) *Valuation*

Investments should normally be stated in the balance sheet at cost, subject to any necessary provision for diminution in value.

Provision should be made for diminution in value of investments:

- (i) where the market value at the date of the balance sheet of investments treated as current assets is lower than cost; and
- (ii) where the value of investments treated as fixed assets appears to have decreased permanently below cost.

Where an undertaking in which an important trade investment is held has retained and accumulated profits on such a scale that the income from the investment and the amount at which it appears in the balance sheet provide a wholly inadequate value of the investment, it may be necessary to give some explanation in the accounts to ensure that they show a fair view.

In regard to interests in subsidiaries the requirements of paragraph 4 (3) of the Eighth Schedule to state the methods used to arrive at the amounts at which the fixed assets are stated should be complied with. This applies whether such interests are grouped with fixed assets or shown as a separate group; it does not apply to any part of such interests grouped with current assets.

Where a *sinking fund policy* is shown in the balance sheet otherwise than at surrender value the surrender value should be shown by a note.

Treasury bills should be shown as current assets and should be stated at cost or at their face value discounted at the market rate.

Profit and Loss Account

Profit or loss of the year

Where the turnover is not disclosed the profit and loss account should commence with the trading surplus or deficit of the year computed *after* charging depreciation and all other trading expenses. Depreciation and other items which have been charged or brought to credit

in arriving at the trading surplus or deficit, but which are disclosed to comply with the *Companies Act, 1948*, or because the directors consider that they should be disclosed, should be shown by notes on the account or by an unextended inset or in a 'box' immediately after the trading surplus or deficit of the year.

Other income and non-trading expenditure of the year should then be shown. If the balance on the account at this stage shows a profit it may be described as 'profit before taxation' and against this amount there should be charged the taxation based on this profit. The balance arrived at is the 'profit after taxation'.

Items of an exceptional or non-recurrent nature should be dealt with in such a way as to show in the particular circumstances a true and fair view of the results of the year. Such items, other than tax adjustments of earlier years, may be dealt with as follows:

- (a) where the items arise from the trading operations of the company, they may be dealt with in arriving at the trading surplus or deficit and disclosed separately;
- (b) they may be shown separately in the section of the account which includes other income and non-trading expenditure of the year;
- (c) they may be shown separately after the 'profit after taxation';
- (d) they may in appropriate circumstances be omitted from the profit and loss account and taken direct to reserve.

Where exceptional or non-recurrent items have been taken into account before arriving at 'profit before taxation', any tax charges or relief arising because of the items should be included with the tax charge on such profit.

Where exceptional or non-current items are not taken into account before arriving at 'profit before taxation', the effect of these items on the account shown in respect of tax should be considered; where appropriate the relevant tax charges or reliefs should be shown as separate adjustments to the respective items.

Whether brought into the account with the tax charge of the year or shown after 'profit after taxation' any adjustment of the tax charge of previous years should be separately disclosed, if material.

Depreciation of fixed assets

The requirements in paragraph 14 (2) of the Eighth Schedule should be applied to each class of fixed assets and not to fixed assets as a whole: this requirement is that, if depreciation or replacement of fixed assets is provided for by some method other than depreciation charge or provision for renewals, or is not provided for, the profit and loss account must state the method by which it is provided for or the fact that it is not provided for, as the case may be.

Annual payments

Debenture, loan and note interest, royalties and other annual charges payable under deduction of income tax should be charged gross in the profit and loss account.

Income from investments

Dividends, interest and other income should be brought to credit gross and should therefore include income tax suffered by deduction, or deemed for income tax purposes to have been suffered by deduction, on such income. The relative amount of income tax should be included as part of the charge for income tax for the year.

Income from subsidiaries

Although paragraph 12 (1) (g) of the Eighth Schedule requires the amount of income from investment to be shown, paragraph 15 (2) (a) excludes income from investments in subsidiaries from this requirement. Income (gross) from subsidiaries may, with appropriate narrative, properly be included in the trading surplus of the holding company and need not be shown separately in the profit and loss account of that company unless it is necessary to do so in order to present a true and fair view.

Subvention payments

A subvention payment (Section 20 of the *Finance Act, 1953*) made by a holding company to a subsidiary can for accounting purposes be regarded as the converse of the receipt of a dividend from a subsidiary. Therefore:

- (a) where a holding company has given or received a subvention payment it need not be shown separately in the profit and loss account of the holding company provided that the income from investments in subsidiaries is included in the trading result and there is appropriate description of that result;
- (b) a subvention payment should normally be shown separately in the profit and loss account of a subsidiary which has received or given a subvention from or to the holding company or a fellow subsidiary. This disclosure may, however, properly be omitted where trading results have been affected materially by an arbitrary course of dealing in respect of inter-company transactions.

Dividends paid and proposed

In addition to the statutory requirement that the aggregate amount of dividends paid or proposed shall be shown in the profit and loss account, the dividends on each class of shares should be shown, distinguishing between dividends already paid and dividends recommended. The rates (per cent or per share) at which dividends have been declared or are proposed should preferably be stated. It may be helpful to shareholders to state the dates of the payment of the dividends.

The amounts shown in respect of dividends should be the net amounts, whether they are declared as 'subject to income tax', 'less income tax' or 'free of income tax'.

Comparative figures

Where an item appears in a note on the accounts or in a document annexed thereto the corresponding amount for the immediately preceding year should be shown.

Where the accounts do not include an item corresponding to an item which appeared in the accounts for the preceding year, the amount for that earlier year should nevertheless be shown, except that where the item appeared in a note on or document annexed to the accounts for the immediately preceding year it may not be necessary to repeat the item unless its omission could cause the comparison of the two years' accounts to be misleading.

If items in the accounts have been re-grouped, subdivided or otherwise rearranged as compared with the accounts for the immediately preceding year, then the items for that year should be similarly rearranged for the purpose of showing the comparative figure.

Where a change in the basis of accounting affects materially the comparability of the profit and loss account of the year with that of the preceding year appropriate information should be included in the accounts by way of a note or otherwise. This information should explain the nature of the change and should indicate either the extent to which the account of the preceding year would have been affected had the revised basis been in use in that year, or, as may be appropriate, the extent to which the account of the current year would have been affected had no change been made.

Notes on the accounts

Where a note relates to an item in the accounts there should be a reference against that item to the note.

Where information is given in the director's report instead of in the accounts the relative paragraphs in the directors' report should be clearly identifiable and specially referred to in the accounts.

A copy of the chairman's statement, even if it accompanies the accounts, is not an appropriate document in which to give information which should be given in the accounts.

Illustration

At June 30th, 1958, the books of Veneering Manufacturers, Ltd., a public limited company, showed the following balances:

| | £ | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|
| 10,000 8% Cumulative Preference Shares (Authorised 10,000) ... | | 10,000 |
| £40,000 Ordinary Stock (Authorised £50,000) | | 40,000 |
| Freehold Land and Buildings at cost | 22,420 | |
| Plant, Machinery and Tools (cost £24,000) | 12,000 | |
| Office Furniture and Fittings (cost £3,000) | 2,200 | |
| Goodwill at cost | 10,000 | |
| Stock of Raw Materials, July 1st, 1957 | 9,320 | |
| Stock of Finished Goods, July 1st, 1957 | 1,270 | |
| Work in Progress do. | 920 | |
| Sundry Debtors | 10,700 | |
| 4% Debenture Stock | | 15,000 |
| Debenture Interest, half-year to December 31st, 1957 (gross) ... | 300 | |
| Shares in Subsidiary Company, 15,000 Ordinary Shares, at cost | 18,750 | |
| Tax Reserve Certificates | 8,000 | |
| Interest on Tax Reserve Certificates | | 30 |
| Interest and Dividends on Investments (gross): | | |
| Trade | | 100 |
| Quoted | | 300 |
| Dividend on Shares in Subsidiary Company (gross) | | 3,800 |
| Share Premium Account | | 3,640 |
| General Reserve | | 10,000 |
| Trade Investments at cost | 3,200 | |
| Quoted Investments at cost (market value as at June 30th, 1958 (£8,680) | 8,020 | |
| Profit and Loss Account | | 3,090 |
| Amount owing to Subsidiary Company | | 7,680 |
| Cash at Bankers and in Hand | 8,597 | |
| Sundry Creditors | | 7,790 |
| Sales | | 67,100 |
| Purchases | 31,960 | |
| Carriage Inwards | 1,890 | |
| Wages and National Insurance | 13,790 | |
| Rates | 630 | |
| Salesmen's Salaries | 800 | |
| Repairs to Premises | 60 | |
| Salaries (including Directors' Salaries £3,000) | 4,130 | |
| Postages and Telephone | 180 | |
| Printing and Stationery | 40 | |
| Legal and Professional Charges | 80 | |
| Sundry Trade Expenses | 50 | |
| Directors' Fees | 60 | |
| Bank Charges | 10 | |
| Commissions | 520 | |
| Power and Lighting | 670 | |

Carried forward

£170,567

£168,530

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | Brought forward ... | £170,567 | £168,530 |
| Insurances—Factory | | 720 | |
| Office | | 40 | |
| Repairs to Plant | | 850 | |
| Preference Share Dividend, half-year to December 31st, 1957 (net) | | 230 | |
| Income Tax Account | | | 3,877 |
| | | <u>£172,407</u> | <u>£172,407</u> |

The debentures are secured by a floating charge on the assets of the company.

Stocks, etc., as at June 30th, 1958, were as follows:

| | |
|-------------------------|--------|
| Raw Materials | £7,640 |
| Work in Progress | 1,280 |
| Finished Goods | 4,010 |

Accrued charges are to be provided for as under:

| | |
|---------------------------|------|
| Power and Lighting | £240 |
| Commissions | 160 |
| Audit Fee | 100 |

A provision of £250 is to be made against doubtful debts.

Unexpired insurances totalled £110 and rates amounting to £240 had been paid for the half-year to September 30th, 1958. Depreciation is to be written off plant, machinery and tools and office furniture and fittings at the rates of 20% and 10% respectively on the book values.

The balance on Income Tax Account is made up as follows:

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Amount brought forward for Schedule D liability for 1958-59 | £5,535 |
| Tax recouped by deduction from £300 | |
| Debenture Interest | 127 |
| | <u>5,662</u> |
| Less Tax deducted from Income on Investments | 1,785 |
| | <u>£3,877</u> |

Schedule D income tax payable for 1958-59 was agreed at £5,395. The following estimated liabilities to taxation on the current profits are to be taken into account:—

| | |
|--------------------|--------|
| Income tax | £4,980 |
| Profits tax | 1,650 |

The directors recommend that, after provision for taxation based on the profits of the year, the dividend for the half-year ended June 30th, 1958, on the preference shares be paid, less tax, and that a dividend of 12½%, less tax, be paid on the ordinary stock.

The company has contracts on hand for the supply of heavy machinery to the value of £8,000, which are not to be provided for in the accounts.

The directors received salaries from the subsidiary company amounting to £1,500 during the year.

Prepare:

1. Manufacturing, Trading and Profit and Loss Account for the year ended June 30th, 1958, for presentation to the Directors; and

2. Profit and Loss Account for the year ended and Balance Sheet as at, 30th June, 1958, in a form suitable for presentation to the members, embodying the requirements of the Companies Act, 1948. Comparative figures and group accounts can be ignored. Income tax to be taken into account at 8s. 6d. in £.

VENEERING MANUFACTURERS, LTD.
MANUFACTURING, TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30TH JUNE, 1958.
(For presentation to the Directors.)

| | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Materials— | £ | £ | By Cost of Goods Produced, transferred to Trading Account | £ |
| Stock, 1st July, 1957 | 9,320 | | | 53,730 |
| Purchases | 31,960 | | | |
| Carriage Inwards | 1,890 | | | |
| | <u>43,170</u> | | | |
| Less Stock 30th June, 1958 | 7,640 | | | |
| | | 35,530 | | |
| „ Wages and National Insurance | | 13,790 | | |
| „ Power and Lighting | 910 | | | |
| „ Factory Insurance | 610 | | | |
| „ Repairs to Plant | 850 | | | |
| „ Depreciation of Plant, etc. | 2,400 | | | |
| | <u>4,770</u> | | | |
| | | 54,090 | | |
| By Work in Progress 30th June, 1958 | 1,280 | | | |
| Less Work in Progress 1st July, 1957 | 920 | | | |
| | <u>360</u> | | | |
| | | <u>£53,730</u> | | <u>£53,730</u> |
| To Finished Goods— | | | By Sales | 67,100 |
| Stock, 1st July, 1957 | 1,270 | | | |
| Cost of Goods produced | 53,730 | | | |
| | <u>55,000</u> | | | |
| Less Stock, 30th June, 1958 | 4,010 | | | |
| | | 50,990 | | |
| „ Cost of Sales | | 16,110 | | |
| Gross Profit c/d. | | <u>£67,100</u> | | <u>£67,100</u> |
| To Establishment— | | | By Gross Profit b/d. | 16,110 |
| Rates | £510 | | | |
| Repairs to Premises | 60 | | | |
| Insurances | 40 | | | |
| Depreciation of Office Furniture | 220 | | | |
| | <u>830</u> | | | |
| „ Administration— | | | | |
| Directors' Emoluments | 3,060 | | | |
| Salaries | 1,930 | | | |
| Commissions | 690 | | | |
| Audit Fee | 100 | | | |
| Postages and Telephone | 180 | | | |
| Printing and Stationery | 40 | | | |
| Legal and Professional Charges | 80 | | | |
| Sundry Trade Expenses | 50 | | | |
| Bank Charges | 10 | | | |
| | <u>6,130</u> | | | |
| „ Finance— | | | | |
| Interest on Debentures | 600 | | | |
| Provision for Doubtful Debts | 250 | | | |
| | <u>850</u> | | | |
| „ Net Trading Profit for year c/d. | 8,300 | | | |
| | <u>£16,110</u> | | | <u>£16,110</u> |
| To Taxation on profits for year— | | | By Net Trading Profit for year | 8,300 |
| Profits Tax | £1,650 | | Interest on Tax Reserve Certificates | 30 |
| Income Tax | 6,510 | | Dividend from Subsidiary Company | 3,800 |
| | <u>8,160</u> | | Income on Trade Investments | 100 |
| | | | Income on Quoted Investments | 300 |
| „ Balance, being Net Income for year, after Taxation | 4,370 | | | |
| | <u>£12,530</u> | | | <u>£12,530</u> |
| To Dividends (less tax): | | | By Net Income for year, after Taxation, b/d. | 4,370 |
| Paid—8% Preference, half-year to 31st Dec. 1957 | 230 | | Balance brought forward from last year | £3,090 |
| Proposed— | | | Add Over provision for Income Tax now written back | 140 |
| 8% Preference, half-year to 30th June 1958 | 230 | | | 3,230 |
| Ordinary, 12½% for year to 30th June 1958 | 2,875 | | | <u>£7,600</u> |
| | <u>3,335</u> | | | |
| „ Balance carried forward | 4,265 | | | |
| | <u>£7,600</u> | | | |

VENEERING MANUFACTURERS LTD.
PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30TH JUNE, 1958.
(For presentation to the Members.)

| | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------|----|------------------------------------------------------|
| | | £ | | £ |
| To | Provision for Depreciation | 2,620 | By | Net Trading Profit for year, <i>less</i> expenses of |
| .. | Interest on Debentures | 600 | | earning same, other than those shown in this |
| .. | Audit Fee | 100 | | account |
| .. | Directors' Emoluments— | | .. | Interest on Tax Reserve Certificates |
| Fees | £60 | | .. | Dividend from Subsidiary Company |
| Managerial | 3,000 | | .. | Income on Trade Investments |
| | | | .. | Income on Quoted Investments |
| | | 3,060 | | |
| | Paid by Subsidiary Company | 1,500 | | |
| | | <u>£4,560</u> | | |
| .. | United Kingdom taxation on profits for year— | | | |
| Profits Tax | £1,650 | | | |
| Income Tax | 6,510 | | | |
| | | 8,160 | | |
| .. | Balance, being Income for year, after Taxation | 4,370 | | |
| | | <u>£18,910</u> | | <u>£18,910</u> |
| | | | | |
| To | Dividends (<i>less</i> tax): | | | |
| Paid - 8% Preference, half-year to 31st | | | | |
| Dec. 1957 | £230 | | By | Income for year, after Taxation |
| Proposed - 8% Preference, half year to | | | .. | Balance brought forward from last year |
| 30th June 1958 | 230 | | .. | Add Over-provision for Income Tax |
| Ordinary, 12½%, year to 30th June 1958 | 2,875 | | | |
| | | 3,335 | | |
| .. | Balance carried forward | 4,265 | | |
| | | <u>£7,600</u> | | <u>£7,600</u> |

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 30TH JUNE, 1958.

| SHARE CAPITAL AND RESERVES: | Author- used £ | Issued and Fully Paid £ | FIXED ASSETS— | Cost £ | Depreci- ation £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| SHARE CAPITAL— | | | Goodwill | 10,000 | | 10,000 |
| 8% Cumulative Preference Shares | | | Freehold Land and Buildings | 22,420 | | 22,420 |
| of £1 each | 10,000 | 10,000 | Plant, Machinery and Tools | 24,000 | 14,400 | 9,600 |
| Ordinary Stock | 50,000 | 40,000 | Office Furniture and Fittings | 3,000 | 1,020 | 1,980 |
| | <u>£60,000</u> | <u>50,000</u> | | <u>£59,420</u> | <u>15,420</u> | <u>44,000</u> |
| CAPITAL RESERVE— | | | SHARES IN SUBSIDIARY COMPANY, at | | | |
| Share Premium Account | | 3,640 | Cost | | | 18,750 |
| REVENUE RESERVES | | 14,265 | TRADE INVESTMENTS, at cost | | | 3,200 |
| | | 67,905 | CURRENT ASSETS— | | | |
| AMOUNT SET ASIDE FOR FUTURE IN- COME TAX | | 4,980 | Stocks and Work in Progress | 12,930 | | |
| DEBENTURES— | | | Debtors and Prepayments | 10,680 | | |
| 4% Debenture Stock (Secured) | | 15,000 | Quoted Investments | 8,020 | | |
| CURRENT LIABILITIES— | | | (Market Value £8,680) | | | |
| Trade Creditors | 7,790 | | Tax Reserve Certificates | 8,000 | | |
| Subsidiary Company | 7,680 | | Cash at Bank and in Hand | 8,597 | | 48,227 |
| Expenses | 672 | | NOTE: | | | |
| Current Taxation | 7,045 | | (1) No provision has been made for | | | |
| Proposed Dividends (Net): | | | depreciation on land and build- ings. | | | |
| Preference Shares | 230 | | (2) Contracts for capital expendi- ture at 30th June, 1958, not provided for, amount to £8,000. | | | |
| Ordinary Stock | 2,875 | | | | | |
| | | 26,292 | | | | |
| | | <u>£114,177</u> | | | | <u>£114,177</u> |

Notes: (1) The charge for Income Tax is found as follows:

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Schedule D liability | 4,980 |
| Tax deducted from Income on Investments, £4,200 at 8/6 | 1,785 |
| | 6,765 |
| Less Recouped on Debenture Interest, £600 at 8/6 | 255 |
| | <u>£6,510</u> |

(2) The overprovision for Income Tax in the previous year is £5,535—£5,395 = £140.

(3) Liability for expenses comprises:

| | |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Accrued Charges | £500 |
| Half-year Debentures interest, <i>less</i> tax | 172 |
| | <u>£672</u> |

4) Current taxation includes:

| | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| Schedule D, 1958-59 | £5,395 |
| Profits Tax | 1,650 |
| | <u>£7,045</u> |

In recent years many companies have adopted the practice of presenting their accounts in the form of financial statements, which it is considered are more easily understandable by persons having little or no knowledge of accountancy. If this procedure were followed by Veneering Manufacturers Ltd., the Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet shown above might appear as under.

VENEERING MANUFACTURERS, LTD.

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30TH JUNE, 1958.

| | £ | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------|--------|
| TRADING PROFIT FOR YEAR | | | 8,300 |
| after charging all expenses of earning same including: | | | |
| Provision for Depreciation | 2,620 | | |
| Interest on Debentures | 600 | | |
| Audit Fee | 100 | | |
| Directors' Emoluments | | | |
| Fees | £60 | | |
| Managerial | 4,500 | | |
| | 4,560 | | |
| Less Paid by Subsidiary Company | 1,500 | | |
| | 3,060 | | |
| INCOME FROM INVESTMENTS: | | | |
| Subsidiary Company | | 3,800 | |
| Trade Investments | | 100 | |
| Quoted Investments | | 300 | |
| Tax Reserve Certificates | | 30 | |
| | | | 4,230 |
| NET INCOME FOR YEAR BEFORE TAXATION | | | 12,530 |
| Less UNITED KINGDOM TAXATION based on profits for the year: | | | |
| Profits Tax | | 1,650 | |
| Income Tax | | 6,510 | |
| | | | 8,160 |
| NET INCOME FOR YEAR AFTER TAXATION | | | 4,370 |
| Add Balance brought forward from last year | | 3,090 | |
| Overprovision for Income Tax written back | | 140 | |
| | | | 3,230 |
| | | | 7,600 |
| Less APPROPRIATIONS: | | | |
| Dividends (less tax): | | | |
| Paid 8% Preference Shares, half-year to 31st December, 1957... | | 230 | |
| Proposed 8% Preference Shares, half year to 30th June, 1958... | | 230 | |
| Ordinary Stock - 12½% year to 30th June, 1958 | | 2,875 | |
| | | | 3,335 |
| | | | 14,265 |

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 30TH JUNE, 1958

| | Authorised £ | Issued and fully paid £ |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| SHARE CAPITAL AND RESERVES: | | |
| CAPITAL: | | |
| Ordinary Stock | 50,000 | 40,000 |
| 8% Cumulative Preference Shares of £1 each | 10,000 | 10,000 |
| | £60,000 | 50,000 |
| CAPITAL RESERVES: | | |
| Share Premium Account | | 3,640 |
| REVENUE RESERVES | | 14,265 |
| | | 67,905 |
| AMOUNT SET ASIDE FOR FUTURE INCOME TAX | | 4,980 |
| DEBENTURES: | | |
| 4% Debenture Stock (Secured) | | 15,000 |
| | | £87,885 |

Represented by:

| | Cost £ | Depreciation £ | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| FIXED ASSETS : | | | |
| Goodwill | 10,000 | — | 10,000 |
| Freehold Land and Buildings | 22,420 | — | 22,420 |
| Plant, Machinery and Tools | 24,000 | 14,400 | 9,600 |
| Office Furniture and Fittings | 3,000 | 1,020 | 1,980 |
| | <u>£59,420</u> | <u>£15,420</u> | <u>44,000</u> |
| SHARES IN SUBSIDIARY COMPANY, at cost | | | 18,750 |
| TRADE INVESTMENTS, at cost | | | 3,200 |
| CURRENT ASSETS : | | | |
| Stock and Work in Progress | | 12,930 | |
| Debtors and Prepayments | | 10,680 | |
| Quoted Investments (Market Value £8,680) | | 8,020 | |
| Tax Reserve Certificates | | 8,000 | |
| Cash at Bank and in Hand | | 8,597 | |
| | | <u>48,227</u> | |
| Less CURRENT LIABILITIES : | | | |
| Trade Creditors | £7,790 | | |
| Subsidiary Company Expenses | 7,680 | | |
| Current Taxation | 672 | | |
| | <u>7,045</u> | | |
| Proposed Dividends (less tax): | | | |
| Preference Shares | £230 | | |
| Ordinary Stock | 2,875 | | |
| | <u>3,105</u> | | |
| | | <u>26,292</u> | |
| | | | <u>21,935</u> |
| | | | <u>£87,885</u> |

NOTES.

- (1) No provision has been made for depreciation on land and buildings.
- (2) Contracts for capital expenditure at 30th June, 1958, not provided for amount to £8,000.

..... Directors.

Specimens of the published accounts of a number of well-known public companies are given in Appendix B.

(k) Contingent Liabilities

This expression implies that there are certain transactions the result of which is not yet known, which may or may not involve the payment of money at some subsequent date, or that the amount of a liability is dependent upon some factor not yet decided. The Companies Act, 1948, requires a note to be made on the Balance Sheet of the general nature of contingent liabilities not provided for in the accounts and, where practicable, of the aggregate amount or estimated amount of these liabilities, if it is material.

The most familiar example of a contingent liability is that in respect of bills receivable which have been discounted but have not yet matured at the date of the Balance Sheet. If any such bills are dishonoured by the acceptors the holders will have a right of recourse against the drawers or prior indorsers. Since it is not known at the date of the Balance Sheet whether or not outstanding bills will be met in due course, a note should be inserted stating that: 'There is a contingent liability in respect of bills under discount, amounting to £'. When, however, there is a definite expectation that certain of the bills will not be met, provision should be made

for the anticipated loss. To the extent that provision is made in the accounts, it will be unnecessary to refer to the contingent liability by way of note on the Balance Sheet.

Other instances of contingent liabilities are the uncalled liability on partly paid shares held in other companies, liabilities under guarantees, or in respect of pending actions at law, etc. Contingent liabilities may also exist in respect of contracts for work only partly performed, trade contracts, etc., but it is usual only to note on the face of the Balance Sheet the existence of those contingent liabilities which, should they accrue, might involve actual loss to the business. Other contingent liabilities, which, when they accrue, will result in the acquisition of an asset of corresponding value, are sometimes omitted; though a note should be made where the amount involved is of any consequence.

Where dividends remain unpaid on cumulative preference shares, a note of the amount thereof must be made on the Balance Sheet. These (so called) 'arrears' are not actual liabilities, but the fact of their existence is important to the members in ascertaining their respective interests in the company. The amount must be stated before deduction of income tax, unless the dividend is payable 'free of tax.'

(1) Dividends

The profits of a limited company may be distributed among the members in the form of dividends at the discretion of the directors and in accordance with the articles of the company.

In a few cases the dividend is computed on the nominal value of the shares, but usually the articles provide that the dividend shall be calculated on the amount for the time being paid up on the shares, so that no dividend would be payable on any calls in arrear. Quite commonly, however, interest is chargeable on calls in arrear, and the dividend may then be made payable on the amount called up, if permitted by the articles. If Table A applies, dividends can only be paid on the amounts paid up in all cases. Where moneys have been paid in advance of calls, Table A (1948) provides that such payments shall *not* be treated as paid up thereon. No dividend can therefore be paid on calls paid in advance, unless Table 'A' is excluded and the company's special articles permit such a payment.

A dividend is not due to members until declared by the company in general meeting, so that even preference dividends, though usually payable at fixed dates, are not recoverable against the company before declaration. The directors are usually empowered by the articles to pay interim dividends, but although directors may *pay* such dividends, they do not become debts enforceable against the company until they have been *declared* by the company in general meeting.

It is usual for companies to include in their accounts the proposed dividends and other appropriations which will be recommended by the directors for declaration at the general meeting. Such appropriations are debited to Appropriation Account and credited to Dividend Account(s), the latter being included as a liability on the Balance Sheet. Although this practice may be theoretically inaccurate (a liability being shown which may not become a debt, since the meeting might refuse to declare

the dividend or might reduce it), it is, however, so common that it must be accepted as conventional, and it has now received statutory authority in the Companies Act, 1948, which requires the amount of proposed dividends to be shown in the Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet.

The usual procedure in important businesses is to transfer the amount of cash payable in respect of any dividend declared to a special Dividend Bank Account, against which the dividend warrants are drawn.

In the financial books, an account is raised in respect of each dividend declared, details of the amounts due to individual shareholders being recorded in a dividends book or on dividend sheets. Dividends unclaimed are revealed by the balances appearing from time to time on the Dividend Accounts, and these are periodically transferred to an Unclaimed Dividends Account, which will appear as a liability in the Balance Sheet.

Where a company has issued share warrants to bearer, dividend coupons are usually attached thereto, and upon the notification by advertisement of the declaration of a dividend, the appropriate coupon should be detached by the holder of a warrant and paid into his bank for collection in the same manner as a cheque. If no coupons are attached to the warrants, the latter must be deposited with the secretary of the company who, after verification, will return the share warrant together with a cheque for the amount of the dividend.

Unless dividends are declared 'free of tax', income tax at the standard rate must be deducted and only the net amount of the dividend paid. The dividend warrant must state the gross amount or its equivalent, the rate and amount of tax deducted, and the net amount payable, even where the payment is 'free of tax' (Section 199, Income Tax Act, 1952).

Periodically, the total amount of the dividend warrants which have been presented for payment will be ascertained from the dividend pass book, credited to the dividend cash book, and debited to the appropriate Dividend Account, the balance of which at any time will represent the amount of dividends unclaimed. These should be treated as a liability in the Balance Sheet, the balance of cash as per the dividend pass book appearing as an asset of an equal amount.

The dividends payable are listed on dividend sheets, of which a specimen appears in the illustration given below. These sheets, which provide the data from which the dividend warrants are prepared, are written up from the share register, after all transfers have been recorded therein. The total of the *Net Dividend* column is the amount to be transferred from the general bank account to the dividend bank account. The warrants presented and paid through this account are ticked up on the dividend sheets, and any unticked items at any time represent dividends unclaimed, the total of which should agree with the balance on the Dividend Account.

Illustration

W. Ltd. has an issued capital of £100,000, all in ordinary shares of £1 each, and prepares accounts annually to 31st March.

In December, 1958, the company declared a dividend of 10 per cent., less tax, payable on 20th December, and instructed the company's bankers on the same day to transfer the sum required to pay the dividend to a special Dividend Account.

On 31st March, 1959, the dividend warrants had all been presented for payment, with the exception of two, for £5 15s. 0d. and £23 0s. 0d. respectively.

You are required:

(a) To give a ruling, with two specimen entries, of a dividend sheet suitable for use in recording the dividend; and

(b) To set out the ledger entries involved, including the Dividend Bank Account, bringing down the balances as on 31st March, 1959. Income Tax is to be taken into account at 8s. 6d. in the £.

DIVIDEND SHEET

DIVIDEND FOR YEAR ENDING 31st MARCH, 1959

No. of Dividend....40.... Rate: 10 per cent. Payable 20th December, 1958

| Members' Names and Addresses | Share Register Folio | Number of Shares | Dividend | | | Warrant No. | Special Instructions and Remarks |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------|----------|------------|---------|-------------|--------------------------------------------|
| | | | Gross | Tax at 8/6 | Net | | |
| | | | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | | |
| A. Jones, 14 High Street, Moxton | 1 | 1,000 | 100 0 0 | 42 10 0 | 57 10 0 | 681 | |
| B. Robinson The Hollies, Wroxton. | 2 | 660 | 66 0 0 | 28 1 0 | 37 19 0 | 482 | Payable to Barclays Bank Ltd. Head Office. |

DIVIDEND No. 40 ACCOUNT

| | | £ | s. | d. | | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------|---------------------------------|---------------|----------|----------|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|----------|
| 1959 | | | | | 1959 | | | | |
| Mar. 31 | To Dividend No. 40 Bank Account | 5,721 | 5 | 0 | Mar. 31 | By Profit and Loss Appropriation Account—Dividend of 10 per cent. on £100,000, less tax at 8/6 in £ declared 20th Dec., 1958 | 5,750 | 0 | 0 |
| | „ Unclaimed Dividends Account | 28 | 15 | 0 | | | | | |
| | | <u>£5,750</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> | | | <u>£5,750</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> |

DIVIDEND No. 40 BANK ACCOUNT

| | | £ | s. | d. | | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------|-------------------------|---------------|----------|----------|---------|-------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|----------|
| 1958 | | | | | 1959 | | | | |
| Dec. 20 | To General Bank Account | 5,750 | 0 | 0 | Mar. 31 | By Dividend No. 40 Account—Dividends Paid | 5,721 | 5 | 0 |
| | | | | | | „ Balance c/d. | 28 | 15 | 0 |
| | | <u>£5,750</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> | | | <u>£5,750</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> |
| 1959 | | | | | | | | | |
| April 1 | To Balance b/d. | 28 | 15 | 0 | | | | | |

UNCLAIMED DIVIDENDS ACCOUNT

| | | £ | s. | d. | | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------|-----------------|------------|-----------|----------|---------|--------------------------------------------|------------|-----------|----------|
| 1959 | | | | | 1959 | | | | |
| Mar. 31 | To Balance c/d. | 28 | 15 | 0 | Mar. 31 | By Dividend No. 40—Warrants not presented— | | | |
| | | | | | | A | 5 | 15 | 0 |
| | | | | | | B | 23 | 0 | 0 |
| | | <u>£28</u> | <u>15</u> | <u>0</u> | | | <u>£28</u> | <u>15</u> | <u>0</u> |
| | | | | | 1959 | | | | |
| | | | | | Apr. 1 | By Balance b/d. | 28 | 15 | 0 |

PROFIT AND LOSS APPROPRIATION ACCOUNT

| 1959 Mar. 31 | To Dividend of 10 per cent. less tax, on 100,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each | £ s. d. 5,750 0 0 | | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--|--|--|--|--|

(m) The treatment of Taxation in the Accounts of Companies

The following is a summary of the recommendations on this important subject made by the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales in October 1958.

Basis of the charge and of amounts provided and set aside for income tax

(a) The charge for income tax should preferably be based on the profit for the year and should be so described.

(b) Any material adjustment in respect of amounts charged in previous years should be shown separately.

(c) New companies should preferably set aside from profits an additional amount, to be shown separately, for or towards the balance of the tax payable for the current and following income tax years until all income tax based on profits to date has been set aside.

(d) Companies whose practice has been to charge only the accrued proportion of the current year's assessment should preferably set aside from current or accumulated profits an additional amount, which should be shown as a separate item, for or towards the balance of the tax payable for the current and following income tax years until the full amount to cover all income tax based on profits to date has been set aside.

The balance sheet should show by note or otherwise the basis on which the amounts included for income tax have been computed; if the full amount of tax on all profits to date is not set aside, this should be made clear.

Amounts set aside for future income tax (apart from amounts set aside because depreciation and capital allowances differ) should consist only of:

- (a) any amount set aside in respect of estimated tax for the income tax year commencing after the balance sheet date; and
- (b) the proportion of the current year's income tax for the period from the balance sheet date to the following April 5th, if the amount included under current liabilities is calculated on the basis of a day-to-day accrual of the income tax assessed for the income tax year in which the accounting year ends.

Amounts set aside for future income tax whether described as reserves or not, *should be shown separately* and should preferably *not* be aggregated with reserves. Income tax assessable for any income tax year commencing after the balance sheet date should not be grouped with liabilities.

Income taxed at source and under Schedule A

Dividends, interest and other income should be brought to credit gross and should therefore include income tax suffered by deduction, or deemed for income tax purposes to have been suffered by deduction on such income. The relative amount of income tax should be included as part of the charge for income tax for the year.

Income tax assessed under Schedule A and not recovered by deduction from rent paid forms part of the income tax charge of the paying company and should be included in the charge for income tax.

Annual charges

Debenture, loan and note interest, royalties and other annual charges payable under deduction of income tax should be charged *gross* in the profit and loss account.

Dividends payable

The amounts shown in the accounts in respect of dividends paid or payable should be the *net* amounts, whether they are declared as 'subject to income tax', 'less income tax' or 'free of income tax'.

Claims for relief under Section 341, Income Tax Act 1952, in respect of trading losses

A company which bases its charge for income tax on the profit of the year should adopt the following procedure when it incurs a trading loss entitling the company to relief under Section 341:

- (a) If the income tax relief under Section 341 is dealt with in the accounts for the year, in which the trading loss is incurred:
 - (i) where the relief obtainable under Section 341 is less than the tax on income from other sources, the charge for income tax should be shown after taking relief into account, and should be described as income tax based on the profit for the year;
 - (ii) where the relief obtainable under Section 341 exceeds the tax on income from other sources the excess should be shown as income tax recoverable;
 - (iii) the amount of income tax recoverable should be set off in the balance sheet either as a deduction from current liabilities for tax or from amounts set aside for future tax, as may be appropriate; or as an asset reduced by current liabilities for tax or by amounts set aside for future tax.
- (b) If the income tax relief under Section 341 is not dealt with in the accounts in which the trading loss is incurred:
 - (i) in the accounts for the year in which the trading loss is incurred an indication should be given, if the amount is material, that no credit has been taken for the potential income tax recovery under Section 341;
 - (ii) when the relief is brought into the profit and loss account in a subsequent year it should be disclosed separately as an adjustment relating to a previous year.

Relationship of charges for income tax and profits tax to profits

The treatment of income tax in the manner recommended above will not necessarily ensure that an adequate amount is set aside for tax payable in the future on profits to date, or that the profit and loss account shows a tax charge which is appropriate in relation to the profit for the year. The reason for this is that there may be material differences between the treatment of items for accounting purposes and their treatment for tax purposes, in particular, the amounts charged for depreciation may differ from the capital allowances for tax purposes and this difference may involve substantial deferment of tax liability.

There are various reasons why capital allowances differ from depreciation charges and therefore affect the relation of the tax charge to the profit of the year. These reasons include the claiming of initial allowances, which have the effect of reducing future annual allowances; the incidence of balancing charges and balancing allowances; the fact that there are usually differences between the rates of and methods of calculating annual allowances as compared with those used for calculating depreciation; the granting of investment allowances, which give relief in addition to normal capital allowances; and the fact that there are some assets for which depreciation or amortisation is provided but which do not attract capital allowances (for example, commercial buildings and leases), and some for which the capital allowances are based on a smaller amount than the depreciation provisions (for example, industrial buildings and assets which have been written up on a revaluation).

The foregoing and other matters are considered in the following paragraphs.

Tax deferred by Capital Allowances

The result of obtaining initial allowances is to defer to subsequent years a part of the tax which should otherwise be payable on the profit of the year. Accordingly a practice has developed of setting aside and spreading over a period of years the temporary tax benefit

resulting from initial allowances. Under this practice capital allowances including initial allowances are compared with the capital allowances which could have been granted if no initial allowances had been granted either for the year under review or for preceding years. This comparison discloses the amount on which tax has been deferred by initial allowances, and tax on this amount is set aside to meet, when payable, the tax so deferred.

Some companies have extended the above principle in order to take into account the fact that temporary tax benefits (and therefore deferment of tax liability) may result from capital allowances (other than investment allowances) taken as a whole and not merely when initial allowances are obtained. This extension is achieved by maintaining the total set aside for tax deferred by capital allowances at an amount equal to income tax and profits tax on the excess of:

- (a) the net amount at which the relevant fixed assets are stated in the balance sheet (excluding any part which does not attract capital allowances) over;
- (b) the amount to which they have been written down for capital allowances purposes by allowances which have been effectively used in computing amounts charged or set aside for income tax.

If material, the amount of tax deferred by capital allowances should preferably be set aside and shown in the balance sheet, with appropriate description, as a separate item which may be grouped with 'future tax'. An amount so set aside should represent tax at current rates on the excess of:

- (a) the net amount at which the relevant fixed assets are stated in the balance sheet, over
- (b) the written-down value of those assets for capital allowance purposes, after making such adjustments as may be necessary for any part of the amount of (a) which does not attract capital allowances (e.g., because of a revaluation); and increasing (b) by an amount equal to any capital allowances which have not been effectively used in computing amounts charged or set aside for income tax.

Where the above practice is adopted the amount to be dealt with in the profit and loss account each year (to increase or reduce the amount set aside) will be the difference between the amount of tax deferred by capital allowances at the end of the accounting period and the amount at the beginning of the period. This increase or decrease may be taken into account in arriving at the tax charge for the year, and if the effect is material, the description of the basis of the charge for tax should indicate the course followed and the amount involved.

If a change in rates of tax materially affects an amount already set aside for tax deferred by capital allowances, the fact should be disclosed.

Where the practice of setting amounts aside for tax deferred by capital allowances is not adopted, there should be indicated the extent, if material, to which depreciation will require to be provided, in future, without relief from tax, and the effect of capital allowances which have materially distorted or even extinguished the tax charge should be indicated.

Investment allowances

Tax relief on investment allowances should not be deducted from the cost of the assets; it should be treated as a reduction of the tax charge in the profit and loss account. The extent to which the charges for tax are affected should be stated, if the tax relief is material.

Depreciation to be provided out of taxed profits

Where depreciation is provided on assets which do not attract capital allowances, or which attract capital allowances based on a smaller amount than that used for calculating the provisions, the position should be disclosed clearly in the accounts, and the amount, if material, to which depreciation will have to be provided in the future without tax relief should be indicated.

Other special factors and items of exceptional or non-recurrent matters

The tax charge may be distorted in relation to profits by factors such as relief for past losses,

the carrying forward of losses in preference to claiming relief under Section 341, the allowance for tax purposes in one year of expenditure charged against provisions made in previous years, and the treatment for tax purposes on a 'renewals' basis of assets on which depreciation is provided in the accounts, etc.

The net effect of special factors which have materially distorted, whether upwards or downwards, or even extinguished the tax should be indicated.

If any reference is made in accounts to the potential tax saving expected from items which may reduce substantially or even eliminate tax chargeable on future profits it should be made clear that the potential tax saving is dependent upon future profits against which such items can be utilized.

Where exceptional items are not taken into account before arriving at 'profit before taxation' the effect of these items on the amount shown in respect of tax should be considered; where appropriate the relative tax charges or reliefs should be shown as separate adjustments to the respective items.

If a provision for expenditure to be met in the future is computed after taking into account potential tax saving the fact that it is so computed should be made clear.

Subsidiaries controlled and trading overseas

When consolidated accounts include profits and reserves of subsidiaries controlled and trading overseas which on distribution as dividends to the holding company would be subject to:

(a) overseas distribution taxes (if any); and

(b) United Kingdom income tax and profits tax (after appropriate double tax relief)

then such observations as may be appropriate should be given by way of note or otherwise in regard to the tax position if the tax resulting from distribution would be material.

Similarly information should be given regarding the charge for tax on the profit of the year where a material amount of profit has not been subjected to United Kingdom tax. The tax charge for the year should be suitably described.

Surtax

Where a trading company to which Section 245 of the Income Tax Act, 1952, applies has not distributed a reasonable part of its income for the year the Special Commissioners may direct that the income shall be apportioned among the members and charged to surtax at the rates appropriate to those members. Unless the individual members themselves elect to meet the liability it must be borne by the company. In the case of an investment company falling within the section the making of a direction in respect of the whole of the investment income is automatic, and is not dependent upon the non-distribution of a reasonable part of the income. If a clearance has not been obtained in respect of past years, there is a possibility that the Inland Revenue may make a direction for any or all of the previous six years.

It is not normally necessary for the accounts of a trading company to which the section applies to refer to the contingent liability for surtax, unless it appears probable that the Inland Revenue intend to make a direction. Where the company is an investment company to which the section applies, a note referring to the existence of the contingent liability for surtax is normally necessary.

Tax Reserve Certificates

Tax Reserve Certificates held should be shown as a separate item in the balance sheet and grouped with current assets.

Interest allowed on Tax Reserve Certificates when used to pay taxes should be treated as interest and not as a reduction of the tax charge.

If credit is taken for interest accrued to the date of the balance-sheet it should be confined to interest on certificates which have since been applied in payment of taxes.

Illustration

At 1st January, 1958, B Ltd. had a credit balance brought forward on Income Tax Account of £32,000, which was made up of amounts set aside for:

| | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------|
| Income Tax, Schedule D 1957/58 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | £16,250 |
| " " " 1958/59 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 15,300 |
| " " Schedule A 6th April to 31st Dec., 1957— $\frac{1}{4} \times £600$... | ... | | | | | 450 |
| | | | | | | £32,000 |

The company held the following Tax Reserve Certificates:

£20,000 purchased 31st August, 1956

£10,000 purchased 30th June, 1957.

During the year 1958 the following transactions took place:

| | |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1st January | Paid $\frac{1}{2}$ year's dividend due 31st December, 1957, on 50,000 6% Preference Shares of £1 each. |
| 6th " | Received Quarter's Interest on £10,000 $2\frac{1}{2}$ % Consols. |
| 28th " | Paid Schedule A Tax, £600 and Schedule D Tax £16,250 for 1957/58, by surrendering £16,675 Tax Reserve Certificates on which the interest allowable is £166 15s. Od., and the balance in cash. |
| 31st March | Paid $\frac{1}{2}$ year's Interest, on £30,000 4% Debentures. |
| 6th April | Received Quarter's Interest on £10,000 $2\frac{1}{2}$ % Consols. |
| 15th May | Paid dividend for 1957 of 10% less tax on 100,000 ordinary shares of £1 each, fully paid. |
| 1st July | Paid $\frac{1}{2}$ year's dividend due 30th June, 1958 on 50,000 6% Preference Shares. |
| 6th July | Received quarter's interest on £10,000 $2\frac{1}{2}$ % Consols. |
| 30th Sept. | Paid $\frac{1}{2}$ year's Interest on £30,000 4% Debentures. |
| 6th October | Received quarter's interest on £10,000 $2\frac{1}{2}$ % Consols. |
| 31st October | Purchased £20,000 Tax Reserve Certificates. |
| 31st Dec. | Schedule D liability for 1958/59 has been agreed at £15,000. The liability for 1959/60, based upon the profits for 1958 is estimated at £17,500. |

Write up the accounts relating to Income Tax and Tax Reserve Certificates for the year ended 31st December, 1958.

INCOME TAX ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--|---------|----|----|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--|---------|----|----|
| 1958 | | | | £ | s. | d. | 1958 | | | | £ | s. | d. |
| Jan. 6 | To Consols Interest Account | £62 10 0 at 8/6 in £ | | 26 | 11 | 3 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/f. | | | 32,900 | 0 | 0 |
| Jan. 28 | " Tax Reserve Certificates Account | £16,675 0 0 | | | | | Mar. 31 | " Debenture Interest Account— £600 at 8/6 in £ | | | 255 | 0 | 0 |
| | " Interest on Tax Reserve Certificates Account | 166 15 0 | | | | | Sep. 30 | " Profit and Loss Account : | | | 255 | 0 | 0 |
| | " Cash | 8 5 0 | | | | | Dec. 31 | " Charge for year £17,696 Less Overprovision for Schedule D tax for 1958-59 | 5 0 | | 300 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | 16,850 | 0 | 0 | | | | | 17,396 | 5 | 0 |
| | Discharging— | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Sch. A Tax 1957/58 | £600 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | " D " " | 16,250 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | £16,850 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Apr. 6 | " Consols Interest Account— | £62 10 0 at 8/6 in £ | | 26 | 11 | 3 | | | | | | | |
| July 6 | " " " | | | 26 | 11 | 3 | | | | | | | |
| Oct. 6 | " " " | | | 26 | 11 | 3 | | | | | | | |
| Dec. 31 | " Balance c/d. Sch. A 1958/59 ½ × £600 Sch. D 1958/59 Sch. D 1959/60 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | £450 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 15,000 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 17,500 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 32,950 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | |
| | | | | £49,906 | 5 | 0 | | | | | £49,906 | 5 | 0 |
| | | | | | | | 1959 | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/f. | | | 32,950 | 0 | 0 |

TAX RESERVE CERTIFICATES ACCOUNT

| 1958 | | £ | 1958 | | £ |
|---------|---------------------------------------------|----------------|---------|----------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/f. ... | 30,000 | Jan. 28 | By Income Tax Account—Certificates surrendered ... | 16,675 |
| Oct. 31 | „ Cash—Purchase of £20,000 Certificates ... | 20,000 | Dec. 31 | „ Balance c/d. ... | 33,325 |
| | | <u>£50,000</u> | | | <u>£50,000</u> |
| 1959 | | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. ... | 33,325 | | | |

INTEREST ON TAX RESERVE CERTIFICATES ACCOUNT

| 1958 | | £ s. d. | 1958 | | £ s. d. |
|---------|--------------------------------|----------|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Dec. 31 | To Profit and Loss Account ... | 166 15 0 | Jan. 28 | By Income Tax Account—Interest on Certificates surrendered ... | 166 15 0 |

Note

The transfer to Profit and Loss Appropriation Account at 31st December, 1958, is made up as follows:

| | £ | s. | d. |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------|----------|
| Schedule A Tax, 1958 ... | 600 | 0 | 0 |
| Amount set aside for Schedule D Tax, 1959/60 ... | 17,500 | 0 | 0 |
| Tax on Consols Interest ... | 106 | 5 | 0 |
| | <u>18,206</u> | <u>5</u> | <u>0</u> |
| Less Tax recouped on Debenture Interest ... | 510 | 0 | 0 |
| | <u>17,696</u> | <u>5</u> | <u>0</u> |
| Charge for year ... | 300 | 0 | 0 |
| Less Overprovision for Schedule D Tax for 1958/59 ... | | | |
| | <u>£17,396</u> | <u>5</u> | <u>0</u> |

The over-provision for 1958-59 should be added to the balance of Profit and Loss Account brought forward from the previous year as in the illustration on p. 298.

(n) Profit and Loss and Appropriation Account

Whereas the capital of a sole trader or partnership can be varied at will or by agreement, that of a limited company is only alterable in accordance with the provisions of the Companies Act. Profits must not, therefore, be carried to the Capital Account of a company, but must be kept separate. In order to distinguish the actual profits earned from the profits available for dividend, the former are ascertained by means of a separate Profit and Loss Account for each period, while the latter are shown by a Profit and Loss Appropriation Account, to which all profits or losses shown by the periodical Profit and Loss Accounts are transferred, and to which are debited all appropriations of profit such as transfers to reserves, dividends, etc.

Any balance not specifically appropriated will remain to the credit of the Appropriation Account, and is technically known as the 'carry forward.'

In some instances, in exceptionally good years, an appropriation is made to a reserve known as the Dividends Equalisation Account, which can be drawn upon in

future years as and when necessity demands. This course tends to maintain dividends at an even rate and is consequently reflected in the value of the shares on the market.

From a strictly legal viewpoint, income tax should be regarded as an appropriation of, and not a charge against profit (*Johnstone v. Cheestergate Hat Manufacturing Co. Ltd.* (1915), 2 Ch. 338), and should be debited to the Appropriation Account. In practice, however, most companies debit the amount set aside for income tax on profits to the Profit and Loss Account itself, before arriving at the balance of profit which is carried down to the Appropriation Account. This is done because income tax is charged on the full amount of the profits, before paying any dividends thereout, and the amount of profit available for the payment of dividends and other appropriations cannot be revealed until full provision for income tax on the profits has been made. Taxation is accordingly debited to Profit and Loss Account in order to make it clear to the members that the balance carried to the Appropriation Account is the amount of profit actually available for distribution as *net* dividends, *i.e.*, after deduction of income tax.

(o) Calculation of Remuneration based on a Percentage of Profits

Frequently, the managing director or other servant or officer of a company is entitled under his service agreement to remuneration calculated at a percentage of the profits of the company. In such a case it is essential, if controversy and possible litigation are to be avoided, that the agreement should contain precise directions as to the manner in which the profits shall be ascertained for this purpose. In particular, the following matters should be dealt with:

1. Whether the remuneration is to be calculated only on trading profits or on the profits and income from all sources. In the absence of express provisions, it would appear from the decision in *Re Spanish Prospecting Co. Ltd.* (1911), L. J. Ch. 210, that the term 'profits', for this purpose, must be deemed to mean the amount by which the total assets, less liabilities, have increased during the period in question, after making allowance for any capital introduced or withdrawn during the same period.

2. Whether depreciation of fixed or wasting assets is to be charged before arriving at the profits. In *Edwards v. Saunton Hotel Ltd.* (1942) T.R. 359, it was held that adequate provision for depreciation should be made, but that in the absence of agreement on the point it should be calculated on the *straight line method*, and not by the reducing instalment system, as the latter would impose a disproportionate charge on the profits in the early years of the life of the assets.

3. To what extent, if at all, are the directors to be entitled to make provision out of profits for contingencies, or to write off intangible assets or transfer profits to reserve. In *Fisher v. Black and White Publishing Company Ltd.* (1901), 1 Ch. 174, it was held that directors may transfer so much of the profits as they consider necessary to reserve before arriving at the fund which shall be available for the payment of dividends.

4. It was decided in *Johnstone v. Cheestergate Hat Manufacturing Co.* [1915] L.J. 84, Ch. 914, that where a manager of a company is entitled to a percentage of net profits, income tax must not be deducted before arriving at the sum on which the remuneration is to be calculated, and this ruling was followed in *Attorney-General v. Ashton Gas Company* [1906] A.C. 10, where it was held that income tax is part of the profits, viz., the part which the Revenue is entitled to take. On the other hand, in *Re Agreement of G. B. Ollivant, Ltd.* [1942] T.R. 295, in which the question at issue was the ascertainment of the amount of the net profits of a business which had been sold, for the purpose of arriving at the sum on which the price to be paid as consideration for the goodwill of the business was to be based, it was held that in drawing up the Profit and Loss Account of a trading company, the excess profits tax must be deducted if ordinary commercial practice is to be followed.

No judicial opinion has yet been expressed on the question whether profits tax should, in the absence of agreement on the point, be deducted in arriving at the net profits, but since, like income tax itself, this tax is not now deductible in calculating profits for income tax purposes, it is reasonable to assume that it should be treated in a similar manner to income tax in arriving at the net profits for other purposes, in which case it would not be deductible. It must be remembered that the excess profits tax was an allowable deduction from profit for the purposes of income tax, and it may have been this fact which influenced the Court in deciding, in the *Ollivant* case, that it ought to be deducted in arriving at the net profit of the business on the basis of which the consideration to be paid for goodwill should be calculated.

5. The agreement should state whether the remuneration is to be calculated on the profits before or after charging such remuneration. In *Edwards v. Saunton Hotel Ltd.* (see ante) where the commission was to be calculated on the profit 'available for distribution each year', it was decided that the remuneration itself should *not* be deducted from the profits before ascertaining the amount on which the remuneration is to be calculated; the agreement may, of course, vary this.

Illustration

The managing director of a company is employed under a service agreement which states, *inter alia*, that he is to be remunerated by way of a commission, calculated at the rate of 5 per cent. per annum on the net trading profits of the company. The following Profit and Loss Account has been prepared before calculating the commission:

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Office and Administrative Expenses | 27,420 | By Balance from Trading Account | 95,160 |
| " Selling Expenses | 14,450 | " Income from Investments (gross) | 1,600 |
| " Depreciation | 3,600 | " Discounts | 550 |
| " Interest on Debentures (gross) | 2,000 | " Profit on sale of Investments | 240 |
| " Directors' Fees | 1,000 | | |
| " Preliminary Expenses, written off | 500 | | |
| " Income Tax | 13,320 | | |
| " Profits Tax | 8,200 | | |
| " Transfer to General Reserve | 5,000 | | |
| " Transfer to Sinking Fund for Redemption of Debentures | 3,000 | | |
| " Transfer to Superannuation Fund | 3,200 | | |
| " Balance carried down | 15,860 | | |
| | <u>£97,550</u> | | <u>£97,550</u> |

The superannuation fund is a contributory one and is created under an irrevocable trust.

CALCULATION OF COMMISSION

| | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|
| Balance of Profit and Loss Account | | 15,860 |
| Add: Preliminary Expenses written off | 500 | |
| Income Tax | 13,320 | |
| Profits Tax | 8,200 | |
| Transfer to General Reserve | 5,000 | |
| Transfer to Sinking Fund for redemption of Debentures | 3,000 | |
| | | 30,020 |
| | | 45,880 |
| Deduct: Income from Investments | 1,600 | |
| Profit on sale of Investments | 240 | |
| | | 1,840 |
| Commission—5% on £44,040 = £2,202 | | £44,040 |

Notes

1. The amounts written off Preliminary Expenses and transferred to General Reserve and Sinking Fund are appropriations of profit and should not be deducted in arriving at the 'net trading profit'.

2. Income from investments and profit on sale of investments are not part of the trading profit and are excluded. If, however, the agreement had provided for the commission to be based on 'net profit', they would have been left in.

3. If depreciation has not been calculated on the fixed instalment system it should be recomputed, in the absence of specific agreement to calculate it by some other method.

4. Profits tax has not been deducted, since it is not now allowable as a deduction for the purposes of income tax, but judicial confirmation of this treatment is not at present available.

§ 16 The Amalgamation of Companies

Amalgamations take many forms, from the pooling of profits, etc., to complete mergers. This section is devoted to complete amalgamations, where either an existing company absorbs other businesses, or a new company is formed to acquire existing businesses. The matters to be considered in the preliminary stages, the valuation of assets, and the legal formalities to be complied with, are outside the scope of a work on accountancy, and we are here only concerned with the accounting entries involved on an amalgamation.

Where a new company is formed to take over the businesses of two or more existing companies, it becomes necessary to revalue the assets (including goodwill) of each of those companies in order to ascertain the total value of its issued share capital and to determine the amount of the consideration which the transferee company should pay for each of the businesses acquired. It is usual for the consideration to be satisfied by the issue of fully paid shares in the new company to be allotted to the shareholders of the old companies in proportion to their respective holdings and having regard to the relative values of their shares.

For the purposes of the amalgamation the amount of the consideration for the acquisition of a business may be arrived at either by valuing its individual assets and goodwill or by valuing the business as a whole by reference to its earning capacity.

If the first method is employed the fixed assets of all the amalgamating companies should preferably be valued by the same professional valuer on a going concern basis.

The term 'going concern' means that a business is being operated at not less than a normal or a reasonable profit and the valuer will assume that the business is earning reasonable profits when appraising the assets. If it is found, when all the assets of the business, both fixed and current, have been valued, that the profits represent more than a fair commercial return upon the capital employed in the business as shown by such valuation, the capitalised value of the excess (or super profits) will be the value of the goodwill, which must be added to the values of the other assets in arriving at the consideration to be paid for the business. If, however, the profits are less than a fair commercial return upon the capital employed a deficit may be regarded as 'bad-will' and something will have to be deducted from the aggregate of the valuations of the assets to allow for this in arriving at the consideration to be paid.

If the second method is employed the value of the business is taken to be the capital sum which, on the basis of the expected percentage of yield, would provide an annual income equal to the average maintainable profits of the business. For example, if the average maintainable profits of a business amount to £10,000 and the rate of yield expected on an investment in the particular business is 10%, the value of the business is £100,000. This would represent the total value of all the assets, including the goodwill (or less the 'bad-will' as the case may be), and less the liabilities.

In either case the ultimate amount of the consideration arrived at will represent the value of the business as a whole, having regard to its capacity to earn revenue. (The various methods of computing the value of goodwill are explained and illustrated in Chapter VII, Section 5.)

Where the shares of the original companies are quoted on the Stock Exchange, such quotation would generally afford a reliable guide as to the values at which they should be acquired, unless the shares are peculiarly subject to speculative influences. If any rumour of the proposed amalgamation leaks out, the quotations may, of course, cease to be reliable, as speculative dealings are almost sure to ensue. Some little concession in value is usually made to induce members to agree to the scheme.

Illustration (1)

Two companies, whose businesses are of a similar kind, and whose assets are properly valued, agree to amalgamate, and a new company is formed with an authorised capital of £200,000 to take over their respective assets and liabilities. The following are the respective Balance Sheets:

JONES & JOHNSON, LIMITED BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| Share Capital - Authorised and Issued: | | Goodwill | 30,000 |
| 75,000 Shares of £1 each fully paid | 75,000 | Freehold Premises | 10,000 |
| Reserve Account | 4,200 | Plant and Machinery | 18,300 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 800 | Stock | 16,000 |
| Liabilities | 3,300 | Sundry Debtors | 7,500 |
| | | Cash | 1,500 |
| | <u>£83,300</u> | | <u>£83,300</u> |

BLACK & SONS, LIMITED
BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| Share Capital – Authorised £30,000 | | Goodwill | 20,000 |
| | | Plant and Machinery | 13,450 |
| Issued – 45,500 Shares of £1 each fully paid .. | 45,500 | Stock | 11,550 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 4,500 | Sundry Debtors | 6,000 |
| Liabilities | 2,000 | Cash | 1,000 |
| | <u>£52,000</u> | | <u>£52,000</u> |

The book value of the net assets of Jones & Johnson, Limited, is arrived at as follows:

| | £ | £ |
|--------------------------|--------|----------------|
| Gross Assets | 83,300 | |
| Less Liabilities | 3,300 | |
| | | <u>£80,000</u> |

From the shareholders' point of view, this amount is represented by:

| | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------|--------|----------------|
| Share Capital | 75,000 | |
| Reserve Account | 4,200 | |
| Profit and Loss Account | 800 | |
| | | <u>£80,000</u> |

In a similar manner the book value of the net assets of Black & Sons, Limited, is £50,000, represented as follows:

| | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------|--------|----------------|
| Share Capital | 45,500 | |
| Profit and Loss Account | 4,500 | |
| | | <u>£50,000</u> |

Assuming the assets of each company to be taken over at their book values, the liabilities of each company to be assumed, and the consideration to be discharged by shares in the new company issued at par, shares in the new company should be allotted as follows:

To the shareholders of Jones & Johnson, Limited, 80,000 shares of £1 each fully paid, being at the rate of 16 new shares for every 15 old; and

To the shareholders of Black & Sons, Limited, 50,000 shares of £1 each fully paid, being at the rate of 100 new shares for every 91 old.

Fractions of shares will require to be dealt with. The usual method is to allot to the liquidator of the company concerned the number of shares represented by the addition of the fractions. He will realise these shares at the best price possible, and distribute the proceeds to the parties entitled thereto.

In other cases, fractional rights certificates are issued with the shares, leaving the individual members to sell their fractional rights, arrangements being made for some person or persons to hold themselves out as willing to buy the fractions. The persons acquiring them will be issued with share certificates on their producing to the company enough fractions to make a whole share or shares.

(In some instances, it is possible to avoid fractions by altering the denomination of the shares, e.g., instead of allotting 6 new £1 shares for each 5 old, allotting 12 new 2s. shares for each £1 old share.)

The Balance Sheet of the new company will then be as follows:

NEW COMPANY'S BALANCE SHEET, 31ST DECEMBER

| | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|--|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| | £ | | | £ |
| Share Capital – Authorised 200,000 shares of £1 each | | | Goodwill | 50,000 |
| <u>£200,000</u> | | | Freehold Premises | 10,000 |
| | | | Plant and Machinery | 31,750 |
| Issued 130,000 Shares of £1 each fully paid .. | 130,000 | | Stock | 27,550 |
| Sundry Creditors | 5,300 | | Sundry Debtors | 13,500 |
| | | | Cash | 2,500 |
| | | | | |
| | <u>£135,300</u> | | | <u>£135,300</u> |

It will be noticed that the Reserve and Profit and Loss Account balances of the transferor companies do not appear as such in the books of the transferee company, as they are not available for revenue purposes in the hands of that company, being represented by net assets purchased and paid for out of capital.

Since the new company in the above illustration is formed for the purpose of acquiring the undertakings of other companies and the consideration for the acquisition consists as to not less than 90 per cent. thereof of shares in the new company, relief from the payment of the *ad valorem* duty can be claimed under Section 55, Finance Act, 1927 (as amended by Section 31, Finance Act, 1928, and Section 41, Finance Act, 1930).

These provisions cover the following cases:

- (1) Where a new limited company is formed, or the capital of an existing limited company is increased, for the purpose of *acquiring the undertaking or part of the undertaking of another company*, and at least 90% of the consideration for the acquisition (other than any arrangements for taking over or paying off creditors) *consists of the allotment of shares in the transferee company to the transferor company or to the transferor company's members.*
- (2) Where a new limited company is formed, or an existing limited company increases its capital, for the purpose of *acquiring at least 90% of the issued share capital of another company*. In this case, the buying company becomes a holding company, and if at least 90% of the consideration consists of the allotment of shares in the holding company to the shareholders of the existing company in exchange for their shareholdings, the scheme comes within the relief provisions.

In either of the above cases, for the purposes of charging capital duty on the nominal capital or increased capital, as the case may be, that capital is deemed to be reduced by an amount equal to the share capital of the vending or subsidiary company. Thus, in the above illustration, the new company would only pay stamp duty on £75,000, *i.e.*, the excess of its nominal capital over the nominal capitals of the transferor companies. If, however, only part of the undertaking of the other company is acquired, then the reduction is that proportion of the share capital of that company which the part of the undertaking acquired bears to the whole undertaking. But if the shares issued as consideration are partly paid, only the amount

credited as paid up (including the amount credited in shares issued to creditors in consideration for the release or assignment of debts) is available for relief, if this is less than the amount ascertained by taking the proportion of the share capital mentioned above.

Illustration (2)

The X Company with a nominal capital of £100,000, of which £90,000 is issued and fully paid, increases its nominal capital by £50,000 for the purpose of acquiring one half of the undertaking of Y Ltd., whose nominal capital is £50,000. The purchase consideration is £30,000, payable as to £3,000 in cash and 54,000 £1 shares in the X Company Ltd., credited as 10s. per share paid up.

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| For the purposes of stamp duty, the increase in the nominal capital of X Ltd. of .. | £50,000 |
| is reduced by the lower of (a) one half the nominal capital of Y Ltd., £25,000, or | |
| (b) the amount credited as paid up on the shares issued as consideration, viz., 10s. | |
| per share on 54,000 shares = £27,000 | 25,000 |

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Stamp duty will therefore be payable on | <u>£25,000</u> |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------|

No stamp duty is chargeable on any contract, transfer or assignment made for the purpose of transferring to the buying or holding company the undertaking or shares or debts due to creditors of the vending company, providing the contract, etc., is duly stamped with a 'denoting stamp' showing that it is not chargeable with duty, and is executed within 12 months from the date of registration of the new company or increase of capital, as the case may be, or is made to give effect to an agreement (or particulars thereof) filed with the registrar of companies within such 12 months. (The agreement here referred to is that required on an allotment of shares for a consideration other than cash.) The debts due to creditors other than banks or trade creditors must have been incurred more than 2 years prior to the time of claiming exemption. For the purpose of exemption from stamp duty on any contract, transfer or assignment a company which issues any of its unissued share capital for the purpose of a reconstruction or amalgamation, is included in the relief (although no relief from stamp duty on nominal capital is available).

For the purposes of relief from *any* of the duties, the newly formed buying company's memorandum of association must include as one of its objects the acquisition of the undertaking of or shares in the vendor company. In the case of an existing company increasing its capital the resolution must state the purpose of the increase.

If two or more companies are involved as vending companies, the relief is to be computed separately for each company.

The relief will be disallowed, and the appropriate duties, with interest at 5% per annum, charged where:

- (a) it is subsequently found that any material particular in the claim was untrue; or
- (b) the conditions are not fulfilled; or
- (c) within 2 years the vending company parts with the shares issued to it, otherwise than on reconstruction, amalgamation or liquidation; or

(d) within 2 years the holding company parts with the shares acquired otherwise than on reconstruction, etc.

The Commissioners may allow relief from capital duty to a holding company, where all the other conditions are satisfied, if the acquisition of 90% or more of the shares in the vending company is completed within six months from the issue of the invitation to the members of the vending company to exchange their shares or seven months from the first allotment of shares for the purposes of the acquisition, if earlier. In such a case, the duty already paid will be repaid.

It has been held that for the purposes of Section 55, Finance Act, 1927, the legal as well as the equitable title must pass in order to constitute an 'issue' of shares. Where the transferee company sent out allotment letters, with forms of renunciation attached, to the shareholders of the transferor company, and so many of them renounced that of the first registered shareholders in the transferee company, those who had been shareholders in the transferor company held less than 90 per cent. of the shares in the new company, this did not constitute an issue of shares to the old shareholders entitling the company to relief (*Oswald Tillotson, Ltd. v. Commissioners of Inland Revenue* (1932), 48 T.L.R. 582).

Illustration (3)

Three companies, A, B and C, propose to sell their undertakings for shares in a company to be formed, and supply you with the following figures:

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | Total £ |
|---------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|------------|
| Fixed Assets, less depreciation | 34,500 | 9,400 | 11,900 | 55,800 |
| Current Assets: | | | | |
| Stocks | 1,500 | 3,750 | 3,400 | 8,650 |
| Investments (Government Securities) | 5,000 | 2,200 | — | 7,200 |
| Debtors, less Provision | 6,300 | 3,050 | 2,900 | 12,250 |
| Cash at Bank and in Hand | 5,400 | 2,400 | 165 | 7,965 |
| | 18,200 | 11,400 | 6,465 | 36,065 |
| Total Assets | £52,700 | £20,800 | £18,365 | £91,865 |
| Capital (paid-up) | 27,000 | 10,000 | 16,000 | 53,000 |
| Creditors | 1,500 | 2,200 | 400 | 4,100 |
| Profit and Loss (Balance) | 24,200 | 8,600 | 1,965 | 34,765 |
| | £52,700 | £20,800 | £18,365 | £91,865 |
| Profit for last year | 8,100 | 4,000 | 3,200 | 15,300 |

The profits for the previous two years were:

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | Total £ |
|---------------------|--------|--------|--------|------------|
| First year | 6,750 | 3,500 | 4,000 | 14,250 |
| Second year | 7,425 | 3,750 | 4,400 | 15,575 |

You are requested to report as to the basis upon which the transfer should be effected and as to the capitalisation of the new company. Draft your report.

REPORT

1. Assuming all necessary adjustments to have been made in the valuation of the assets of the respective companies as disclosed by the Balance Sheets the net capital employed in the businesses is as follows:

| | A £ | B £ | C £ |
|-------------------------------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| Fixed Assets | 34,500 | 9,400 | 11,900 |
| Current Assets (exclusive of Investments) | 13,200 | 9,200 | 6,465 |
| | 47,700 | 18,600 | 18,365 |
| Less Liabilities | 1,500 | 2,200 | 400 |
| Net Capital employed | £46,200 | £16,400 | £17,965 |

2. The average trading profits for the past three years are as follows:

| Year | A £ | B £ | C £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------|----------------|
| 1 | 6,750 | 3,500 | 4,000 |
| 2 | 7,425 | 3,750 | 4,400 |
| 3 | 8,100 | 4,000 | 3,200 |
| | 3)22,275 | 3)11,250 | 3)11,600 |
| | 7,425 | 3,750 | 3,870 (approx) |
| Less Income from Investments (assumed yield 3½ per cent.) | 175 | 77 | — |
| Average trading profits | £7,250 | £3,673 | £3,870 |

3. It is assumed that under present conditions a yield of 8 per cent. ought reasonably to be provided on capital employed in businesses of the type carried on by the three companies. On this basis the annual super-profits earned by the companies are:

| | A £ | B £ | C £ |
|----------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|
| Average trading profits | 7,250 | 3,673 | 3,870 |
| Less 8 per cent. on capital (employed) | 3,696 | 1,312 | 1,437 |
| Super-Profits | £3,554 | £2,361 | £2,433 |

4. It is suggested that the goodwill be based, in the cases of A and B, on 5 years' purchase, and in the case of C (since the profits show a downward trend) on 3 years' purchase, of the super-profits.

Assuming the market value of the investments to be that disclosed by the balance sheets, the purchase consideration of the respective undertakings may be computed as follows:

| | A £ | B £ | C £ |
|----------------|---------|---------|---------|
| Total Assets | 52,700 | 20,800 | 18,365 |
| Goodwill | 17,770 | 11,805 | 7,299 |
| | 70,470 | 32,605 | 25,664 |
| Less Creditors | 1,500 | 2,200 | 400 |
| | £68,970 | £30,405 | £25,264 |
| Say | £69,000 | £30,000 | £25,000 |

5. If the capital of the new company is to consist of shares of £1 each issued at par, the total consideration will be discharged by the issue of 124,000 shares, to be allotted to the shareholders of the respective companies as follows:

- A – 69 shares in the new company for every 27 shares in the old company (or 23 for every 9).
 B – 30 shares in the new company for every 10 shares in the old company (or 3 for every 1).
 C – 25 shares in the new company for every 16 shares in the old company.

Alternatively, if it is desired to avoid the liability for stamp duty which would be entailed by an increase in capital, the capital of the new company may consist of 53,000 shares of £1 each issued at a premium of £1 6s. 10d. (approx.) to be allocated as to:

69
 124 × 53,000 = 29,500 (approx.) to the shareholders of A (being 59 new shares for every 54 old).

30
 124 × 53,000 = 13,000 (approx.) to the shareholders of B (being 13 new shares for every 10 old).

25
 124 × 53,000 = 10,500 (approx.) to the shareholders of C (being 21 new shares for every 32 old).

The book-keeping entries involved in an amalgamation are similar to those on an absorption of one company by another, and are described and illustrated in the next paragraph.

§ 17. The Absorption of one Limited Company by another

Where the constitution and position of one of the merging companies make it possible and practicable, the amalgamation may be carried out by that company absorbing the other concerns, thus avoiding the expense and trouble of forming a new company.

The companies to be absorbed will go into voluntary liquidation, and the purchasing company will usually take over the whole of the assets and ordinary trade liabilities, any debentures being either paid off in cash or exchanged for debentures in the purchasing company.

(a) Book-keeping entries for closing the Vendor Company's books

These entries in the books will be similar to those required for the purpose of closing the books of a firm on dissolution, *viz.*:

- (1) Transfer to the *debit* of a Realisation Account all the balances of accounts representing assets to be taken over by the purchasing company.
- (2) Transfer to the *credit* of Realisation Account any liabilities to be taken over by the purchasing company. (Alternatively, the liabilities taken over may be transferred to the credit of the Purchasing Company's Account).
- (3) *Debit* the Purchasing Company's Account, and *credit* Realisation Account with the amount of the purchase consideration, *i.e.*, the agreed sale price of the assets, less the liabilities taken over. (If, however, the liabilities taken over have been transferred to the credit of the Purchasing Company's Account, the credit to Realisation Account will be the full value at which the assets are taken over without any deduction for liabilities.)
- (4) *Credit* the Purchasing Company's Account, and *debit* the relevant accounts in respect of the various items forming the purchase consideration, *i.e.* Cash, Shares, in Purchasing Company, etc.
- (5) *Credit* Cash and *debit* the Realisation Account with any expenses paid by the vendor company:

- (6) If any assets are not taken over by the absorbing company, but are sold for cash to third parties, *debit* Cash and *credit* the relevant Asset Accounts with the proceeds, transferring the profit or loss on sale to the Realisation Account. Similarly, any loss or profit on paying off liabilities not taken over by the purchasing company, e.g., discounts received from creditors, must be transferred to Realisation Account.
- (7) The balance on the Realisation Account will represent profit or loss, which should be transferred to Sundry Members Account.
- (8) Any revenue balances, such as a balance on Profit and Loss Account, Reserve Account, etc., should be transferred to the Sundry Members Account, together with the balance of the Share Capital Account. Similarly, balances representing fictitious assets, such as preliminary expenses not yet written off must be closed off by transfer to the Sundry Members Account. Where there are several classes of shareholders, it may be necessary to open a separate account for each class, or provide separate columns in the one account, in order to adjust their rights.
- (9) *Debit* the Sundry Members Account and *credit* Cash, Shares in the Purchasing Company Account, etc., with the cash paid and shares, etc. issued to the members out of the purchase consideration when the distribution thereof takes place. This will close the books of the vendor company.

Where provision for depreciation of assets has been credited to a separate Provision for Depreciation Account, this account should be closed by transfer to the credit of Realisation Account since it represents a reduction in the book value of the assets transferred.

A provision for bad and doubtful debts must be dealt with on its merits. If the debts are taken over by the absorbing company at their book value less the provision for doubtful debts, the latter account should be transferred to the credit of Realisation Account; if, however, the debts are taken over at their full value, the provision must be transferred to the credit of Sundry Members Account, being, in effect, re-credited to Profit and Loss Account. If book debts are not taken over, any bad debts incurred can be charged to the Provision Account, and the balance, if a debit, taken to Realisation Account, being in respect of debts not reserved for; or if a credit, to Sundry Members Account, being an over-appropriation of profits.

(b) Book-keeping entries for opening the Purchasing Company's books

- (1) *Debit* the relevant Asset Accounts with the values at which various assets are acquired; *credit* the Vendor Company's Account with the amount of the purchase consideration and liability accounts with the amounts of any liabilities assumed. Any excess of the sum of the liabilities and the purchase consideration over the aggregate value at which the assets are brought into the books is the amount attributable to goodwill, and should be debited to Goodwill Account. If the assets, less liabilities, exceed the purchase consideration, the difference should be credited to a Capital Reserve Account.

(2) *Debit* the Vendor Company's Account and *credit* Share Capital Account, Cash, etc., with the shares, etc., issued and cash paid, as the case may be, in discharge of the purchase consideration.

(c) Shares issued at a premium valuation

When the purchasing company's shares are issued to the members of the vendor company at a premium, the shares should be brought into the vendor company's books *at their full value* (i.e., including the premium) since the transaction is tantamount to the sale of the undertaking for cash, and the purchase therewith of an investment represented by shares in the purchasing company at the price at which they are issued. In the purchasing company's books the transaction is equivalent to the issue of shares at a premium for cash, and the purchase with the proceeds of the undertaking of the vendor company. As is usual when shares are issued at a premium, only the nominal value of the shares must be credited to Share Capital Account, the premium being credited to a Share Premium Account, which can only be utilised for the purposes stated in Section 56 of the Companies Act, 1948 (*see* p. 214).

(d) Treatment of Revenue Balances

The accumulated revenue balances and reserves of the vendor company should not be brought into the purchasing company's books, since they are not profits of the purchasing company, but are represented by assets which the company purchases and pays for.

Sinking funds for the redemption of liabilities are made up of appropriations of profits and must be treated as such, the assets representing them being taken over. In the vendor company's books all such balances should be transferred to the Sundry Members Account, and will not enter into the purchasing company's books at all. Sinking funds for depreciation of assets, however, are created by *charges* against profits in respect of diminution in the value of the assets, and, as already explained, must be credited to the Realisation Account, or preferably to the relevant assets accounts, before transferring them to Realisation Account. A Capital Redemption Reserve Fund is in the nature of capital, and must be credited to the Sundry Members Account.

Illustration (1)

The Wolverhampton Engineering Company, Limited, is absorbed by the United Engineering Company, Limited, the consideration being the assumption of the liabilities, the discharge of the debenture debt at a premium of 5 per cent., by the issue of 5 per cent. debentures in the United Company, a payment in cash of £3 per share, and the exchange of three £1 shares in the United Company, at an agreed value of £1 10s. 0d. per share, for every share in the Wolverhampton Company.

Close off the books of the Wolverhampton Company, giving both Journal Entries and Ledger Accounts, and show the opening Journal Entries in the books of the United Company.

The following is the Balance Sheet of the Wolverhampton Company at the date of transfer:

WOLVERHAMPTON ENGINEERING COMPANY, LIMITED
BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Share Capital – 60,000 £5 Shares fully paid | 300,000 | Goodwill | 25,000 |
| General Reserve Account | 32,000 | Land and Buildings | 76,500 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 3,000 | Plant and Machinery | 220,000 |
| Accident Insurance Fund | 5,000 | Patents | 5,000 |
| 5% Debentures | 150,000 | Patterns and Drawings | 2,500 |
| Sundry Creditors | 30,000 | Work-in-Progress and Stocks-on-Hand | 106,000 |
| | | Sundry Debtors | 45,000 |
| | | Investments on Compensation Fund Account | 5,000 |
| | | Cash at Bank and in Hand | 35,000 |
| | <u>£520,000</u> | | <u>£520,000</u> |

WOLVERHAMPTON ENGINEERING COMPANY'S JOURNAL

| | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------|-----------|
| Realisation Account | Dr. | £ 520,000 | £ 520,000 |
| To Sundry Assets | | | |
| Being sundry assets sold to the United Engineering Co. as per Balance Sheet of 31st December | | | |
| Sundry Liabilities | Dr. | | |
| To Realisation Account | | | |
| Sundry Creditors | | 30,000 | 30,000 |
| Being liabilities taken over by the United Engineering Co. | | | |
| Realisation Account | Dr. | 7,500 | 7,500 |
| To Debentures Account | | | |
| Being Premium of 5% now provided for. | | | |
| United Engineering Co. Limited | Dr. | 607,500 | 607,500 |
| To Realisation Account | | | |
| Being Purchase Price as per Agreement. | | | |
| Sundries— | Dr. | | |
| To United Engineering Co., Ltd. | | | 607,500 |
| Cash | | 180,000 | |
| Shares (United Engineering Co.) | | 270,000 | |
| 180,000 Shares of £1 each, fully paid, at £1 10s. per share. | | | |
| Debentures Account | | 157,500 | |
| 5% Debentures exchanged. | | | |
| Being discharge of Purchase Consideration. | | | |
| Sundries— | Dr. | | |
| To Sundry Members Account | | | 450,000 |
| Accident Insurance Fund | | 5,000 | |
| General Reserve Account | | 32,000 | |
| Profit and Loss Account | | 3,000 | |
| Realisation Account – Profit on Transfer | | 110,000 | |
| Share Capital Account | | 300,000 | |
| Being balances transferred. | | | |
| Sundry Members Account | Dr. | 450,000 | |
| To Sundries— | | | |
| Cash | | | 180,000 |
| United Engineering Co. Shares Account | | | 270,000 |
| Being 3 shares of £1 each valued at £1 10s. per share, and £3 per share in cash for each of 60,000 Shares distributed to Shareholders. | | | |

**WOLVERHAMPTON ENGINEERING COMPANY'S LEDGER
REALISATION ACCOUNT**

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| To Sundry Assets | £ 520,000 | By Sundry Creditors | £ 30,000 |
| „ Premium on Debentures | 7,500 | „ United Engineering Co., Limited | 607,500 |
| „ Sundry Members Account, Profit on absorption | 110,000 | | |
| | <u>£637,500</u> | | <u>£637,500</u> |

SUNDRY LIABILITIES

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| To Realisation Account | £ 30,000 | By Sundry Creditors | £ 30,000 |
| | <u>£30,000</u> | | <u>£30,000</u> |

DEBENTURES

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------|---|-----------------|---------------------------------------|---|-----------------|
| To United Engineering Co., Limited | £ | 157,500 | By Balance b/f. | £ | 150,000 |
| | | | „ Realisation Account - Premium | | 7,500 |
| | | <u>£157,500</u> | | | <u>£157,500</u> |

SUNDRY MEMBERS

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------------|------------------------|---|-----------------|
| To Cash | £ | 180,000 | By Share Capital | £ | 300,000 |
| „ United Co.'s Shares | | 270,000 | „ Sundries | | 150,000 |
| | | <u>£450,000</u> | | | <u>£450,000</u> |

SHARES IN UNITED ENGINEERING CO. LTD

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------|---|---------|---------------------------------|---|---------|
| To United Engineering Co., Limited | £ | 270,000 | By Sundry Members Account | £ | 270,000 |
|------------------------------------------|---|---------|---------------------------------|---|---------|

ACCIDENT INSURANCE FUND

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---|-------|-----------------------|---|-------|
| To Sundry Members | £ | 5,000 | By Balance b/f. | £ | 5,000 |
|-------------------------|---|-------|-----------------------|---|-------|

GENERAL RESERVE

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---|--------|-----------------------|---|--------|
| To Sundry Members | £ | 32,000 | By Balance b/f. | £ | 32,000 |
|-------------------------|---|--------|-----------------------|---|--------|

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---|-------|-----------------------|---|-------|
| To Sundry Members | £ | 3,000 | By Balance b/f. | £ | 3,000 |
|-------------------------|---|-------|-----------------------|---|-------|

UNITED ENGINEERING COMPANY, LIMITED

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------|---|---------|-------------------|---|---------|
| To Realisation Account | £ | 607,500 | By Sundries | £ | 607,500 |
|------------------------------|---|---------|-------------------|---|---------|

UNITED ENGINEERING COMPANY'S JOURNAL

| Sundries | Dr. | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------------|-----------------|
| To Sundries: | | | |
| Land and Buildings | | 76,500 | |
| Plant and Machinery | | 220,000 | |
| Patents | | 5,000 | |
| Patterns and Drawings | | 2,500 | |
| Work-in-Progress and Stocks on Hand | | 106,000 | |
| Sundry Debtors | | 45,000 | |
| Investments | | 5,000 | |
| Cash at Bank and in Hand | | 35,000 | |
| Goodwill | | 142,500 | |
| Wolverhampton Engineering Company, Limited | | | 607,500 |
| Sundry Creditors | | | 30,000 |
| Being Sundry Assets and Liabilities taken over as per Purchase Agreement. | | | |
| | | <u>£637,500</u> | <u>£637,500</u> |

UNITED ENGINEERING COMPANY'S JOURNAL (*continued*)

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----------|----------|
| Wolverhampton Engineering Company, Limited | Dr. | £ 607,500 | |
| To Sundries: | | | |
| Cash | | | 180,000 |
| 5% Debentures Account | | | 157,500 |
| Share Capital Account— | | | |
| 180,000 Shares of £1 each | | | 180,000 |
| Share Premium Account | | | 90,000 |
| Being discharge of Purchase Consideration, the shares being taken as issued at £1 10s. per share. | | | |
| | | £607,500 | £607,500 |

Notes to Illustration

(1) ACCIDENT INSURANCE FUND

This fund has been raised by the Wolverhampton Company out of profits, and is represented by specific investments. Since there remains a credit balance on the Fund Account at the date of the sale of the undertaking, it is obvious that the Wolverhampton Company has made a profit to the extent of £5,000 by undertaking their own risks instead of insuring outside. Therefore, although the United Company takes over the investments representing such insurance profits, it only buys them *qua* investments, and should not bring the Fund Account into its books. In the vendor company's books the balance of this Fund Account will be transferred to the Sundry Members Account in common with the other accumulated profit balances.

(2) GOODWILL

The final figure of goodwill, £142,500, shown in the United Company's books, is arrived at by taking the difference between the actual assets acquired and the purchase consideration plus liabilities taken over.

The amount can be proved as follows:

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------|
| | £ |
| Goodwill as per vendor company's books | 25,000 |
| Profit on absorption ditto | 110,000 |
| Premium on Debentures unrepresented by assets | 7,500 |
| | £142,500 |

(3) PREMIUM ON SHARES

In the vendor company's books the premium forms part of the cost of the shares in the purchasing company acquired. In effect, therefore, it forms part of the price received for goodwill, since it increases the profit on realisation disclosed by the Realisation Account. In the purchasing company's books, the share premium increases the cost of goodwill. It must be credited to Share Premium Account and can only be dealt with in accordance with the provisions of Section 56 of the Companies Act, 1948.

(e) Where Debtors and Creditors are not taken over

If relief from stamp duty is available under Section 55, Finance Act, 1927, there is no reason why the debtors and creditors should not be taken over by the purchasing company, but where such relief is not available, a considerable saving may result from leaving the debtors to be collected by the new company and the creditors paid by them as agents for the vending company. Where this is done, the liquidation of the vending company cannot be completed until the debts are discharged.

Illustration (2)

Done Ltd.'s summarised Balance Sheet at 31st December was as follows:

| | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------|----------------------|---------|
| Issued Capital: | | Goodwill .. | £ 3,000 |
| 10,000 6% Preference Shares | 10 000 | Fixed Assets | 22,300 |
| 8,000 Ordinary Shares .. | 8,000 | Stock .. | 4,000 |
| Reserve | 2,000 | Debtors .. | 7,000 |
| Profit and Loss Account .. | 1,000 | Preliminary Expenses | 500 |
| 5% Debentures | 12,000 | Cash .. | 1,200 |
| Creditors | 5,000 | | |
| | 38,000 | | £38,000 |

A new company, Start Ltd., was formed to acquire (as part of an amalgamation scheme) the business of Done Ltd., which was to be wound up.

Start Ltd. acquired the assets of Done Ltd., with the exception of book debts and cash, but took over no liabilities, agreeing, however, to collect the debts and pay the creditors as agent for Done Ltd.

The purchase consideration was to be satisfied as follows:

- (1) To the preference shareholders of Done Ltd. were to be allotted six £1 5% preference shares in Start Ltd. for every five held, and to the ordinary shareholders of Done Ltd., five £1 ordinary shares credited as 18s. paid for every four held.
- (2) Sufficient 4% debentures in Start Ltd. to enable the liquidator of Done Ltd. to satisfy the existing debenture holders by new debentures to an extent that would give them a premium of 15%.

The expenses of liquidation were £585.

The Articles of Association of Done Ltd. gave to the preference shares a cumulative preference dividend, any arrears of which were payable on winding-up in priority to return of capital, and a preferential return of capital in a winding-up. 6 months' dividend was payable.

Of the debtors, £200 proved bad, and a discount of $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ had to be allowed on settlement. Creditors were paid, subject to 4% discount on £2,500. The purchasing company was allowed a commission of $\frac{1}{2}\%$ on sums collected and $\frac{1}{4}\%$ on sums disbursed.

Show the ledger accounts necessary to close Done Ltd.'s books, making any necessary calculations to the nearest £.

REALISATION ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------------------|---------|
| To Goodwill | 3,000 | By Start Ltd., Purchase consideration | 34,800 |
| „ Fixed Assets | 22,300 | „ Discounts received | 100 |
| „ Stock | 4,000 | | |
| „ Premium on Debentures | 1,800 | | |
| „ Cash, expenses of liquidation | 585 | | |
| „ Bad Debts | 200 | | |
| „ Discounts allowed | 170 | | |
| „ Start Ltd.—Commission on collection of debts and payment of creditors | 45 | | |
| „ Preference Members Account— Arrears of Dividends | 300 | | |
| „ Sundry Members Account— Profit on realisation: | | | |
| Preference | 2,000 | | |
| Ordinary | 500 | | |
| | £34,900 | | £34,900 |

SUNDRY MEMBERS

| | | Preference | Ordinary | | | Preference | Ordinary |
|-------------------------|----|----------------|----------------|----------------------------|----|----------------|----------------|
| | | £ | £ | | | £ | £ |
| To Preliminary Expenses | .. | | 500 | By Capital | .. | 10,000 | 8,000 |
| .. Shares in Start Ltd. | .. | 12,000 | 9,000 | .. Reserve | .. | | 2,000 |
| .. Cash | .. | 300 | 2,000 | .. Profit and Loss Account | .. | | 1,000 |
| | | | | .. Profit on Realisation | .. | 2,000 | 500 |
| | | | | .. Arrears of Dividend | .. | 300 | |
| | | <u>£12,300</u> | <u>£11,500</u> | | | <u>£12,300</u> | <u>£11,500</u> |

SUNDRY DEBENTURE HOLDERS

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------|----------------|--------------------------------|-------|----------------|
| | | £ | | | £ |
| To 4% Debentures in Start Ltd. | .. .. | 13,800 | By 5% Debentures | .. .. | 12,000 |
| | | | „ Realisation Account, premium | .. .. | 1,800 |
| | | <u>£13,800</u> | | | <u>£13,800</u> |

CASH

| | | | | | £ | | | | | | £ |
|-----------------|----|----|----|----|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|---------------|
| To Balance b/f. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 1,200 | By Expenses of Liquidation | .. | .. | .. | .. | 585 |
| „ Start Ltd. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 1,685 | „ Preference Shareholders - Arrears of Dividend | .. | .. | .. | .. | 300 |
| | | | | | | „ Ordinary Shareholders | .. | .. | .. | .. | 2,000 |
| | | | | | <u>£2,885</u> | | | | | | <u>£2,885</u> |

START LTD.

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Realisation Account, purchase consideration .. | 34,800 | By 5% £1 Preference Shares in Start Ltd. .. | 12,000 |
| | | „ £1 Ordinary Shares in Start Ltd. .. | 9,000 |
| | | „ 4% Debentures in Start Ltd. .. | 13,800 |
| | | | |
| To Sundry Debtors collected | 6,630 | By Sundry Creditors paid .. | 4,900 |
| | | „ Realisation Account, Commission— | |
| | | 1% on £6,630 = £33 | |
| | | 1% on £4,900 = 12 | |
| | | | |
| | | „ Cash | 45 |
| | | | 1,685 |
| | <u>£6,630</u> | | <u>£6,630</u> |

SUNDRY DEBTORS

| | | £ | | | £ |
|-----------------|----|---------------|--------------------------------|----|---------------|
| To Balance b/f. | .. | 7,000 | By Realisation Account: | | |
| | | | Bad Debts | .. | 200 |
| | | | Discounts, 2½% on £6,800 | .. | 170 |
| | | | .. Start Ltd. – cash collected | .. | 6,630 |
| | | <u>£7,000</u> | | | <u>£7,000</u> |

SUNDRY CREDITORS

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------|----|---------------|-----------------|--|---------------|
| | | £ | | | £ |
| To Realisation Account— | | | By Balance b/f. | | 5,000 |
| Discounts, 4% on £2,500 | .. | 100 | | | |
| „ Start Ltd. - amount paid | .. | 4,900 | | | |
| | | <u>£5,000</u> | | | <u>£5,000</u> |

Note

Since the Articles define the rights of the preference shareholders in a winding up, they are entitled to no further share in the assets of the company, and the surplus, after the preference shareholders have received their agreed share of the sale consideration and their arrears of dividend, goes to the ordinary shareholders (*Scottish Insurance Corporation v. Wilsons and Clyde Coal Co. Ltd.* (1949), A.C. 462).

§ 18. Reduction of Capital

Section 66, makes provision for the reduction of the share capital of a company as follows:

(1) Subject to confirmation by the court, a company limited by shares, or a company limited by guarantee and having a share capital may, if so authorised by its articles, by special resolution reduce its share capital in any way, and in particular, without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power, may:

- (a) extinguish or reduce the liability on any of its shares in respect of share capital not paid up; or
- (b) either with or without extinguishing or reducing liability on any of its shares, cancel any paid-up share capital which is lost or unrepresented by available assets; or
- (c) either with or without extinguishing or reducing liability on any of its shares, pay off any paid-up share capital which is in excess of the wants of the company, and may, if and so far as is necessary, alter its memorandum by reducing the amount of its share capital, and of its shares accordingly.

(2) A special resolution under this section is in this Act referred to as 'a resolution for reducing share capital'.

Where the proposed reduction of share capital involves either diminution of liability in respect of unpaid share capital, or the payment to any shareholder of any paid-up share capital, and in any other case if the court so directs, creditors are entitled to object, and those so objecting must be either paid off or secured.

In assenting to a scheme, the principal points the court takes into consideration are the protection of the rights of creditors, and the equitable adjustment of the loss between the various classes of shareholders, having regard to their rights both as to dividend and capital.

The arrangement of a scheme acceptable to all parties and to the court is a matter of much difficulty, and it is not possible here to deal with the subject otherwise than quite generally, since every case must be considered on its merits.

The reduction does not take effect until a copy of the court order and a minute approved by the court have been registered with the registrar of companies. The court may, in its discretion, order the words 'and reduced' to be added to the company's name for a period.

In formulating a scheme of reduction of capital, it is desirable simultaneously to pass a resolution to increase the capital to its original figure by the creation of unissued shares, otherwise, if further shares require to be issued, capital stamp duty will be payable.

(a) Writing off Capital unrepresented by available Assets

The following illustration shows the entries in a company's books to give effect to a reduction of capital where capital has been lost or is unrepresented by available assets.

It is first necessary to create the fund for the reduction by making transfers from the various Share Capital Accounts of the amounts by which the capital is to be reduced and then to apply the fund in writing off the items decided upon. Where drastic alterations in capital are involved, it is preferable to close the old Capital Accounts and open new ones, crediting the difference to the Capital Reduction Account.

Illustration

The summarized Balance Sheet of P. Ltd. at 31st March, 19... was:

| | | £ | | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------|----------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Authorized and Issued Capital: | | | Goodwill | 25,000 |
| 100,000 6 per cent Cumulative Preference Shares | | | Patents and Trade Marks | 10,000 |
| of £1 each | 100,000 | | Land and Buildings | 88,000 |
| 200,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each | 200,000 | | Plant and Machinery | 86,000 |
| | | 300,000 | Shares in Subsidiary Ltd. | 30,000 |
| | | | Stock | 73,000 |
| 5 per cent Debenture (secured on Land | £ | | Debtors | 98,500 |
| and Buildings) | 50,000 | | Deferred Expenditure | 25,000 |
| Add Accrued Interest | 2,500 | | Profit and Loss Account | 85,000 |
| | | 52,500 | | |
| Bank Overdraft | | 60,000 | | |
| Creditors | | 85,000 | | |
| Directors' Loans | | 23,000 | | |
| | | £520,500 | | £520,500 |

Notes: – (1) Dividends on the Preference Shares are three years in arrear.

(2) There is a contingent liability for damages of £10,000.

A Capital Reduction Scheme, duly approved, settled the following terms:

- (1) The Preference Shares to be reduced to 16s each and the Ordinary Shares to 5s each and the resulting shares then to be converted into Preference and Ordinary Stock respectively and consolidated into units of £1. The authorized capital to be restored to £100,000 6 per cent Cumulative Preference Stock and £200,000 Ordinary Stock. The Preference shareholders waive two-thirds of the dividend arrears and receive Ordinary Stock for the balance.
- (2) All intangible assets to be eliminated, and bad debts of £7,500 and obsolete stock of £10,000 to be written off.
- (3) The shares in Subsidiary Ltd. are sold to an outside interest for £60,000.
- (4) The Debenture-holder agreed to take over one of the company's properties (book value £18,000) at a price of £25,000 in part satisfaction of the Debenture and to provide further cash of £15,000 on a floating charge. The arrears of interest are paid.
- (5) The contingent liability materialized in the sum stated but the company recovered £5,000 of these damages in an action against one of its directors. This was debited to his loan account of £8,000, the balance of which was repaid in cash on his resignation.
- (6) The remaining directors agreed to take Ordinary Stock in satisfaction of their loans.

You are required to:

- (a) Give the necessary Journal entries to record the above, including the cash transactions.
- (b) Set out the revised Balance Sheet after giving effect to the entries in (a). (Ignore taxation.)

P. LTD.

(a)

JOURNAL

| | | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------|---------|
| Preference Share Capital Account | Dr. | 20,000 | |
| Ordinary Share Capital Account | | 150,000 | 170,000 |
| To Capital Reduction Account | | | |
| Being 4s. per share written off 100,000 6 per cent Cumulative Preference Shares of £1 each and 15s. per share written off 200,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each, in accordance with Capital Reduction Scheme. | | | |
| Preference Share Capital Account | Dr. | 80,000 | |
| Ordinary Share Capital Account | | 50,000 | 80,000 |
| To 6 per cent Cumulative Preference Stock Account | | | |
| " Ordinary Stock Account | | | |
| Being conversion of 100,000 Preference Shares of 16s. each and 200,000 Ordinary Shares of 5s. each into stock and consolidation into 80,000 £1 units of 6 per cent Cumulative Preference Stock and 50,000 £1 units of Ordinary Stock respectively. | | | |

P. LTD.

JOURNAL (continued)

| | £ | € |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--------|
| Capital Reduction Account Dr. | 6,000 | |
| To Ordinary Stock Account | | 6,000 |
| Being allotment of 6,000 £1 Ordinary Stock units in satisfaction of one-third of the arrears of Preference dividend, the other two-thirds being waived. | | |
| Capital Reduction Account Dr. | 162,500 | |
| To Goodwill | | 25,000 |
| " Patents and Trade Marks | | 10,000 |
| " Deferred Expenditure Advertising | | 25,000 |
| " Profit and Loss Account | | 85,000 |
| " Debtors | | 7,500 |
| " Stock | | 10,000 |
| Being writing off of intangible assets, bad debts and obsolete stock. | | |
| Cash Dr. | 60,000 | |
| To Shares in Subsidiary Ltd. | | 30,000 |
| " Capital Reduction Account | | 30,000 |
| Being sale of shares in Subsidiary Ltd for £60,000 and excess over book value (£30,000) transferred to Capital Reduction Account. | | |
| 5 per cent Debenture Dr. | 25,000 | |
| To Land and Buildings | | 18,000 |
| " Capital Reduction Account | | 7,000 |
| Being property transferred to debenture-holder at a valuation of £25,000 in part satisfaction of Debenture for £50,000 and excess over book value (£18,000) transferred to Capital Reduction Account. | | |
| Debenture Interest Dr. | 2,500 | |
| To Cash | | 2,500 |
| Being payment of accrued interest on £50,000 5 per cent Debenture. | | |
| Cash Dr. | 15,000 | |
| To Second Debenture | | 15,000 |
| Being issued in respect of a new debenture carrying a floating charge over the assets of the company. | | |
| Capital Reduction Account Dr. | 5,000 | |
| Directors' Loan Account | 5,000 | 10,000 |
| To Cash | | |
| Being payment of £10,000 in settlement of contingent liability and recovery of £5,000 thereof by set-off against directors' loan. | | |
| Directors' Loans Dr. | 18,000 | |
| To Cash | | 3,000 |
| " Ordinary Stock Account | | 15,000 |
| Being repayment to former director of balance of loan and allotment of Ordinary Stock in satisfaction of other directors' loans. | | |
| Capital Reduction Account Dr. | 33,500 | |
| To Capital Reserve Account | | 33,500 |
| Being balance on Capital Reduction Account transferred to Capital Reserve. | | |

P. LTD.

(b) BALANCE SHEET AFTER REDUCTION OF CAPITAL

| | £ | | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| AUTHORIZED CAPITAL: | | FIXED ASSETS: | | |
| £100,000 6 per cent Cumulative Preference Stock | | Land and Buildings | 70,000 | |
| (£1 units) | 100,000 | Plant and Machinery | 86,000 | 156,000 |
| £200,000 Ordinary Stock (£6 units) | 200,000 | | | |
| | £300,000 | CURRENT ASSETS: | | |
| | | Stock | 63,000 | |
| | | Debtors | 91,000 | 154,000 |
| ISSUED CAPITAL: | | | | |
| 80,000 6 per cent Cumulative Preference Stock (£1 units) | 80,000 | | | |
| 71,000 Ordinary Stock (£1 units) | 71,000 | | | |
| | 151,000 | | | |
| CAPITAL RESERVE | 33,500 | | | |
| DEBENTURES: | | | | |
| 5 per cent Debenture (secured) | £25,000 | | | |
| Second Debenture (secured) | 15,000 | | | |
| | 40,000 | | | |
| CURRENT LIABILITIES: | | | | |
| Sundry Creditors | 85,000 | | | |
| Bank Overdraft | 500 | | | |
| | 85,500 | | | |
| | <u>£310,000</u> | | | <u>£310,000</u> |

(b) Other modes of Reduction of Capital

The forfeiture of shares will result in a reduction of capital until such shares are re-issued, but, in view of the circumstances, sanction of the court is not required, the forfeiture being carried out under the terms of the Articles for non-payment of calls or premiums on shares.

The surrender of shares is not valid unless the right of the company to forfeit them has already arisen; nor is the acquisition by a company of its own shares valid, except to the extent that redeemable preference shares can be repaid. The latter is not a reduction, however, inasmuch as, unless there has been a fresh issue of shares for the purpose, the capital is replaced by the Capital Redemption Reserve Fund.

(c) Schemes for Capital Reduction

In (a) above, the book-keeping entries required to give effect to a capital reduction scheme have been shown. It is now necessary to consider how a scheme is drawn up, having regard to the facts of the case and the rights of the various classes of persons interested. It must be borne in mind throughout that a scheme for reduction of capital is only worthy of consideration if the company has reasonable prospects of making profits in the future. If it is already a doomed concern, it will be better to wind it up forthwith.

The first step is to determine the amount required to eliminate any fictitious assets, and write down assets that are overvalued. In this connection, it is important to bear in mind that the over-valuation of an asset may result in an excessive charge being made in the Profit and Loss Account for depreciation, causing profits to be understated or losses overstated to the extent of such excess.

Illustration (1)

Plant standing in the books at £100,000, is being depreciated at the rate of 10% per annum, which is considered an adequate rate to eliminate the plant from the books by the end of its effective life. A current valuation on a going concern basis shows that the plant is worth only £40,000. The decrease in the charge for depreciation from £10,000 to £4,000 speaks for itself, and might make all the difference between a profit and a loss or the payment or non-payment of dividends.

Any debit balance on Profit and Loss Account must be provided for, and it is desirable to write off all fictitious assets, *e.g.*, preliminary expenses, to write off or reduce the book value of goodwill and to provide for the adequate writing down of such items as patents, trade marks, patterns, etc., unless they can definitely be deemed to be worth their book values.

Having arrived at the total amount to be provided, it is then necessary to examine closely the rights of the debenture holders, creditors and various classes of shareholders. The following general points must be considered:

- (1) *Debenture holders* can sometimes be persuaded to share in the general sacrifices that will be necessary to give the company a new lease of life. Persons who invest in debentures are content with a comparatively low rate of interest, provided their

capital is secured. If it can be shown that on a forced realisation of assets such as would ensue if the company were driven into liquidation, the assets, after providing for preferential creditors and the costs, would not realise sufficient to repay the debentures in full, but that there is every prospect of the security being enhanced in the future if the company is reorganised, then the debenture holders may consent to cooperate by sacrificing some of their capital. Some recompense is usually required, *e.g.*, an increased rate of interest, and/or an interest in the equity by the issue to them of fully-paid ordinary shares for a proportion of their capital contribution to the amount required for writing off assets.

In many cases, it will be found that bankers hold debentures as additional security for loans and overdrafts. These must be taken into consideration, and in very many cases will result in the liability to the bank having to be paid in full.

- (2) *Creditors*, other than those who would be preferential in a winding-up, may agree to share in a reduction where the position warrants it. If the debenture holders have agreed to make some sacrifice, the creditors can hardly refrain from doing so, as it can be proved that in the event of liquidation, they would get little or nothing. In other cases, however, creditors can only be expected to accept something less than the amounts due to them where it can be shown that in that way they will get more than if they either refused (making a reconstruction in the circumstances impossible) or forced the company into liquidation.

In most cases, however, neither debenture holders nor creditors can be expected to share in the reduction, and the amount required must be provided by writing down share capital alone.

- (3) *Shareholders*. The bulk of the loss, in most cases the whole of it, must fall upon the shareholders. If creditors are to come into the scheme, the shareholders must give up something to them, *e.g.*, a share in the equity that will enable the creditors to reap some reward in future years for their immediate sacrifice.

It is now necessary to consider the position of the various classes of shareholders.

Where capital has been lost, the brunt of the loss must fall on the ordinary shareholders, but if this would mean their losing all their interest in the company it is obvious that they would not agree to the scheme. The company may have retained in the past profits which could have been distributed as dividends, but which the shareholders allowed to remain in order to strengthen the company's finances. As the company fell on leaner times such reserves may have been drawn upon to pay preference dividends, with the result that the ordinary shareholders have already made a sacrifice for the benefit of the preference shareholders.

Before considering this question further, it is essential to appreciate the real effect of writing down capital. As an example, let it be assumed that the capital of a company is £100,000, divided into 60,000 £1 6% preference shares and 40,000 £1 ordinary shares. So far as profits are concerned, whatever sum remains after the

preference dividend of £3,600 has been paid is divisible among the ordinary shareholders. It does not matter, therefore, to what nominal value the ordinary shares are written down; the *amount* of the dividend per share remains the same, though the rate per cent. is increased, and the market value of the shares will not be affected by the reduction in nominal value. Writing down ordinary shares therefore entails no real sacrifice so long as the shareholders' interest in the divisible profits is not reduced. A reduction in the nominal value of the preference shares, however, or in the rate of dividend payable thereon, will reduce the preference shareholders' participation in profits and, as a consequence, the market value of their shares. Again, if the preference shares have the right to preferential repayment of capital, but are entitled to no right to share in a surplus on a winding-up, the ordinary shareholders will receive all the assets remaining after repaying the preference capital, no matter what the nominal value of the ordinary shares may be. Writing down ordinary shares in such circumstances imposes no sacrifice upon the holders of such shares.

Where preference shareholders are entitled to share in a surplus the writing down of the ordinary shares does involve a sacrifice of rights, since a bigger proportion of any surplus would then go to the preference shareholders. The ultimate winding-up rights, however, are not so immediately important as the dividend, *i.e.*, going concern rights, and, therefore, where preference shareholders are called upon to share in a reduction of capital it is only equitable that ordinary shareholders should give up part of their rights to the preference shareholders.

It is considered that preference shareholders should only be asked to share in a reduction where their dividend rights are excessive, having regard to current conditions, and/or the amount required exceeds the ordinary capital. In such cases the preference shareholders might be asked to accept a lower rate of dividend or make some contribution to the loss of capital, but in either case they should receive some compensation such as a share in the equity of the company to give them the chance of recouping at least part of their loss if conditions improve.

Arrears of cumulative preference dividends must be dealt with on their merits. If they are cancelled, the preference shareholders should be compensated by the issue to them of shares or income certificates (to be paid off out of future profits in priority to dividends) in respect of the whole or part of the arrears, the cancellation of which will benefit the ordinary shareholders.

The real test of whether the scheme is reasonably equitable is to compute how the estimated future income will be divisible under the new share capital holdings as compared with the old, bearing in mind that, as a result of the reorganisation, all classes of shares can anticipate immediate dividends instead of waiting until the debit balance on Profit and Loss Account is eliminated by profits. The benefit of immediate dividends is greater, the lower the class of shares. Deferred shares, as a rule, will have to be cancelled, or given a very minute interest in the reorganised company. If, however, they hold valuable rights *pari passu* with the ordinary shares, they will have to rank equitably with the latter.

Illustration (2)

The following is the Balance Sheet of Mills Ltd. as on 31st December:

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Capital, Authorised and Issued: | | Goodwill | 100,000 |
| 250,000 6 per cent. Cumulative Preference Shares | | Patents and Trade Marks | 80,000 |
| of £1 each | 250,000 | Freehold Land and Buildings | 135,000 |
| 250,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each | 250,000 | Plant and Machinery | 85,000 |
| 6 per cent. Debentures secured by a floating charge | | Stock-in-Trade | 79,900 |
| on the assets | 100,000 | Sundry Debtors | 110,000 |
| Arrears of Interest thereon | 12,000 | Cash in hand | 100 |
| Sundry Creditors | 64,000 | Profit and Loss Account | 110,000 |
| Bank Overdraft | 24,000 | | |
| | <u>£700,000</u> | | <u>£700,000</u> |

The dividends on the preference shares are 5 years in arrear.

The directors state that the current trading results show a marked improvement, and that they anticipate a net profit of £20,000 per annum will be maintained in future years.

They desire to resume the payment of dividends as soon as possible and are accordingly considering the reduction of the company's capital.

The debenture holders, in order to assist in the revival of the company, have expressed their willingness to exchange their arrears of interest for an interest in the equity of the business of one-half of the nominal value of the arrears, and to provide £25,000 further cash (on a floating charge) to repay the bank overdraft and to provide working capital of £1,000.

The preference shares are described by the Articles as not preferential as to capital, but any arrears of dividends are to form a first charge upon any surplus on winding-up. The preference shareholders have expressed their willingness to a reduction in the rate of dividend to 5 per cent. and to forego two-thirds of their arrears, provided that they receive an interest in the equity equal in nominal value to the remaining third.

You are required:

- (a) To draft a scheme for the reduction of capital which should include the elimination of goodwill (acquired from James Mill on the formation of the company in exchange for 100,000 ordinary shares which he still holds) and the Profit and Loss Account balance, the reduction of the value of patents and trade marks by £50,000, and the provision of a capital reserve through which any adjustments arising out of the capital rearrangements, etc., may be dealt with. After reduction, the ordinary shares are to be converted into shilling shares.
- (b) To re-draft the Balance Sheet, giving effect to the scheme you suggest.

(a) Scheme for Reduction of Capital

The amount by which the capital is to be reduced is £285,000, made up as follows:

| | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| To eliminate Goodwill | 100,000 |
| „ „ Profit and Loss Account balance | 110,000 |
| „ write down Patents and Trade Marks | 50,000 |
| „ provide for one-third of arrears of Preference Dividend | 25,000 |
| | <u>£285,000</u> |

Since the preference shares are not entitled to priority as to capital, the loss of capital should, *prima facie*, be borne equally between the ordinary and the preference shareholders. In view, however, of the fact that the preference shareholders have consented to a reduction in their rate of cumulative dividend to 5 per cent., which, of itself, will reduce the value of their shares, they should be required to suffer a correspondingly smaller reduction in their nominal capital. It is true that the preference shareholders are also to receive a share in the equity amounting to £25,000, but this is in consideration of the cancellation of £75,000 arrears of dividend, and is quite independent of the reduction in nominal capital.

It is therefore proposed that the capital be reorganised as follows:

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| (1) The 250,000 6 per cent. cumulative preference shares of £1 each to be reduced to shares of 13s. 6d. each, and subdivided into: | £ |
| 250,000 5 per cent. cumulative preference shares of 10s. each .. | £125,000 |
| 875,000 ordinary shares of 1s. each | 43,750 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £168,750 |
| | <hr/> |
| This represents a reduction in capital of | 81,250 |
| In addition, the preference shareholders to receive 500,000 ordinary shares of 1s. each = £25,000, in satisfaction of one-third of their arrears of dividend, the balance to be cancelled. | |
| (2) The 250,000 ordinary shares of £1 each to be reduced to shares of 4s. each, and converted into 1,000,000 ordinary shares of 1s. each | |
| This represents a reduction in capital of | 200,000 |
| (3) The debenture holders to be allotted 120,000 ordinary shares of 1s. each in satisfaction of half their arrears of interest, the balance to be cancelled. | |
| This represents a reduction of | 6,000 |
| | <hr/> |
| Total reduction | £287,250 |
| | <hr/> |

Of this amount, £285,000 will be applied in writing down the assets and providing for the £25,000 arrears of preference dividend, as shown above. The balance of £2,250 may be applied in meeting the costs of the reduction scheme and any adjustments arising out of it, and in reducing such other of the assets as may be determined by the directors.

The paid-up capital of the company will now consist of:

| | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| 250,000 5 per cent. cumulative preference shares of 10s. each .. | £125,000 |
| 2,495,000 ordinary shares of 1s. each | 124,750 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £249,750 |
| | <hr/> |

The resolution for reduction of capital should at the same time provide for the restoration of the authorised capital to £500,000, thus leaving £250,250 unissued capital, which would be available for issue at some future date, if required.

The effect of the above reorganisation of capital, assuming an annual profit of £20,000 to be maintained, will be to cause the profits to be divided between the existing preference and ordinary shareholders in approximately the following proportions. Although on a profit of £20,000, the preference shareholders will receive a little less than previously, their holding of ordinary shares will give them the control of the company, and they will take a major share in any increase in distributable profits over £20,000.

| | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------|----------------|
| Existing preference shareholders will receive: | | |
| Dividend of 5 per cent. on £125,000 new preference shares | 6,250 | |
| Dividend of, say, 10 per cent. on £68,750 new ordinary shares | 6,875 | |
| | | 13,125 |
| Existing ordinary shareholders will receive: | | |
| Dividend of, say, 10 per cent. on £50,000 new ordinary shares | | 5,000 |
| Debenture holders will receive: | | |
| Dividend of, say, 10 per cent. on £6,000 new ordinary shares | | 600 |
| | | 18,725 |
| Carry forward | | 1,275 |
| | | <u>£20,000</u> |

Note

It is assumed that the debenture interest would already have been provided for before arriving at the profit of £20,000.

MILLS LTD
RE-DRAFTED BALANCE SHEET

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------|-----------------------------|---------|-----------------|
| Capital— | | | FIXED ASSETS— | | |
| Authorised | 500,000 | | Patents and Trade Marks | 30,000 | |
| Issued— | | | Freehold Land and Buildings | 135,000 | |
| 250,000 5% Cumulative Preference Shares of 10s. each | 125,000 | | Plant and Machinery | 85,000 | 250,000 |
| 2,495,000 Ordinary Shares of 1s. each | 124,750 | | CURRENT ASSETS— | | |
| Capital Reserve | | 249,750 | Stock-in-Trade | 79,900 | |
| 6% Debentures secured by a floating charge on the assets | | 125,000 | Sundry Debtors | 110,000 | |
| Sundry Creditors | | 64,000 | Cash | 1,100 | 191,000 |
| | | <u>£441,000</u> | | | <u>£441,000</u> |

§ 19. Reconstructions and Reorganisations

The sale of the undertaking of an existing company to a new company specially formed for that purpose is termed a reconstruction, and may be resorted to for any of the following objects:

- (1) For the purpose of raising fresh capital by issuing partly paid shares in the new company in exchange for fully paid shares in the old company, and calling up the balance of such new shares as and when required.
- (2) For amalgamating two or more companies.
- (3) For taking new powers in the Memorandum, or changing the domicile of the company.
- (4) For re-arranging the capital and the rights of members as between themselves.
- (5) For effecting a compromise with creditors, or the allotment to them of shares or debentures in settlement of their claims.

The cases of amalgamation and absorption of one company by another have already been dealt with.

Where a company is being wound up voluntarily, and is disposing of the whole or part of its undertaking to another company in consideration for shares in that company, to be distributed rateably amongst the shareholders of the vendor company, the scheme must be approved by the members by special resolution (in the case of a creditors' winding-up, with the sanction of the committee of inspection or of the court). Any dissentient member may call upon the liquidator by notice in writing within 7 days of the date of the resolution, either to abandon the scheme, or purchase the dissentient's interest at a price to be agreed or settled by arbitration. This course might be adopted where the shares of the new company are to be allotted as only partly paid.

If the liquidator elects to purchase the member's interest, the purchase money must be paid before the company is dissolved, and be raised by the liquidator in such manner as may be determined by special resolution (§ 287).

It may be arranged for the shares not taken up by shareholders to be allotted to the nominee of the liquidator, who will sell them for the best price he can obtain, and divide the proceeds among the shareholders who dissent from the scheme.

In cases where a company has sustained a considerable loss of capital and is unable to satisfy its creditors in full, the reconstruction scheme commonly provides for a reduction of the original capital, a compromise with the creditors either for cash or for the issue of fully-paid shares or debentures, and the provision of new working capital by the issue to the existing shareholders of partly paid up shares, in exchange for the shares held in the old company.

Illustration

The final Trial Balance of the Patent Bottle Company, Limited, was as follows:

| | £ | s | d |
|-------------------------------------|----|----|--------------------|
| Share Capital: | | | |
| 50,000 Shares of £1 each fully paid | .. | .. | 50,000 |
| Creditors | .. | .. | 26,500 |
| Patent Rights | .. | .. | 48,000 |
| Debtors | .. | .. | 4,500 |
| Stock | .. | .. | 10,000 |
| Preliminary Expenses | .. | .. | 1,800 |
| Profit and Loss Account | .. | .. | 12,050 |
| Cash | .. | .. | 150 |
| | | | <hr/> |
| | | | £76,500 £76,500 |

Efforts to secure sufficient new capital to pay off the liabilities and place the concern on a sound basis having proved unsuccessful, it was decided to reconstruct, and the following scheme was submitted to, and approved by, the shareholders and creditors:

- (1) The company to go into voluntary liquidation, and a new company having a nominal capital of £100,000 to be formed, called the New Patent Bottle Company, Limited, to take over the assets and liabilities of the old company.
- (2) The assets to be taken over at book value, with the exception of the patent rights, which were to be subject to adjustment.

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| (3) The creditors to be discharged by the new company on the following basis: | £ |
| Preferential creditors to be paid in full | 500 |
| Unsecured creditors to be discharged by cash composition of 10s. in the £ .. | 13,400 |
| Unsecured creditors to be discharged by issue of 6 per cent. debentures fully paid at a bonus of 10 per cent. | 12,600 |
| | <u>£26,500</u> |

(4) 50,000 shares of £1 each, 10s. paid up, to be issued to the shareholders in the old company, payable 5s. on application and 5s. on allotment.

(5) The costs of liquidation amounting to £250 to be paid by the new company as part of the purchase consideration.

Close the books of the old company, and show the opening entries in the new company's books, preparing therefrom a Balance Sheet, assuming all the shares and debentures to have been allotted, and all cash in respect of the shares to have been received.

OLD COMPANY'S BOOKS JOURNAL

| | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Realisation Account | Dr. 62,650 | 62,650 |
| To Sundry Debit Balances (as per Trial Balance) | | |
| Being Sundry Assets transferred. | | |
| Realisation Account | Dr. 1,260 | 1,260 |
| To Sundry Creditors | | |
| Being Bonus of 10% on £12,600, payable in 6% Debentures fully paid, as per agreement. | | |
| Purchasing Company | Dr. 46,310 | 46,310 |
| To Realisation Account | | |
| Being Purchase consideration payable under scheme as follows: | | |
| 50,000 Shares of £1 each, 10s. paid up, to be issued to Shareholders | £25,000 | |
| £13,860 6% Debentures fully paid, to be issued to Creditors in part payment | 13,860 | |
| Cash to Creditors in part payment of Unsecured Creditors and in full discharge of Preferential Creditors | 7,200 | |
| Cash for Liquidation Expenses | 250 | |
| | <u>£46,310</u> | |
| Realisation Account | Dr. 250 | 250 |
| To Cash | | |
| Being payment of Liquidation Expenses | | |
| Sundries-- | Dr. 46,310 | 46,310 |
| To Purchasing Company | | |
| Shares Account - 50,000 Shares of £1 each, 10s. paid up | 25,000 | |
| Debentures Account - £13,860 6% Debentures | 13,860 | |
| Cash | 7,450 | |
| | <u>£46,310</u> | <u>£46,310</u> |
| Being assets handed over by New Company to Liquidator in settlement of Purchase consideration | | |
| Sundry Creditors | Dr. 27,760 | |
| To Sundries-- | | |
| Debentures | | 13,860 |
| Cash | | 7,200 |
| Realisation Account | | 6,700 |
| | <u>£27,760</u> | <u>£27,760</u> |
| Being discharge of amounts due to Sundry Creditors as per agreement, and transfer of balance to Realisation Account. | | |
| Sundry Members | Dr. 11,150 | 11,150 |
| To Realisation Account | | |
| Being loss on Realisation. | | |
| Sundry Members | Dr. 13,850 | |
| To Sundries-- | | |
| Profit and Loss Account | | 12,050 |
| Preliminary Expenses | | 1,800 |
| Being Balances Transferred. | | |
| Share Capital | Dr. 50,000 | 50,000 |
| To Sundry Members Account | | |
| Being Share Capital Transferred. | | |
| Sundry Members | Dr. 25,000 | 25,000 |
| To Shares in New Company | | |
| Being issue of 50,000 Shares £1 each, 10s. paid up in New Company in exchange for Shares in Old Company. | | |

LEDGER REALISATION ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Sundry Assets | £ 62,650 | By Purchasing Company | £ 46,310 |
| „ Creditors 10% Bonus | 1,260 | „ Sundry Creditors, Rebate allowed | 6,700 |
| „ Cash - Expenses | 250 | „ Sundry Members Account, being Loss | 11,150 |
| | <u>£64,160</u> | | <u>£64,160</u> |

PURCHASING COMPANY

| | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------|---------------------|----------|
| To Realisation Account | £ 46,310 | By Sundries | £ 46,310 |
|--------------------------------|----------|---------------------|----------|

SUNDRY CREDITORS

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------|----------------|
| To Debentures in New Company | £ 13,860 | By Balance b/f. | £ 26,500 |
| „ Cash | 7,200 | „ Realisation Account | 1,260 |
| „ Realisation Account | 6,700 | | |
| | <u>£27,760</u> | | <u>£27,760</u> |

SUNDRY MEMBERS

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| To Realisation Account, Loss | £ 11,150 | By Share Capital Account | £ 50,000 |
| „ Profit and Loss Account | 12,050 | | |
| „ Preliminary Expenses | 1,800 | | |
| „ Shares in New Company | 25,000 | | |
| | <u>£50,000</u> | | <u>£50,000</u> |

CASH BOOK

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------|---------------|
| To Purchasing Company | £ 7,450 | By Sundry Creditors | £ 7,200 |
| | <u>£7,450</u> | „ Liquidation Expenses | 250 |
| | | | <u>£7,450</u> |

NEW COMPANY'S BOOKS JOURNAL

| | Dr. | £ | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------|----------------|
| Sundry Assets— | | | |
| To Vendor | | | 46,310 |
| Patent Rights | | 31,660 | |
| Debtors | | 4,500 | |
| Stock | | 10,000 | |
| Cash | | 150 | |
| | | <u>£46,310</u> | <u>£46,310</u> |
| Being assets taken over in accordance with Scheme of Reconstruction. | | | |
| Vendor | Dr. | 46,310 | |
| To Sundries— | | | |
| Share Capital Account - 50,000 Shares of £1 each, 10s. paid up | | | 25,000 |
| 6% Debentures | | | 13,860 |
| Cash | | | 7,450 |
| | | <u>£46,310</u> | <u>£46,310</u> |
| Being Shares and Debentures issued and Cash paid in settlement of purchase consideration. | | | |
| Application and Allotment Account | Dr. | 25,000 | |
| To Share Capital | | | 25,000 |
| Being 5s. per Share payable on application and 5s. on allotment of 50,000 Shares issued. | | | |

CASH BOOK

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------|-----|------------------------|--------|-------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| To Vendor | £ | 150 | By Vendor | £ | 7,430 | | | | | | | | |
| " Application | 12,300 | | " Balance c/d. | 17,700 | | | | | | | | | |
| " Allotment | 12,300 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

THE ACCOUNTS OF HOLDING COMPANIES

§ 1. Holding Companies

In addition to carrying on their ordinary functions as trading concerns, many companies invest a substantial proportion of their capital in the purchase of shares in subsidiary companies with a view to controlling their operations. In some instances the whole of the share capital of the holding company is employed in this way and no trading operations are carried on direct. Control of the subsidiary companies is secured by acquiring a majority of the shares carrying voting rights, and thus the holding company is in a position to control the composition of the board of directors of the subsidiary.

The holding company system has many advantages, of which the following may be mentioned:

- (1) Where it is desired to amalgamate a number of businesses, and at the same time to preserve their separate identities and goodwills, a holding company is an obvious solution.
- (2) Where it is desired to decentralise an existing business, subsidiary companies may be formed to take over certain of its branches or activities.
- (3) Another aspect of preserving the separate entities of businesses is that thereby the income tax assessments on the respective businesses are not disturbed. (This, however, is not now such an important consideration, since by Section 17, Finance Act, 1954, the preceding year basis of assessment will continue to apply even on a complete amalgamation where a company is the vendor of the business and at any time within 2 years after the change at least 75 per cent. of the trade belongs to the same persons as at some time within one year before the change.)
- (4) If it is desired to discontinue certain of the operations, only the subsidiary company or companies carrying on those operations need be closed down or the interest therein sold, whereas if all the businesses are merged into one, the discontinuance of part might be much more difficult and disturbing.
- (5) Since each company must prepare separate accounts, the separate results of each business are available, whereas in a single concern there might be a temptation to dispense with the necessary analysis required to ascertain departmental results.
- (6) Most of the advantages of complete amalgamation apply equally to the holding company type of merger.

Where one company desires to obtain a controlling interest in another company, shares therein can either be acquired by purchase in the open market, or an offer can be made to its shareholders through its directors. In either case the purchasing company may not be able to acquire the whole of the shares, and in many instances the

acquisition of a majority of the shares carrying the voting rights is all that is considered necessary. In some instances, however, it may be desired to obtain a complete interest, and this is rendered possible under Section 209 of the Companies Act, 1948.

This section provides that where a scheme or contract involving the transfer of shares has, within 4 months after the making of the offer, been approved by the holders of not less than nine-tenths in value of the shares affected (other than shares already held by the transferee company or its nominee), the transferee company may, at any time within 2 months after the expiration of the said 4 months, give notice in the prescribed manner to any dissentient shareholder that it desires to acquire his shares. It is then entitled and bound to acquire those shares on the same terms as those on which the other shares are to be transferred, unless the court, upon the application of the dissentient shareholder, within one month of the date of the notice orders otherwise.

Where, however, the transferee company already holds shares in the transferor company of the same class as the shares whose transfer is involved, to a value greater than one-tenth of the aggregate value of the shares whose transfer is involved (other than those already held by the transferee company), the foregoing provisions shall not apply unless:

- (a) the transferee company offers the same terms to all holders of the shares whose transfer is involved; and
- (b) the holders who approve the scheme or contract, besides holding not less than nine-tenths in value of the said shares (other than those already held) represent not less than 75 per cent. of the holders of those shares (§ 209 (1)).

Where, in pursuance of any such scheme or contract, shares in a company are transferred to another company or its nominee, and those shares, together with any other such shares already held by the transferee company or its subsidiary, comprise or include nine-tenths in value of the shares in the first mentioned company, or of any class thereof, the transferee company must, within one month from the date of the transfer, give notice of that fact in the prescribed manner to the holders of the remaining shares who have not assented to the scheme. Any such holder may then, within three months, require the transferee company to acquire his shares, and the transferee company shall then be entitled and bound to acquire those shares on the same terms as those under which the shares of the approving shareholders were transferred to it, or on such other terms as may be agreed or as the court thinks fit to order (§ 209 (2)).

Where a notice has been given under Section 209 (1), and the court has not, upon application, seen fit to interfere, the transferee company shall at the expiration of one month from the date of the notice, or upon the disposal of the application to the court, transmit a copy of the notice to the transferor company together with an instrument of transfer duly executed, and pay the amount of the consideration for the shares to be acquired, and the transferee company shall then be registered as the holder of the shares in question.

The consideration shall be paid into a separate bank account, to be held on trust for the shareholders entitled thereto, who can presumably obtain it upon surrender of their share certificates (§ 209 (3)).

§ 2. Definition of Subsidiary Company

Section 154 of the Companies Act, 1948, defines a subsidiary company as follows:

(1) For the purposes of this Act, a company shall, subject to the provisions of subsection (3) of this section, be deemed to be a subsidiary of another if, but only if,:

(a) that other either:

(i) is a member of it and controls the composition of its board of directors; or

(ii) holds more than half in nominal value of its equity share capital; or

(b) the first-mentioned company is a subsidiary of any company which is that other's subsidiary.

(2) For the purposes of the foregoing subsection, the composition of a company's board of directors shall be deemed to be controlled by another company if, but only if, that other company by the exercise of some power exercisable by it without the consent or concurrence of any other person can appoint or remove the holders of all or a majority of the directorships; but for the purposes of this provision that other company shall be deemed to have power to appoint to a directorship with respect to which any of the following conditions is satisfied, that is to say:

(a) that a person cannot be appointed thereto without the exercise in his favour by that other company of such a power as aforesaid; or

(b) that a person's appointment thereto follows necessarily from his appointment as director of that other company; or

(c) that the directorship is held by that other company itself or by a subsidiary of it.

(3) In determining whether one company is a subsidiary of another:

(a) any shares held or power exercisable by that other in a fiduciary capacity shall be treated as not held or exercisable by it;

(b) subject to the two following paragraphs, any shares held or power exercisable:

(i) by any person as a nominee for that other (except where that other is concerned only in a fiduciary capacity); or

(ii) by, or by a nominee for, a subsidiary of that other, not being a subsidiary which is concerned only in a fiduciary capacity;

shall be treated as held or exercisable by that other;

(c) any shares held or power exercisable by any person by virtue of the provisions of any debentures of the first-mentioned company or of a trust deed for securing any issue of such debentures shall be disregarded;

(d) any shares held or power exercisable by, or by a nominee for, that other or its subsidiary (not being held or exercisable as mentioned in the last foregoing paragraph), shall be treated as not held or exercisable by that other if the ordinary business of that other or its subsidiary, as the case may be, includes the lending of money and the shares are held or power is exercisable as aforesaid by way of security only for the purposes of a transaction entered into in the ordinary course of that business.

(4) For the purposes of this Act, a company shall be deemed to be another's holding company if, but only if, that other is its subsidiary.

(5) In this section the expression 'company' includes any body corporate, and the expression 'equity share capital' means, in relation to a company, its issued share capital

excluding any part thereof which, neither as respects dividends nor as respects capital, carries any right to participate beyond a specified amount in a distribution.

From the above definition it will be seen that for A Ltd. to be a subsidiary of B Ltd. :

- (a) B Ltd. must *both* hold shares in, *and* control the composition of the board of directors of A Ltd. in the manner defined in the Act; *or*
- (b) B Ltd. must hold more than half in nominal value of the equity share capital of A Ltd.; *or*
- (c) A Ltd. must be a subsidiary of another company which itself is a subsidiary of B Ltd.

In determining whether B Ltd. holds more than half of the equity share capital of A Ltd., any shares in A Ltd. held by a nominee or subsidiary of B Ltd. will be deemed to be held by B Ltd.

The definition of 'equity share capital' for the above purpose given in subsection (5) merits attention. The expression means all the issued capital, except any part thereof which, *neither* as respects dividends *nor* as respects capital, carries any right to participate beyond a specified amount in a distribution. Thus it would appear that preference shares which carry the right to a fixed rate of dividend and to no further participation in profits, but which are entitled, on a winding-up, to participate beyond a fixed amount in any surplus assets remaining after the share capital has been repaid, would be regarded as part of the equity share capital for this purpose.

A body corporate or its nominee cannot be a member of a company which is its holding company, and any allotment or transfer of shares in a company to its subsidiary is void, except as follows:

- (a) Where the subsidiary is concerned as personal representative or as trustee (unless the holding company or a subsidiary thereof is beneficially interested under the trust and is not so interested merely by way of security for money lent in the ordinary course of a business which includes lending money);
- (b) Where a subsidiary was a member of its holding company at 1st July 1948 it may continue to be a member, but shall have no right to vote at any meeting of the holding company or any class of members thereof (§ 27).

A distinction must be drawn between a subsidiary company and an associated company. The latter is one working in close association with, and possibly with common directors, without actually being a subsidiary of, the holding company.

§ 3. Group Accounts

Where at the end of its financial year a company has subsidiaries, accounts or statements (referred to as 'group accounts') dealing with the state of affairs and profit or loss of the company and the subsidiaries must be laid before the company in general meeting when the company's own Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account are so laid, except that:

- (a) group accounts are not required where the company is at the end of its financial year the wholly owned subsidiary of another body corporate incorporated in Great Britain. A wholly owned subsidiary is one which has no members other than its

holding company and that holding company's wholly owned subsidiaries and its or their nominees; and

(b) group accounts need not deal with a subsidiary of the company if the company's directors are of opinion that:

- (i) it is impracticable, or would be of no real value to members of the company, in view of the insignificant amounts involved, or would involve expense or delay out of proportion to the value to members of the company; or
 - (ii) the result would be misleading, or harmful to the business of the company or any of its subsidiaries; or
 - (iii) the business of the holding company and that of the subsidiary are so different that they cannot reasonably be treated as a single undertaking;
- and, if the directors are of such an opinion about each of the company's subsidiaries, group accounts shall not be required.

It is, however, provided that the approval of the Board of Trade shall be required for not dealing in group accounts with a subsidiary on the ground that the result would be harmful, or on the ground of the difference between the business of the holding company and that of the subsidiary (§ 150).

The group accounts laid before a holding company must be consolidated accounts comprising:

- (a) a consolidated Balance Sheet dealing with the state of affairs of the company and all the subsidiaries to be dealt with in group accounts;
- (b) a consolidated Profit and Loss Account dealing with the profit or loss of the company and those subsidiaries.

If, however, the company's directors are of opinion that it is better for the purpose of presenting the same or equivalent information about the state of affairs and profit or loss of the company and those subsidiaries, so that it may be readily appreciated by the company's members, the group accounts may be prepared in some other form. In particular they may consist of more than one set of consolidated accounts, dealing respectively with the company and one group of subsidiaries, and with other groups of subsidiaries, or of separate accounts dealing with each of the subsidiaries, or of statements expanding the information about the subsidiaries in the company's own accounts, or any combination of those forms.

The group accounts may be wholly or partly incorporated in the company's own Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account (§ 151).

The following are some of the forms of group accounts, other than the conventional consolidated Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account, which are met with in practice:

- (i) Consolidated statements of assets and earnings of some or all of the subsidiaries. In some cases the earnings of all the companies in the group are consolidated, but separate statements are submitted with regard to the net assets of some or all of the subsidiaries. This method may be useful where the parent company has substantial interests in foreign companies and exchange restrictions are in operation.

- (ii) The separate Balance Sheets and Profit and Loss Accounts of subsidiaries, amplified by such notes as are necessary, are submitted as exhibits to the holding company's own accounts. This method may be useful where a company has only one or two subsidiaries, or has a subsidiary whose business is entirely different from that of the holding company and its other subsidiaries.
- (iii) The insertion of notes in the separate accounts of the holding company, or in the consolidated accounts.

In some cases the consolidated figures are shown in columns provided in the holding company's own accounts, any necessary additional information being given by way of notes.

The group accounts must give a true and fair view of the state of affairs and profit or loss of the company and the subsidiaries dealt with thereby as a whole, so far as concerns members of the holding company.

Where the financial year of a subsidiary does not coincide with that of the holding company, the group accounts must, unless the Board of Trade, on the application or with the consent of the holding company's directors otherwise direct, deal with the subsidiary's state of affairs as at the end of its financial year ending with or last before that of the holding company, and with the subsidiary's profit or loss for that financial year.

If prepared as consolidated accounts, the group accounts must comply with the requirements of the Eighth Schedule to the Act (*see post*), so far as applicable thereto, and if not so prepared must give the same or equivalent information. The Board of Trade may, however, on the application or with the consent of a company's directors, modify the said requirements for the purpose of adapting them to the circumstances of the company (§ 152).

A holding company's directors must secure that except where in their opinion there are good reasons against it, the financial year of each of its subsidiaries shall coincide with the company's own financial year (§ 153 (1)).

Where it appears to the Board of Trade desirable for a holding company or a holding company's subsidiary to extend its financial year so that the subsidiary's financial year may end with that of the holding company, and for that purpose to postpone the submission of the relevant accounts to a general meeting from one calendar year to the next, the Board may on the application or with the consent of the directors of the company whose financial year is to be extended direct that, in the case of that company, the submission of accounts to a general meeting, the holding of an annual general meeting or the making of an annual return shall not be required in the earlier of the said calendar years (§ 153 (2)).

The special provisions contained in the EIGHTH SCHEDULE, PART II where the company is a holding or subsidiary company are as follows:

Modifications of and Additions to Requirements as to Company's own Accounts

15. (1) This paragraph shall apply where the company is a holding company, whether or not it is itself a subsidiary of another body corporate:

(2) The aggregate amount of assets consisting of shares in, or amounts owing (whether on account of a loan or otherwise) from, the company's subsidiaries, distinguishing shares from indebtedness, shall be set out in the Balance Sheet separately from all the other assets of the company, and the aggregate amount of indebtedness (whether on account of a loan or otherwise) to the company's subsidiaries shall be so set out separately from all its other liabilities and:

- (a) the references in Part I of the 8th Schedule (*see* p. 280) to the company's investments shall not include investments in its subsidiaries, required by this paragraph to be separately set out; and
- (b) The requirements of paragraph 5, and paragraph (1) (a), and sub paragraph (2) of paragraph 14 of this Schedule (as to showing the cost or valuation, amounts written off for depreciation, etc.), shall not apply in relation to fixed assets consisting of interests in the company's subsidiaries.

(3) There must be shown by way of note on the Balance Sheet or in a statement or report annexed thereto the number, description and amount of the shares in and debentures of the company held by its subsidiaries or their nominees, but excluding any of those shares or debentures in the case of which the subsidiary is concerned as personal representative or in the case of which it is concerned as trustee and neither the company nor any subsidiary thereof is beneficially interested under the trust, otherwise than by way of security only for the purposes of a transaction entered into by it in the ordinary course of a business which includes the lending of money.

(4) WHERE GROUP ACCOUNTS ARE NOT SUBMITTED, there shall be annexed to the Balance Sheet a statement showing—

- (a) the reasons why subsidiaries are not dealt with in group accounts;
 - (b) the net aggregate amount, so far as it concerns members of the holding company and is not dealt with in the company's accounts, of the subsidiaries' profits after deducting the subsidiaries' losses (or vice versa):
 - (i) for the respective financial years of the subsidiaries ending with or during the financial year of the company; and
 - (ii) for their previous financial years since they respectively became the holding company's subsidiary;
 - (c) the net aggregate amount of the subsidiaries' profits after deducting the subsidiaries' losses (or vice versa):
 - (i) for the respective financial years of the subsidiaries ending with or during the financial year of the company; and
 - (ii) for their other financial years since they respectively became the holding company's subsidiary;
 so far as those profits are dealt with, or provision is made for those losses, in the company's accounts;
 - (d) any qualifications contained in the report of the auditors of the subsidiaries on their accounts for their respective financial years ending as aforesaid, and any note or saving contained in those accounts to call attention to a matter which, apart from the note or saving, would properly have been referred to in such a qualification, in so far as the matter which is the subject of the qualification or note is not covered by the company's own accounts and is material from the point of view of its members;
- or, in so far as the information required by this sub-paragraph is not obtainable, a statement that it is not obtainable:

Provided that the Board of Trade may, on the application or with the consent of the company's directors, direct that in relation to any subsidiary this sub-paragraph shall not apply only to such extent as may be provided by the direction.

(5) Paragraphs (b) and (c) of the last foregoing sub-paragraph shall apply only to profits and losses of a subsidiary which may properly be treated in the holding company's accounts as revenue profits or losses, and the profits or losses attributable to any shares in a subsidiary for the time being held by the holding company or any other of its subsidiaries shall not (for that or any other purpose) be treated as aforesaid so far as they are profits or losses for the period before the date on or as from which the shares were acquired by the company or any of its subsidiaries, except that they may in a proper case be so treated where:

(a) the company is itself the subsidiary of another body corporate; and

(b) the shares were acquired from that body corporate or a subsidiary of it;

and for the purposes of determining whether any profits or losses are to be treated as profits or losses for the said period the profit or loss for any financial year of the subsidiary may, if it is not practicable to apportion it with reasonable accuracy by reference to the facts, be treated as accruing from day to day during that year and be apportioned accordingly.

(6) WHERE GROUP ACCOUNTS ARE NOT SUBMITTED, there shall be annexed to the Balance Sheet a statement showing, in relation to the subsidiaries (if any) whose financial years did not end with that of the company:

(a) the reasons why the company's directors consider that the subsidiaries' financial years should not end with that of the company; and

(b) the dates on which the subsidiaries' financial years ending last before that of the company respectively ended or the earliest and latest of those dates.

16. The Balance Sheet of a company which is a subsidiary of another body corporate, whether or not it is itself a holding company, shall show the aggregate amount of its indebtedness to all bodies corporate of which it is a subsidiary or a fellow subsidiary and the aggregate amount of the indebtedness of all such bodies corporate to it, distinguishing in each case between indebtedness in respect of debentures and otherwise.

For the purposes of this paragraph a company shall be deemed to be a fellow subsidiary of another body corporate if both are subsidiaries of the same body corporate but neither is the other's.

Consolidated Accounts of Holding Company and Subsidiaries

17. Subject to the following paragraphs of this Part of this Schedule, the consolidated Balance Sheet and Profit and Loss Account shall combine the information contained in the separate Balance Sheets and Profit and Loss Accounts of the holding company and of the subsidiaries dealt with by the consolidated accounts, but with such adjustments (if any) as the directors of the holding company think necessary.

18. Subject as aforesaid and to Part III of this Schedule, the consolidated accounts shall, in giving the said information, comply, so far as practicable, with the requirements of this Act as if they were the accounts of an actual company.

19. Sections 196 and 197 of this Act (which deal with the disclosure of payments to directors) shall not, by virtue of the two last foregoing paragraphs, apply for the purpose of the consolidated accounts.

20. Paragraph 7 of this Schedule (dealing with movements of reserves and provisions) shall not apply for the purpose of any consolidated accounts laid before a company with the first balance sheet so laid after the commencement of this Act.

21. In relation to any subsidiaries of the holding company not dealt with by the consolidated accounts:

(a) sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) of paragraph 15 of this Schedule shall apply for the purpose of those accounts as if those accounts were the accounts of an actual company of which they were subsidiaries; and

(b) there shall be annexed the like statement as is required by sub-paragraph (4) of that paragraph where there are no group accounts, but as if references therein to the holding company's accounts were references to the consolidated accounts.

22. In relation to any subsidiaries (whether or not dealt with by the consolidated accounts) whose financial years did not end with that of the company, there shall be annexed the like statement as is required by sub-paragraph (6) of paragraph 15 of this Schedule where there are no group accounts.

In connection with the statement as to profits and losses of subsidiary companies required by the Act to be annexed to the Balance Sheet of the holding company where group accounts are not submitted, in the opinion of counsel obtained by the Institute of Chartered Accountants the term 'profits' in paragraph 15 (4) (b) and (c) only includes profits of a subsidiary which are or might have been distributed so as to become revenue profits in the hands of the holding company *in the year to which the holding company's accounts relate*; they do not include profits which have been distributed in past years, which to the extent that they had been received by the holding company would have been dealt with in the previous accounts of that company. In view of the above opinion the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants communicated with the Board of Trade, who authorised it to state that no exception will be taken by the Board to the following information being disclosed in the statement:

(a) the amount of the profits less losses (or vice versa) of subsidiaries which has neither been dealt with in the holding company's accounts of the year, nor in the accounts of any prior year; and

(b) the amount of profits less losses (or vice versa) dealt with in the holding company's accounts of the year, subdivided to distinguish the amounts derived respectively from current and other results of the subsidiaries dealt with.

Where, for example, two wholly-owned subsidiaries acquired by a company on 1st January, 1956, made a net aggregate profit (after deducting taxation) of £15,000 in each of the years 1956, 1957 and 1958, and distributed £5,000 (net) in each year between them, and retained as a revenue reserve £10,000 in each year, the statement recommended by the Council of the Institute is in the following form:

| | <i>Profits in respect of financial years of subsidiaries</i> | | <i>Total</i> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------|
| | <i>ending in 1958</i> | <i>other years</i> | |
| | £ | £ | £ |
| The net aggregate amount of the profits <i>less</i> losses of the subsidiaries <i>so far as it concerns the members of this company</i> : | | | |
| (i) dealt with in this company's accounts for the year 1958, amounted (gross) to | 8,696 | — | 8,696 |
| Less income tax | 3,696 | — | 3,696 |
| | <hr/> 5,000 | | <hr/> 5,000 |
| (ii) not dealt with in this company's accounts for the year 1958 amounted, after charging taxation to .. | 10,000 | 20,000 | 30,000 |

Alternatively, the required information may be given by means of the following entry and note in the holding company's Profit and Loss Account:

Dividend (gross) (less provisions for losses) from subsidiaries not consolidated:

| | | | |
|------------------------------------------|----|----|--------|
| For their financial years ending in 1958 | .. | .. | £8,696 |
| For other years | .. | .. | Nil |
| | | | £8,696 |

Note

This company's proportions of the undistributed profits, less losses, of these companies not taken into this company's accounts, after deducting Income Tax were:

| | | | |
|------------------------------------------|----|----|---------|
| For their financial years ending in 1958 | .. | .. | £10,000 |
| For prior years since acquisition | .. | .. | 20,000 |
| | | | £30,000 |

Where shares are held by a subsidiary in a fellow subsidiary, it is recommended by the Council of the Institute that these should be shown separately in the Balance Sheet of the subsidiary.

The recommendations of the Council of the Institute as to the disclosure of interests in subsidiaries in the balance sheet of a holding company are set out on p.291.

§ 4. Consolidated Balance Sheet

(a) General Principles

A consolidated Balance Sheet is really a 'Consolidated Statement of Assets and Liabilities', but the more usual title has much to commend it, as it is, in fact, a consolidation of Balance Sheets.

In order to consolidate Balance Sheets it is desirable for them all to be made up to the same date; otherwise adjustments must be made to enable the exact position at the date of the consolidation to be ascertained. All assets and liabilities should be classified in the same manner, and valuations should be made upon the same basis. If this is not done, adjustments should be made to bring them into line.

It is provided by Section 152 of the Act that where the financial year of a subsidiary does not coincide with that of its holding company, the group accounts must deal with the subsidiary's accounts for its financial year ending with or last before that of the holding company.

Adjustments may be necessary to meet the following circumstances:

- (1) To provide for any material trading loss known to have been sustained by the subsidiary between the end of its financial year and the date of the consolidated accounts.
- (2) Where large transfers of cash between one company and another have taken place, or a subsidiary has incurred substantial capital expenditure in the interval between the two Balance Sheet dates, so that the liquid position of the group is materially affected.

(3) For the purpose of reconciling the balances on inter-company accounts in respect of cash and other assets in transit at the date of the consolidated accounts. Where, owing to differences in accounting dates, inter-company balances do not cancel out, it is usual to show the net difference in the consolidated balance sheet under an appropriate heading, such as 'Difference on consolidation due to differing accounting dates'.

(b) Wholly-owned Subsidiaries

Where a company acquires the whole of the share capital of another company, the consolidated Balance Sheet will consist, in effect, of the Balance Sheet of the holding company in which, however, the item 'Shares in Subsidiary Company' is replaced by the actual assets and liabilities of the subsidiary, grouped under their appropriate headings with those of the holding company. If the price paid for the shares exceeds the book value of the net assets of the subsidiary, the excess is a premium paid for the right to exercise control over the subsidiary, and must appear in the consolidated Balance Sheet as goodwill, cost of control, or under some other suitable designation.

Since the value of the net assets of a company is represented in its Balance Sheet by the amount of its paid up capital, plus any reserves and other undistributed profits, the amount to be shown in the consolidated Balance Sheet under the heading of goodwill can be ascertained by deducting from the cost of the shares held the nominal amount of the paid-up share capital of the subsidiary plus all reserves and profits existing at the date on which the shares were acquired. The consolidation is then completed by combining the remaining items appearing in the Balance Sheets of both companies.

Illustration (1)

The Balance Sheets of H Ltd., and S Ltd., immediately after the whole of the share capital of S Ltd., had been acquired by H Ltd., were as follows:

| | H Ltd. £ | S Ltd. £ | | H Ltd. £ | S Ltd. £ |
|------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|------------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Share Capital (in £1 shares) | 12,000 | 5,000 | Fixed Assets | 11,000 | 7,000 |
| Reserves | 3,000 | 2,000 | Current Assets | 6,000 | 4,000 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 6,000 | 1,000 | 5,000 Shares in S Ltd. | 10,000 | |
| | 23,000 | 8,000 | | | |
| Liabilities | 4,000 | 3,000 | | | |
| | £27,000 | £11,000 | | £27,000 | £11,000 |

It will be seen that the net assets of S Ltd. amount to £8,000, viz., total assets £11,000 less liabilities £3,000 (represented by the Share Capital of £5,000, Reserves £2,000 and Profit and Loss Account £1,000). The excess of the cost of the shares to H. Ltd. over the net assets of S Ltd. is the amount attributable to goodwill.

The following is a convenient formula for ascertaining by double entry procedure the amount to be shown in the consolidated Balance Sheet under the heading of goodwill:

- (1) Transfer to the *debit* of Goodwill Account the cost of the shares in the subsidiary company held by the holding company;
- (2) Transfer to the *credit* of Goodwill Account from the Share Capital Account of the subsidiary the nominal value of the shares so held;

- (3) Transfer to the *credit* of Goodwill Account the proportion attributable to the holding company of any Reserves, Profit and Loss Account credit balance, or other account representing surplus assets of the subsidiary at the date on which the shares were acquired. (Where there are a number of accounts representing reserves or other surpluses, it may be more convenient to transfer the pre-acquisition amounts first to a Capital Reserve Account and from thence to Goodwill Account.)
- (4) If, at the date on which the shares were acquired the Profit and Loss Account of the subsidiary was in debit, transfer to the *debit* of Goodwill Account the proportion of such debit balance applicable to the shares in the subsidiary held by the holding company.

The consolidating adjustments may conveniently be made by journal entries, in order that a permanent record thereof may be maintained for future reference, and to facilitate the preparation of the consolidated accounts. The journal entries necessary to apply the foregoing formula to the illustration above would be as follows:

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------|-----|--------|--------|
| Goodwill | | Dr. | £ | £ |
| To Shares in S Ltd. | .. .. . | .. | 10,000 | |
| Transfer of cost of 5,000 Shares held in S Ltd. | .. .. . | .. |  | 10,000 |
| Share Capital, S Ltd. | .. .. . | Dr. | 5,000 | |
| To Goodwill | .. .. . | .. |  | 5,000 |
| Transfer of nominal value of shares. | .. .. . | .. |  |  |
| Reserves, S Ltd. | .. .. . | Dr. | 2,000 | |
| Profit and Loss Account, S Ltd. | .. .. . | .. | 1,000 | |
| To Goodwill | .. .. . | .. |  | 3,000 |
| Transfer of pre-acquisition balances. | .. .. . | .. |  |  |

The Goodwill Account resulting from the posting of the above journal entries would be:

GOODWILL

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Cost of 5,000 Shares in S Ltd. | £ | By Share Capital, S Ltd. Nominal value of 5,000 shares | £ |
| 10,000 |  | .. .. . | 5,000 |
| | | .. Pre-acquisition profits | 3,000 |
| | | .. Balance = Goodwill | 2,000 |
| | <u>£10,000</u> | | <u>£10,000</u> |

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------|----------------|-----------------|--------|----------------|
| Share Capital | £ | 12,000 | Fixed Assets: | £ | |
| Consolidated Reserve | 5,000 | | H Ltd. | 11,000 | |
| Consolidated Profit and Loss Account | 6,000 | | S Ltd. | 7,000 | |
| | | 23,000 | | | 18,000 |
| Liabilities: | | | Current Assets: | | |
| H Ltd. | 4,000 | | H Ltd. | 6,000 | |
| S Ltd. | 3,000 | | S Ltd. | 4,000 | |
| | | 7,000 | Goodwill | | 10,000 |
| | | <u>£30,000</u> | | | <u>2,000</u> |
| | | | | | <u>£30,000</u> |

Where, at the date of the acquisition of the controlling interest by the holding company, a subsidiary has a *debit* balance on Profit and Loss Account, its net assets are reduced thereby, and the cost of goodwill is correspondingly increased. For example, if in the above illustration, instead of pre-acquisition profits of £3,000, S Ltd. had a *debit* balance on Profit and Loss Account of £3,000, its net assets would be represented

by Share Capital £5,000 less Profit and Loss Account debit balance £3,000 = £2,000, and the sum attributable to goodwill in the consolidated Balance Sheet would be:

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| Cost of Shares | £10,000 |
| Less Nominal Value | 5,000 |
| | <hr/> 5,000 |
| Add Pre-acquisition loss | 3,000 |
| | <hr/> £8,000 |

or cost of shares £10,000 less net assets £2,000 = £8,000.

It will thus be seen that, for the purpose of the consolidation, the amount of any pre-acquisition surplus, *i.e.*, of any *credit* balance on Reserve or Profit and Loss Account, is transferred to the *credit* of the Goodwill Account, whereas the amount of any pre-acquisition *loss* is transferred to the *debit* of that account. The procedure is, in fact, merely a simple double entry operation – the transfer of a sum from one account to the *same side* of another account.

Where the cost of the shares in the subsidiary is less than the net assets attributable thereto, the balance should appear in the consolidated Balance Sheet under the heading of capital reserve. For example, if in the above illustration the pre-acquisition reserves, etc., of S Ltd. amounted to £7,000, the net assets of S Ltd., would amount to £12,000, and the difference between this sum and the cost of the shares, *viz.*, £2,000, would appear in the consolidated Balance Sheet as a capital reserve.

Where shares have been issued at a premium by one member of the group to another, the credit to Share Premium Account in the Balance Sheet of the issuing company should be set off on consolidation against the premium included in the cost of the shares to the company which subscribed for the shares.

Profits earned by a subsidiary company after it becomes a subsidiary are revenue of the group, and are included in the consolidated Balance Sheet as part of the Revenue Reserves or consolidated Profit and Loss Account balance. When preparing a consolidated Balance Sheet at a date subsequent to that on which the controlling interest was acquired, therefore, it is first necessary to transfer from the Reserve and Profit and Loss Accounts of the subsidiary to Goodwill Account, the amounts of the pre-acquisition surpluses of the subsidiary, leaving any balances of such surpluses to be treated as revenue reserves or profits of the group.

Illustration (2)

The Balance Sheets of the companies referred to in Illustration (1) one year later than the Balance Sheet therein, are as under:

| | H Ltd. £ | S Ltd. £ | | H Ltd. £ | S Ltd. £ |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Share Capital | 12,000 | 5,000 | Fixed Assets | 12,000 | 7,000 |
| Reserves | 7,000 | 3,000 | Current Assets | 10,000 | 7,500 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 8,000 | 2,500 | 5,000 Shares in S Ltd. | 10,000 | |
| | <hr/> 27,000 | <hr/> 10,500 | | | |
| Liabilities | 5,000 | 4,000 | | | |
| | <hr/> £32,000 | <hr/> £14,500 | | <hr/> £32,000 | <hr/> £14,500 |

Assuming no dividends to have been paid by S Ltd., and no inter-company adjustments to be necessary the increase of £1,000 in the Reserves and £1,500 in the Profit and Loss Account balance of S Ltd., being post-acquisition profits, would be credited to consolidated Reserves and Profit and Loss Account respectively. The consolidated Balance Sheet at this date will then appear as under:

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

| | £ | £ | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|---------|------------------|---------|
| Share Capital | | 12,000 | Fixed Assets: | |
| Consolidated Revenue Reserves: | | | H Ltd. | 12,000 |
| H Ltd. | 7,000 | | S Ltd. | 7,000 |
| S Ltd. | 1,000 | 8,000 | | 19,000 |
| Consolidated Profit and Loss Account: | | | Current Assets: | |
| H Ltd. | 8,000 | | H Ltd. | 10,000 |
| S Ltd. | 1,500 | | S Ltd. | 7,500 |
| | | 9,500 | Goodwill | 17,500 |
| | | | | 2,000 |
| | | 29,500 | | |
| Liabilities: | | | | |
| H Ltd. | 5,000 | | | |
| S Ltd. | 4,000 | 9,000 | | |
| | | | | |
| | | £38,500 | | £38,500 |

(c) Partly-owned Subsidiaries

Where the holding company does not own the whole of the share capital of the subsidiary, if credit is taken in the consolidated Balance Sheet for the whole of the net assets of the subsidiary, the amount of the minority interest, *i.e.*, the proportion of the net assets applicable to the shares held outside the group, must be shown as a liability. The amount of such liability will comprise the nominal amount of the shares held by the outside shareholders, plus the proportion appropriate thereto of all reserves and undistributed profits of the subsidiary, or less the appropriate proportion of any debit balance on its Profit and Loss Account.

Illustration (3)

Assume the same circumstances as those appearing in Illustrations (1) and (2), but that H Ltd.'s holding in S Ltd., consists of only 4,000 shares, acquired at a cost of £10,000.

As will be seen from the Balance Sheet in Illustration (2), the net assets of S Ltd. amount to £10,500 of which one-fifth = £2,100 is attributable to the 1,000 shares held outside the group. This sum is represented by:

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Share Capital | £1,000 |
| One Fifth of Reserve (£3,000) | 600 |
| Profit and Loss Account Balance (£2,500) | 500 |
| | <u>£2,100</u> |

Since only four-fifths of the share capital of S Ltd. is held by the holding company, only four-fifths of that company's Reserves and Profit and Loss Account balance will be treated as applicable to the group. The consolidating entries will be:

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------|--------|
| Goodwill | Dr. | £10,000 | £ |
| To Shares in S Ltd. | | | 10,000 |
| Transfer of cost of 4,000 Shares held in S Ltd. | | | |
| Share Capital, S Ltd. | Dr. | 5,000 | |
| To Goodwill | | | 4,000 |
| Minority Interest | | | 1,000 |
| Transfer of nominal value of Shares | | | |
| Reserves, S Ltd. | Dr. | 1,600 | |
| Profit and Loss Account, S Ltd. | | 800 | |
| To Goodwill | | | 2,400 |
| Transfer of proportion of pre-acquisition balances attributable to 4,000 Shares in S Ltd. held by H. Ltd. | | | |
| Reserves, S Ltd. | Dr. | 600 | |
| Profit and Loss Account, S Ltd. | | 500 | |
| To Minority Interest | | | 1,100 |
| Transfer of one-fifth of surplus of S Ltd. attributable to 1,000 Shares held by minority shareholders. | | | |

GOODWILL

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Cost of 5,000 Shares in S Ltd. | 10,000 | By Share Capital, S Ltd, Nominal value of 4,000 Shares | 4,000 |
| | | „ Pre-acquisition surplus: | |
| | | Reserve, 4/5ths of £2,000 | £1,600 |
| | | Profit and Loss, 4/5ths of £1,000 | 800 |
| | | „ Balance : Goodwill | 2,400 |
| | <u>£10,000</u> | | <u>£10,000</u> |

MINORITY INTEREST

| | £ | | £ |
|--|---|-------------------------------------------|---------------|
| | | By Share Capital, S Ltd | 1,000 |
| | | „ Reserves, S Ltd, 1/5th of £3,000 | 600 |
| | | „ Profit and Loss, S Ltd, 1/5th of £2,500 | 500 |
| | | | <u>£2,100</u> |

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

| | £ | £ | | £ |
|---------------------------------------|-------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Share Capital | | 12,000 | Fixed Assets | 19,000 |
| Consolidated Revenue Reserve: | | | Current Assets | 17,500 |
| H Ltd. | | | Goodwill | 3,600 |
| S Ltd. 1/5 × £1,000 | 7,000 | | | |
| | 800 | 7,800 | | |
| Consolidated Profit and Loss Account: | | | | |
| H Ltd. | 8,000 | | | |
| S Ltd. 1/5 × £1,500 | 1,200 | 9,200 | | |
| | | 29,000 | | |
| Minority Interest | | 2,100 | | |
| Liabilities | | 9,000 | | |
| | | <u>£40,100</u> | | <u>£40,100</u> |

It might be argued that as the holding company paid a premium of £3,600 for a four-fifths interest in the capital of the subsidiary, the true value of the 'goodwill' is $£3,600 \times \frac{5}{4} = £4,500$, and that it should appear in the consolidated Balance Sheet at the latter figure, the balance of £900 being credited to the minority interest. The objection to such a procedure is that the purpose of the consolidated Balance Sheet is to show the state of affairs of the group so far as it affects the members of the holding company and that the price paid by the holding company for a controlling interest may not reflect the value of the shares held by outside shareholders nor the goodwill element included therein. The amount which should appear as goodwill in the Balance Sheet of the group should not exceed the amount actually expended by the group in the acquisition of that asset.

Illustration (4)

SUMMARISED BALANCE SHEETS

| | H Ltd. | S Ltd. | | H Ltd. | S Ltd. |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
| Share Capital | 3,600 | 2,000 | 1,600 shares in S Ltd., at cost | 1,100 | — |
| Creditors | 1,600 | 600 | Sundry Assets | 4,800 | 2,100 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 700 | — | Profit and Loss Account | — | 300 |
| | <u>£5,900</u> | <u>£2,600</u> | | <u>£5,900</u> | <u>£2,600</u> |

H Ltd. acquired the shares in S Ltd. when the latter had a *debit* balance on Profit and Loss Account of £800. On that date, therefore, the net assets of S Ltd. were £1,200 (equal to the net interest of the shareholders, *viz.*, capital £2,000, *less* loss £800). H Ltd. acquired 80% of the shares, on an asset basis (at book value), worth 80% of £1,200 = £960, and therefore paid £1,100 — £960 = £140 for goodwill. Moreover, the debit balance on Profit and Loss Account having been reduced to £500, S Ltd. must have made a profit of £300 since H Ltd. acquired the shares.

Applying the method already explained, the consolidating adjustments would be as follows:

| | £ | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------|
| Goodwill | Dr. | 1,100 |
| To Shares in S Ltd. | | 1,100 |
| Transfer of cost of 1,600 Shares in S Ltd. | | |
| Shares in S Ltd. | Dr. | 2,000 |
| To Goodwill | | 1,600 |
| „ Minority Interest | | 400 |
| Transfer of nominal value of Shares. | | |
| Goodwill | Dr. | 640 |
| To Profit and Loss, S Ltd. | | 640 |
| Transfer of proportion of pre-acquisition loss of S Ltd. applicable to H Ltd. — 4/5ths of £800. | | |
| Minority Interest | Dr. | 100 |
| To Profit and Loss, S Ltd. | | 100 |
| Transfer of proportion of balance applicable to Minority Interest — 1/5th of £500. | | |

GOODWILL

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Cost of 1,600 Shares in S Ltd. | 1,100 | By Share Capital, S Ltd. Nominal value of 1,600 Shares | 1,600 |
| „ Profit and Loss Account, S Ltd. proportion of pre-acquisition loss of S Ltd. applicable to H Ltd. 4/5ths of £800 | 640 | „ Balance = Goodwill | 140 |
| | <u>£1,740</u> | | <u>£1,740</u> |

MINORITY INTEREST

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------|-------------|
| To Profit and Loss Account, S Ltd. — 1/5th of debit balance of £500 | 100 | By Share Capital, S Ltd. | 400 |
| „ Balance to Consolidated Balance Sheet | 300 | | |
| | <u>£400</u> | | <u>£400</u> |

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT, S. LTD.

| | £ | | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------|-------------|
| To Balance b/f | 500 | By Transfer to Goodwill | 640 |
| „ Consolidated Profit and Loss Account, being post-acquisition profit applicable to H Ltd. 4/5ths of £300 | 240 | „ „ „ Minority Interest | 100 |
| | <u>£740</u> | | <u>£740</u> |

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------|---------------|
| Share Capital | 3,600 | Goodwill | 140 |
| Consolidated Profit and Loss Account: | | Sundry Assets H Ltd. | 4,800 |
| H Ltd. | 700 | S Ltd. | 2,100 |
| S Ltd. | 240 | | <u>6,900</u> |
| | <u>940</u> | | |
| Minority Interest | 300 | | |
| Creditors H Ltd. | 1,600 | | |
| S Ltd. | 600 | | |
| | <u>2,200</u> | | |
| | <u>£7,040</u> | | <u>£7,040</u> |

It should, however, be noted that the £240 credited to the consolidated Profit and Loss Account in respect of post-acquisition profits of S Ltd. is not available for distribution, since in fact, S Ltd. still has a debit balance on its Profit and Loss Account.

Illustration (5)

The following are the Balance Sheets of a holding company and its subsidiary company:

| | H Ltd. £ | S Ltd. £ | | H Ltd. £ | S Ltd. £ |
|-------------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Share Capital | 1,600 | 900 | 720 Shares in S Ltd. at cost | 800 | — |
| Creditors | 300 | 550 | Sundry Assets | 1,500 | 1,250 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 400 | — | Profit and Loss Account | — | 200 |
| | <u>£2,300</u> | <u>£1,450</u> | | <u>£2,300</u> | <u>£1,450</u> |

When H Ltd. acquired the shares in S Ltd., the latter had a *credit* balance on Profit and Loss Account of £150. No dividends have been declared by S Ltd. Prepare a consolidated Balance Sheet.

The consolidating entries will be:

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-------|-----|
| Goodwill | Dr. | £ 800 | £ |
| To Share Capital S Ltd. | | | 800 |
| Transfer of cost of 720 Shares in S Ltd. | | | |
| Share Capital S Ltd. | Dr. | 900 | |
| To Goodwill | | | 720 |
| Minority Interest | | | 180 |
| Transfer of nominal value of shares. | | | |
| Profit and Loss, S Ltd. | Dr. | 120 | |
| To Goodwill | | | 120 |
| Transfer of 4/5ths of £150 being pre-acquisition surplus of S Ltd. | | | |
| Minority Interest | Dr. | 40 | |
| To Profit and Loss | | | 40 |
| Transfer of 1/5th of debit balance on Profit and Loss Account applicable to minority shareholders. | | | |

GOODWILL

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| To Cost of 720 Shares in S Ltd. | £ 800 | By Share Capital, S Ltd. Nominal value of 720 Shares | £ 720 |
| Transfer to Capital Reserve | 40 | Profit and Loss, S Ltd., Pre-acquisition profit. | 120 |
| | <u>£840</u> | | <u>£840</u> |

CAPITAL RESERVE

| | | |
|---|---------------------------|----|
| £ | By Transfer from Goodwill | £ |
| | | 40 |

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| To Balance b/f. | £ 200 | By Minority Interest - 1/5th of £200 | £ 40 |
| Goodwill - Transfer of pre-acquisition credit balance applicable to H Ltd. - 4/5ths of £150 | 120 | Balance to consolidated Balance Sheet | 280 |
| | <u>£320</u> | | <u>£320</u> |

MINORITY INTEREST

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------|-------------|
| To Profit and Loss, S Ltd. Share of <i>debit</i> balance - 1/5th of £200 | £ 40 | By Share Capital, S Ltd. | £ 180 |
| Balance to consolidated Balance Sheet | 140 | | |
| | <u>£180</u> | | <u>£180</u> |

The net assets of S Ltd. at the date of acquisition of the 720 shares therein by H Ltd. were represented by:

| | |
|---------------------------------|--------|
| Share Capital | £900 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 150 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £1,050 |
| | <hr/> |

of which four-fifths = £840 is attributable to H Ltd.'s holding. Since H Ltd. only paid £800 for the shares, it paid, in fact, nothing for goodwill, but acquired, in effect, a capital reserve of £40, which is shown as such in the consolidated Balance Sheet. The 'goodwill' entries in the above solution are not therefore strictly necessary, but have been shown for the sake of consistency of treatment, the balance of goodwill being transferred to capital reserve.

As S Ltd. had a *credit* balance of £150 on Profit and Loss Account at the date of acquisition of the shares therein by H Ltd., but now has a *debit* balance of £200, it has made a post-acquisition loss of £350, of which four-fifths = £280 is applicable to H Ltd.'s holding. This amount is *debited* to Consolidated Profit and Loss Account.

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------|--------|--------------------------------|-------|--------|
| Share Capital | | 1,600 | Sundry Assets - H Ltd. | 1,500 | |
| Consolidated Profit and Loss Account - H Ltd. | 400 | | S Ltd. | 1,250 | |
| Less Proportion of post-acquisition loss of S Ltd. | 280 | | | <hr/> | 2,750 |
| | | 120 | | | |
| Capital Reserve | | 40 | | | |
| Minority Interest | | 140 | | | |
| Creditors - H Ltd. | 300 | | | | |
| S Ltd. | 550 | | | | |
| | <hr/> | 850 | | | |
| | | £2,750 | | | <hr/> |
| | | | | | £2,750 |

(d) Losses incurred by Subsidiary

Where a subsidiary has incurred losses these should be charged to the holding company and the minority holders of ordinary shares (if any) in proportion to their holdings, as has been done in illustrations (4) and (5) above. If, however, a subsidiary continues to incur losses after all its previously earned reserves and profits have been exhausted, the minority shareholders should not be charged with any part of such losses in excess of the nominal value of the shares held by them, as their liability is limited to such nominal value. In such a case, if it is not proposed to wind up the subsidiary, the holding company should make provision in its own accounts for such excess losses. If, however, the holding company intends to abandon the subsidiary and allow it to be wound up, the amount of the investment in the subsidiary would be written off in the holding company's books without providing for such excess losses. In these circumstances no good purpose would be served in including the subsidiary in group accounts.

(e) Dividends paid by a Subsidiary out of pre-acquisition profits

Since profits of a subsidiary earned prior to and remaining undistributed at the date on which the parent company acquires its shares therein are represented by assets which are, in effect, paid for by the holding company as part of the purchase price of

the shares, any dividends paid by a subsidiary out of such pre-acquisition profits must be treated as receipts of a capital nature not available for distribution by the holding company. Such dividends represent in effect, a realisation of part of the price paid for the shares, and must be credited to the Shares in Subsidiary Account, thus reducing the cost of the shares to the holding company, and, in consequence, the amount applicable to goodwill.

Illustration (6)

The Balance Sheets of H Ltd. and S Ltd. at the date on which H Ltd. acquired 75% of the ordinary share capital of S Ltd., were as follows:

BALANCE SHEETS

| | H Ltd. £ | S Ltd. £ | | H Ltd. £ | S Ltd. £ |
|-------------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Share Capital | 200,000 | 40,000 | 30,000 Shares in S Ltd. | 60,000 | |
| Reserves | 40,000 | 10,000 | Sundry Assets, <i>less</i> liabilities | 205,000 | 64,000 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 25,000 | 14,000 | | | |
| | <u>£265,000</u> | <u>£64,000</u> | | <u>£265,000</u> | <u>£64,000</u> |

It will be apparent that since the net assets of S Ltd. amount to £64,000, and H Ltd. has become the owner of three-fourths of the share capital of S Ltd., the net assets of S Ltd., attributable to H Ltd.'s holding amount to £48,000, and the price paid by H Ltd. for goodwill is £60,000 — £48,000 = £12,000.

If, immediately after the purchase of the shares by H Ltd., S Ltd., paid a 'free of tax' dividend of 20%, the effect would be to reduce the net assets of S Ltd. by £8,000 to £56,000, and the proportion thereof applicable to H Ltd.'s holding to $\frac{3}{4} \times £56,000 = £42,000$. If the cost of the shares remained in H Ltd.'s books at £60,000, the amount appearing as goodwill in the consolidated Balance Sheet would be increased to £18,000, and the £6,000 dividend received by H Ltd. would be incorrectly credited to its Profit and Loss Account, causing the divisible profits of that company to appear to be £6,000 more than the amount which is legally distributable. The dividend should, therefore, be credited to the Shares in Subsidiary Account, and in the consolidated Balance Sheet, goodwill and minority interest would appear as under:

GOODWILL

| | £ | | £ | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| To Cost of 30,000 Shares in S Ltd. | 60,000 | By Share Capital, S Ltd., Nominal value of 30,000 Shares | | 30,000 |
| Less Dividend received out of pre-acquisition profit | <u>6,000</u> | „ Pre-acquisition reserves and profits | 24,000 | |
| | 54,000 | Less Dividend paid thereout | <u>8,000</u> | |
| | | Applicable to H Ltd. 75ths of | <u>£16,000</u> | 12,000 |
| | | „ Balance to Consolidated Balance Sheet | | <u>12,000</u> |
| | <u>£54,000</u> | | | <u>£54,000</u> |

MINORITY INTEREST

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Balance to Consolidated Balance Sheet | 14,000 | By Share Capital, S Ltd. | 10,000 |
| | | „ Reserves and Profits, <i>less</i> dividend paid thereout $\frac{1}{4} \times £16,000$ | <u>4,000</u> |
| | <u>£14,000</u> | | <u>£14,000</u> |

(f) Future Income Tax Reserve

In view of the recommendation of the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants (see page 289) that amounts set aside for future income tax should not be grouped with reserves, it is considered that such an item appearing in the balance sheet of a subsidiary at the date of the acquisition of shares therein by the holding company should not be treated for the purpose of the consolidated balance sheet as part of the pre-acquisition reserves of the subsidiary, neither should any part of an amount so set aside by a subsidiary be included in the liability to minority interests. The best modern practice appears to be to treat such an item neither as a reserve nor as a provision, but to place it in a separate category as an 'amount set aside for future income tax'. For the purpose of the group accounts, the aggregate of the amounts set aside for future income tax by all the members of the group should be shown as a separate item in the consolidated balance sheet.

(g) Bonus Shares received by Holding Company from Subsidiary

Where, as sometimes happens, a subsidiary company capitalizes profits by the issue of bonus shares, the treatment in the group accounts of the bonus shares received by the holding company will depend upon whether the bonus is paid out of pre-acquisition or post-acquisition profits. It will be appreciated that the effect of capitalizing profits in this way is to freeze them from distribution as dividend. If, therefore, the bonus is declared out of post-acquisition profits which are standing to the credit of consolidated Profit and Loss Account or Reserve a sum equal to the amount capitalized should be transferred therefrom to Capital Reserve Account. If this is not done, the aggregate of the revenue reserves appearing in the consolidated Balance Sheet will exceed the maximum sum which could be distributed as dividend to the members of the holding company were all the subsidiaries to pay to the holding company as dividends the whole of their profits available for distribution. If, however, the bonus is declared out of pre-acquisition profits, no adjustment is necessary, since these profits have already been treated as capital in the consolidated accounts in computing goodwill, and no longer appear therein as revenue reserves.

(h) Preference Shares in Subsidiaries

It has been assumed in the preceding examples that the shares held by the outside members are ordinary shares, so that the minority interest in the net assets is represented by the nominal value of the capital held by them plus the proportion of all reserves and undistributed profits or less the proportion of losses attributable to such holding. Where the shares held by outside members are preference shares, which do not participate in the surplus profits or assets, the minority interest will normally consist of the nominal value of the preference shares held by the outside shareholders plus only the amount of the fixed dividend accrued on the shares to the date of the consolidated Balance Sheet.

Where preference shareholders are entitled to share in a surplus on a winding-up it might be contended that they should be credited also with a share of the surplus assets proportionate to their capital. Since, however, the consolidated Balance Sheet is intended to show the position of the group as a going-concern, it is considered that

such a contention cannot be upheld. If it were proposed to wind up the subsidiary, its accounts would probably not be consolidated with those of the holding company. Until liquidation supervenes, the ordinary shareholders (subject to any special rights given to other classes) are entitled to all undivided profits, and the preference shareholders only to their fixed dividends. Any rights of the preference shareholders to participate in a possible surplus can, if thought fit, be mentioned in a footnote. Redeemable preference shares which are redeemable at a premium are in a different category, and prudence would seem to dictate that the premium should be provided for by annual instalments over the period between the date of the Balance Sheet and the redemption date.

If the holding company itself holds preference shares in the subsidiary, the nominal value will be deducted from the cost thereof to the holding company, in the same way as in the case of ordinary shares, any premium or discount on the purchase being deducted from, or added to, goodwill, as the case may be. The fixed dividend thereon accrued to the date of acquisition will be transferred to goodwill as being the proportion of the pre-acquisition profits of the subsidiary applicable to the preference shares.

Participating preference shares in a subsidiary present a special problem, the solution to which must depend upon the rights of the holders of such shares as laid down in the company's articles. For example, the shares may be cumulative in respect of the fixed dividend, but non-cumulative as regards the further participation up to a specified maximum. Where such shares are held by outside shareholders it is usually desirable to allocate the profits of the subsidiary between them and the holding company on the assumption that the whole of the profits are to be distributed. The minority shareholders of the participating preference shares would thus be credited with the maximum sum they could expect to receive. If this is not done a note should be appended to the accounts indicating the rights attaching to such shares and the amount of their maximum possible participation.

Where the profits of a subsidiary have been insufficient to pay, in whole or in part, the cumulative dividend on preference shares, there would be no obligation to provide for arrears of dividend out of the consolidated profits except to the extent that the existing reserves of the subsidiary in question are sufficient to meet them, but a note should be made on the consolidated Balance Sheet of the amount of such arrears not provided for.

Where the subsidiary has a debit balance on Profit and Loss Account, this should normally be charged against the ordinary shareholders only, as the holders of the cumulative preference shares are entitled to have arrears of dividend paid out of future profits, and thus the debit balance on Profit and Loss Account would be borne by the ordinary shareholders. In the exceptional case where the winding-up of the subsidiary is imminent, however, if the preference shares carry no right to priority of repayment of capital the debit balance should quite properly be apportioned between the holders of the ordinary and the preference capital. In such a case, however, it is improbable that the subsidiary would be included in the group accounts.

(i) Inter-Company Balances

In the preparation of the consolidated Balance Sheet, it is necessary to eliminate all inter-company balances which represent neither assets nor liabilities of the group as a whole. Such balances may arise from various transactions, the more important being those relating to dividends, inter-company bills of exchange, and inter-company trading.

Where a dividend has been declared by the subsidiary company, but has not been paid, the whole dividend will appear as a liability in the Balance Sheet of the subsidiary company, whilst the amount due to the holding company will be shown in the latter's Balance Sheet as an asset. In the consolidated Balance Sheet this amount will be set off against the liability for the dividend appearing in the Balance Sheet of the subsidiary company, and the balance, being the dividend due to the outside members, will be included in the amount of the minority interest.

The necessary adjustment is considered in greater detail in § 5 of this chapter dealing with the consolidated Profit and Loss Account.

Bills of exchange drawn by the one company and accepted by another member of the group are shown in the separate Balance Sheets as bills receivable and bills payable respectively. In the consolidated Balance Sheet these items will cancel each other out, since they merely represent inter-company indebtedness, and are not assets or liabilities of the group. If, however, a member of the group has discounted any bills drawn by it on, and accepted by, other members of the group, the discounted bills will not appear as assets in the first company's Balance Sheet, but a contingent liability will be noted thereon in respect of them. In the consolidated Balance Sheet, however, the discounted bills will appear as an actual, not a contingent liability, since they are held by persons outside the group, to whom the amounts of the bills will have to be paid on maturity. Only the inter-company bills actually held within the group at the date of the consolidated Balance Sheet will cancel out.

Illustration (8)

The following are extracts from the Balance Sheets as at 31st December of a holding company and its subsidiary company. The holding company has a 90 per cent. interest in the subsidiary company. Show how the items would appear in the consolidated Balance Sheet.

HOLDING COMPANY

Note. There is a contingent liability on Bills Discounted - £1,500

Bills Receivable (accepted by Subsidiary Company)

2,000

SUBSIDIARY COMPANY

Bills Payable (drawn by Holding Company) .. £ 3,500

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

| | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------|-------|
| Bills Payable | £ 3,500 | £ |
| Less held by Holding Company .. | 2,000 | |
| | <u>1,500</u> | 1,500 |

Any inter-company indebtedness, in the form of trade debts, loans or Current Account balances, which appears as a liability in the Balance Sheet of one member of the group and as an asset in the Balance Sheet of another, will cancel out in the consolidated Balance Sheet.

Any difference between the balance on an inter-company Current Account in one company's books and that of the corresponding Current Account in the books of the other company will usually be occasioned by cash or goods in transit, or some other transaction which has been recorded in one set of books but not in the other. The amount of such difference must be transferred out of the Current Account affected to the appropriate value in transit account and shown in the consolidated Balance Sheet as an asset. The Current Accounts in the respective books will then cancel out.

(j) Unrealised Inter-Company Profits

Where goods which have been sold by one company in the group to another at a profit, have not been resold by the latter company at the date of its Balance Sheet, and are included in its stock at the price at which they were invoiced by the selling company, the profit on the transaction (which, from the point of view of the group is unrealised) must be deducted from the stock and from the consolidated profit for the purpose of the consolidated accounts. Where, however, any part of the capital of a subsidiary is held by members outside the group, only the proportion of the inter-company profit on the transaction which is attributable to the members of the group must be regarded as unrealised, and deleted. From the point of view of the outside shareholders, the profit is a realised one arising from a purchase or sale of goods by the company of which they are members from or to another company, and no adjustment is necessary in respect of their interest in such profit. Where, for example, only four-fifths of the capital of the subsidiary is held by the holding company, only four-fifths of the inter-company profit on the unsold stock will be deducted from the figures of stock and of profit in the consolidated accounts. This adjustment is illustrated in § 5 of this chapter in describing the preparation of a consolidated Profit and Loss Account.

A similar position arises where one company in the group executes work of a capital nature for another company in the group, *e.g.*, where a subsidiary manufactures plant and machinery that is acquired by the holding company or another subsidiary as a fixed asset. Here again any unrealised profit must be eliminated from the consolidated accounts by being deducted from the book value of the plant and from the profit.

Where there is a chain of companies the minority interest in each of the companies affected by the transaction must be taken into account in making the necessary adjustment. For example, if X holds 90 per cent. of the capital of Y, and Y holds 80 per cent. of the capital of Z, in respect of any profit included in the invoiced price of assets sold by X or Y to Z, or by Z to X or Y, 90 per cent. of 80 per cent. = 72 per cent. is applicable to the group, and must be eliminated from the consolidated profit and consolidated assets. The minority interest consists of:

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Outside shareholders of Z | 20% |
| Outside shareholders of Y -- 10 per cent. of 80 per cent. . . | 8% |
| | <hr/> |
| | 28% |
| | <hr/> |

The effect of the above adjustments is to include the stock or other relevant assets in the consolidated Balance Sheet at more than their actual cost to the group, the excess being included on the opposite side of the Balance Sheet as part of the liability to outside shareholders.

Another line of argument is that the minority interest should not be increased by any proportion of the profit on such inter-company transactions until it has been fully realised by the group on their behalf. If this view is taken provision should be made for the full amount of the unrealised profit, irrespective of the interest of minority shareholders.

(k) Revaluation of Assets of Subsidiary Company

Where any of the assets of a subsidiary company have been revalued for the purpose of arriving at the price to be paid for the shares by the holding company, although no adjustment has been made in the books of the subsidiary company, it is preferable to include in the consolidated Balance Sheet the difference in value as a specific addition to, or deduction from, the assets affected, increasing or decreasing the capital reserve and the liability to minority interests accordingly.

Any such increase or decrease in value will necessitate an adjustment of the charge for depreciation in the consolidated Profit and Loss Account and such adjustment must be made *before* arriving at the proportion of the profits attributable to outside shareholders.

Illustration (9)

If plant and machinery standing in the books of the subsidiary company at £10,000 had been revalued for the purpose of fixing the price of the shares purchased, at £15,000, and depreciation had been written off in the books of the subsidiary company at the rate of 10 per cent., on the book value of £10,000 only, the subsidiary company's plant and machinery would be shown in the consolidated Balance Sheet one year later as:

| | £ | £ | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------|--------|--------|
| Plant at cost, per books | | 10,000 | |
| Less Depreciation written off | | 1,000 | |
| | | <hr/> | |
| | | 9,000 | |
| Add Excess of valuation over book value | 5,000 | | |
| Less Depreciation on such excess | 500 | | |
| | <hr/> | 4,500 | |
| | | <hr/> | 13,500 |

whilst the charge for depreciation in the Consolidated Profit and Loss Account will be increased by £500.

For the purpose of the consolidated accounts the outside shareholders will have been credited with their share of the £5,000 appreciation in value as part of the capital reserve, and will automatically be charged with their proportion of the increased depreciation since their share of profit will be a proportion of the reduced amount.

Illustration (10)

The following are the Balance Sheets of H Ltd. and its subsidiary S Ltd.

Prepare a consolidated Balance Sheet having regard to the following:

- On the date when H Ltd. acquired the shares in S Ltd. the latter had a reserve of £500 and a credit balance on Profit and Loss Account of £100. The shares in H Ltd., allotted in exchange for those of S Ltd., were issued at a premium of 10s. per £1 share.
- In arriving at the value of the S Ltd. shares, plant and machinery, which then stood in the books at £4,500, was revalued at £5,400; and furniture, etc., standing in the books at £600, was revalued at £360. The new values were not incorporated in the books. No changes in these assets have been made since that date.
- S Ltd. has purchased goods from H Ltd., of which goods invoiced at £1,400 are still in stock. H Ltd. adds 25% to cost in arriving at the invoice price to S Ltd.

BALANCE SHEETS

| | H Ltd. | S Ltd. | | H Ltd. | S Ltd. |
|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
| Share Capital | 22,000 | 8,000 | Goodwill | 3,500 | 2,500 |
| Premium on 5,200 shares | 2,600 | — | Plant, etc. | 7,000 | 3,900 |
| Reserve | — | 2,000 | Furniture, etc. | 1,200 | 500 |
| Profit and Loss Account | 2,800 | 600 | Stock | 4,000 | 2,700 |
| Sundry Creditors | 1,900 | 2,300 | Debtors | 5,000 | 3,100 |
| Current Account, H Ltd. | — | 700 | Current Account, S Ltd. | 700 | — |
| | | | Bank Balance | 100 | 900 |
| | | | Shares in S Ltd., 7,200 at cost | 7,800 | — |
| | <u>£29,300</u> | <u>£13,600</u> | | <u>£29,300</u> | <u>£13,600</u> |

The following consolidating adjustments must be made:

CONSOLIDATING JOURNAL ENTRIES

| | Dr | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|--------|-------|
| Goodwill | | 7,800 | |
| To Shares in S Ltd. | | | 7,800 |
| Transfer of cost of shares in S Ltd. | | | |
| Share Capital, S Ltd. | | 8,000 | |
| To Goodwill - 9/10ths | | | 7,200 |
| To Minority Interest - 1/10th | | | 800 |
| Transfer of nominal value of shares in S Ltd. | | | |
| S Ltd. Revenue Reserves | | | |
| To Minority Interest | | | 260 |
| Reserve - 1/10th of £2,000 | | | 200 |
| Profit and Loss Account - 1/10th of £600 | | | 60 |
| Transfer of share of revenue reserves attributable to outside shareholders. | | | |
| S Ltd., Revenue Reserves | | | |
| To Goodwill | | | 540 |
| Reserve - 9/10ths of £500 | | | 450 |
| Profit and Loss Account - 9/10ths of £100 | | | 90 |
| Transfer of pre-acquisition surplus of S Ltd. applicable to H Ltd. | | | |
| Plant, S Ltd. | | 900 | |
| To Furniture, S Ltd. | | | 240 |
| To Revaluation Account | | | 660 |
| Giving effect to revaluation of assets of S Ltd. | | | |
| Revaluation Account | | 660 | |
| To Minority Interest (1/10th) | | | 66 |
| To Goodwill (9/10ths) | | | 594 |
| Transfer of net increase on revaluation. | | | |
| Consolidated Profit and Loss Account | | 72 | |
| Minority Interest | | 8 | |
| To Provision for Depreciation | | | 80 |
| Adjustment of charge for depreciation consequent on revaluation of assets: | | | |
| Plant - increase | | £120 | |
| Furniture - decrease | | 40 | |
| Net increase | | £80 | |
| Chargeable 9/10ths to Consolidated Profit and Loss Account and 1/10th to Minority interests. | | | |
| H Ltd., Profit and Loss Account | | 2,800 | |
| S Ltd., Revenue Reserves (pre-acquisition profits): | | | |
| Reserve | | £1,500 | |
| Profit and Loss Account | | 500 | |
| 9/10ths of | | £2,000 | 1,800 |
| To Consolidated Revenue Reserves | | | 4,600 |
| Transfer of balances. | | | |

CONSOLIDATING JOURNAL ENTRIES (*continued*)

| | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Consolidated Profit and Loss Account | Dr. | £ | 252 | £ |
| To Stock, S Ltd. | | | | 252 |
| Provision for unrealised profit on inter-company trading - 9/10ths - 25,125ths × £1,400. | | | | |
| Current Account, H Ltd. | Dr. | 700 | | |
| To Current Account, S Ltd. | | | | 700 |
| Cancellation of inter-company balance. | | | | |

CONSOLIDATING LEDGER ACCOUNTS
GOODWILL

| | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---|----------------|-------------------------------------------------|---|----------------|
| To Goodwill H Ltd. | £ | 3,500 | By Share Capital, S Ltd. | £ | 7,200 |
| " S Ltd. | | 2,500 | " Pre-acquisition profits | | 540 |
| | | 6,000 | " Net increase on revaluation of assets | | 594 |
| " Shares in S Ltd. | | 7,800 | " Balance to Consolidated Balance Sheet | | 5,466 |
| | | <u>£13,800</u> | | | <u>£13,800</u> |

S LTD. REVENUE RESERVES

| | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------|-----------------------------------|---|---------------|
| To Minority Interest (1/10th) | £ | 260 | By Reserves | £ | 2,000 |
| " Goodwill - pre-acquisition profits (9/10ths of £600) | | 540 | " Profit and Loss Account | | 600 |
| " Consolidated Revenue Reserves - post-acquisition profits (9/10th of £2,000) | | 1,800 | | | |
| | | <u>£2,600</u> | | | <u>£2,600</u> |

MINORITY INTEREST

| | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------|
| To Share of increase in charge for depreciation on S Ltd.'s plant and furniture (1/10th of £80) | £ | 8 | By S Ltd. Share Capital (1/10th of £8,000) | £ | 800 |
| " Balance per consolidated Balance Sheet | | 1,118 | " S Ltd. Revenue Reserves | | 260 |
| | | <u>£1,126</u> | " Share of increase on revaluation of S Ltd.'s plant and furniture (1/10th of £660) | | 66 |
| | | | | | <u>£1,126</u> |

CONSOLIDATED REVENUE RESERVES

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|---------------|---------------------------------------------|---|---------------|
| To Share applicable to H Ltd. of increase in charge for depreciation on S Ltd.'s plant and furniture (9/10ths of £80) | £ | 72 | By H Ltd. - Profit and Loss Account | £ | 2,800 |
| " Provision for unrealised profit on Stock | | 252 | " S Ltd. - Post-acquisition profits | | 1,800 |
| " Balance per Consolidated Balance Sheet | | 4,276 | | | |
| | | <u>£4,600</u> | | | <u>£4,600</u> |

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------|-------|--------|----------------------------------------------|---|----------------|
| Share Capital | £ | 22,000 | Goodwill | £ | 5,466 |
| Share Premium Account | | 2,600 | Plant, etc., H Ltd. | £ | 7,000 |
| Revenue Reserves | | 4,276 | " S Ltd. | £ | 3,900 |
| | | 28,876 | Add Increase on revaluation £900 | | |
| Minority Interest in subsidiary | | 1,118 | Less Depreciation thereon 120 | | 780 |
| Sundry Creditors H Ltd. | 1,900 | | | | 4,680 |
| " S Ltd. | 2,300 | | | | 1,200 |
| | | 4,200 | Furniture, etc., H Ltd. | | 500 |
| | | | " S Ltd. | | 500 |
| | | | Deduct Reduction in value £240 | | |
| | | | Less Depreciation thereon 40 | | 200 |
| | | | | | 300 |
| | | | Stock H Ltd. | | 4,000 |
| | | | " S Ltd. | | 2,700 |
| | | | Less Provision for unrealised profit | | 252 |
| | | | | | 2,448 |
| | | | Debtors H Ltd. | | 5,000 |
| | | | " S Ltd. | | 3,100 |
| | | | | | 8,100 |
| | | | Bank Balance H Ltd. | | 100 |
| | | | " S Ltd. | | 900 |
| | | | | | 1,000 |
| | | | | | <u>£34,194</u> |
| | | | | | <u>£34,194</u> |

Notes.

(1) In the above illustration the Revenue Reserves have been grouped under one heading in accordance with the recommendations of the Council of the Institute of Chartered Accountants (see page 288).

(2) Some authorities prefer to show the consolidation of the goodwill figures actually appearing in the holding company's and subsidiary company's Balance Sheets separately from the sum attributable to cost of control. If this were done in the present example, Goodwill would appear in the consolidated Balance Sheet at £6,000, and £534, being the excess of the book value of the net assets of S Ltd. applicable to H Ltd.'s holding over the cost of such holding, would appear on the opposite side of the Balance Sheet as a Capital Reserve.)

(I) Subsidiaries holding Shares in other Subsidiaries

The following are illustrations involving a holding company and two subsidiaries one of which holds shares in the other:

Illustration (11)

The following is an abstract of the Balance Sheets of Holding Ltd. and its subsidiaries A Ltd. and B Ltd. as on 31st December. Prepare a consolidated Balance Sheet.

| | Holding Ltd. | | A Ltd. | | B Ltd. | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------|--------|---------|--------|---------|
| | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| Share Capital Authorised and Issued: | | | | | | |
| Ordinary Shares of £1 each, fully paid .. | | 100,000 | | 40,000 | | 30,0 |
| Share Premium Account: | | | | | | |
| (Premium on issue of 20,000 Shares issued in payment for 30,000 Shares in A Ltd.) .. | | 10,000 | | | | |
| Profit and Loss Account: | | | | | | |
| Balance brought forward | 3,000 | | | | 6,000 | |
| Add Profit for year | 20,000 | | | | 3,000 | |
| | | 23,000 | | | | 9,000 |
| Sundry Creditors .. | | 19,000 | | 20,000 | | 3,000 |
| Bills Payable (all issued to Holding Ltd.) .. | | | | 18,000 | | |
| | | £152,000 | | £78,000 | | £42,000 |

Note. Holding Ltd. had a contingent liability in respect of Bills discounted, £10,000. Sundry Creditors of A Ltd., £20,000, includes £15,000 owed to Holding Ltd.

| | Holding Ltd. | | A Ltd. | | B Ltd. | |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------|--------|---------|--------|---------|
| | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| Goodwill at cost .. | | | | 6,000 | | |
| Land, Buildings, Plant and Machinery, at cost .. | | 25,000 | | 30,000 | | 20,000 |
| Investments, at cost: | | | | | | |
| 30,000 Ordinary Shares in A Ltd. .. | | 30,000 | | | | |
| 20,000 " " " B Ltd. .. | | 40,000 | | | | |
| 10,000 " " " B Ltd. .. | | 70,000 | | | | |
| Stocks, as valued by Companies' officials .. | | 10,000 | | 20,000 | | |
| Sundry Debtors .. | | 10,000 | | 3,000 | | 8,000 |
| Advance to A Ltd. .. | | 15,000 | | 2,000 | | 7,000 |
| | | 25,000 | | | | |
| Bills Receivable (accepted by A Ltd.) .. | | 8,000 | | | | |
| Balances at Bankers .. | | 14,000 | | 6,000 | | 7,000 |
| Profit and Loss Account: | | | | | | |
| Balance brought forward | | | | 5,000 | | |
| Add Loss for year .. | | | | 6,000 | | |
| | | | | 11,000 | | |
| | | £152,000 | | £78,000 | | £42,000 |

On 1st January of the previous year, the date when Holding Ltd. purchased the 30,000 Shares in A Ltd., the debit balance on the latter company's Profit and Loss Account was £1,000. Holding Ltd. and A Ltd. both purchased their shares in B Ltd. on 1st January in the current year.

CONSOLIDATING JOURNAL ENTRIES

| | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|--------|
| Goodwill | Dr. | 90,000 |
| To Shares in A Ltd. | | 30,000 |
| " Shares in B Ltd. — held by Holding Ltd. | | 40,000 |
| " Shares in B Ltd. — held by A Ltd. | | 20,000 |
| Transfer of cost of shares. | | |
| Share Capital, A Ltd. | Dr. | 40,000 |
| To Goodwill — Nominal Value of Shares held by Holding Ltd. | | 30,000 |
| " Minority Interest — Nominal Value of Shares held by Minority Shareholders. | | 10,000 |
| Share Capital, B Ltd. | Dr. | 30,000 |
| To Goodwill — Nominal Value of Shares held by Holding Ltd. | | 20,000 |
| " Goodwill — Nominal Value of Shares held by A Ltd. | | 10,000 |
| Transfer of nominal value of shares. | | |
| Goodwill | Dr. | 750 |
| To Profit and Loss Account, A Ltd. | | 750 |
| Transfer of pre-acquisition loss of A Ltd. applicable to Holding Ltd. — $\frac{1}{3} \times £1,000$ | | |
| Profit and Loss Account, B Ltd. | Dr. | 6,000 |
| To Goodwill — re Holding Ltd.'s holding — $\frac{2}{3} \times £6,000$ | | 4,000 |
| " Goodwill — re A Ltd.'s holding — $\frac{1}{3} \times £6,000$ | | 2,000 |
| Transfer of pre-acquisition profit of B Ltd. | | |
| Sundry Creditors, A Ltd. | Dr. | 15,000 |
| To Advance to A Ltd. | | 15,000 |
| Elimination of inter-company balance. | | |
| Bills Payable, A Ltd. | Dr. | 8,000 |
| To Bills Receivable, Holding Ltd. | | 8,000 |
| Elimination of inter-company bills | | |
| Profit and Loss Account, B Ltd. | Dr. | 3,000 |
| To Profit and Loss Account, A Ltd. — $\frac{1}{3} \times £3,000$ | | 1,000 |
| " Profit and Loss Account, Holding Ltd. — $\frac{2}{3} \times £3,000$ | | 2,000 |
| Transfer of B Ltd.'s post-acquisition profit. | | |
| Profit and Loss Account, Holding Ltd. | Dr. | 6,750 |
| Minority Interest $\frac{1}{3} (£11,000 - £1,000)$ | | 2,500 |
| To Profit and Loss Account, A Ltd. | | 9,250 |
| Transfer of balances on A Ltd.'s Profit and Loss Account. | | |

Note. The sum debited to Minority Interests in respect of the debit balance on A's profit and loss account is:

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Debit balance per balance sheet | £11,000 |
| Less Proportion of B's post-acquisition profit applicable to A Ltd. | 1/3rd of £3,000 |
| | 1,000 |
| One-fourth of | <u>£10,000</u> = £2,500 |

GOODWILL

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Shares in A Ltd. | 30,000 | By Share Capital A Ltd. Nominal Value | 30,000 |
| .. Profit and Loss Account: A Ltd. Pre-acquisition loss | 750 | .. Balance = Goodwill | 750 |
| | <u>£30,750</u> | | <u>£30,750</u> |
| To Shares in B Ltd. held by Holding Ltd. | 40,000 | By Share Capital B Ltd. Nominal Value | 20,000 |
| | | .. Profit and Loss Account — B Ltd. Pre-acquisition profit | 4,000 |
| | | .. Balance = Goodwill | 16,000 |
| | <u>£40,000</u> | | <u>£40,000</u> |
| To Shares in B Ltd. held by A Ltd. | 20,000 | By Share Capital, B Ltd. Nominal Value | 10,000 |
| | | .. Profit and Loss Account, B Ltd. Pre-acquisition profit | 2,000 |
| | | .. Balance = Goodwill | 8,000 |
| | <u>£20,000</u> | | <u>£20,000</u> |

The goodwill appearing in the consolidated Balance Sheet will be:

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Balance per A Ltd.'s Balance Sheet | £6,000 |
| Holding Company's Goodwill in A Ltd. (as above) | 750 |
| .. " " " B Ltd. " " " | 16,000 |
| A Ltd.'s " " " B Ltd. " " " | 8,000 |
| | <u>£30,750</u> |

MINORITY INTEREST

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|----------------|
| | £ | | £ |
| To Profit and Loss Account A Ltd. Share of Loss .. | 2,500 | By Share Capital, A Ltd. | 10,000 |
| „ Balance to Consolidated Balance Sheet .. | 7,500 | | |
| | <u>£10,000</u> | | <u>£10,000</u> |

CONSOLIDATED PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| | £ | | £ |
| To A Ltd.'s Profit and Loss Account, Share of post-acquisition loss applicable to Holding Ltd. .. | 6,750 | By Holding Ltd.'s Profit and Loss Account: | |
| „ Balance to Consolidated Balance Sheet .. | 18,250 | Balance b/f. | 23,000 |
| | | B Ltd.'s Profit and Loss Account - Share of post-acquisition profit applicable to Holding Ltd. | 2,000 |
| | <u>£25,000</u> | | <u>£25,000</u> |

A LTD., PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| | £ | | £ |
| To Balance b/f. | 11,000 | By Goodwill - Pre-acquisition loss applicable to Holding Ltd. | 750 |
| | | „ B Ltd. Profit and Loss Account - Share of post-acquisition profit applicable to A Ltd. | 1,000 |
| | | „ Minority Interest $\frac{1}{2}$ (£11,000 - £1,000) .. | 2,500 |
| | | „ Balance to Consolidated Profit and Loss Account .. | 6,750 |
| | <u>£11,000</u> | | <u>£11,000</u> |

B LTD., PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| | £ | | £ |
| To Goodwill - Pre-acquisition profits applicable to: | | By Balance b/f. | 9,000 |
| A Ltd. | 4,000 | | |
| B Ltd. | 2,000 | | |
| „ A Ltd.: Profit and Loss Account - Share of post-acquisition profit applicable to A Ltd. | 1,000 | | |
| „ Consolidated Profit and Loss Account - Share of post-acquisition profit applicable to Holding Ltd. | 2,000 | | |
| | <u>£9,000</u> | | <u>£9,000</u> |

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET OF HOLDING LTD. AND ITS
SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
| SHARE CAPITAL Authorised and Issued | | 100,000 | FIXED ASSETS | | |
| CAPITAL RESERVE: | | | Goodwill | | 30,750 |
| Share Premium Account | | 10,000 | Land, Buildings, Plant and Machinery, at cost: | | |
| CONSOLIDATED PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT | | 18,250 | H Ltd. | 25,000 | |
| | | 128,250 | A Ltd. | 30,000 | |
| MINORITY INTEREST | | 7,500 | B Ltd. | 20,000 | |
| SUNDRY CREDITORS: | | | | | <u>75,000</u> |
| H Ltd. | 19,000 | | CURRENT ASSETS: | | |
| A Ltd. £20,000 | | | Stocks— | | |
| Less due to H Ltd. 15,000 | | | H Ltd. | 10,000 | |
| | 5,000 | | A Ltd. | 3,000 | |
| B Ltd. | 3,000 | 27,000 | B Ltd. | 8,000 | |
| BILLS PAYABLE: | | | | | 21,000 |
| A Ltd. | 18,000 | | Sundry Debtors— | | |
| Less held by H Ltd. 8,000 | | | H Ltd. | 10,000 | |
| | 10,000 | | A Ltd. | 2,000 | |
| | | | B Ltd. | 7,000 | |
| | | | | | 19,000 |
| | | | Balances at Bankers— | | |
| | | | H Ltd. | 14,000 | |
| | | | A Ltd. | 6,000 | |
| | | | B Ltd. | 7,000 | |
| | | | | | <u>27,000</u> |
| | | | | | <u>67,000</u> |
| | | <u>£172,750</u> | | | <u>£172,750</u> |

It will be observed in the above illustration that in computing the goodwill element of £8,000 in A Ltd.'s holding in B Ltd. no part of the pre-acquisition profits of B Ltd. applicable to A Ltd. is credited to the outside shareholders of A Ltd. The reason for this is that such pre-acquisition profits are represented by part of the assets of B Ltd. which A Ltd. has, in effect, purchased and paid for out of its capital funds, and are not revenue available for distribution by A Ltd. among its shareholders. The excess of the price paid by A Ltd. for these shares over the net assets by which they are represented at the date of their acquisition is the sum paid by A Ltd. for goodwill, which would appear as such in the consolidated Balance Sheet of A Ltd. and B Ltd. were the accounts of these two companies consolidated separately. It is one of the assets of A Ltd. whoever its shareholders may be.

Some accountants take the view that only the proportion of this goodwill which is attributable to the members of the holding company should appear in the consolidated Balance Sheet of the group and accordingly that the proportion of the goodwill applicable to the outside members should be eliminated. If this were done in the above illustration, one-fourth of the £8,000 paid by A Ltd. for goodwill in respect of its holding in B Ltd. would be written off against the outside shareholders, thereby reducing the goodwill figure in the consolidated Balance Sheet to £28,750 and the minority interest to £5,500. There would seem to be no logical justification for this procedure; the goodwill is in no different category from the other assets of A Ltd. and if part of the goodwill is written off against outside shareholders it would be logical to write off part of the other assets also, and thereby eliminate the minority interest from the consolidated accounts altogether, including therein only the proportion of each asset of the subsidiary which is, in effect, owned by the holding company.

If, however, the price paid by A Ltd. for the shares in B Ltd. were *less* than the value of the net assets attributable to the holding, so that instead of 'goodwill' there was a 'capital reserve', the proportion thereof applicable to the outside shareholders of A Ltd. *should* be credited to minority interest, as it represents part of the value of the net assets shown in the consolidated accounts which is attributable to their holdings. Thus, in the above example, if the price paid by A Ltd. for the shares in B Ltd. had been only £10,000, there would have been a 'capital reserve' of £2,000, of which £500 would be credited to the minority interest in B, and the balance of £1,500 deducted from the consolidated goodwill. Alternatively the 'capital reserve' could be applied in writing down the assets of B Ltd. for the purpose of the consolidated accounts.

In the preceding illustration the shares in B Ltd. were acquired by Holding Ltd. and A Ltd. on the same date.

Where shares in a subsidiary have been acquired by different members of the group at different dates, the 'goodwill' element in respect of each holding will be represented by the excess of the cost thereof over the proportion of the net assets of the subsidiary attributable thereto at the date of the particular acquisition. Any undivided profits of such subsidiary which have accrued *after* the acquisition will be revenue profits from the viewpoint of that holding member. If, however, such holding member later becomes a subsidiary of the parent company, the proportion of the post-acquisition profits of the first mentioned subsidiary attributable to that holding member, will constitute part of its net assets at the date on which it, in turn, became a subsidiary of the parent company, and must be treated as a pre-acquisition profit in computing the 'goodwill' ingredient of the parent company's holding.

Illustration (12)

The following schedules summarise the Balance Sheets, as on 31st December, of a group of companies:

| | | | | | X Ltd. £ | Y Ltd. £ | Z Ltd. £ |
|---------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Land and Buildings | .. | .. | .. | .. | 125,000 | 71,700 | 16,000 |
| Plant and Machinery | .. | .. | .. | .. | 175,000 | | 16,500 |
| Fixtures and Fittings | .. | .. | .. | .. | 15,000 | 6,000 | 2,500 |
| Investments: | | | | | | | |
| Y Ltd. 120,000 shares | .. | .. | .. | .. | 105,000 | | |
| Z Ltd. 20,000 shares | .. | .. | .. | .. | 14,000 | | |
| „ 10,000 shares | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 7,000 | |
| Stock in trade: | .. | .. | .. | .. | 150,460 | 46,655 | 24,500 |
| Sundry Debtors: | | | | | | | |
| General | .. | .. | .. | .. | 37,450 | 28,300 | 8,500 |
| Y Ltd. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 15,685 | | |
| Z Ltd. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 15,985 | 8,750 | |
| Cash and Bank Balances | .. | .. | .. | .. | 25,200 | 1,350 | 2,315 |
| Profit and Loss Account balance | .. | .. | .. | .. | | | 5,000 |
| | | | | | <u>£678,780</u> | <u>£169,755</u> | <u>£75,315</u> |
| Capital, issued in shares of £1 each: | | | | | | | |
| Fully paid up | .. | .. | .. | .. | 500,000 | | 50,000 |
| 15s. paid up (160,000 shares) | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 120,000 | |
| General Reserves | .. | .. | .. | .. | 100,000 | 20,000 | |
| Profit and Loss Account balances | .. | .. | .. | .. | 51,500 | 5,000 | |
| Sundry Creditors: | | | | | | | |
| General | .. | .. | .. | .. | 27,280 | 12,070 | 1,830 |
| X Ltd. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 12,685 | 15,985 |
| Y Ltd. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | | 7,500 |
| | | | | | <u>£678,780</u> | <u>£169,755</u> | <u>£75,315</u> |

On 31st December, goods to the value of £3,000 were in transit from X Ltd. to Y Ltd. and a remittance of £1,250 from Z Ltd. to Y Ltd. was not recorded by the latter company until after the books had been closed.

Y Ltd. had a credit balance on Profit and Loss Account of £10,000, and no General Reserve, when it became a subsidiary of X Ltd., but has since paid dividends of £20,000, of which £10,000 was paid out of pre-acquisition profits. X Ltd. has taken credit for its share of these dividends in its Profit and Loss Account.

Z Ltd. had a debit balance on Profit and Loss Account of £15,000 when Y Ltd. purchased 10,000 shares, and of £10,000 when later, X Ltd. purchased 20,000 shares in Z Ltd. X Ltd. purchased its holdings in Y Ltd. and Z Ltd. on the same date.

You are required to prepare a Consolidated Balance Sheet for the group as at 31st December. Ignore Taxation.

Notes as to consolidating adjustments:

- (a) The dividends received by X Ltd. from Y Ltd. amount to $\frac{3}{4}$ of £20,000 i.e. £15,000 of which £7,500 was paid out of pre-acquisition profits, and must therefore be transferred from X Ltd.'s Profit and Loss Account to the credit of Shares in Y Ltd. Account (or Goodwill Account).

(b) The pre-acquisition losses of Z Ltd. which must be transferred from Z Ltd.'s Profit and Loss Account to the *debit* of Goodwill, are:

| | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| re Y Ltd.'s holding — $\frac{1}{5}$ th of £15,000 | = 3,000 |
| re X Ltd.'s holding — $\frac{3}{5}$ ths of £10,000 | = 4,000 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £7,000 |

(c) Since Z Ltd.'s debit balance on Profit and Loss Account was £15,000 when Y Ltd. acquired its holding and £10,000 when X Ltd. acquired its holding in Z Ltd., and is now £5,000, Z Ltd. has made *profits* as follows:

(i) £10,000 since Y Ltd.'s acquisition, of which £5,000 was earned before Y Ltd. became a subsidiary of X Ltd.;

(ii) £5,000 since X Ltd.'s acquisition.

(d) In respect of (c) (i) one-fifth = £2,000 is attributable to Y Ltd.; of this amount £1,000 was earned prior to Y Ltd. becoming a subsidiary of X Ltd. and thus constitutes a pre-acquisition profit of which three-fourths = £750 relates to X Ltd.'s holding in Y Ltd. and must be credited to goodwill.

In respect of (c) (ii) two-fifths = £2,000 is a post-acquisition profit of X Ltd.

(e) Y Ltd.'s minority shareholders must be credited with one-fourth of Y Ltd.'s profits (including that company's share of the post-acquisition profits of Z Ltd.). Z Ltd.'s outside shareholders must be *debited* with two-fifths of that company's debit balance on Profit and Loss Account of £5,000.

CONSOLIDATING JOURNAL ENTRIES

| | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------|
| Shares in Y Ltd. | Dr. 7,500 | 7,500 |
| To Profit and Loss Account, X Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . |  |
| Writing back dividend paid by Y Ltd. out of pre-acquisition profits (See Note (a) above). | .. .. . |  |
| Goodwill, X Ltd. | Dr. 97,500 | 97,500 |
| To Shares in Y Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . |  |
| Goodwill, X Ltd. | 14,000 | 14,000 |
| To Shares in Z Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . |  |
| Goodwill, Y Ltd. | 7,000 | 7,000 |
| To Shares in Z Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . |  |
| Transfer of cost of shares in subsidiaries. | | |
| Share Capital, Y Ltd. | Dr. 120,000 | |
| To Goodwill, X Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . | 90,000 |
| .. Minority Interest, Y Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . | 30,000 |
| Share Capital, X Ltd. | Dr. 50,000 | |
| To Goodwill, X Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . | 20,000 |
| .. Y Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . | 10,000 |
| .. Minority Interest, Z Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . | 20,000 |
| Transfer of nominal value of shares. | | |
| Goodwill, Y Ltd. | Dr. 3,000 | 3,000 |
| To Profit and Loss Account, Z Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . |  |
| Transfer of pre-acquisition loss of Z Ltd., attributable to Y's holding in Z ($\frac{1}{5}$ th of £15,000). | | |
| Profit and Loss Account, Z Ltd. | Dr. 2,000 | 2,000 |
| To Profit and Loss Account, Y Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . |  |
| Transfer of post-acquisition profit of Z Ltd. attributable to Y's holding ($\frac{1}{5}$ th of £10,000). | | |
| Goodwill, X Ltd. | Dr. 4,000 | 4,000 |
| To Profit and Loss Account, Z Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . |  |
| Transfer of pre-acquisition loss of Z Ltd. attributable to X Ltd. ($\frac{3}{5}$ ths of £10,000). | | |
| Profit and Loss Account, Z Ltd. | Dr. 2,000 | 2,000 |
| To Profit and Loss Account, X Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . |  |
| Transfer of post-acquisition profit of Z Ltd. attributable to X Ltd. ($\frac{3}{5}$ ths of £5,000). | | |
| Profit and Loss Account, Y Ltd. | Dr. 750 | 750 |
| To Goodwill, X Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . |  |
| Transfer of pre-acquisition profit of Y Ltd. attributable to X Ltd. (see Note (d) above). | | |
| Profit and Loss Account, Y Ltd. | Dr. 4,500 | 4,500 |
| To Profit and Loss Account, X Ltd. .. .. . | .. .. . |  |
| Transfer of post-acquisition profit of Y Ltd. attributable to X Ltd. ($\frac{3}{4}$ ths of £6,000). | | |

CONSOLIDATING JOURNAL ENTRIES (*continued*)

| | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|
| General Reserve, Y Ltd. Dr. | 3,000 | |
| Profit and Loss Account, Y Ltd. | 1,750 | |
| To Minority Interest, Y Ltd. | | 6,750 |
| Transfer of shares of Reserve ($\frac{1}{4}\text{th} \times £20,000$) and profit ($\frac{1}{4}\text{th} \times £7,000$) attributable to outside shareholders of Y Ltd. | | |
| Minority Interest, Z Ltd. Dr. | 2,000 | |
| To Profit and Loss Account, Z Ltd. | | 2,000 |
| Transfer of share of debit balance attributable to outside shareholders of Z Ltd. - ($\frac{2}{5}\text{ths} \times £5,000$). | | |
| Profit and Loss Account, X Ltd. Dr. | 50,500 | |
| To Consolidated Profit and Loss Account | | 50,500 |
| Transfer of balance. | | |
| Goods in transit Dr. | 3,000 | |
| Cash in transit | 1,250 | |
| To Current Account, Y Ltd. | | 3,000 |
| Current Account, Z Ltd. | | 1,250 |
| Adjustments for value in transit. | | |
| Y Ltd Current Account (X) Dr. | 12,685 | |
| Z Ltd. Current Account (Y) | 7,500 | |
| To X Ltd. Current Account (Y) | | 12,685 |
| Y Ltd. Current Account (Z) | | 7,500 |
| Setting off inter-company balances. | | |

The consolidating ledger accounts will appear as follows:

GOODWILL

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------|------------------------------------------------|---------|
| To Shares in Y Ltd. held by X Ltd. | 105,000 | By Y Ltd. Share Capital, nominal value | 90,000 |
| Less Dividend paid out of pre-acquisition profits | 7,500 | „ Profit and Loss Account, Y Ltd. | |
| | 97,500 | „ Pre-acquisition profit | 750 |
| | £97,500 | „ Balance = Goodwill | 6,750 |
| | | | £97,500 |
| To Shares in Z Ltd. held by X Ltd. | 14,000 | By Z Ltd. Share Capital, nominal value | 20,000 |
| „ Z Ltd. Profit and Loss Account - pre-acquisition loss | 4,000 | | |
| „ Balance - Capital Reserve | 2,000 | | |
| | £20,000 | | £20,000 |
| To Shares in Z Ltd. held by Y Ltd. | 7,000 | By Z Ltd. Share Capital, nominal value | 10,000 |
| „ Z Ltd. Profit and Loss Account - pre-acquisition loss | 3,000 | | |
| | £10,000 | | £10,000 |

Note. It is preferable to set off the 'capital reserve' arising from the purchase by X Ltd. of shares in Z Ltd. against the goodwill purchased in Y Ltd. The goodwill appearing in the consolidated Balance Sheet will thus be:

| | £ |
|----------------------------------------|--------|
| Goodwill in Y Ltd. (as above) | 6,750 |
| Less Capital Reserve in Z Ltd. | 2,000 |
| | £4,750 |

Since the price paid by Y Ltd. for its holding in Z Ltd. (£7,000) is exactly equal to the net assets of Z Ltd. attributable thereto (share capital £10,000 less pre-acquisition loss £3,000) no goodwill or capital reserve arises in respect of this holding.

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT, X LTD.

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Goodwill – Dividend from Y Ltd. paid out of pre-acquisition profit | £ 7,500 | By X Ltd. – Balance b/f. | £ 51,500 |
| „ Balance to Consolidated Profit and Loss Account | 50,500 | „ Y Ltd. – Post-acquisition profit | 4,500 |
| | | „ Z Ltd. – Post-acquisition profit | 2,000 |
| | <u>£58,000</u> | | <u>£58,000</u> |

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT, Y LTD

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Minority Interest ($\frac{1}{2} \times \text{£7,000}$) | £ 1,750 | By Balance b/f. | £ 5,000 |
| „ Goodwill ($1 \times \text{£1,000}$) being Y Ltd.'s share of Z Ltd.'s profit earned between date of acquisition by Y Ltd. of shares in Z Ltd. and date on which Y Ltd. became a subsidiary of X Ltd... | 750 | „ Share of post-acquisition profit of Z Ltd ($\frac{1}{2} \times \text{£10,000}$) | 2,000 |
| „ Balance to Consolidated Profit and Loss Account | 4,500 | | |
| | <u>£7,000</u> | | <u>£7,000</u> |

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT, Z LTD.

| | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------|--------------------------------------|---|---------------|
| To Balance b/f. | £ | 2,000 | By Minority Interest (¼th of £5,000) | £ | 2,000 |
| .. Y Ltd. Profit and Loss Account - Share of profit attributable to Y Ltd. since acquisition (¼th of £10,000) | 5,000 | | .. Goodwill: | | |
| | | | re Y Ltd.'s holding (½ × £15,000) .. | | 3,000 |
| .. X Ltd. Profit and Loss Account - Share of profit attributable to X Ltd. since acquisition (¼ths of £5,000) | 2,000 | | re X Ltd.'s holding (¼ × £10,000) .. | | 4,000 |
| | 2,000 | | | | |
| | <u>£9,000</u> | | | | <u>£9,000</u> |

MINORITY INTERESTS

| | Y Ltd. £ | Z Ltd. £ | | Y Ltd. £ | Z Ltd. £ |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| To Profit and Loss Account, 2/5ths | | | By Share Capital | 30,000 | 20,000 |
| £5,000 | | 2,000 | .. General Reserve, 1/4th × £20,000 | 5,000 | |
| .. Balances per Consolidated Balance Sheet | 36,750 | 18,000 | .. Profit and Loss Account 1/4th × £7,000 | 1,750 | |
| | <u>£36,750</u> | <u>£20,000</u> | | <u>£36,750</u> | <u>£20,000</u> |

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------|-------------------------|---|-----------------|
| Share Capital | | 500,000 | Goodwill | | 4,750 |
| General Reserve: | | | Land and Buildings: | | |
| X Ltd. | 100,000 | | X Ltd. | | 125,000 |
| Y Ltd. (£ x £20,000) | 15,000 | | Y Ltd. | | 71,700 |
| | | 115,000 | Z Ltd. | | 16,000 |
| Consolidated Profit and Loss Account | | 50,500 | | | 212,700 |
| | | 665,500 | Plant and Machinery: | | |
| Minority Interests | | 54,750 | X Ltd. | | 175,000 |
| | | | Z Ltd. | | 16,500 |
| | | | | | 191,500 |
| | | | Fixtures and Fittings: | | |
| Creditors: | | | X Ltd. | | 15,000 |
| X Ltd. | 27,280 | | Y Ltd. | | 6,000 |
| Y Ltd. | 12,070 | | Z Ltd. | | 2,500 |
| Z Ltd. | 1,830 | | | | 23,500 |
| | | 41,180 | Stock-in-Trade: | | |
| | | | X Ltd. | | 150,460 |
| | | | Y Ltd. | | 46,655 |
| | | | Z Ltd. | | 24,500 |
| | | | In transit | | 3,000 |
| | | | | | 224,615 |
| | | | Sundry Debtors: | | |
| | | | X Ltd. | | 37,450 |
| | | | Y Ltd. | | 28,300 |
| | | | Z Ltd. | | 8,500 |
| | | | | | 74,250 |
| | | | Cash and Bank Balances: | | |
| | | | X Ltd. | | 25,200 |
| | | | Y Ltd. | | 1,350 |
| | | | Z Ltd. | | 2,315 |
| | | | In Transit | | 1,250 |
| | | | | | 30,115 |
| | | £761,430 | | | £761,430 |

(m) Shares in Holding Company held by Subsidiary Company

As from 1st July 1948, any allotment of shares by a holding company to its subsidiary company is void, and a subsidiary cannot acquire shares in its holding company. A subsidiary which was a member of its holding company at the commencement of the Act may, however, continue to be a member of it, but has no right to vote at meetings. Where shares in its holding company are held by a subsidiary, the *nominal* value of such shares should be deducted from the issued share capital of the holding company and any premium paid on the purchase should be deducted in the consolidated Balance Sheet from Share Premium Account or Reserve (if one exists) or otherwise added to goodwill. Where, however, there were undistributed profits in the holding company's books at the date of acquisition of the shares the proportion of such profits attributable to the subsidiary company's holding should be deducted in the parent company's Profit and Loss Account and also from the cost of the shares before making the transfer to goodwill.

Illustration (13)

| | H £ | S £ | | H £ | S £ |
|---------------------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Capital | 25,000 | 10,000 | 90% interest in S at cost | 11,000 | |
| Profit and Loss Account | 4,000 | 2,400 | Sundry Assets | 20,000 | 7,400 |
| Creditors | 2,000 | 1,000 | 20% interest in H at cost | | 6,000 |
| | <u>£31,000</u> | <u>£13,400</u> | | <u>£31,000</u> | <u>£13,400</u> |

S acquired its holding in H when H had a credit balance on Profit and Loss Account of £1,600.

Later, H acquired its holding in S when S had a credit balance of £800 and H a credit balance of £3,000 on Profit and Loss Account.

(a) The pre-acquisition profits will be as follows:

| | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|---------------|
| (i) On purchase by S of shares in H: | | |
| 20% of £1,600 (being balance on H's Profit and Loss Account) .. | | 320 |
| (ii) On purchase by H of shares in S: | | |
| Amount attributable to group: | | |
| 90% of £800 (being balance on S's Profit and Loss Account) .. | 720 | |
| 90% of £280 (being proportion of balance on H's Profit and Loss Account at this date which is attributable to S's holding in H and thus forms part of S's profit, viz., 20% of £3,000 - £600, less £320 as in (i) above) | 252 | |
| | | <u>972</u> |
| | | 1,292 |
| Amount attributable to outside shareholders of S: | | |
| 10% of £800 (see (ii) above) | 80 | |
| 10% on £280 (see (ii) above) | 28 | |
| | | <u>108</u> |
| | | <u>£1,400</u> |

| (b) The cost of the respective goodwills will therefore be: | | | | S | H |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|--------|--------------|--------------|
| Cost of shares acquired | .. | .. | .. | £6,000 | £11,000 |
| Less Nominal value | .. | .. | £5,000 | £9,000 | |
| Pre-acquisition profits as above | .. | .. | 320 | 972 | |
| | | | | <u>5,320</u> | <u>9,972</u> |
| | | | | £680 | £1,028 |

(c) The profits earned since the acquisition are:

| | S | H |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Profits per Balance Sheets | £2,400 | £4,000 |
| Less Balances at dates of acquisition | 800 | 3,000 |
| | <u>£1,600</u> | <u>£1,000</u> |

Before computing the proportion of S's profit which is ascribable to the minority interests in that company, however, S's profit must be increased by that company's share of H's profit and reduced by H's share of S's profit.

The amount may be calculated as follows:

Let H = total profit of H (including share of S's profit):

Let S = total profit of S (including share of H's profit):

Then $H = £1,000 + \frac{1}{10} S$ and $S = £1,600 + \frac{1}{5} H$.

$\therefore 10 H = £10,000 + 9 S$ and $50 S = £80,000 + 10 H$.

$\therefore 50 S = £90,000 + 9 S$.

$\therefore 41 S = £90,000$

$\therefore S = £2,195$

The minority shareholders' proportion is therefore 10% of £2,195 = £219.5 (say £220).

The total amount of S's profit attributable to the minority interests will thus be:

| | |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Share of pre-acquisition profit (see (a) (ii)) | £108 |
| Share of post-acquisition profit (as above) | 220 |
| | <u>£328</u> |

(d) The consolidated Profit and Loss Account will be as follows:

| | £ | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|--------------|---------------|
| Profit and Loss Account of H | .. | .. | 4,000 |
| Less Transfer to goodwill (see (a) (i)) | .. | 320 | |
| Transfer to goodwill (see (a) (ii)) | .. | 252 | |
| | | <u>572</u> | 3,428 |
| Profit and Loss Account of S | .. | 2,400 | |
| Less Transfer to goodwill (see (a) (ii)) | .. | 720 | |
| | | <u>1,680</u> | |
| | | | <u>5,108</u> |
| Less Proportion attributable to minority interests (see (c)) | .. | | 328 |
| | | | <u>£4,780</u> |

The total profits are thus apportioned as follows:

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|---------------|
| Pre-acquisition profits of group (a) | .. | .. | .. | .. | £1,292 |
| Minority interests (c) | .. | .. | .. | .. | 328 |
| Holding company (d) | .. | .. | .. | .. | 4,780 |
| | | | | | <u>£6,400</u> |

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|--------------------------|--------|----------------|-------------------|--------|----------------|
| Capital | 25,000 | | Goodwill, etc., H | 680 | |
| Less held by S | 5,000 | | " S | 1,028 | |
| | | 20,000 | | | 1,708 |
| Profit and Loss Account | | 4,780 | Sundry Assets H | 20,000 | |
| Minority Interests in S: | | | " S | 7,400 | |
| Capital | 1,000 | | | | 27,400 |
| Undistributed Profits | 328 | | | | |
| | | 1,328 | | | |
| Creditors H | 2,000 | | | | |
| " S | 1,000 | | | | |
| | | 3,000 | | | |
| | | <u>£29,108</u> | | | <u>£29,108</u> |

It will be seen that the above calculations proceed on the basis of each company distributing its profits up to the hilt, *i.e.*, each £ distributed by one company increases the other company's profits, of which a share is due to the first company, and so on *ad infinitum*. While this is theoretically correct, the authors regard it as too pedantic. The true position in the above case is that the combined profits are:

| | | | | | |
|---|----|----|----|----|---------------|
| S | .. | .. | .. | .. | £1,600 |
| H | .. | .. | .. | .. | 1,000 |
| | | | | | <u>£2,600</u> |

In the opinion of the authors, it is sufficient to reserve for the minority interest on post-acquisition profits on the following basis:

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|----|----|---------------|
| Profits of S as they stand | .. | .. | .. | .. | £1,600 |
| Dividend that would be received by S if H declared the whole of its profits as dividend: $1/5\text{th} \times £1,000$ | .. | | | | 200 |
| | | | | | <u>£1,800</u> |
| 10% of £1,800 | .. | | | | £180 |

A note can be added to the effect that: 'In arriving at the share of minority shareholders in the profits made since the shares in the subsidiary company were acquired by the holding company, no account has been taken of the inflation of profits that would arise if each company distributed its profits fully (thus creating additional paper profits in which the other would be entitled to a share, which in turn would be distributed).'

(n) Foreign Subsidiaries

Foreign subsidiaries raise special problems, particularly where exchange restrictions prevent the remittance of money to the United Kingdom. If current and liquid assets of the subsidiary company are included in the consolidated Balance Sheet, not only is it difficult to decide upon a rate of exchange for their conversion into sterling, but,

since no use of the funds can be made here, a most misleading statement may result. Where subsidiaries operate in many foreign countries, the problem is magnified, and it is suggested that, in general terms, it is better to keep separate from the other assets and liabilities the balances applicable to subsidiary companies operating in countries with 'frozen' exchanges, or even to exclude such companies from consolidation.

Great care must be taken in all cases of foreign subsidiary companies to ensure that any unrealised profits are eliminated in the consolidated Balance Sheet, *e.g.*, where the holding company in this country has sold goods to the foreign subsidiary. In such a case, the 'sale' will have been credited, normally, at the usual selling price, and taken in by the subsidiary at the currency equivalent on the date of delivery. In valuing its stock for the purposes of its Balance Sheet, the subsidiary will have valued any such goods at cost or market price, whichever is lower, and, according to the rules normally adopted for conversion, this value will be converted into sterling at the rate ruling at the date of the Balance Sheet. Not only therefore is there an unrealised profit (from the viewpoint of the group) in the stock-in-hand which emanated from the holding company, but there may be a fictitious profit or loss on exchange arising through the difference between the rates of exchange on the dates of delivery and of the Balance Sheet respectively. Adjusting entries must therefore be made in the process of preparing the consolidated Balance Sheet, to ensure that the stock does not appear in the consolidated Balance Sheet at more than its cost to the group.

In other respects, the conversion of currency into sterling follows generally the same rules as in Branch Accounts (*see* Chapter X).

Fixed assets of foreign subsidiaries should appear in the consolidated Balance Sheet at their sterling cost, which must, therefore, be recorded as and when each asset is acquired. In regard to any new fixed assets acquired during an accounting period these should be converted at the rates in force at the dates when the remittances from the holding company were made, or, if the assets were purchased out of the subsidiary's own resources, at the rates in force at the dates of purchase. Where, however, the rates of exchange have not fluctuated materially during the year, the cost of additions may be converted at the average rate for the period.

An adjustment may be necessary in respect of depreciation of fixed assets. The depreciation will be converted at the rate ruling at the date that the expenditure on the asset was incurred, which may differ greatly from current rates. If the effect is that the aggregate depreciation on all subsidiary companies' assets, as converted into sterling on this basis, is considerably less than it would be on a current rate basis, there may be a serious paper inflation of profits, since the apparent profit may exceed the sterling equivalent of the money which would be remitted in payment of a dividend equal to the whole currency profit. A special provision should be created, or it may be considered whether consolidation should be made at all in the circumstances.

Exchange differences on conversion may never be realised; they may be wholly in respect of capital items, etc., and until realised on remittance should, if profits, be credited to reserve or, if losses, be written off.

§ 5. Consolidated Profit and Loss Account

As has already been stated, the group accounts laid before a holding company will normally comprise a consolidated Profit and Loss Account as well as a consolidated Balance Sheet, and the provisions of Part I of the Eighth Schedule, as to the matters to be disclosed in a company's Profit and Loss Account (*see* page 347), except that Sections 196 and 197 of the Act (which relate to the disclosure in the accounts laid before the members of emoluments, etc., paid to directors, and loans to officers, etc.), apply also to a consolidated Profit and Loss Account.

The preparation of a consolidated Profit and Loss Account follows similar lines to a consolidated Balance Sheet, all the information contained in the separate Profit and Loss Accounts of the respective companies being combined together and set out under appropriate headings, after eliminating inter-company transactions.

In consolidating the Profit and Loss Accounts, particular attention must be paid to the following matters:

(a) *Pre-acquisition profits or losses*

Where the balance brought forward in a subsidiary's Profit and Loss Account includes any profit or loss which arose prior to the acquisition of the shares therein by the holding company, the amount thereof applicable to the holding company must be eliminated and transferred to goodwill as already explained. It will thus be taken into account in computing the sum attributable to goodwill in the consolidated Balance Sheet.

Similarly, if the shares in the subsidiary were acquired during the year to which the Profit and Loss Account relates, the profit for the year must be apportioned to the date of acquisition, and the pre-acquisition profit transferred to goodwill.

(b) *Inter-company unrealised profits*

The proportion affecting the members of the holding company of the profit included in the price at which any stock-in-hand at the date of the accounts has been transferred from one company to another, must be deducted from the trading profit in the consolidated Profit and Loss Account, and from the stock valuation in the consolidated Balance Sheet. Similarly, any unrealised profit included in the price at which any fixed assets have been transferred from one company in the group to another must be deducted from the profit and from the value of the asset.

It has already been seen that from the point of view of any minority shareholders in a subsidiary, the inter-company profit must be regarded as realised, whether it operates for or against the particular subsidiary. Thus, if H Ltd. holds 90% of the ordinary capital of S Ltd., in respect of any profit included in the invoice price of goods sold by S Ltd. to H Ltd., which are still held by H Ltd., only 90% will be deleted; the remaining 10% is a realised profit from the viewpoint of the minority shareholders. Similarly, if H Ltd. has sold goods to S Ltd., which are still in stock, only 90% of the profit thereon will be eliminated; the other 10% is tantamount to a profit earned by H Ltd. on a sale to the outside members of S Ltd.

(c) *Inter-company dividends*

A dividend paid by a subsidiary to its holding company will appear as a debit in the Profit and Loss Account of the subsidiary and as a credit in that of the holding company. In the consolidated Profit and Loss Account, therefore, the dividend will cancel out.

It must, however, be remembered that the dividend will normally have been debited *net* in the accounts of the subsidiary, whereas it will have been credited *gross* in the accounts of the holding company, the income tax suffered by deduction thereon having been debited to the holding company's Taxation Account. It will therefore be necessary to deduct the *net* inter-company dividend from the dividends debited in the subsidiary's Profit and Loss Account, and the income tax thereon from the debit for taxation in the holding company's Profit and Loss Account, whilst the *gross* dividend will be deducted from the holding company's income from investments on the credit side of the account.

If a dividend received by the holding company, and credited to its Profit and Loss Account, is found to have been paid by the subsidiary out of pre-acquisition profits, the *net* amount thereof must be transferred from the Profit and Loss Account to the credit of the shares in the Subsidiary Company Account. Any such dividend should not have been treated as revenue by the holding company, as it is paid out of assets which are included in the property forming the underlying security for the shares acquired by the holding company, and as such must be regarded as reducing the price of the shares. In effect, the shares were purchased *cum div.*, and the dividend included in the price must, when received, be treated as capital.

Dividends paid or payable to outside shareholders by a subsidiary may either be shown as such in the consolidated Profit and Loss Account, or included without distinction in the amount of profit attributable to minority interests. The latter method is the more usual.

(d) *Transfers to reserves, etc.*

Only such proportion of any sum transferred to reserve by a subsidiary, as is attributable to the holding company's interest in that subsidiary will be added to any sums transferred to reserve by the holding company and debited to the consolidated Profit and Loss Account. The proportion of any such transfer attributable to minority interests will be included in their share of the undistributed profits of subsidiaries.

(e) *Depreciation Adjustments*

As explained in illustration § 4 (k) of this chapter, where any fixed assets of a subsidiary have been revalued for the purpose of the consolidated accounts, the charge for depreciation in the consolidated Profit and Loss Account may require adjustment. Where, for example, the value of a fixed asset has been written up above the figure at which it appears in the subsidiary's books, the charge for depreciation to the consolidated Profit and Loss Account must be increased by depreciation at the appropriate rate on the increase in value; where the value of the asset has been written down, the charge for depreciation must be proportionately reduced. Similarly, if

plant has been purchased by one company from another at a profit, the profit must be eliminated and the charge for depreciation reduced by the amount applicable to the amount by which the value of the asset has been reduced.

(f) *Minority Interests*

The share of a subsidiary's profit or loss attributable to minority interests will be made up of:

- the appropriate proportion of the balance brought forward from the previous year;
- The appropriate proportion of the profit or loss for the year, before debiting dividends, and transfers to reserve.
- Alternatively the dividends applicable to minority interests may be debited separately to the consolidated Profit and Loss Account, in which case all dividends will be deducted from profit before computing the proportion thereof applicable to the minority interests.

Where method (b) is employed, the amount of the undistributed profit attributable to minority interests appearing in the consolidated Balance Sheet will consist of (a) plus (b) less the amount of any dividends actually paid during the year to the minority shareholders. Where method (c) is followed, the liability to minority interests will be (a) plus (c), plus the amount of any *proposed* dividends payable to minority interests.

Illustration

The summarised Profit and Loss Accounts of A Ltd. and its subsidiaries B Ltd. and C Ltd. for the years ended 31st December, 19.. are as follows:

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | A £ | B £ | C £ | | A £ | B £ | C £ |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------|-------------|--------|---------------------------------------------|----------|---------|---------|
| To Balance b/f. | | | 10,000 | By Balance b/f. | 15,500 | 7,000 | — |
| „ Depreciation written off | 20,000 | 15,000 | 8,000 | „ Trading Profit for year | 87,817 | 45,460 | 16,000 |
| „ Directors' Emoluments | 10,000 | 5,000 | 2,000 | „ Interest on Government Securities (gross) | 3,000 | 450 | — |
| „ Debenture Interest (gross amount) | 5,000 | 3,000 | 2,000 | „ Dividends from B Ltd. (gross): | | | |
| „ Taxation | 23,142 | 12,535 | — | Interim | 1,200 | | |
| „ Transfer to Reserve | 10,000 | 5,000 | — | Proposed Final | 3,000 | | |
| „ Transfer to Debenture Redemption Fund | 3,000 | 1,500 | — | „ Balance c/f. | | | 6,000 |
| „ Interim Dividends paid (net): | | | | | | | |
| Preference | 575 | 288 | — | | | | |
| Ordinary | (5%) 2,875 | (4%) 920 | — | | | | |
| Final Dividends proposed (net): | | | | | | | |
| Preference | 575 | 287 | — | | | | |
| Ordinary | (20%) 11,500 | (10%) 2,300 | — | | | | |
| „ Balance c/d. | 23,850 | 7,080 | — | | | | |
| | £110,517 | £52,910 | £2,000 | | £110,517 | £52,910 | £22,000 |

You are given the following information:

- (1) The share capital of the companies consists of:

| | A Ltd. £ | B Ltd. £ | C Ltd. £ |
|------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| £1 5% Cumulative Preference Shares | 40,000 | 20,000 | |
| £1 Ordinary Shares | 100,000 | 40,000 | 10,000 |

(2) A Ltd. holds 30,000 of the ordinary shares of B Ltd., and 9,000 of the ordinary shares of C Ltd. The whole of the preference shares of B Ltd. are held outside the group.

(3) At the dates on which A Ltd. acquired its holdings, B Ltd. had a credit balance on Profit and Loss Account of £5,000 and C Ltd. a debit balance on Profit and Loss Account of £12,000. All dividends have been paid out of current earnings.

(4) A Ltd.'s stock includes goods purchased from B Ltd. for £5,200, invoiced by B Ltd. at cost plus $33\frac{1}{3}\%$.

(5) For the purpose of the consolidated Balance Sheet, B Ltd.'s plant was valued at £10,000 above its book value. Depreciation for the year had been provided for by B Ltd. at 10% per annum on the book value.

(6) Part of C Ltd.'s plant had been purchased from A Ltd. (who manufactured it) at a profit to that company of £1,000 which is included in its trading profit for the current year. No depreciation had been written off this plant by C Ltd. during the year.

You are required to prepare a consolidated Profit and Loss Account for the year ended 31st December, 19... Income tax is to be taken into account at 8s. 6d. in £.

The figures for inclusion in the consolidated Profit and Loss Account are computed as follows:

Balance brought forward:

| | A Ltd. | B Ltd. | C Ltd. | Total |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| Amount per Profit and Loss Account | 15,500 | 7,000 | Dr. 10,000 | 12,500 |
| Less Minority Interest .. | | ($\frac{1}{4}$ th) 1,750 | ($\frac{1}{10}$ th) 1,000 | 750 |
| | | 5,250 | 9,000 | 11,750 |
| <i>Deduct</i> Pre-acquisition Profit transferred to Goodwill | | 5,000 | Dr. 12,000 | |
| Less Minority Interest | | 1,250 | 1,200 | |
| | | 3,750 | 10,800 | 7,050 |
| | <u>15,500</u> | <u>£1,500</u> | <u>£1,800</u> | <u>£18,800</u> |

Trading Profit:

| | | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Amount as per Profit and Loss Account | 87,817 | 45,460 | 16,000 | 149,277 |
| <i>Deduct</i> Profit on Sale of Plant to C Ltd. £1,000 | | | | |
| Less Minority Interest ($\frac{1}{10}$ th) 100 | | | | |
| | 900 | | | |
| Profit on Sale of Goods to A Ltd.: 25% on £5,200 | 1,300 | | | |
| Less Minority Interest ($\frac{1}{4}$) .. | 325 | | | |
| | | 975 | | 1,875 |
| | <u>£86,917</u> | <u>£44,485</u> | <u>£16,000</u> | <u>£147,402</u> |

| | A Ltd. £ | B Ltd. £ | C Ltd. £ | Total £ |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| Depreciation: | | | | |
| Amount as per Profit and Loss Account | 20,000 | 15,000 | 8,000 | 43,000 |
| Add 10% on £10,000 increase in valuation | | 1,000 | | 1,000 |
| | <u>£20,000</u> | <u>£16,000</u> | <u>£8,000</u> | <u>£44,000</u> |

Taxation:

| | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------|----------------|
| Amount as per Profit and Loss Account | 23,142 | 12,535 | — | 35,677 |
| Deduct Tax on dividend of £4,200 from B Ltd. .. . | 1,785 | | | 1,785 |
| | <u>£21,357</u> | <u>£12,535</u> | <u>—</u> | <u>£33,892</u> |

Transfer to Reserve:

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------|----------|----------------|
| As per Profit and Loss Account .. | 10,000 | 5,000 | — | 15,000 |
| Deduct Minority Interest ($\frac{1}{4}$ th) .. | | 1,250 | | 1,250 |
| | <u>£10,000</u> | <u>£3,750</u> | <u>—</u> | <u>£13,750</u> |

Transfer to Debenture Redemption

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| Fund | 3,000 | 1,500 | — | 4,500 |
| Deduct Minority Interest ($\frac{1}{4}$ th) .. | | 375 | | 375 |
| | <u>£3,000</u> | <u>£1,125</u> | <u>—</u> | <u>£4,125</u> |

Proportion of Profit for year attributable to Minority Interest:

| | | B Ltd. £ | C Ltd. £ | Total £ |
|-----------------------------------------|-------|---------------|---------------|------------|
| Trading Profit .. .. . | .. .. | 45,460 | 16,000 | |
| Interest on Government Securities .. .. | .. .. | 450 | | |
| | | <u>45,910</u> | | |
| Deduct Depreciation .. .. | .. .. | 16,000 | 8,000 | |
| Directors' Emoluments .. .. | .. .. | 5,000 | 2,000 | |
| Debenture Interest .. .. | .. .. | 3,000 | 2,000 | |
| Taxation .. .. | .. .. | 12,535 | | |
| Preference Dividend .. .. | .. .. | 575 | | |
| | | <u>37,110</u> | <u>12,000</u> | |
| | | <u>£8,800</u> | <u>£4,000</u> | |

| | B Ltd. | C Ltd. | Total |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------|
| | £ | £ | £ |
| Attributable to Ordinary Shareholders .. | ($\frac{1}{4}$ th) 2,200 | ($\frac{1}{10}$ th) 400 | 2,600 |
| Attributable to Preference Shareholders .. | 575 | — | 575 |
| | <u>£2,775</u> | <u>£400</u> | <u>£3,175</u> |

CONSOLIDATED PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19..

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| To Depreciation | £ 44,000 | By Trading Profit for year | £ 147,402 |
| „ Directors' Emoluments | 17,000 | „ Interest on Quoted Investments | 3,450 |
| „ Debenture Interest | 10,000 | | |
| „ Taxation | 33,892 | | |
| „ Proportion of Profit for year applicable to Minority Interest | 3,175 | | |
| „ Group Profit for year c/d | 42,785 | | |
| | <u>£150,852</u> | | <u>£150,852</u> |
| To Transfer to Reserve | 13,750 | By Group Profit for year b/d. | 42,785 |
| „ Debenture Redemption Fund | 4,125 | „ Balance brought forward from previous year | 18,800 |
| „ Interim Dividends paid (less tax): | | | |
| Preference | £575 | | |
| Ordinary | 2,875 | | |
| | <u>3,450</u> | | |
| „ Final Dividends proposed (less tax): | | | |
| Preference | £575 | | |
| Ordinary | 11,500 | | |
| | <u>12,075</u> | | |
| „ Balance to Consolidated Balance Sheet | 28,185 | | |
| | <u>£61,585</u> | | <u>£61,585</u> |

Alternatively, the consolidated Profit and Loss Account might be presented as follows:

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Trading Profit for year | £ 76,402 |
| after charging: | |
| Depreciation | 44,000 |
| Directors' Emoluments | 17,000 |
| Debenture Interest | 10,000 |
| | <u>£71,000</u> |
| Income from Quoted Investments | 3,450 |
| Profit for year before Taxation | 79,852 |
| Deduct United Kingdom Taxation | 33,892 |
| Profit for year after Taxation | 45,960 |
| Deduct Proportion applicable to Minority Interest | 3,175 |
| Profit for year applicable to group | 42,785 |
| Add Balance brought forward from previous year | 18,800 |
| | <u>c/f. 61,585</u> |

b/f. £61,585

Deduct Appropriations:

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|----|----|----|----|---------|
| Transfer to Reserve | .. | .. | .. | .. | £13,750 |
| „ „ Debenture Redemption Fund | .. | .. | .. | .. | 4,125 |

Interim Dividends paid (less tax):

| | | | | | |
|------------|----|----|----|----|-------------|
| Preference | .. | .. | .. | .. | £575 |
| Ordinary | .. | .. | .. | .. | 2,875 |
| | | | | | <hr/> 3,450 |

Final Dividends proposed (less tax):

| | | | | | |
|------------|----|----|----|----|--------------|
| Preference | .. | .. | .. | .. | £575 |
| Ordinary | .. | .. | .. | .. | 11,500 |
| | | | | | <hr/> 12,075 |

33,400

Balance carried to Consolidated Balance Sheet £28,185

Note. In the consolidated Balance Sheet, the liability to minority interests in respect of undistributed profits will be made up as follows:

| | B Ltd. | C Ltd. | Total |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|-----------|--------------|
| | £ | £ | £ |
| Balance brought forward | 1,750 | Dr. 1,000 | 750 |
| Profit for year | 2,775 | 400 | 3,175 |
| | <hr/> 4,525 | Dr. 600 | <hr/> 3,925 |
| Less Interim Dividends paid: | | | |
| Preference | £288 | | |
| Ordinary | 230 | | |
| | <hr/> 518 | | <hr/> 518 |
| | <hr/> £4,007 | Dr. £600 | <hr/> £3,407 |

Note. These figures include the outside shareholders' proportion of the sums transferred by B Ltd. to Reserve and to the Debentures Redemption Fund Account, which is itself a form of reserve. They also include the proposed preference and ordinary dividends payable to outside shareholders. It may be preferred to show these separately as a liability in the consolidated Balance Sheet.

§ 6. Holding Company's Profit and Loss Account framed as a Consolidated Profit and Loss Account

By Section 149, Companies Act, 1948, a holding company which publishes a consolidated Profit and Loss Account need not also publish its own Profit and Loss Account, provided that the consolidated Profit and Loss Account:

- (i) complies with the requirements of the Act relating to Consolidated Profit and Loss Accounts; and
- (ii) shows how much of the consolidated profit or loss *for the financial year* is dealt with in the accounts of the company.

Since a holding company normally takes credit in its own accounts only for dividends paid and proposed by its subsidiaries, and not for its full share of the profits

earned by them, in order to satisfy the second of the above requirements there must be deducted from the consolidated profit appropriate to the holding company such amount thereof as is retained and carried forward in the accounts of the subsidiaries.

The resultant balance will be transferred to the holding company's Appropriation Account, in which that company's own balance of Profit and Loss Account brought forward, and dividends paid and proposed and other appropriations will be entered. The final balance is that which will appear in the holding company's *own* Balance Sheet (not in the consolidated Balance Sheet).

Illustration

The Profit and Loss Accounts of A Ltd. and its Subsidiaries B Ltd. and C Ltd. for the year ended 31st March, 1959, are as follows:

| | A Ltd. | B Ltd. | C Ltd. | | A Ltd. | B Ltd. | C Ltd. |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| | £ | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ |
| To Depreciation | 8,000 | 3,000 | 4,000 | By Trading Profit | 50,000 | 20,000 | 25,000 |
| .. Directors' Emoluments | 10,000 | 5,000 | 3,000 | .. Income from Quoted Securities (gross) | 5,000 | 1,000 | 1,500 |
| .. Taxation | 18,000 | 6,000 | 9,000 | .. Dividend from B Ltd. (gross) | 3,000 | | |
| .. Profit for year c/d. | 26,000 | 7,000 | 10,500 | .. Dividend from C Ltd. (gross) | 4,000 | | |
| | <u>£62,000</u> | <u>£21,000</u> | <u>£26,500</u> | | <u>£62,000</u> | <u>£21,000</u> | <u>£26,500</u> |
| .. Dividend (cont.) | 11,500 | 2,300 | 2,875 | By Profit for year b/d. | 26,000 | 7,000 | 10,500 |
| .. Balances c/f. | 36,500 | 10,700 | 15,625 | .. Balance from last year | 22,000 | 6,000 | 8,000 |
| | <u>£48,000</u> | <u>£13,000</u> | <u>£18,500</u> | | <u>£48,000</u> | <u>£13,000</u> | <u>£18,500</u> |

A Ltd. holds 75% of the Share capital of B Ltd. and 80% of that of C Ltd. each of whom had paid a dividend of 10 per cent. during the year, out of the current year's profit, for which credit had been taken by A Ltd. in its accounts. There were no other inter-company transactions.

Prepare A Ltd.'s Profit and Loss Account framed as a consolidated Profit and Loss Account to comply with Section 149, Companies Act, 1948.

CONSOLIDATED PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST MARCH, 1959

| | £ | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|----------------|
| Trading Profit for year, after charging Depreciation Directors' Remuneration | 15,000 18,000 | 62,000 |
| | <u>£33,000</u> | |
| Income from Quoted Investments | | 7,500 |
| Profit for year before taxation | | 69,500 |
| Less Taxation (Note 1) | | 30,025 |
| Profit for year after taxation | | 39,475 |
| Less Proportion attributable to Minority Interest ((Note 2) | | 3,850 |
| Group Profit for year | | 35,625 |
| Less Profit for year retained by subsidiaries attributable to group (Note 3) | | 9,625 |
| Group Profit for financial year dealt with in the accounts of A Ltd. | | 26,000 |
| Add Balance brought forward | | 22,000 |
| | | <u>48,000</u> |
| Deduct: Dividends, less tax | | 11,500 |
| Balance on Profit and Loss Account carried forward by A Ltd. | | 36,500 |
| Add Total Profits retained by subsidiaries attributable to the group | | 20,525 |
| Balance carried forward in Consolidated Balance Sheet | | <u>£57,025</u> |

Notes:

(1) The charge for Taxation is the aggregate of the sums debited in respect of taxation in the Profit and Loss Accounts, £33,000, less £2,975 Income Tax included therein on the £7,000 Dividends from subsidiaries credited to A Ltd.'s Profit and Loss Account.

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| (2) The profits attributable to minority interests are: | £ |
| B Ltd. 25% of £7,000 | 1,750 |
| C Ltd. 20% of £10,500 | 2,100 |
| | <u>£3,850</u> |

(3) The profits retained by subsidiaries attributable to the group are:

| | B Ltd. | C Ltd. |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| | £ | £ |
| Profit for year | 7,000 | 10,500 |
| Less Dividends paid or proposed | 2,300 | 2,875 |
| | <u>£4,700</u> | <u>£7,625</u> |
| Amount attributable to A Ltd. 75% £3,525 80% £6,100 | | £9,625 |
| Balances brought forward – amounts attributable to | | |
| A Ltd. | 4,500 | 6,400 |
| | <u>£8,025</u> | <u>£12,500</u> |
| | | <u>£20,525</u> |

By deducting the retained profit of £9,625 from the group profit for the year the consolidated Profit and Loss Account shows how much of the consolidated profit for the financial year has been dealt with in the accounts of A Ltd., viz., £26,000. After adding the balance brought forward, and deducting the appropriations made by A Ltd., the resultant amount of £36,500 is the Profit and Loss Account balance appearing in A Ltd.'s Balance Sheet. By adding to this amount the *total* profits retained by subsidiaries (including the balances brought forward) the Profit and Loss Account balance appearing in the *consolidated* Balance Sheet is revealed.

§ 7. General Illustration

The following are the draft Profit and Loss Accounts for the year ended 31st March, 1959, and Balance Sheets as at that date, of A Ltd. and its two subsidiaries B Ltd. and C Ltd.

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNTS

| | A Ltd. | B Ltd. | C Ltd. | | A Ltd. | B Ltd. | C Ltd. |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| | £ | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ |
| To Directors' Emoluments | 5,500 | 750 | 500 | By Trading Profit | 27,340 | 10,560 | 6,580 |
| „ Debenture Interest | | 600 | | „ Dividends on Quoted Investments | 1,440 | 800 | 700 |
| „ Depreciation | 6,000 | 1,500 | 1,500 | „ Interest on Debentures, in B Ltd. | 400 | | |
| „ U.K. Taxation, based on profit for year: | | | | „ Dividend on Ordinary Shares in B Ltd. | 2,400 | | |
| Profits Tax | 4,000 | 1,200 | 1,000 | „ Dividend on Shares in C Ltd.: Preference | 360 | | |
| Income Tax | 8,332 | 3,290 | 2,084 | „ Ordinary | 1,800 | | |
| „ Profit for year, after Taxation: c/d. | 10,023 | 4,060 | 2,213 | „ Interest on Tax Reserve Certificates | 115 | 40 | 17 |
| | <u>£33,855</u> | <u>11,400</u> | <u>7,297</u> | | <u>£33,835</u> | <u>£11,400</u> | <u>7,297</u> |
| To Dividends <i>less</i> tax: | | | | By Profit for year b/d. | 10,023 | 4,060 | 2,213 |
| Preference Dividend paid | | | 173 | „ Balance brought forward, 1st April, 1958 | 12,000 | 4,500 | 5,000 |
| Preference Dividend proposed | | | 172 | | <u>£22,023</u> | <u>8,560</u> | <u>7,213</u> |
| Ordinary Dividend proposed | 12,938 | 2,300 | 1,035 | | | | |
| „ Balance carried forward | 9,085 | 6,260 | 5,833 | | | | |
| | <u>£22,023</u> | <u>8,560</u> | <u>7,213</u> | | | | |

BALANCE SHEETS

[illegible]

Notes

- Notes
- (1) The shares in B Ltd. were acquired on 1st April, 1958, when B Ltd. had a credit balance on Profit and Loss Account (after charging the final dividend for the year ended 31st March, 1958) of £4,500, and a General Reserve of £8,000.
- (2) The shares in C Ltd. were purchased many years ago when that company had a credit balance on Profit and Loss Account of £2,000 and a General Reserve of £3,000. All subsequent dividends have been paid out of post-acquisition profits.
- (3) Inter-company indebtedness (included in Debtors and Creditors) at 31st March, 1959, was: A Ltd. to C Ltd. £700; B Ltd. to A Ltd. £1,240.
- (4) A Ltd.'s Stock includes goods purchased from B Ltd. for £15,000 of which the cost to B Ltd. was £10,000.
- (5) The proposed dividends are: A Ltd. 15%; B Ltd. 20%; C Ltd. Ordinary 30%; Final Preference 5%.
- Prepare consolidated Profit and Loss Account for the year ended 31st March, 1959 and consolidated Balance Sheet as at that date.

The consolidation adjustments are journalised as follows:

| | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|--------|
| (a) Goodwill | Dr. 66,125 | |
| To Ordinary Shares in B Ltd. | | 32,125 |
| " Preference Shares in C Ltd. | | 8,000 |
| " Ordinary Shares in C Ltd. | | 16,000 |
| " Debentures in B Ltd. | | 10,000 |
| Cost of shares and debentures in subsidiaries. | | |
| (b) Ordinary Share Capital, B Ltd. | Dr. 12,000 | |
| Preference Share Capital, C Ltd. | | 6,000 |
| Ordinary Share Capital, C Ltd. | | 6,000 |
| Debentures, B Ltd. | | 10,000 |
| To Goodwill | | 34,000 |
| Nominal value of shares and debentures in subsidiaries. | | |
| (c) General Reserve, B Ltd. - $\frac{1}{2}$ ths \times £8,000 | Dr. 4,800 | |
| Profit and Loss Account, B Ltd. - $\frac{1}{2}$ ths \times £4,500 | | 2,700 |
| To Goodwill | | 7,500 |
| Pre-acquisition profits of B Ltd. applicable to A Ltd.'s holding. | | |
| (d) General Reserve, C Ltd. | Dr. 3,000 | |
| Profit and Loss Account, C Ltd. | | 2,000 |
| To Goodwill | | 5,000 |
| Pre-acquisition profits of C Ltd. applicable to A Ltd.'s holding. | | |
| (e) Creditors A Ltd. | Dr. 700 | |
| " B Ltd. | | 1,240 |
| To Debtors C Ltd. | | 700 |
| " A Ltd. | | 1,240 |
| Cancelling inter-company balances. | | |
| (f) Trading Profit | Dr. 3,000 | |
| To Stock | | 3,000 |
| Provision for unrealised inter-company profits on Stock held by A Ltd. ($\frac{1}{3}$ ths of £5,000). | | |
| (g) Interest on Debentures, A Ltd. | Dr. 400 | |
| To Debentures Interest, B Ltd. | | 400 |
| Cancelling interest on debentures in B Ltd. held by A Ltd. | | |
| (h) Dividend on Ordinary Shares, B Ltd. | Dr. 2,400 | |
| " " Preference Shares, C Ltd. | | 360 |
| " " Ordinary Shares, C Ltd. | | 1,800 |
| To Preference Dividend, C Ltd. ($\frac{1}{2}$ ths \times £345) | | 207 |
| " Ordinary Dividend, B Ltd. ($\frac{1}{2}$ ths \times £2,300) | | 1,380 |
| " Ordinary Dividend, C Ltd. | | 1,035 |
| " Taxation Account, A Ltd. (8s. 6d in £ on £4,560) | | 1 938 |
| Cancelling inter-company dividends. | | |
| (i) Share Capital, B Ltd. | Dr. 8,000 | |
| General Reserve, B Ltd. ($\frac{1}{2}$ ths \times £8,000) | | 3,200 |
| Profit and Loss Account, B Ltd.: | | |
| Balance brought forward ($\frac{1}{2}$ ths \times £4,500) | | 1,800 |
| Profit for year ($\frac{1}{2}$ ths \times £4,060) | | 1,624 |
| To Minority Interest, B Ltd. | | 14,624 |
| Share Capital, reserves and profits applicable to outside shareholders of B Ltd. | | |
| (j) Preference Share Capital, C Ltd. | Dr. 4,000 | |
| Preference Dividend, C Ltd. (6% on £4,000, less tax) | | 138 |
| To Minority Interest, C Ltd. | | 4 138 |
| Share Capital and profits applicable to outside shareholders of C Ltd. | | |

The Goodwill Account will appear as follows:

GOODWILL

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Ordinary Shares in B Ltd. (a) | 32,125 | By Share Capital, B Ltd. (b) | 12,000 |
| " Debentures in B Ltd. (a) | 10,000 | " Debentures, B Ltd. (b) | 10,000 |
| | | " Pre-acquisition profits (c) | 7,500 |
| | | " Balance - Goodwill in B Ltd. | 12,625 |
| | <u>£42,125</u> | | <u>£42,125</u> |
| To Preference Shares in C Ltd. (a) | 8,000 | By Preference Shares, Capital C Ltd. (b) | 6,000 |
| Ordinary Shares in C Ltd. (a) | 16,000 | " Ordinary Shares, Capital C Ltd. (b) | 6,000 |
| | | " Pre-acquisition profits (d) | 5,000 |
| | | " Balance - Goodwill in C Ltd. | 7,000 |
| | <u>£24,000</u> | | <u>£24,000</u> |

Goodwill = £(12,625 + 7,000) = £19,625.

A LTD. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31st MARCH, 1959

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|----------------|-----------------------|
| Trading Profit for year | | £ | 25,530 |
| After charging: | | | |
| Directors' Emoluments | | 46,750 | |
| Debenture Interest | | 200 | |
| Depreciation | | 9,000 | |
| | | <u>£15,950</u> | |
| Dividends on Quoted Investments | | 2,940 | |
| Interest on Tax Reserve Certificates | | 172 | |
| | | | 3,112 |
| PROFIT FOR YEAR, BEFORE TAXATION | | | 28,642 |
| Deduct: United Kingdom Taxation, based on income for year | | | |
| Profits Tax | | 6,200 | |
| Income Tax | | 11,768 | |
| | | | <u>17,968</u> |
| PROFIT FOR YEAR, AFTER TAXATION | | | 10,674 |
| Deduct: Profit for year applicable to Minority Interests | | | 1,762 |
| | | | <u>8,912</u> |
| Deduct: Profit for year retained by subsidiaries, attributable to group | | | 1,889 |
| Group profit for year dealt with in Accounts of A Ltd. | | | <u>7,023*</u> |
| Add Balance brought forward | | | 12,000 |
| | | | <u>19,023</u> |
| Deduct: Ordinary Dividend proposed, 15 per cent less tax | | | 12,938 |
| BALANCE CARRIED FORWARD BY A LTD. | | | 6,085* |
| Add Total retained profits of subsidiaries applicable to group | | | 4,889 |
| BALANCE CARRIED FORWARD IN CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET | | | <u>£10,974</u> |

* The difference of £3,000 between this amount and the profit for the year as shown in A Ltd.'s draft Profit and Loss Account is caused by the provision made in the group accounts for unrealised inter-company profit. In such circumstances it is usual for the holding company to make entries giving effect to such provisions in its own books.

A LTD. AND SUBSIDIARIES
CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEET
AS AT 31st MARCH, 1959

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| SHARE CAPITAL, Authorised, Issued and Fully Paid - 150,000 Shares of £1 each | | 150,000 | FIXED ASSETS: | | |
| REVENUE RESERVES: | | 39,974 | Goodwill, A Ltd. | | 15,000 |
| | | <u>189,974</u> | Add Excess of Cost of Shares and Debentures in Subsidiaries over net assets attributable thereto | | 19,625 |
| AMOUNT SET ASIDE FOR FUTURE INCOME TAX | | 9,300 | | | <u>34,625</u> |
| 4% MORTGAGE DEBENTURES, B Ltd. | | 5,000 | Freehold Premises, at cost | | 36,000 |
| CURRENT LIABILITIES: | | | Plant and Machinery, at cost | 77,000 | |
| Trade Creditors | 11,730 | | Less Provision for Depreciation | 43,000 | |
| Profits Tax | 6,200 | | | | <u>34,000</u> |
| Proposed Dividends (less tax) | 12,938 | | CURRENT ASSETS: | | |
| | | 30,868 | Stock in Trade | 37,460 | |
| MINORITY INTEREST | | 18,693 | Debtors | 33,895 | |
| | | | Quoted Investments | 35,500 | |
| | | | Tax Reserve Certificates | 15,875 | |
| | | | Bank Balances | 26,480 | |
| | | | | | <u>149,210</u> |
| | | <u>£253,835</u> | | | <u>£253,835</u> |

Notes. The figures appearing in the Consolidated Profit and Loss Account and Consolidated Balance Sheet are the combined figures appearing in the separate accounts, after effect has been given as under to the consolidating adjustments journalised on page 388. Details are set out on pages 390-1. The italicised letters in brackets refer to the journal entries.

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|
| (1) Trading profit for year – credit per accounts | | 44,480 |
| Less Provision for unrealised profits (j) | | 3,000 |
| | | 41,480 |
| Less Expenses disclosed in account | | 15,950 |
| | | £25,530 |
| (2) Debenture Interest B Ltd – charge per accounts | | 600 |
| Less paid to A Ltd. (g) | | 400 |
| | | £200 |
| (3) Income Tax – charge per accounts | | 13,706 |
| Less applicable to inter-company dividends (h) | | 1,938 |
| | | £11,768 |
| (4) Profit for year applicable to Minority Interests: | | |
| B Ltd. (i) | | 1,624 |
| C Ltd. (j) | | 138 |
| | | £1,762 |
| (5) Profit for year retained by subsidiaries, applicable to group: | | |
| B Ltd. – profit for year per accounts | 4,060 | |
| Less dividends | 2,300 | |
| 12/20ths of | £1,760 | 1,056 |
| C Ltd. – profit for year per accounts | 2,213 | |
| Less dividends | 1,380 | |
| | | 833 |
| | | £1,889 |
| (6) Total retained profits applicable to group: | | |
| B Ltd. – Balance carried forward per accounts | 6,260 | |
| Less Pre-acquisition profit | 4,500 | |
| 12/20ths of | £1,760 | 1,056 |
| C Ltd. – Balance carried forward per accounts | 5,833 | |
| Less Pre-acquisition profits | 2,000 | |
| | | 3,833 |
| | | £4,889 |

BALANCE SHEET

| | | |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------|---------|
| (7) Goodwill – as per account (p. 388) | | 19,625 |
| (8) Revenue Reserves: | | |
| General Reserve A Ltd. per accounts | | 24,000 |
| B Ltd. per accounts | 8,000 | |
| Less Pre-acquisition profits | 4,800 (c) | |
| Minority interest | 3,200 (f) | |
| | 8,000 | — |
| General Reserve C Ltd. | 8,000 | |
| Less pre-acquisition profits (d) | 3,000 | |
| | | 5,000 |
| Consolidated Profit and Loss Account | | 10,974 |
| | | £39,974 |
| (9) Debentures in B Ltd. | | 15,000 |
| Less held by A Ltd. | | 10,000 |
| | | £5,000 |
| (10) Creditors – per accounts | | 13,670 |
| Less Inter-company indebtedness (e) | | 1,940 |
| | | £11,730 |

BALANCE SHEET (*continued*)

| | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------|----------------|
| (11) Minority Interests: | | |
| B Ltd. - Share Capital | 8,000 | |
| General Reserve | 3,200 | |
| Profit and Loss Account 8/20ths \times £6,260 | 2,504 | |
| Proposed Dividend 8/20ths \times £2,300 | 920 | |
| | | 14,624 |
| C Ltd. - Preference Capital | 4,000 | |
| Proposed Dividend - 4/10ths \times £172 | 69 | |
| | | 4,069 |
| | | <u>£18,693</u> |
| (12) Stock - per accounts | | 40,460 |
| Less Provision for unrealised profit (f) | | 3,000 |
| | | <u>£37,460</u> |
| (13) Debtors - per accounts | | 35,835 |
| Less Inter-company indebtedness (e) | | 1,940 |
| | | <u>£33,895</u> |

CHAPTER X

DEPARTMENTAL ACCOUNTS; BRANCH ACCOUNTS

§ 1. Departmental Accounts

In a business where there are two or more departments, it is very important that the accounting system shall be so devised as to enable the trading results of each department to be accurately ascertained as regards turnover and expenses, as well as profits.

In order to obtain the desired particulars, separate records must be kept of the purchases and sales of each department. Stock of each department must be taken separately, and the expenses that can be allocated directly to any department must be charged thereto, other expenses being apportioned on some reasonable basis; for example, either in proportion to the turnover of each department, or (as in the case of rent) to the amount of floor space occupied, or in any other way which may be expedient in the circumstances. In order to allocate the purchases and sales correctly, either separate day books must be kept for each department, or columnar day books with a column for each department; otherwise the day books must be analysed. The first method is not always convenient, as it frequently involves a large number of duplicate entries, especially as regards purchases.

Where the number of departments is small, it is convenient to use columnar forms of bought and sold day books, return books, etc., having a total column from which the posting is made to the personal accounts, and detail columns, the totals of which at the end of each month or other period are posted to their respective accounts in the impersonal ledger.

It is important to note that stock must be taken for each department separately, and proper records kept of all transfers from one department to another.

Where a mechanised accounting system has been installed the necessary analysis would be effected by the machines, as explained in Chapter XI.

Illustration

The following is the trial balance of the Excelsior Trading Company Limited, on 31st December.

| | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------|---------|---------|
| Ordinary Share Capital | | 10,000 |
| Preference " | | 5,000 |
| 4% First Mortgage Debentures | | 5,000 |
| Stock 1st January, Dept. A | 8,000 | |
| " " " Dept. B | 3,000 | |
| Purchases, Dept. A | 23,000 | |
| " " " Dept. B | 15,000 | |
| Wages, Dept. A | 1,000 | |
| " " " Dept. B | 300 | |
| Carriage and Freight | 1,300 | |
| Salaries | 750 | |
| Travelling Expenses | 900 | |
| Incidental " | 150 | |
| Rates and Taxes | 300 | |
| Fuel, Light and Water | 120 | |
| Insurance | 60 | |
| Carried forward | £54,280 | £20,000 |

| | Brought forward | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Sales Dept. A | | 54,280 | 20,000 |
| " B | | | 30,000 |
| Sundry Debtors | | 9,000 | 20,000 |
| Bills Receivable | | 1,500 | |
| Sundry Creditors | | | 4,000 |
| Freehold Premises at cost | | 4,200 | |
| Managing Director's Salary | | 1,000 | |
| Directors' Fees | | 500 | |
| Stationery and Stamps | | 170 | |
| Discounts | | 600 | |
| Preference Dividend half-year to 30th June | | 150 | |
| Debenture Interest half-year to 30th June | | 100 | |
| Cash in Hand | | 100 | |
| Balance at Bank | | 3,000 | |
| Profit and Loss Account - Balance at 1st January | | | 600 |
| | | <u>£74,600</u> | <u>£74,600</u> |

Provide £500 for bad debts, and make out departmental Trading and Profit and Loss Accounts (dividing the expenses between the departments in proportion to the sales), and Balance Sheet at 31st December. The stock at 31st December was - Department A, £6,000; Department B, £2,800. The nominal capital of the company is £25,000, divided into 15,000 ordinary shares of £1 each, and 10,000 6 per cent. cumulative preference shares of £1 each, and the shares issued are fully paid. Ignore income tax.

THE EXCELSIOR TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED
DEPARTMENTAL TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | Dept. A | Dept. B | TOTAL | | Dept. A | Dept. B | TOTAL |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| | £ | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ |
| To Stock | 8,000 | 3,000 | 11,000 | By Sales | 30,000 | 20,000 | 50,000 |
| .. Purchases | 23,000 | 15,000 | 38,000 | .. Stock | 6,000 | 2,800 | 8,800 |
| .. Wages | 1,000 | 500 | 1,500 | | | | |
| .. Balance being Gross Profit c/d | 4,000 | 4,300 | 8,300 | | | | |
| | <u>£36,000</u> | <u>£22,800</u> | <u>£58,800</u> | | <u>£36,000</u> | <u>£22,800</u> | <u>£58,800</u> |
| To Managing Director's Salary | 600 | 400 | 1,000 | By Gross Profit b/d | 4,000 | 4,300 | 8,300 |
| Directors' Fees | 300 | 200 | 500 | .. Balance, being Net Loss | 50 | — | — |
| Carriage and Freight | 900 | 600 | 1,500 | | | | |
| Salaries | 450 | 300 | 750 | | | | |
| Travelling Expenses | 540 | 360 | 900 | | | | |
| Incidental Expenses | 90 | 60 | 150 | | | | |
| Rates and Taxes | 180 | 120 | 300 | | | | |
| Fuel, Light and Water | 72 | 48 | 120 | | | | |
| Insurance | 36 | 24 | 60 | | | | |
| Stationery and Stamps | 102 | 68 | 170 | | | | |
| Discounts | 360 | 240 | 600 | | | | |
| Bad Debts Provision | 300 | 200 | 500 | | | | |
| Debenture Interest | 120 | 80 | 200 | | | | |
| Balance, being Net Profit carried forward | — | 1,600 | 1,550 | | | | |
| | <u>£4,050</u> | <u>£4,300</u> | <u>£8,300</u> | | <u>£4,050</u> | <u>£4,300</u> | <u>£8,300</u> |

THE EXCELSIOR TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED
BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------|---|------------------------------|--------|----------------|
| Share Capital: | | | Fixed Assets: | | |
| Authorized— | | | Freehold Premises at cost | | 4,200 |
| 15,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each | 15,000 | | | | |
| 10,000 6% Cumulative Preference Shares of £1 each | 10,000 | | Current Assets: | | |
| | <u>£25,000</u> | | Stock | 8,800 | |
| Issued and Fully Paid Capital: | | | Sundry Debtors | 19,000 | |
| 10,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each | 10,000 | | Less Provision for Bad Debts | 500 | |
| 5,000 Preference Shares of £1 each | 5,000 | | | 8,500 | |
| | <u>15,000</u> | | Bills Receivable | 1,500 | |
| | | | Balance at Bank | £3,000 | |
| | | | Cash in Hand | 100 | |
| | | | | 3,100 | 21,900 |
| Carried forward | £15,000 | | Carried forward | | <u>£26,100</u> |

THE EXCELSIOR TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER (*continued*)

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------|-------------------------|---|----------------|
| Brought forward | 15,000 | | Brought forward | | 26,100 |
| Profit and Loss Account: | | | | | |
| Balance at 1st January .. | £600 | | | | |
| Add Profit for year | 1,550 | | | | |
| | 2,150 | | | | |
| Less Preference Share Dividends | 300 | | | | |
| | 1,850 | | | | |
| 4% 1st Mortgage Debentures .. | | 16,850 | | | |
| | | 5,000 | | | |
| Current Liabilities: | | | | | |
| Sundry Creditors | 4,000 | | | | |
| Debenture Interest | 100 | | | | |
| Provision for Final Dividend on Preference Shares | 150 | | | | |
| | | 4,250 | | | |
| | | <u>£26,100</u> | | | <u>£26,100</u> |

§ 2. Branch Accounts

The system of accounts to be employed by a concern having branch establishments must depend to a large extent upon the nature of the trade carried on and the form of organisation of the business, the principal aim being to impose an effective control over the branches and to ensure that all goods and cash passing through their hands are fully accounted for.

Broadly speaking, branches may be divided into three classes, viz.:

- (1) Branches for which the whole of the accounting records are kept at the head office.
- (2) Branches which maintain separate accounting records.
- (3) Foreign Branches.

It is proposed to describe here each of these systems in detail.

§ 3. Branches for which the whole of the accounting records are kept at head office

This system is recommended for use where the branches are, in effect, merely sales departments, receiving all the goods they deal in from the head office, to whom the branch managers must account therefor. The system is particularly suitable for retail branches, the whole or the bulk of whose sales are for cash. Where credit sales are permitted a personal ledger may be kept at the branch for credit customers, the head office maintaining a Total (or Control) Account for branch debtors which is written up in total from the branch manager's returns. Wherever practicable, the whole of the cash takings and cash received by the branch from debtors should be remitted intact daily to the head office by being paid into a local branch of the bank for the credit of head office account. The expenses of the branch should be paid, as far as possible, by cheque from the head office, in whose books they will be debited to appropriate branch Expenses Accounts. Incidental expenses which have to be paid locally, in cash, may be dealt with through an imprest provided by head office, and replenished at regular intervals by a cheque for the actual amount of such expenditure, as shown by the branch manager's returns.

Where credit sales at the branch are considerable, it is sometimes expedient for the Debtors' Accounts to be kept in the head office books, and for statements to be rendered by, and remittances made direct to, the head office. In such a case, each sale will be recorded at the branch in triplicate, one copy going to the customer as an invoice, the second being sent to the head office to be used as the posting medium, and the third being retained by the branch for reference.

With regard to stock, where the nature of the goods renders it possible, quantity stock accounts should be maintained at the head office of all goods sent to, and sales made by the branch. These accounts will operate as a perpetual inventory by means of which the quantity of each of the various lines of goods in hand at the branch can be checked and discrepancies enquired into. Where, owing to the nature of the goods, it is not possible to maintain quantity stock accounts, goods should, if practicable, be charged out to the branch either at actual selling price, or at cost price plus a fixed percentage. This will enable a check to be imposed on the branch dealings, as will be shown hereunder.

(a) Where Goods are charged to Branches at selling prices

The principal aim in formulating a system of accounts for a concern having a number of branches, such as retail shops, all of which sell the same lines of goods at fixed selling prices, is to provide an adequate check on the branch managers and staffs, so as to ensure that all goods and cash passing through their hands are fully accounted for. This can most effectively be done, where the nature of the business permits it, by charging out all goods at the actual prices at which they are to be sold by the branches. In cases where the selling prices of all goods are ascertained by adding the same percentage to cost price, the system described in § 3 (c) of this chapter should be employed. Where, however, it is not possible to adopt a fixed gross profit percentage for all goods (*e.g.*, where they consist of proprietary lines, the selling prices of which are fixed by the manufacturers; or where the market conditions in relation to certain lines of goods render it necessary to offer them at more competitive prices than others) a system analogous to that now to be described should be adopted.

All goods should be purchased through a central buying department at the head office, from which they should be issued to the branches on requisitions from the managers, or in accordance with directions given by the sales manager. In cases where it is expedient to empower a branch manager to requisition supplies of goods direct from manufacturers or wholesalers copies of the orders given should be sent by the manager to the head office, and the goods should be invoiced by the suppliers to the head office, by whom they should then be charged out to the branch.

All goods charged by head office to a branch should be invoiced at the selling prices fixed by head office.

In the head office books the following accounts should be kept in respect of each branch:

- (1) Branch Stock Account; (2) Goods sent to Branch Account;
- (3) Expense Accounts; (4) Total Debtors Account;

the last account being required only where the branch is permitted to sell goods on credit.

Analysis books or loose leaf records must be maintained in which the day-to-day transactions of the branches will be entered and from which the periodical totals to be posted to the ledger accounts relating to each branch will be obtained.

Branch Stock Account will be debited and Goods sent to Branch Account credited with the total selling price of all goods sent to the branch. Goods returned by the branch to head office will be credited to Branch Stock Account and debited to Goods sent to Branch Account. Any transfers of goods from one branch to another should be credited to the Branch Stock Account of the transferee branch and debited to the Branch Stock Account of the transferor branch. (Alternatively they may be recorded as having been returned to head office by the transferor branch and reissued by head office to the transferee branch.)

Preferably, all cash received by the branch, both in respect of cash sales and from debtors, should be paid intact into a local branch of the bank for the credit of head office, the branch expenses being discharged by head office, either by cheque direct, or through a branch cash float provided by head office and maintained on the imprest system.

The branch manager should be required to forward to head office at weekly or other intervals returns giving particulars of goods received from and returned to head office, cash and credit sales, cash received from debtors, expenses, cash banked, etc. and showing the figures of stock, debtors and cash in hand at the end of the period. From these particulars the necessary entries can be made in the statistical records relating to the branch, from which postings to the ledger accounts can be made periodically.

A form of a branch manager's weekly return suitable for use by a concern operating a chain of retail shops is given on page 397.

The total amount received by the branch in respect of cash sales, and the total of the credit sales at the branch will be credited to the Branch Stock Account. Cash and Total Debtors Accounts respectively being debited. The Total Debtors Account will be credited with cash received from and discounts allowed to debtors during the period and with bad debts written off, so that the balance of this account will represent the amount of the book debts at the end of the period. Branch expenses will be debited to the appropriate nominal accounts.

Having been debited with the total of the goods sent to the branch and credited with sales and goods returned to head office, all at selling prices, the Branch Stock Account should disclose a balance representing the closing stock of the branch at selling prices, and this should be credited to the account and carried forward to the debit of the account for the next period. The stock figure must be reconciled with the actual stock taken, any difference being traced to its origin and the requisite adjustment made or, if immaterial in amount, written off to Goods sent to Branch Account.

BRANCH RETURN FOR WEEK ENDED 19

BRANCH REF.

| | CASH RECEIVED | | CASH PAYMENTS | | GOODS RECEIVED | |
|--------------|---------------|------------|---------------|----------|----------------|---------|
| | Credit Sales | Cash Sales | Expenses | Bankings | Advice Numbers | Amount |
| £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. |
| MONDAY .. | | | | | | |
| TUESDAY .. | | | | | | |
| WEDNESDAY .. | | | | | | |
| THURSDAY .. | | | | | | |
| FRIDAY .. | | | | | | |
| SATURDAY .. | | | | | | |

SALES CONTROL:

Debtors at end ..

Allowances to Customers ..

Cash from Credit Sales ..

LESS Debtors at start ..

Credit Sales for Week ..

Cash Sales ..

TOTAL SALES ..

On reverse of this Return:

(i) List the names and addresses of customers and amount of each debt where more than 4 weeks in arrear.

(ii) Give details of all allowances to customers in excess of £1.

Attach vouchers for all cash expenses.

| | |
|---------------------|---------|
| Stock at start .. | £ s. d. |
| LESS Total Sales .. | |
| Returns .. | |
| Stock at end .. | |

Cash Float at start ..

At end ..

Remarks:

Signature of Manager.

Where the above system is adopted, it will not be possible to ascertain from the books, without special calculation, the exact profit or loss of the branch, owing to the fact that the goods are charged out at selling prices which do not include a fixed percentage of profit, but this disadvantage is more than counterbalanced by the very material benefit obtained from being able to prove the correctness of the stock, and consequently also of the cash. Moreover, in businesses of this nature the rate of gross profit earned by each branch may usually be taken to be the same as that earned by the business as a whole, as revealed by the Trading Account, and consequently, so long as the turnover of the branch is known, a reliable estimate of the result of trading can easily be made.

The issue of goods by the head office to the branch does not constitute a sale, but is merely a change of location of stock within the business. The goods are accordingly credited, in the first instance, not to Sales Account, but to a Goods sent to Branch Account. If the whole of the goods were sold by the branch at the prices at which they were invoiced, the amount credited to this account could, at the end of the accounting period, be transferred to the credit of Sales Account. If, however, as will usually be the case, some of the goods remain unsold, the selling price of such unsold stock must be deleted from the Goods sent to Branch Account, by being debited thereto and carried down to the credit of the account to form an opening balance in the new period. The balance of the Goods sent to Branch Account will then represent the sales actually effected by the branch, and may be transferred to Sales Account. The amount of the unsold stock carried forward to the credit of that account is in the nature of a reserve for the amount of stock brought down as a debit in the Branch Stock Account. When preparing the final accounts, therefore, the balances carried forward on the Branch Stock Account and the Goods sent to Branch Account will cancel each other out, and can thus be eliminated from the accounts. (In effect, these entries are the same as if the unsold stock had been returned to the head office on the last day of the accounting period, and reissued by the head office to the branch on the first day of the new period.) The branch stock may then be valued at cost, or under, and included in the stock figure which is credited to Trading Account and debited to General Stock Account.

Illustration (1)

Messrs. J. Foster & Co. have a head office which acts as a distributing centre to their two branches, where all sales are made. All purchases are made by the head office, and goods are charged out to the branches at selling price. All expenses (except petty expenses which are provided for by imprest from head office) are paid by the head office, where the books are kept, except the sales ledgers, which are kept at the branches. The head office, however, keeps Total Debtors Accounts in respect of these. On taking stock at Branch A at selling price, it was found that the actual stock was short by £12 compared with the balance of the Stock Account. In the same way the actual stock at Branch B was greater by £7 than the balance on their Stock Account. It was decided to write off these differences.

From the particulars given, write up the Branch Accounts in the head office books, and prepare Trading and Profit and Loss Accounts for the year ended 31st December, and Balance Sheet as at that date.

| | Head Office | Branch A | Branch B |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------|----------|
| | £ | £ | £ |
| Stock at 1st January at Selling Price | | 2,000 | 1,400 |
| Goods sent to Branches | | 15,000 | 10,000 |
| Net Credit Sales | | 9,820 | 6,390 |
| Cash Sales | | 5,150 | 3,321 |
| Goods Returned to Head Office | | 200 | 120 |
| Allowances off Selling Price | | 118 | 76 |
| Debtors at 1st January | | 750 | 540 |
| Cash received from Debtors | | 9,615 | 6,192 |
| Discounts allowed to Debtors | | 160 | 107 |
| Bad Debts | | 105 | 41 |
| Stock at 1st January, at Cost, at Head Office and Branches | 7,600 | | |
| Ditto 31st December | 6,900 | | |
| Purchases | 13,621 | | |
| Salaries | 1,020 | 620 | 490 |
| Trade Expenses | 420 | 115 | 76 |
| Rent, Rates and Taxes | 349 | 325 | 190 |
| Depreciation | 650 | | |
| Discounts Received | 264 | | |
| Creditors | 2,432 | | |
| J. Foster, Capital Account | 14,942 | | |
| Drawing Account | 5,140 | | |
| Leasehold Premises | 5,200 | | |
| Fixtures and Fittings | 3,120 | | |
| Cash at Bank | 1,640 | | |
| Petty Cash | 22 | 18 | 10 |

STOCK ACCOUNT, BRANCH A

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------|----------------|
| Jan. 1 To Balance - Stock b/f. | £ 2,000 | Dec. 31 By Net Credit Sales | £ 9,820 |
| Dec. 31 .. Goods from Head Office | 15,000 | " Cash Sales | 5,150 |
| | | " Returns to Head Office | 200 |
| | | " Allowances off Selling Price | 118 |
| | | " Difference in Stock | 12 |
| | | " Balance - Stock c/d. | 1,700 |
| | <u>£17,000</u> | | <u>£17,000</u> |

Jan. 1 To Balance - Stock b/d. 1,700

STOCK ACCOUNT, BRANCH B

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------|----------------|
| Jan. 1 To Balance - Stock b/f. | £ 1,400 | Dec. 31 By Net Credit Sales | £ 6,390 |
| Dec. 31 .. Goods from Head Office | 10,000 | " Cash Sales | 3,321 |
| " Difference in Stock | 7 | " Returns to Head Office | 120 |
| | | " Allowances off Selling Price | 76 |
| | | " Balance - Stock c/d. | 1,500 |
| | <u>£11,407</u> | | <u>£11,407</u> |

Jan. 1 To Balance - Stock b/d. 1,500

TOTAL DEBTORS ACCOUNT, BRANCH A

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/f. | £ 750 | Dec. 31 By Cash | £ 9,615 |
| Dec. 31 .. Net Credit Sales | 9,820 | " Discounts | 160 |
| | | " Bad Debts | 105 |
| | | " Balance c/d. | 690 |
| | <u>£10,570</u> | | <u>£10,570</u> |

Jan. 1 To Balance b/d 690

TOTAL DEBTORS ACCOUNT, BRANCH B

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/f. | £ 540 | Dec. 31 By Cash | £ 6,192 |
| Dec. 31 .. Net Credit Sales | 6,390 | " Discounts | 107 |
| | | " Bad Debts | 41 |
| | | " Balance c/d. | 590 |
| | <u>£6,930</u> | | <u>£6,930</u> |

Jan. 1 To Balance b/d. 590

GOODS SENT TO BRANCH A ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|----------------------------------|----------------|---------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Returns from Branch | £ 200 | Jan. 1 | By Balance - Stock Suspense b/f. | £ 2,000 |
| | .. Allowances off Selling Price | 118 | Dec. 31 | .. Goods to Branch .. | 15,000 |
| | .. Difference in Stock | 12 | | | |
| | .. Transfer to Sales Account | 14,970 | | | |
| | .. Balance - Stock Suspense c/d. | 1,700 | | | |
| | | <u>£17,000</u> | | | <u>£17,000</u> |
| | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance - Stock Suspense b/d. | 1,700 |

GOODS SENT TO BRANCH B ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|----------------------------------|----------------|---------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Returns from Branch | £ 120 | Jan. 1 | By Balance - Stock Suspense b/f. | £ 1,400 |
| | .. Allowances off Selling Price | 76 | Dec. 31 | .. Goods to Branch .. | 10,000 |
| | .. Transfer to Sales Account | 9,711 | | .. Difference in Stock | 7 |
| | .. Balance - Stock Suspense c/d. | 1,500 | | | |
| | | <u>£11,407</u> | | | <u>£11,407</u> |
| | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance - Stock Suspense b/d. | 1,500 |

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|--------|----------------|
| To Stock | £ 7,600 | By Sales: | £ | £ |
| .. Purchases | 13,621 | .. Branch A | 14,970 | |
| .. Gross Profit c/d. | 10,360 | .. Branch B | 9,711 | |
| | <u>£31,581</u> | .. Stock | | 24,681 |
| | | | | <u>£31,581</u> |
| To Salaries: | | By Gross Profit b/d. | | 10,360 |
| .. Head Office | 1,020 | .. Discounts Received | | 764 |
| .. Branch A | 620 | | | |
| .. Branch B | 490 | | | |
| | <u>2,130</u> | | | |
| To Trade Expenses: | | | | |
| .. Head Office | 420 | | | |
| .. Branch A | 115 | | | |
| .. Branch B | 76 | | | |
| | <u>611</u> | | | |
| .. Rent, Rates and Taxes: | | | | |
| .. Head Office | 349 | | | |
| .. Branch A | 325 | | | |
| .. Branch B | 190 | | | |
| | <u>864</u> | | | |
| .. Discounts Allowed: | | | | |
| .. Branch A | 160 | | | |
| .. Branch B | 107 | | | |
| | <u>267</u> | | | |
| .. Bad Debts: | | | | |
| .. Branch A | 105 | | | |
| .. Branch B | 41 | | | |
| | <u>146</u> | | | |
| .. Depreciation | 650 | | | |
| .. Balance, being Net Profit carried to Capital Account | 5,956 | | | |
| | <u>£10,624</u> | | | <u>£10,624</u> |

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------------------|--------------|----------------|
| J. Foster, Capital Account: | £ | £ | Leasehold Premises | £ | £ |
| .. Balance at 1st January | 14,942 | | .. Fixtures and Fittings | | 5,200 |
| .. Add Profit | 5,956 | | .. Stock | | 3,120 |
| | <u>20,898</u> | | .. Sundry Debtors: | | 6,900 |
| .. Less Drawings | 5,140 | | .. Branch A | 690 | |
| | <u>15,758</u> | | .. Branch B | 590 | |
| Sundry Creditors | 2,432 | | | <u>1,280</u> | |
| | | | Cash: | | |
| | | | .. At Bank | 1,690 | |
| | | | .. In Hand: | | |
| | | | .. Head Office | £22 | |
| | | | .. Branch A | 18 | |
| | | | .. Branch B | 10 | |
| | | | | <u>50</u> | |
| | | | | | 1,690 |
| | | <u>£18,190</u> | | | <u>£18,190</u> |

If desired, the gross profit of each branch can be ascertained by apportioning the gross profit disclosed by the Trading Account between and branches on the basis of their respective turnovers. Thus, in the above illustration, the gross profit of £10,360 would be apportioned as to $\frac{14,970}{24,691} = £6,284$ to Branch A, and $\frac{9,711}{24,691} = £4,076$ to Branch B. The net profit of each branch could then be found by deducting the expenses relating to that branch from its gross profit.

In the above illustration, the shortages in the branch stocks are unimportant, and can probably be attributed to normal causes, such as evaporation, loss in weight, breaking bulk, clerical errors, etc. In such circumstances the differences would be written off by crediting the Branch Stock Account and debiting the Goods sent to Branch Account, thereby reducing the branch sales. Where, however, the difference is large, and irregularities are suspected, their origin must be investigated and appropriate adjustments made. If, for example, a shortage is found to be due to the misappropriation of cash takings, the full amount of the difference should be credited to the Branch Stock Account and debited to Profit and Loss Account. The goods having been sold, the gross profit thereon has been earned, and the amount of the gross profit disclosed by the Trading Account should not, therefore, be reduced. The misappropriation of cash, however, represents a loss *after* the earning of the gross profit, and must be debited to Profit and Loss Account.

If the difference on the Branch Account is found to be due to the pilferage or destruction of stock, the correct adjustment is to eliminate the selling price of the goods from the accounts by crediting the Branch Stock Account and debiting the Goods sent to Branch Account therewith, as if the goods had been returned by the branch to the head office. The *cost* price of the goods must then be credited to Trading Account (or Purchases Account) and debited to Profit and Loss Account. In this case, since the goods were never sold the gross profit has not been earned, and the true measure of the loss to the business is the *cost* of the goods, which must accordingly be taken out of the Trading Account and debited to Profit and Loss Account.

In some cases it may be inexpedient for the branch expenses to be paid by the head office, and the branch manager may be permitted to pay expenses incurred locally out of his cash takings, and to make periodical remittances to the head office of the balance of cash remaining in his hands, or of round sums, instead of paying the whole of his takings into the bank for the credit of head office. Where this is done, instead of being credited with the total sales, the Branch Account will be credited with the remittances made to the head office and the expenses paid by the branch. The balance of the Branch Account will then represent the unsold stock at the branch, valued at selling price, plus any balance of cash takings not yet remitted to the head office. Where credit sales are small, and it is not considered necessary to maintain a Total Debtors Account for the branch in the head office books, the balance of the Branch Account may also include the total of any outstanding debts owing by branch customers at the date of balancing the accounts.

Illustration (2)

Piddington & Co. carry on a retail business in London, and have a suburban branch to which all goods are supplied by head office and invoiced at selling prices. The branch manager pays all the branch expenses out of takings and makes remittances periodically to the head office. No accounts are kept in the head office books of branch debtors and cash.

From the following information, show the accounts in the head office books recording the branch transactions, and prepare a Trading and Profit and Loss Account of the business for the year ended 31st December.

Extracts from branch returns to head office:

| | £ |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Goods invoiced from head office | 6,696 |
| Remittances to head office | 5,250 |
| Expenses paid: | |
| Rent | 400 |
| Rates and Insurance | 120 |
| Wages | 650 |
| Lighting and Heating | 50 |
| General Expenses | 72 |
| Cash in hand (31st December) | 64 |
| Debtors " " | 130 |
| Stock " " | 750 (cost £508) |

Extracts from head office books:

| | £ |
|-------------------------------------|--------|
| Rent | 1,000 |
| Rates and Insurance | 320 |
| Salaries and Wages | 5,400 |
| Heating and Lighting | 120 |
| General Expenses | 742 |
| Carriage Outwards | 563 |
| Travelling Expenses | 748 |
| Discounts | 450 |
| Stock at cost (1st January) | 3,247 |
| Purchases | 36,214 |
| Sales | 45,402 |

Branch Account (1st January):

| | |
|-----------------|-------|
| Cash | £93 |
| Debtors | 157 |
| Stock | 540 |
| | <hr/> |
| | 790 |

Head office stock at 31st December was valued at £3,625.

The following provisions are to be made:

Depreciation: Head office £100 Branch £20

Bad debts " " £250 " £10

The branch is to be charged with £400 for management expenses.

BRANCH ACCOUNT

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------|-----|-------|--------------------------------|-----|---------------|
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/f.: | | | Dec. 31 By Cash from Branch .. | | 5,250 |
| Cash | 93 | | Expenses: | | |
| Debtors | 157 | | Rent | 400 | |
| Stock | 540 | | Rates and Insurance | 120 | |
| | | 790 | Wages | 650 | |
| Dec. 31 .. Goods from Head Office .. | | 6,696 | Lighting and Heating | 50 | |
| | | | General Expenses | 72 | 1,292 |
| | | | Balance b/d.: | | |
| | | | Cash | 64 | |
| | | | Debtors | 130 | |
| | | | Stock | 750 | 944 |
| | | | | | <u>£7,486</u> |
| | | | | | <u>£7,486</u> |
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/d.: | | | | | |
| Cash | 64 | | | | |
| Debtors | 130 | | | | |
| Stock | 750 | 944 | | | |

GOODS SENT TO BRANCH ACCOUNT

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|-----------------------------|-------|---------------|----------------------------|---|---------------|
| Dec. 31 To Trading Account: | | | Jan. 1 By Stock b/d. | | 540 |
| Sales | 6,486 | | Dec. 31 .. Branch Account: | | |
| Balance c/d.: | | | Goods to Branch | | 6,696 |
| Stock | 750 | | | | <u>£7,236</u> |
| | | <u>£7,236</u> | | | <u>£7,236</u> |
| | | | Jan. 1 By Stock b/d. | | 750 |

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| To Stock, 1st January | 3,247 | | By Sales - Head Office | 45,402 | | | |
| .. Purchases | 36,214 | | .. Branch | 6,486 | 51,888 | | |
| .. Gross Profit (apportioned on basis of Sales): | | | .. Stock, 31st December: | | | | |
| Head Office | 14,490 | | Head Office | 3,625 | | | |
| Branch | 2,070 | 16,560 | Branch | 508 | 4,133 | | |
| | | <u>£56,021</u> | | | <u>£56,021</u> | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | Head Office | Branch | Total | Head Office | Branch | Total | |
| | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ | |
| To Rent | 1,000 | 400 | 1,400 | By Gross Profit b/d. | 14,490 | 2,070 | 16,560 |
| .. Rates and Insurance | 320 | 120 | 440 | .. Management Expenses charged to Branch | 400 | | |
| .. Salaries and Wages | 5,400 | 650 | 6,050 | | | | |
| .. Heating and Lighting | 120 | 50 | 170 | | | | |
| .. General Expenses | 742 | 72 | 814 | | | | |
| .. Carriage Outwards | 563 | | 563 | | | | |
| .. Travelling Expenses | 748 | | 748 | | | | |
| .. Discounts | 450 | | 450 | | | | |
| .. Provision for Bad Debts | 250 | 10 | 260 | | | | |
| .. Depreciation | 100 | 20 | 120 | | | | |
| .. Management Expenses | | 400 | | | | | |
| .. Net Profit | 5,197 | 348 | 5,545 | | | | |
| | <u>£14,890</u> | <u>£2,070</u> | <u>£16,560</u> | | <u>£14,890</u> | <u>£2,070</u> | <u>£16,560</u> |

Note

The branch cash and debtors brought down in the Branch Account appear in the Balance Sheet under their appropriate headings. The branch stock, however, is brought down in the the Branch Account at selling price. This is cancelled out against the credit balance of a similar amount carried down in the Goods sent to Branch Account. The *cost* of the branch stock, viz., £508, is then credited to Trading Account and debited to General Stock Account as part of which it appears in the Balance Sheet.

Where goods are transferred from one branch to another, the simplest method of recording the transaction is to treat the goods as having been returned to the head office by the transferor branch and issued from the head office to the transferee branch. If, however, only one 'Goods sent to Branches Account' is kept for all branches, a transfer can be journalised, crediting the transferor branch and debiting the transferee branch, at selling price, unless another agreed price has to be adopted, in which case any difference between such price and the price at which the goods were invoiced to the transferor branch by head office must be transferred to the Goods sent to Branches Account.

(b) When Goods are charged to Branches at cost price

In some businesses it is impracticable to work on the method just described, either because the stock is of a perishable nature, or by reason of the fact that selling prices are subject to considerable fluctuation. In such cases the goods will normally be charged out at cost. As a result, it will not be possible, in the head office books, to keep a Branch Stock Account which can be reconciled by including the closing stock, but, on the other hand, all the necessary material will be provided for the preparation of a proper Trading Account for the branch, the opening and closing stocks being taken at cost price, and the goods sent to the branch being charged out at cost price. The cash and credit sales will be ascertained in a similar manner to that described under the first described system, as also will all the other items.

Although, when goods are charged out at cost, the exact result of the trading can be ascertained, it is apparent that the check imposed by the selling price system is not available, and consequently it may be advantageous to maintain stock records for each branch compiled monthly in the following manner:

The opening stock will be taken, and to it will be added the purchases. From the total thus obtained, the sales will be deducted. The gross profit, estimated at the average rate, will then be added, and the result will represent the estimated cost price of the stock on hand. By a comparison of these monthly figures it can be seen whether the stock fluctuates, and if there is reason to suspect any irregularity the actual stock can be taken without previous notice to the manager. It must be remembered, however, that this arrangement forms no part of the double entry book-keeping, and is merely in the nature of a periodical test check.

Illustration (1)

BRANCH A. MONTHLY STOCK ACCOUNTS - JANUARY TO JUNE

| | Jan. | Feb. | Mar. | April | May | June |
|----------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-----|------|
| | £ | £ | £ | | | |
| Opening Stock | 1,400 | 1,225 | 1,175 | | | |
| Add Purchases | 200 | 250 | 350 | | | |
| | 1,600 | 1,475 | 1,525 | | | |
| Less Sales | 500 | 400 | 420 | | | |
| | 1,100 | 1,075 | 1,105 | | | |
| Add Gross Profit 25% on Sales .. | 125 | 100 | 105 | | | |
| Estimated Closing Stock | £1,225 | £1,175 | £1,210 | | | |

Illustration (2)

Goods are charged out from the head office of a company to its branches at cost price. Cash received at the branches is remitted to head office daily. All expenses are paid by the head office. From the following particulars, prepare Profit and Loss Account of the X Branch for the year ended 31st December.

| | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Goods sent to branch <i>less</i> Returns | 4,070 |
| Stock, 1st January | 690 |
| Cash received from branch | 6,200 |
| Stock, 31st December | 740 |
| Debtors, 1st January | 75 |
| Debtors, 31st December | 89 |
| Rent, rates and taxes | 160 |
| Wages and sundry expenses | 340 |

BRANCH TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------|---------------|
| | £ | | £ |
| To Stock, 1st January | 690 | By Sale | 6,214 |
| .. Goods from Head Office | 4,070 | | |
| | 4,760 | | |
| <i>Less</i> Stock, 31st December | 740 | | |
| | 4,020 | | |
| Gross Profit c/d | 2,194 | | |
| | <u>£6,214</u> | | <u>£6,214</u> |
| | | | |
| To Rent, Rates and Taxes | 160 | By Gross Profit b/d. | 2,194 |
| .. Wages and Sundry Expenses | 340 | | |
| Net Profit of Branch carried to General Profit and Loss Account | 1,694 | | |
| | <u>£2,194</u> | | <u>£2,194</u> |

BRANCH TOTAL DEBTORS AND CASH SALES

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| Jan. 1 To Debtors b/f | £ 75 | Dec. 31 By Cash | £ 6,200 |
| .. Trading Account | | .. Debtors c/f | 89 |
| Sales | 6,214 | | |
| | <u>£6,289</u> | | <u>£6,289</u> |
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/f | 89 | | |

GOODS SENT TO BRANCH ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------|---------|
| Dec. 31 To Head Office, Purchases Account | £ 4,070 | Dec. 31 By Branch Stock Account | £ 4,070 |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------|---------|

BRANCH STOCK ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/f | £ 690 | Dec. 31 By Balance, being Stock in hand c/f. | £ 740 |
| Dec. 31 .. Goods sent to Branch Account | 4,070 | .. Branch Trading Account, cost of sales | 4,020 |
| | <u>£4,760</u> | | <u>£4,760</u> |
| Jan. 1 To Balance c/f. | 740 | | |

It will be observed that under this system the Branch Sales and gross profit are not incorporated in the General Trading Account, as in the system described in § 3 (a), but a separate Trading Account is prepared for the branch. Goods from head office are debited to Branch Stock Account and credited to goods sent to Branch Account, the Branch Stock Account being closed by transfer to the Branch Trading Account, and the goods sent to Branch Account by transfer to the Head Office Purchases Account. The Head Office Trading Account is thus relieved completely of the cost of the goods sent to the branch, which are fully accounted for in the Branch Trading Account. The closing stock of the branch, at cost, instead of being included in the closing stock of the business credited to general Trading Account and carried forward in the general Stock Account, is carried forward in the Branch Stock Account, and the amount so carried forward will provide the Balance Sheet figure for this item.

(c) Where Goods charged to Branches at cost price plus a fixed percentage

As previously explained, when the selling prices of goods sent to branches can be predetermined without difficulty, all goods should be invoiced at those prices in order to obtain a check upon the stock and cash at the branches. Where it is not practicable to adopt a fixed gross profit percentage for all goods, the system described in § 3 (a) of this chapter should be used. In some cases, however, the nature of the business is such that the selling prices of all goods can be fixed by adding the same percentage to cost. In others, although the selling prices of particular lines of goods may be subject to fluctuation, experience may show that on the turnover as a whole a certain average percentage of gross profit may be expected. In such cases, it may be practicable to charge out all goods to branches at cost price plus a fixed percentage. The advantages of such a system are that in addition to providing a reasonably reliable check upon the stock and cash at the branch, since a record is available of the cost as well as the selling price of the goods the exact gross profit earned by each branch is disclosed by the accounts.

Under this system, in addition to the Branch Stock Account and the Goods sent to Branch Account, a Branch Stock Adjustment Account is maintained for each branch, to which account the amount of the 'loading' added to the cost of the goods sent to the branch is credited, and from which the actual gross profit of the branch can be ascertained. The entries in the accounts are as follows:

- (1) Goods sent to branches are debited to the Branch Stock Account at the full *invoiced price*, Goods sent to Branch Account being credited with the *cost price* and Branch Stock Adjustment Account with the *profit percentage* added to cost. These entries are reversed in respect of goods returned by the branch to head office.
- (2) Cash and credit sales are credited to Branch Stock Account, Cash and Total Debtors Account respectively being debited.
- (3) At the close of the accounting period the stock on hand at the branch, valued at the price at which it was invoiced, is credited to the Branch Stock Account and carried forward to form the opening entry in that account in the new period. At the same time, the amount of the profit percentage included in such value is *debited* to the Branch Stock Adjustment Account and carried down to the *credit* of that account to form the opening entry in the new period.

- (4) Assuming no difference to be disclosed in the Branch Stock Account after the invoiced price of the closing stock has been credited thereto, the balance remaining on the Branch Stock Adjustment Account should now represent the actual gross profit realised by the branch, since this account has been credited with the profit percentage added to cost on all goods sent to the branch, and debited with the profit percentage on such of those goods as have not been sold. This balance should be transferred from the Branch Stock Adjustment Account to the credit of the Branch Profit and Loss Account.
- (5) For Balance Sheet purposes, the credit balance carried forward in the Branch Stock Adjustment Account will be set off against the debit balance carried forward in the Branch Stock Account to give the cost price of the stock on hand at the branch.
- (6) The Goods sent to Branch Account, which has been credited with the *cost* price of the goods issued to the branch, will be closed by transfer to head office Purchases Account, thus relieving the Head Office Trading Account of the charge for these goods, which have been fully accounted for in the Branch Stock Account and the Adjustment Account.
- (7) Any difference disclosed in the Branch Stock Account after the closing stock has been credited thereto, if reasonable in amount, may be regarded as the margin of error in computing the percentage to be added to cost, and should be transferred to the Adjustment Account before transferring the balance thereof to Profit and Loss Account. Differences beyond a reasonable limit should be investigated.

Illustration (1)

A company charges out goods to its branches at cost, plus 25 per cent. From the following particulars show the accounts of the branch in the head office books, indicating the actual profit made by the branch.

| | £ |
|---------------------------------------|--------|
| Goods sent to branch | 12,000 |
| Goods returned to head office | 1,000 |
| Sales | 10,400 |
| Stock at commencement | 1,500 |
| Stock at close | 2,120 |

BRANCH STOCK ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| To Stock b/f. | 1,500 | By Sales | 10,400 |
| „ Goods from Head Office | 12,000 | „ Returns to Head Office | 1,000 |
| „ Adjustment Account, Apparent Profit | 20 | „ Stock c/d. | 2,120 |
| | <u>£13,520</u> | | <u>£13,520</u> |
| To Balance – Stock b/d. | 2,120 | | |

BRANCH STOCK ADJUSTMENT ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To 25% on cost of Returns | 200 | By Balance 25% on cost price of stock, b/f. | 300 |
| „ 25% on cost price of Stock c/d. | 424 | „ 25% on cost of goods transferred | 2,400 |
| „ Profit and Loss Account, gross profit | 2,096 | „ Branch Stock Account | 20 |
| | <u>£2,720</u> | | <u>£2,720</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 424 |

GOODS SENT TO BRANCH ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Branch Stock Account - Cost of Returns .. | £ 800 | By Branch Stock Account, cost of goods sent to branch | £ 9,600 |
| .. Trading Account .. | 8,800 | | |
| | <u>£9,600</u> | | <u>£9,600</u> |

Notes:

- (1) The credit balance carried down on the Branch Stock Adjustment Account of £424 will be deducted from the debit balance of £2,120 on the Branch Stock Account, to give the cost price of the stock for Balance Sheet purposes, viz., £1,696.
- (2) The gross profit of £2,096 is the balancing item on the Branch Stock Adjustment Account, after debiting the gross profit not earned, viz., the addition to cost price on the goods returned to head office and the unsold stock.

As already stated, if a difference of unreasonable dimensions is disclosed in the Branch Stock Account, the cause must be investigated, and suitable adjusting entries made to give effect to it. Where, for example, the difference is found to be caused by the loss of goods (e.g., by destruction or theft), since the goods were never sold the gross profit on them has never been earned; the profit percentage added to the cost in respect thereof must therefore be debited to the Branch Stock Adjustment Account, and the cost price, being the amount of the loss actually sustained, to Profit and Loss Account (or, if the risk is covered by insurance, to the Insurance Claim Account). Where, however, the difference is attributable to misappropriation of the cash proceeds of goods sold, no debit should be made to Branch Stock Adjustment Account, since the gross profit *has* been earned, and both the cost of the goods and the realised profit have been lost. The full invoice price of the goods should in this case be written off to Profit and Loss Account.

Illustration (2)

Goods are charged to branch at cost plus 20 per cent., and a shortage of £748 on the Branch Stock Account is found to be due to:

- (1) Theft of Goods, £348.
- (2) Theft of Cash, £400.

BRANCH STOCK ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Sundries (invoice price of goods cost plus 20 per cent.) .. | £ 12,000 | By Sales .. | £ 8,852 |
| | | .. Goods stolen: | |
| | | Profit and Loss Account .. | £290 |
| | | Branch Adjustment Account .. | 58 |
| | | | <u>348</u> |
| | | .. Cash stolen - Profit and Loss Account .. | 400 |
| | | .. Stock c/d. .. | <u>2,400</u> |
| | <u>£12,000</u> | | <u>£12,000</u> |
| To Balance b/d. .. | 2,400 | | |

BRANCH ADJUSTMENT ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Branch Stock Account 16½ per cent. on £348 | £ 58 | By Branch Stock Account (20 per cent. on £10,000) | £ 2,000 |
| .. Goods stolen .. | 58 | | |
| .. Profit and Loss Account - Gross Profit .. | 1,542 | | |
| .. Balance c/d. - being 16½ per cent. on £2,400 Stock | <u>400</u> | | |
| | <u>£2,000</u> | | <u>£2,000</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. .. | 400 |

GOODS SENT TO BRANCHES ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------|---|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------|
| To Purchases Account. | £ | 10,000 | By Branch Stock Account (cost of goods invoiced at £12,000) | £ | 10,000 |
|-----------------------|---|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------|

BRANCH PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---|-----|-------------------------------|---|-------|
| To Branch Stock Account | £ | | By Branch Adjustment Account: | £ | |
| Cost of goods stolen | | 290 | Gross Profit of Branch | | 1,542 |
| Cash stolen | | 400 | | | |

An alternative method of dealing with the position where goods are charged out at cost plus a fixed percentage, is to rule the Branch Stock Account with two columns, one to record the invoice price of the goods, and the other their cost price. The entries in the invoice price columns form no part of the double entry, but are memoranda only, their purpose being to provide a check upon the stock. Where this system is adopted a Branch Stock Adjustment Account is not required, but the Branch Stock Account is maintained as if the goods were charged out at cost.

Illustration (3)

A Ltd. invoices its branch at cost, plus $33\frac{1}{3}\%$. From the following particulars prepare the Branch Stock Account as it would appear in the head office books:

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| | £ |
| Stock at commencement, at invoice price | 3,000 |
| Stock at close, at invoice price | 2,400 |
| Goods sent to branch during the year, at invoice price | 20,000 |
| Credit sales | 1,000 |
| Returns to head office, at invoice price | 1,000 |
| Cash sales | 18,000 |
| Invoice value of goods pilfered | 200 |
| Normal loss due to wastage and deterioration of stock | 300 |

BRANCH STOCK ACCOUNT

| | Invoice Price (memo) | £ | | Invoice Price (memo) | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|---------|
| To Stock b/f. | 3,000 | 2,250 | By Branch Total Debtors Account: | | |
| " Goods from Head Office | 20,000 | 15,000 | " Credit Sales | 1,000 | 1,000 |
| " Gross Profit transferred to Profit and Loss Account | | 4,450 | " Returns to Head Office | 1,000 | 750 |
| | | | " Cash Sales | 18,000 | 18,000 |
| | | | " Pilferage Account - Loss by theft | 200 | 150 |
| | | | " Wastage and Deterioration | 300 | — |
| | | | " Apparent Loss | 100 | — |
| | | | " Stock c/d. | 2,400 | 1,800 |
| | £23,000 | £21,700 | | £23,000 | £21,700 |
| To Stock b/d. | | 2,400 | | | 1,800 |

Note:

It will be seen that no amount is extended into the outer column in respect of the normal wastage and the further small difference on the invoice columns, the loss in respect of these items being automatically reflected in the gross profit, the amount of which has been arrived at after crediting the account with the cost price of the actual stock on hand, in which these items are not included. Where, however, a difference on the invoice columns is found to be due to irregularities, adjusting entries will be necessary. If, for example the £300 represented the invoice price of goods lost or destroyed, the cost price thereof, viz. £200, should be

credited in the outer column of the Branch Stock Account and debited to Profit and Loss Account. If the whole of the £300 represented loss of cash, the full amount should be extended into the outer column and debited to Profit and Loss Account, as this would be the measure of the loss sustained.

Illustration (4)

R Ltd. own two retail shops, all goods being supplied from a main store at head office at cost plus 50 per cent. which is the selling price.

Cash takings are paid in daily to the bank to the credit of head office and all payments are made by head office. Only a small credit trade is done at the branches.

The following information is extracted from the books at head office and the branch returns for the year ended 31st December, 19...

| | Head Office £ | Branch A £ | Branch B £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Stock, 31st December | 6,040 | | |
| Stock at selling price, 1st January, | | 3,000 | 6,000 |
| Goods sent to branches at selling price | | 10,800 | 19,500 |
| Purchases | 21,240 | | |
| Cash Sales paid into Bank | | 9,960 | 20,610 |
| Credit Sales | | 750 | 600 |
| Debtors, 1st January | | 500 | 400 |
| Cash received from Debtors (paid into Bank) | | 850 | 700 |
| Trade Creditors, 1st January | 4,000 | | |
| " " 31st December | 4,500 | | |
| Bank Balance, 1st January | 3,500 | | |
| Expenses paid | 1,500 | 1,870 | 4,190 |
| Sundry Assets, 1st January | 10,000 | 8,000 | 7,000 |
| Capital | 32,500 | | |
| Profit and Loss Account, 1st January - Credit Balance | 3,900 | | |

During the year Branch A had sent to Branch B goods to the value of £720 at selling price.

On stocktaking at 31st December, the Stock Account of Branch A showed a deficiency of £150, and that of Branch B a surplus of £90 at selling prices.

The head office expenses are to be apportioned equally between the two branches.

You are required to prepare:

- (1) Cash Account for the year.
- (2) Stock Account of each branch (in columnar form) in the head office books.
- (3) Total Debtors Account for each branch.
- (4) Profit and Loss Account for each branch.
- (5) Balance Sheet at 31st December.

CASH ACCOUNT

| | | | | £ | | | | | £ |
|---------|-----------------|--|--|----------------|---------|--------------|--|--|----------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/f. | | | 3,500 | Dec. 31 | By Expenses: | | | |
| Dec. 31 | " Branch A: | | | | | Head Office | | | 1,500 |
| | Cash Sales | | | 9,960 | | Branch A | | | 1,870 |
| | Debtors | | | 850 | | " B | | | 4,190 |
| | " Branch B: | | | | | Creditors | | | 20,740 |
| | Cash Sales | | | 20,610 | | Balance c/f. | | | 7,320 |
| | Debtors | | | 700 | | | | | |
| | | | | <u>£35,620</u> | | | | | <u>£35,620</u> |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | | | 7,320 | | | | | |

TOTAL DEBTORS ACCOUNTS

| | | Branch A | | Branch B | | | | Branch A | | Branch B | |
|---------|-------------------|----------|--|----------|-----|---------|-----------------|----------|-----|----------|--|
| | | £ | | £ | | | | £ | | £ | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balances, b/f. | | | 500 | 400 | Dec. 31 | By Cash | 850 | 700 | | |
| Dec. 31 | " Credit Sales | | | 750 | 600 | | " Balances b/f. | 400 | 300 | | |
| | | £1,250 | | £1,000 | | | | £1,250 | | £1,000 | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balances b/d. | | | 400 | 300 | | | | | | |

BRANCH STOCK ACCOUNTS

| | | Branch A | | Branch B | | | | Branch A | | Branch B | |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------|---------------|--------|---------|----------------|---------------|--------|---------------|--------|
| | | Invoice Price | Dr. | Invoice Price | Dr. | | | Invoice Price | Cr. | Invoice Price | Cr. |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/f. | £ 3,000 | 2,000 | £ 6,000 | 4,000 | Dec. 31 | By Cash Sales | 9,960 | 9,960 | 20,610 | 20,610 |
| Dec. 31 | " Goods from H.O. | 10,800 | 7,200 | 19,500 | 19,000 | | " Credit Sales | 750 | 750 | 600 | 600 |
| | " Transfers | --- | --- | 720 | 480 | | " Transfers | 720 | 480 | --- | --- |
| | " Surplus | --- | --- | 90 | --- | | " Deficiency | 150 | --- | --- | --- |
| | " Gross Profit carried to Profit and Loss Account | --- | --- | --- | --- | | " Stock c/f. | 2,220 | 1,480 | 5,100 | 3,400 |
| | | £ 13,800 | 12,670 | 26,310 | 24,610 | | | £ 13,800 | 12,670 | 26,310 | 24,610 |

Note

The entries in the 'Invoice Price' columns are merely memoranda. The profit and loss in respect of the surplus and deficiency in the closing stocks at the branch are automatically reflected in the gross profit, as the amounts entered in the 'credit' columns in respect of closing stock are the adjusted stock figures, reduced to cost.

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNTS
FOR YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | | Branch A | | Branch B | | | | Branch A | | Branch B | |
|--------------------------------------------------|--|----------|--|----------|--|-------------------------------------|--|----------|--|----------|--|
| | | £ | | £ | | | | £ | | £ | |
| To Expenses | | 1,870 | | 4,190 | | By Gross Profit from Stock Accounts | | 3,470 | | 7,130 | |
| " Head Office Expenses | | 750 | | 750 | | | | | | | |
| " Net Profit, to General Profit and Loss Account | | 850 | | 2,190 | | | | | | | |
| | | £3,470 | | £7,130 | | | | £3,470 | | £7,130 | |

BALANCE SHEET, 31ST DECEMBER

| | | H.O. | A. | B. | Total |
|-------------------------|---------|---------|--------|---------|---------|
| Capital | 32,500 | 10,000 | 8,000 | 7,000 | 25,000 |
| Profit and Loss Account | | 6,040 | 1,480 | 3,400 | 10,920 |
| Balance 1st July | 3,900 | --- | 400 | 300 | 700 |
| Net Profit for year: | | 7,320 | --- | --- | 7,320 |
| Branch A | 850 | | | | |
| " B | 2,190 | | | | |
| | 6,940 | | | | |
| Trade Creditors | 4,500 | | | | |
| | £43,940 | £23,360 | £9,880 | £10,700 | £43,940 |

§ 4. Branches which maintain separate accounting records

In the case of branches where, on account of their distance from the head office, or for some other reason, it is considered expedient to keep complete financial records at the branch, the following system should be employed:

There will be an account in the branch books called 'Head Office Current Account' (or 'Head Office Account') and in the head office books there will be a corresponding account called 'Branch Current Account' (or 'Branch Account'). All remittances of cash and transfers of goods, etc. to or from the head office, or other transactions between the head office and the branch will be passed through these accounts, either in detail or in total, at convenient intervals. In the branch books the Head Office Account can be regarded as the Capital Account of the branch, and consequently, if the assets in the branch books exceed the liabilities, the Head Office Account will show a credit balance. In the head office books the Branch Account will, in the same way, reveal a debit balance representing the excess of assets over liabilities at the branch.

At the end of each accounting period, the balance of the Profit and Loss Account in the books of the branch will be transferred to the Head Office Account, and the Branch Balance Sheet will then disclose the assets and the liabilities at the branch, and the balance due to or from the head office.

The head office, on receiving these accounts, will incorporate the profit at the branch in its own books by debiting the Branch Account and crediting Profit and Loss Account with the amount thereof. Assuming no other adjustments to be necessary, it will then be found that the balance on the Branch Account in the head office books agrees with the balance on the Head Office Account in the branch books. The head office and branch Balance Sheets can now be amalgamated, the various assets and liabilities being aggregated together under their respective headings, while the Current Account balances, being contra items, are eliminated.

Illustration (1)

The following are the trial balances of the head office and Leeds branch, respectively, of a business at 31st December. Prepare summarised amalgamated Balance Sheet and show the Leeds Current Account in the head office books.

| DEBIT BALANCES | Head Office | Leeds |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| | £ | £ |
| Goodwill | 5,000 | |
| Stock | 6,500 | 3,200 |
| Debtors | 7,300 | 4,100 |
| Cash at Bank | 2,100 | 520 |
| Plant and Machinery | 4,300 | 1,700 |
| Leeds Current Account 1st Jan. | 6,380 | |
| Goods sent to Leeds | 1,500 | |
| Cash sent to London | | 2,000 |
| | <u>£33,080</u> | <u>£11,520</u> |
| CREDIT BALANCES | | |
| Share Capital - Authorised and Issued 21,000 Shares of £1 each, fully paid | 21,000 | |
| Profit and Loss Account - Balance at 1st Jan. | 530 | |
| Profit for year | 6,200 | 1,900 |
| Creditors | 3,100 | 1,600 |
| Provision for Bad Debts | 250 | 140 |
| Goods received from London | | 1,500 |
| Cash received from Leeds | 2,000 | |
| Head Office Current Account 1st Jan. | | 6,380 |
| | <u>£33,080</u> | <u>£11,520</u> |

LEEDS CURRENT ACCOUNT IN HEAD OFFICE BOOKS

| | | | | | | | |
|---------|----------------------------|---------------|-------|---------|----------------|---------------|-------|
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/f | £ | 6,380 | Dec. 31 | By Cash | £ | 2,000 |
| Dec. 31 | " Goods | 1,500 | | | " Balance c/d. | 7,780 | |
| | " Profit and Loss Account: | | | | | | |
| | Profit | 1,900 | | | | | |
| | | <u>£9,780</u> | | | | <u>£9,780</u> | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 7,780 | | | | | |

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | | | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------------|----------------------|--------------|----------------|
| Share Capital Authorised and Issued, 21,000 Shares of £1 each, fully paid | £ | 21,000 | Goodwill | £ | 5,000 |
| Profit and Loss Account: | | | Plant and Machinery: | | |
| Balance at 1st Jan. | 530 | | Head Office | 4,300 | |
| Add Profit for year | 8,100 | | Leeds | 1,700 | 6,000 |
| | <u>8,630</u> | | Stock: | | |
| Sundry Creditors | 29,630 | | Head Office | 6,500 | |
| Head Office | 3,100 | | Leeds | 3,200 | 9,700 |
| Leeds | 1,600 | 4,700 | Sundry Debtors: | | |
| | | | Head Office | £7,300 | |
| | | | Less Provision | 250 | |
| | | | | <u>7,050</u> | |
| | | | Leeds | 4,100 | |
| | | | Less Provision | 140 | |
| | | | | <u>3,960</u> | |
| | | | Cash: | | 11,010 |
| | | | Head Office | 2,100 | |
| | | | Leeds | 520 | |
| | | | | <u>2,620</u> | |
| | | <u>£34,330</u> | | | <u>£34,330</u> |

It will be seen that the Leeds Current Account is represented in the Balance Sheet by the net assets of the branch, viz.:

| | |
|---------------------|---------------|
| | £ |
| Plant and Machinery | 1,700 |
| Stock | 3,200 |
| Debtors | 3,960 |
| Cash | 520 |
| | <u>9,380</u> |
| Less Creditors | 1,600 |
| | <u>£7,780</u> |

Where, as frequently happens, cash or goods are in transit between the head office and the branches, or between one branch and another, at the date of the Balance Sheet, the balances of the relative Current Accounts will not agree, since the entries relating to the value in transit will have been made in one set of books, and not in the other. Before preparing the final accounts, therefore, adjustments are necessary in respect of these items. Where the cash or goods are in transit between a branch and its head office (*i.e.*, either from or to the head office), the adjustment in respect thereof will normally be made in the books of the head office, by crediting the Branch Account and debiting Cash or Goods in Transit Account with the amount in transit. Alternatively, the amount can be carried down as a separate balance in the Branch

Account to form an opening entry in the new period. In this manner the balance of the Branch Account in the head office books is reconciled with that appearing on the Head Office Account in the branch books, and no adjusting entries in the latter books are required.

Where the value in transit is between one branch and another, it is advisable for the adjustment to be made in the books of the transferor branch by crediting the account of the transferee branch and debiting a Cash or Goods in Transit Account, or carrying the amount down as a separate balance.

Illustration (2)

A company has its head office in London, and branches at Liverpool and Sheffield. The following are the separate Balance Sheets on 31st December:

LONDON

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Share Capital: | | Stock | 36,250 |
| 100,000 Shares of £1 each fully paid | 100,000 | Debtors | 42,500 |
| Creditors | 6,000 | Sheffield Current Account (after debiting £300 Stock returned to Sheffield on 31st December, and received at Sheffield on 3rd January) | 27,140 |
| Liverpool Current Account (after debiting £100 Cash remitted on 31st December, and received at Liverpool on 1st January) | 390 | Cash at Bank | 11,300 |
| Profit and Loss Account: | | | |
| Balance at 1st Jan. | £1,750 | | |
| Add Profit for year | 9,250 | | |
| | <u>11,000</u> | | |
| | <u>£117,390</u> | | <u>£117,390</u> |

LIVERPOOL

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Creditors | 1,750 | Stock | 3,505 |
| Bank Overdraft | 4,000 | Debtors | 1,750 |
| Sheffield Current Account (after debiting £150 Stock sent to Sheffield 31st December and received at Sheffield on 3rd January) | 70 | Head Office Current Account (after debiting £75 Stock sent to London 31st December and received at London on 2nd January) | 51 |
| | <u>£5,820</u> | | <u>£5,820</u> |

SHEFFIELD

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| Creditors | 5,050 | Plant and Machinery | 20,470 |
| Head Office Current Account (after debiting £500 cash sent to Head Office 31st December and received at London 1st January) | 26,340 | Stock | 5,200 |
| | | Debtors | 3,250 |
| | | Liverpool Current Account | 220 |
| | | Cash at Bank | 2,250 |
| | <u>£31,390</u> | | <u>£31,390</u> |

The profit and loss balances at the branches have been adjusted.

Make the further adjustments necessary, and prepare aggregate Balance Sheet as at 31st December.

HEAD OFFICE BOOKS LIVERPOOL CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------------|-------------|
| To Balance c/d. | 565 | By Balance b/f. | 390 |
| | | " Stock in transit | 75 |
| | | " Cash in transit | 100 |
| | <u>£565</u> | | <u>£565</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 565 |

SHEFFIELD CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------|----------------|
| To Balance b/f. | £ 27,140 | By Cash in transit | £ 500 |
| | | „ Stock in transit | 300 |
| | | „ Balance c/d. | 26,340 |
| | <u>£27,140</u> | | <u>£27,140</u> |

To Balance b/d. 26,340

CASH IN TRANSIT

| | |
|------------------------------|-------|
| To Liverpool Current Account | £ 100 |
| „ Sheffield Current Account | 500 |

STOCK IN TRANSIT

| | |
|------------------------------|------|
| To Liverpool Current Account | £ 75 |
| „ Sheffield Current Account | 300 |

LIVERPOOL BOOKS
SHEFFIELD CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | |
|--------------------|------|
| By Balance b/f. | £ 70 |
| „ Stock in transit | 150 |

STOCK IN TRANSIT

| | |
|------------------------------|-------|
| To Sheffield Current Account | £ 150 |
|------------------------------|-------|

HEAD OFFICE CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | |
|-----------------|-------|
| To Balance b/f. | £ 565 |
|-----------------|-------|

SHEFFIELD BOOKS
HEAD OFFICE CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | |
|-----------------|----------|
| By Balance b/f. | £ 26,340 |
|-----------------|----------|

LIVERPOOL CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | |
|-----------------|-------|
| To Balance b/f. | £ 220 |
|-----------------|-------|

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| Authorised and Issued Share Capital: 100,000 Shares of £1 each fully paid | £ 100,000 | Plant and Machinery | £ 20,470 |
| Profit and Loss Account: | | Stock: | |
| Balance at 1st Jan. | 1,750 | London | 36,250 |
| Add Profit for year | 9,250 | Liverpool | 3,505 |
| | <u>11,000</u> | Sheffield | 5,200 |
| | | Stock in transit | 525 |
| | 111,000 | | <u>45,480</u> |
| Creditors: | | Debtors: | |
| London | 6,000 | London | 42,500 |
| Liverpool | 1,750 | Liverpool | 1,750 |
| Sheffield | 5,050 | Sheffield | 3,250 |
| | <u>12,800</u> | | <u>47,500</u> |
| Bank Overdraft: | | Cash at Bank: | |
| Liverpool | 4,000 | London | 11,500 |
| | | Sheffield | 2,250 |
| | | Cash in transit | 600 |
| | <u>£127,800</u> | | <u>14,350</u> |
| | | | <u>£127,800</u> |

In some cases it is more convenient to keep the accounts for fixed assets of the branch, such as land, buildings, plant and machinery, etc., in the head office books rather than in the branch books. If this system is adopted, the branch should be charged with depreciation on these assets, the Head Office Account in the branch books being credited, and Depreciation Account debited with the amount thereof. In the head office books the asset accounts concerned will be credited and the Branch Current Account debited with the amount of the depreciation. The transaction is equivalent to a transfer of value from the head office to the branch, which, in the head office books, must be charged to the branch and credited to the account giving the value, and in the branch books must be credited to the head office and debited to the account receiving the value.

In combining the final accounts of a business where there are only one or two branches, it is frequently found convenient to show the accounts in columnar form, columns being provided for the head office, for each branch, and for the total figures. When this is done, care should be taken to see that the amount of sales from the head office to branches, and the amount of purchases by branches from head office, together with any similar transactions as between the branches themselves, are not extended into the total column, otherwise the total figures will be unduly swollen by the inclusion of transactions which merely represent internal transfers and have no relation to the actual turnover. If the Balance Sheet is in columnar form, it will be necessary to include the balances of the Current Accounts between the head office and branches in the columns to which they relate, in order that the totals of these columns shall agree, but these Current Account balances must not be extended, since they represent the net assets or liabilities at the branches, which have already been included in the total columns.

When inter-branch transactions occur, each branch must have a Current Account for the branch with which the transactions are effected, and these accounts must be agreed at the end of each period in the same manner as the Current Accounts between the head office and branches.

Illustration (3)

A, B, and C are partners in a firm having separate businesses in London, Edinburgh, and Dublin. A manages in London, and receives two-thirds of the profits there, the balance being shared equally between B and C. B manages in Edinburgh, and receives half of the profits there, the balance being shared equally between A and C. C manages in Dublin, and receives one-third of the profits there, the balance being shared equally between A and B. The Capital Account of each partner is kept in the books of his branch. Each branch from time to time buys from and sells to the other branches at agreed rates sufficient to give the selling branch a reasonable profit on the handling of the goods, and such transactions have been adjusted through the Current Accounts.

From the following Trial Balances of the respective branches, prepare Columnar Trading and Profit and Loss Account for the year ended 31st December, and Columnar Balance Sheet as at that date. It is agreed that the special legal expenses incurred in London shall be borne by the three branches equally. Show the Current Accounts and Partners' Capital

Accounts in the books of each branch. Interest on capital to be charged at 5 per cent. per annum, but no interest on drawings. Provide depreciation on plant and machinery at 10 per cent. per annum. Closing stocks: London, £14,000; Edinburgh, £11,500; Dublin, £7,500.

TRIAL BALANCES, 31ST DECEMBER

| Debit Balances | London | Edinburgh | Dublin | Credit Balances | London | Edinburgh | Dublin |
|---------------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| | £ | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ |
| Stock 1st January .. | 15,000 | 10,000 | 7,000 | Sales .. | 57,000 | 39,000 | 25,000 |
| Purchases .. | 40,000 | 25,000 | 12,000 | Do. Internal .. | 7,000 | 2,500 | 1,500 |
| Do. Internal .. | 1,000 | 4,000 | 6,000 | Creditors .. | 16,800 | 7,000 | 7,600 |
| Wages .. | 5,000 | 3,500 | 2,500 | Current Accounts: | | | |
| Trade Expenses .. | 4,900 | 2,900 | 1,550 | London .. | | 3,000 | 2,000 |
| Special Legal Expenses .. | 600 | | | Dublin .. | | 1,000 | |
| Plant .. | 7,000 | 4,000 | 3,000 | Capital Accounts: | | | |
| Debtors .. | 17,800 | 8,600 | 6,550 | A .. | 20,000 | | |
| Current Accounts: | | | | B .. | | 8,000 | |
| Edinburgh .. | 3,000 | | 1,000 | C .. | | | 5,000 |
| Dublin .. | 2,000 | | | | | | |
| Cash .. | 2,500 | 1,500 | 500 | | | | |
| Drawing Accounts: | | | | | | | |
| A .. | 2,000 | | | | | | |
| B .. | | 1,000 | | | | | |
| C .. | | | 1,000 | | | | |
| | <u>£100,800</u> | <u>£60,500</u> | <u>£41,100</u> | | <u>£100,800</u> | <u>£60,500</u> | <u>£41,100</u> |

GENERAL TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | London | Edinburgh | Dublin | TOTAL | | London | Edinburgh | Dublin | TOTAL |
|---------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| | £ | £ | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| To Stock 1st Jan. .. | 15,000 | 10,000 | 7,000 | 32,000 | By Sales .. | 57,000 | 39,000 | 25,000 | 121,000 |
| Purchases .. | 40,000 | 25,000 | 12,000 | 77,000 | Do. Internal .. | 7,000 | 2,500 | 1,500 | — |
| Do. Internal .. | 1,000 | 4,000 | 6,000 | — | Stock, 31st December | 14,000 | 11,500 | 7,500 | 33,000 |
| Wages .. | 5,000 | 3,500 | 2,500 | 1,000 | | | | | |
| Gross Profit c/d... | 17,000 | 10,500 | 6,500 | 34,000 | | | | | |
| | <u>£78,000</u> | <u>£53,000</u> | <u>£34,000</u> | <u>£154,000</u> | | <u>£78,000</u> | <u>£53,000</u> | <u>£34,000</u> | <u>£154,000</u> |
| To Trade Expenses .. | 4,900 | 2,900 | 1,550 | 9,350 | By Gross Profit b/d. . | 17,000 | 10,500 | 6,500 | 34,000 |
| Special Legal Expenses .. | 200 | 200 | 200 | 600 | | | | | |
| Depreciation .. | 700 | 400 | 300 | 1,400 | | | | | |
| Interest on Capital .. | 1,000 | 400 | 250 | 1,650 | | | | | |
| Net Profit c/d. . | 10,200 | 6,600 | 4,200 | 21,000 | | | | | |
| | <u>£17,000</u> | <u>£10,500</u> | <u>£6,500</u> | <u>£34,000</u> | | <u>£17,000</u> | <u>£10,500</u> | <u>£6,500</u> | <u>£34,000</u> |
| To A .. | 6,800 | 1,650 | 1,400 | 9,850 | By Balance b/d. . | 10,200 | 6,600 | 4,200 | 21,000 |
| B .. | 1,700 | 3,300 | 1,400 | 6,400 | | | | | |
| C .. | 1,700 | 1,650 | 1,400 | 4,750 | | | | | |
| | <u>£10,200</u> | <u>£6,600</u> | <u>£4,200</u> | <u>£21,000</u> | | <u>£10,200</u> | <u>£6,600</u> | <u>£4,200</u> | <u>£21,000</u> |

LONDON BOOKS
A CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|----------------|
| To Drawings .. | 2,000 | By Balance b/f. . | 20,000 |
| Balance c/d. . | 28,850 | Interest on Capital .. | 1,000 |
| | | Profit and Loss Account: | |
| | | London Profit .. | 6,800 |
| | | Edinburgh Profit .. | 1,650 |
| | | Dublin Profit .. | 1,400 |
| | <u>£30,850</u> | | <u>£30,850</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. . | 28,850 |

EDINBURGH CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| To Balance b/f. | 3,000 | By Profit and Loss Account: | |
| „ A, Edinburgh Profit | 1,650 | London Profit, B | 1,700 |
| „ Law Charges | 200 | „ Balance c/d. | 3,150 |
| | <u>£4,850</u> | | <u>£4,850</u> |

To Balance b/d. 3,150

DUBLIN CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| To Balance b/f. | 2,000 | By Profit and Loss Account: | |
| „ A, Dublin Profit | 1,400 | London Profit, C | 1,700 |
| „ Law Charges | 200 | „ Balance c/d. | 1,900 |
| | <u>£3,600</u> | | <u>£3,600</u> |

To Balance b/d. 1,900

EDINBURGH BOOKS
B CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------|----------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| To Drawings | 1,000 | By Balance b/f. | 8,000 |
| „ Balance c/d. | 13,800 | „ Interest on Capital | 400 |
| | | „ Profit and Loss Account: | |
| | | Edinburgh Profit | 3,300 |
| | | London Profit | 1,700 |
| | | Dublin Profit | 1,400 |
| | <u>£14,800</u> | | <u>£14,800</u> |

By Balance b/d. 13,800

LONDON CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------|---------------|----------------------------|---------------|
| To B, London Profit | 1,700 | By Balance b/f | 3,000 |
| „ Balance c/d. | 3,150 | „ Law Charges | 200 |
| | | „ Profit and Loss Account: | |
| | | Edinburgh Profit, A | 1,650 |
| | <u>£4,850</u> | | <u>£4,850</u> |

By Balance b/d. 3,150

DUBLIN CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------|---------------|----------------------------|---------------|
| To B, Dublin Profit | 1,400 | By Balance b/f. | 1,000 |
| „ Balance c/d. | 1,250 | „ Profit and Loss Account: | |
| | | Edinburgh Profit, C | 1,650 |
| | <u>£2,650</u> | | <u>£2,650</u> |

By Balance b/d. 1,250

DUBLIN BOOKS
C CAPITAL ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------|----------------|----------------------------|----------------|
| To Drawings | 1,000 | By Balance b/f | 5,000 |
| „ Balance c/d. | 9,000 | „ Interest on Capital | 250 |
| | | „ Profit and Loss Account: | |
| | | Dublin Profit | 1,400 |
| | | London Profit | 1,700 |
| | | Edinburgh Profit | 1,650 |
| | <u>£10,000</u> | | <u>£10,000</u> |

By Balance b/d. 9,000

LONDON CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------------------|--------|-------|----------------------------|--------|-------|
| To C, London Profit | £ | 1,700 | By Balance b/f. | £ | 2,000 |
| „ Balance c/d. | £ | 1,900 | „ Law Charges | £ | 200 |
| | | | „ Profit and Loss Account: | | |
| | | | Dublin Profit, A | £ | 1,400 |
| | £3,600 | | | £3,600 | |
| | | | By Balance b/d. | £ | 1,900 |

EDINBURGH CURRENT ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------|-------|-----------------------------|--------|-------|
| To Balance b/f. | £ | 1,000 | By Profit and Loss Account: | £ | |
| „ C, Edinburgh Profit | £ | 1,650 | Dublin Profit B | £ | 1,400 |
| | | | „ Balance c/d. | £ | 1,250 |
| | £2,650 | | | £2,650 | |
| To Balance b/d. | £ | 1,250 | | | |

A, B AND C
BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31st DECEMBER

| | London | Edinburgh | Dublin | Total | | London | Edinburgh | Dublin | Total |
|-------------------|---------|-----------|---------|---------|-------------------|---------|-----------|---------|---------|
| | £ | £ | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| Creditors | 16,800 | 7,000 | 7,600 | 31,400 | Plant | 6,300 | 3,600 | 2,700 | 12,600 |
| Current Accounts: | | | | | Stock | 14,000 | 11,500 | 7,500 | 33,000 |
| London | | 3,150 | 1,900 | | Debtors | 17,800 | 8,600 | 6,550 | 32,950 |
| Dublin | | 1,250 | | | Current Accounts: | | | | |
| Capital Accounts: | | | | | Edinburgh | 3,150 | | 1,250 | |
| A | 28,850 | | | 28,850 | Dublin | 1,900 | | | |
| B | | 13,800 | | 13,800 | Cash | 2,500 | 1,500 | 500 | 4,500 |
| C | | | 9,000 | 9,000 | | | | | |
| | £45,650 | £25,200 | £18,500 | £83,050 | | £45,650 | £25,200 | £18,500 | £83,050 |

Note

It will be observed that A's Capital Account, which appears in the London books, is credited with A's share of the Edinburgh and the Dublin profits, the Edinburgh and Dublin Current Accounts in the London books being debited. By these entries, the Edinburgh and Dublin branches become indebted to London for the London partner's share of their profits. The corresponding entries in the branch books are a credit to the London Current Account and a debit to Profit and Loss Account.

Similar entries are made in the respective books to record the fact that each of the branch partners is entitled to a share of the profits of the head office and of the other branch.

It will sometimes be found that although the branch keeps a complete set of books, the Capital and Current Accounts of the resident partner, as well as the fixed asset accounts of the branch, are kept in the head office books. Since no entries can be made direct from one set of books to another, all payments by the branch which have to be debited to accounts in the head office books, and *vice versa*, must be passed through the Current Accounts.

Illustration (4)

P and Q carry on a retail business in partnership. The business comprises two shops, one at London managed by P, and the other at Birmingham managed by Q. Each shop keeps complete double-entry books working up to a Profit and Loss Account, but accounts relating to capital and fixed assets are all kept in the London books.

Each partner takes half the net working profit of the shop he manages and the balance of revenue is divided between P and Q in the ratio of 3 to 2. No interest is allowed on the partners' capital, drawing or current accounts, but each shop is charged by way of rent with an amount equal to 5 per cent. on the book value of the shop buildings, this amount being credited to General Profit and Loss Account as interest.

The following were the trial balances extracted from the two sets of books as on 31st December, 19...

| | London | | Birmingham | |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------|---------|------------|---------|
| | Dr. | Cr. | Dr. | Cr. |
| | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| P -- Capital Account | | 35,000 | | |
| Current Account, 1st January | | 1,351 | | |
| Drawings | 4,200 | | | |
| Q -- Capital Account | | 19,000 | | |
| Current Account, 1st January | | 708 | | |
| Drawings | | | 2,700 | |
| Freehold Buildings: | | | | |
| London | 16,000 | | | |
| Birmingham | 10,500 | | | |
| Fixtures and Fittings, 1st January: | | | | |
| London | 1,660 | | | |
| Birmingham | 1,380 | | | |
| Fixtures and Fittings added during year | | | 70 | |
| Stock-in-Trade, 1st January | 10,510 | | 8,305 | |
| Purchases, less Returns | 25,251 | | 6,028 | |
| Sales, less Returns | | 25,480 | | 18,310 |
| Bought Ledger Balances | 12 | 615 | | 261 |
| Sales Ledger Balances | 4,070 | 48 | 2,862 | 17 |
| Salaries and Wages | 1,806 | | 1,266 | |
| Sundry Trade Expenses | 1,533 | | 1,146 | |
| Expenses accrued | | 107 | | 62 |
| Birmingham Current Account, 1st January | 11,997 | | | |
| London Current Account, 1st January | | | | 11,997 |
| Remittances during year | | 7,850 | 7,950 | |
| Cash at Bank and in Hand | 1,240 | | 320 | |
| | £90,159 | £90,159 | £30,647 | £30,647 |

Stocks on hand on 31st December were valued as follows: London, £12,330, Birmingham, £6,720.

During the year goods valued in all at £5,350 (at cost) had been forwarded by London to Birmingham, no entry in respect of these having been made in the books.

The discrepancy between the Remittances Accounts arose through a cheque for £100 being in the post at the end of the year.

£100 is to be provided for depreciation of the fixtures and fittings at London and £80 at Birmingham.

You are required to set out:

- (1) Final Accounts of the business to 31st December, and
- (2) The Birmingham Current Account in the London books.
- (3) The London Current Account in the Birmingham books.

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNTS FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19..

| | London | B'ham | Total | | London | B'ham | Total |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| | £ | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ |
| To Stocks, 1st January .. | 10,510 | 8,305 | 18,815 | By Sales, <i>less</i> Returns .. | 25,480 | 18,310 | 43,790 |
| .. Purchases, <i>less</i> Returns .. | 25,251 | 6,028 | 31,279 | .. Transfer to Birmingham .. | 5,350 | — | — |
| .. Transfer from London .. | — | 5,350 | — | .. Stocks, 31st December .. | 12,330 | 6,720 | 19,050 |
| .. Gross Profits, c/d. . . | 7,399 | 5,347 | 12,746 | | | | |
| | <u>£43,160</u> | <u>£25,030</u> | <u>£62,840</u> | | <u>£43,160</u> | <u>£25,030</u> | <u>£62,840</u> |
| To Rent | 800 | 525 | 1,325 | By Gross Profits, b/d. . . | 7,399 | 5,347 | 12,746 |
| .. Salaries and Wages .. | 1,806 | 1,266 | 3,072 | | | | |
| .. Sundry Trade Expenses .. | 1,533 | 1,146 | 2,679 | | | | |
| .. Depreciation of Fixtures and Fittings .. | 100 | 80 | 180 | | | | |
| .. Net Profits, c/d. . . | 3,160 | 2,330 | 5,490 | | | | |
| | <u>£7,399</u> | <u>£5,347</u> | <u>£12,746</u> | | <u>£7,399</u> | <u>£5,347</u> | <u>£12,746</u> |
| To Division of Profits: | | | | By Net Profits, b/d.: | | | |
| P × £3,160 | 1,580 | | | London | | | 3,160 |
| Q × £4,070 | 2,442 | | | Birmingham | | | 2,330 |
| | | | 4,022 | .. Charges in lieu of rent: | | | |
| Q × £2,330 | | 1,165 | | London | | | 800 |
| Q × £4,070 | | 1,628 | | Birmingham | | | 525 |
| | | | 2,793 | | | | |
| | | | <u>£6,815</u> | | | | <u>£6,815</u> |

P AND Q

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER, 19..

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ |
|------------------------------|---------------|-------------|---------------------------------|-------|--------|----------------|
| Capital Accounts | | | Freehold Buildings: | | | |
| P | 35,000 | | London | | 16,000 | |
| Q | 19,000 | | Birmingham | | 10,500 | |
| | | 54,000 | | | | 26,500 |
| Current Accounts. | P | Q | Fixtures and Fittings as at 1st | | | |
| Balance 1st January .. | 1,351 | 708 | January: | | | |
| Share of Profit | 4,022 | 2,793 | London | 1,660 | | |
| | | | <i>Less</i> Depreciation .. | 100 | | |
| <i>Less</i> Drawings | 5,373 | 3,501 | | | 1,560 | |
| | 4,200 | 2,700 | Birmingham | 1,380 | | |
| | <u>£1,173</u> | <u>£801</u> | Additions | 70 | | |
| | | | | 1,450 | | |
| | | | <i>Less</i> Depreciation .. | 80 | | |
| Sundry Creditors | | | | | 1,370 | |
| London | 770 | | | | | 2,930 |
| Birmingham | 340 | | Stock in Trade: | | | |
| | | 1,110 | London | | 12,330 | |
| | | | Birmingham | | 6,720 | |
| | | | | | | 19,050 |
| | | | Sundry Debtors: | | | |
| | | | London | | 4,082 | |
| | | | Birmingham | | 2,862 | |
| | | | | | | 6,944 |
| | | | Cash at Bank and in Hand: | | | |
| | | | London | | 1,240 | |
| | | | Birmingham | | 320 | |
| | | | | | | |
| | | | In transit | | 1,560 | |
| | | | | | 100 | |
| | | | | | | 1,660 |
| | | | | | | <u>£57,084</u> |
| | | | | | | <u>£57,084</u> |

BIRMINGHAM CURRENT ACCOUNT IN LONDON BOOKS

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/f. | 11,997 | Dec. 31 By Q, Current Account, Drawings .. | 2,700 |
| Dec. 31 .. Trading Account: | | Fixtures and Fittings Account: | |
| Goods to Birmingham | 5,350 | Additions during year | 70 |
| Fixtures Account - Depreciation .. | 80 | Cash | 7,850 |
| Profit and Loss Account - Charge in lieu of Rent | 525 | Cash in transit c/f. | 100 |
| Net Profit | 2,330 | Balance c/f. | 9,562 |
| | <u>£20,282</u> | | <u>£20,282</u> |

LONDON CURRENT ACCOUNT IN BIRMINGHAM BOOKS

| | £ | | £ |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Dec. 31 To Cash - Remittances | 7,950 | Jan. 1 By Balance b/f. | 11,997 |
| " " Q's Drawings | 2,700 | Dec. 31 " Trading Account - Goods from London .. | 5,350 |
| " " Purchase of Fixtures | 70 | " Profit and Loss Account: | |
| " Balance c/f. | 9,562 | Depreciation of Fixtures | 80 |
| | | Charge in lieu of Rent | 525 |
| | | Net Profit | 2,330 |
| | <u>£20,282</u> | | <u>£20,282</u> |

Notes

(1) In this case, although the Birmingham branch keeps complete double-entry books and prepares its own Profit and Loss Account, the Fixed Asset Accounts of the branch and the resident partner's Capital and Current Accounts are kept in the London books. Payments made at the branch in respect of Q's drawings and the purchase of fixed assets are therefore analogous to remittances to head office and must be debited to the London Current Account in the branch books. In the London books these amounts are credited to the Branch Current Account, and debited to Q's Current Account and Fixtures Account respectively.

Depreciation of the fixed assets is debited to Profit and Loss Account and credited to London Current Account in the Birmingham books, whilst in the London books it is debited to the Birmingham Current Account and credited to the fixed asset accounts.

The charge in lieu of rent is similarly treated in the branch books, as it represents the cost of a service received from the head office. In the London books it is debited to the Birmingham Current Account and credited to Profit and Loss Account.

(2) The balance on the Current Accounts represents the Birmingham capital, *i.e.*, the assets, less liabilities, appearing in the Birmingham books, and included in the firm's Balance Sheet, *viz.*:

| | £ |
|----------------------|---------------|
| Stock-in-Trade | 6,720 |
| Sundry Debtors | 2,862 |
| Cash | 320 |
| | <u>9,902</u> |
| Less Creditors | 340 |
| | <u>£9,562</u> |

It may be desired to record in the head office books at the end of each accounting period the whole of the revenue balances of the branch instead of merely the final balance of the Branch Profit and Loss Account. In this manner the head office revenue accounts will reveal the position of the business as a whole, and by extracting a Trial Balance from the head office books, a combined Trading and Profit and Loss Account of the head office and branch can be prepared.

Illustration (5)

The undermentioned trial balance, extracted from the books of its branch, is received by the X Trading Co. Ltd.

Show by journal entries the incorporation of the revenue balances in the books of the head office.

TRIAL BALANCE, 31ST DECEMBER, 19..

| | £ | £ |
|------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Head Office Account | | 10,192 |
| Freehold Premises | 15,000 | |
| Stock, 1st January | 10,164 | |
| Purchases | 35,649 | |
| Goods from Head Office | 10,500 | |
| Bank Interest | | 20 |
| Wages | 5,642 | |
| Rates, Insurance, etc. | 1,520 | |
| Salaries and Office Expenses | 3,192 | |
| Advertising | 3,429 | |
| Sundry Debtors | 4,439 | |
| Rents Receivable | | 200 |
| Sundry Creditors | | 5,684 |
| Sales | | 75,326 |
| Cash at Bank and in Hand | 1,887 | |
| | <u>£91,422</u> | <u>£91,422</u> |

Stock, 31st December £8,392

JOURNAL

| | Dr. | £ | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------|----------------|
| Sundries | | | |
| To Sundries: | | | |
| Stock | | 10,164 | |
| Purchases | | 35,649 | |
| Goods sent to Branch Account | | 10,500 | |
| Wages | | 5,642 | |
| Rates, Insurance, etc. | | 1,520 | |
| Salaries and Office Expenses | | 3,192 | |
| Advertising | | 3,429 | |
| Branch Account | | 5,450 | |
| Sales | | | 75,326 |
| Bank Interest | | | 20 |
| Rents Receivable | | | 200 |
| | | <u>£75,546</u> | <u>£75,546</u> |
| Incorporation of branch trading transactions for the year ended 31st December, 19.. | | | |
| Branch Account | Dr. | 8,392 | |
| To Trading Account | | | 8,392 |
| Branch Stock at 31st December, 19.. | | | |

The Branch Account in the head office books, will now appear as under:

BRANCH ACCOUNT

| 19.. | £ | 19.. | £ |
|---------------------------|----------------|------------------------|----------------|
| Dec. 31 To Balance b/f | 10,192 | Dec. 31 By Balance c/f | 24,034 |
| " Sundries | 5,450 | | |
| " Trading Account - Stock | 8,392 | | |
| | <u>£24,034</u> | | <u>£24,034</u> |
| 19.. | | | |
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/d | 24,034 | | |

The above balance will be represented by the branch assets and liabilities, as under:

| | £ |
|--------------------------|----------------|
| Freehold Premises | 15,000 |
| Stock | 8,392 |
| Cash at Bank and in hand | 1,887 |
| Sundry Debtors | 4,439 |
| | <u>29,718</u> |
| Less Sundry Creditors | 5,684 |
| | <u>£24,034</u> |

Note

It will be observed that the effect of the above entries is to debit the Branch Account with the net profit made by the branch for the year. The separate Branch Trading and Profit and Loss Account would have appeared as under:

BRANCH TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19..

| | | | |
|----------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|----------------|
| To Stock, 1st January | £ 10,164 | By Sales | £ 75,326 |
| " Purchases | 35,649 | " Stock, 31st December | 8,392 |
| " Goods from Head Office | 10,500 | | |
| " Gross Profit c/d. | 27,405 | | |
| | <u>£83,718</u> | | <u>£83,718</u> |
| To Wages | 5,642 | By Gross Profit b/d. | 27,405 |
| " Salaries and Office Expenses | 3,192 | " Bank Interest | 20 |
| " Rates, Insurance, etc. | 1,520 | " Rents Receivable | 200 |
| " Advertising | 3,429 | | |
| " Net Profit | 13,842 | | |
| | <u>£27,625</u> | | <u>£27,625</u> |

The closing balance on the Branch Account shown above is reconciled as under:

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| | £ |
| Balance brought forward | 10,192 |
| Profit as per above account | 13,842 |
| | <u>£24,034</u> |
| Closing balance | <u>£24,034</u> |

As the branch revenue balances are amalgamated with those of the head office, the goods from head office must be debited to Goods sent to Branch Account in the head office books in order to eliminate the internal transfer. It will be appreciated that these goods are already included in the head office purchases.

§ 5. Foreign Exchanges

Foreign exchange is a term which denotes:

- (1) the exchange of the currency of one country for the currency of another country;
and
- (2) the means whereby such exchange is effected.

If the list of foreign exchange quotations set out in any newspaper is examined it will be seen that:

- (1) Certain quotations are in terms of the number of units of foreign currency which are equivalent to the £. These quotations are usually called 'Currency' or 'Movable'. Examples are Italy (lire to the £), Belgium (francs to the £), and the United States (dollars to the £).
- (2) Other quotations are in terms of the amount of sterling which is equivalent to one unit of foreign currency. These quotations are usually called 'Pence' or 'Fixed'. Examples are India (pence to the rupee), Japan (pence to the yen), and China (pence to the dollar).

The terms 'Currency or Movable' and 'Pence or Fixed' refer *only* to the *method* of quoting which is employed, and do *not* refer in any way to the presence or absence of *fluctuation* in the quoted rates. They are alternative methods of expressing the same fact.

The distinction between these two methods of quoting must be kept clearly in mind, as a *rise* in a 'Fixed' quotation has the same effect as a *fall* in a 'Movable' quotation, and a *fall* in a 'Fixed' quotation has the same effect as a *rise* in a 'Movable' quotation.

Each country has its own currency. This is the case even where the units of currency of two or more countries have the same designation. South African pounds, Australian pounds and English pounds must each be kept quite distinct in the mind. A debtor, whose obligation is payable in Australian pounds, cannot be required to discharge his liability in English pounds.

The pound sterling is legal tender in this country only and not elsewhere. Similarly, the Belgian franc is legal tender in Belgium but is not generally acceptable in discharge of a debt payable in this country in terms of sterling.

It is apparent, therefore, that where transactions are entered into between persons or firms in different countries certain complications may arise by reason of exchange fluctuations. If, for example, A buys goods from B in France at an agreed sterling price, any fluctuation in the franc rate will not concern A, but it will affect the franc value of the sterling received by B. Where, therefore, a trader purchases or sells goods in a currency other than his own, unless the transaction is left unrecorded until the sterling figure is known, some adjustment will be required when payment is actually made or received. This adjustment will be in respect of the difference between the figures recorded in sterling at the time the transaction is entered into and the actual sterling figures which result when the transaction is completed, and will represent a profit or loss on exchange.

Illustration

A in London purchases goods from B & Company in Ruritania, for 130,000 crowns. B & Company's accounts in A's ledger shows a credit balance of £1,000, A having converted the crowns into sterling at the rate of 130.000. A desires to pay B & Company, and for that purpose purchases in London a draft on Ruritania for 130,000 crowns, at the rate of 131.00.

Make the entries in A's Books, posting up and balancing off B & Company's Account.

A'S BOOKS B & COMPANY'S ACCOUNT

| | Crowns | Sterling £ s. d. | | Crowns | Sterling £ s. d. |
|--------------------------|----------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| To Cash for Draft ... | 130,000 | 992 7 4 | By Balance b/f. ... | 130,000 | 1,000 0 0 |
| „ Profit on Exchange ... | | 7 12 8 | | | |
| | <u>130,000</u> | <u>£1,000 0 0</u> | | <u>130,000</u> | <u>£1,000 0 0</u> |

§ 6. Foreign Branches

Where branches of a business are situated abroad and are of a trading or manufacturing nature, it will usually be found necessary to keep the whole of the detail accounts at the branch, and consequently the system described in § 4 will be applied.

The Branch Account in the head office books should be ruled with two columns, one for the foreign currency and the other for sterling. The entries in the currency

columns will be memoranda only, but are necessary to facilitate reconciliation with the Head Office Account in the branch books which, of course, will record the transactions in the currency of the country in which the branch is situated.

At the conclusion of an accounting period the branch will forward to its head office a copy of its Trading and Profit and Loss Account, and of its Balance Sheet, together with a detailed copy of its Head Office Account. It will be necessary to incorporate the results shown by the branch accounts in the accounts of the head office in the same manner as that described in § 4, but before this can be done the branch figures, which are in local currency, must be converted into sterling.

The rate or rates of exchange at which the branch assets, liabilities, and revenue items are converted into sterling will depend upon whether the rate of exchange between the countries of the branch and head office is reasonably stable, or is subject to material fluctuation. It will be apparent that a method suitable where little or no fluctuation in the rate of exchange takes place would yield most unsatisfactory results in those cases where exchange fluctuations are considerable.

(a) Branches working on a fixed rate of exchange

Where the rate of exchange between the countries of the head office and branch is so stable that fluctuations can be disregarded, it is usual to convert all branch balances, except remittances of cash, into sterling at a fixed rate of exchange, and as a result a difference on exchange will only arise in connection with the remittances of cash to and from the branch, which will be converted at their actual cost or at the amount of sterling realised.

The currency balance on the Head Office Account will be automatically converted by inserting in its place in the converted Trial Balance the sterling balance appearing on the Branch Account in the head office books. The difference between the conversion of remittances at the actual and fixed rates respectively will represent profit or loss on exchange, and will be debited or credited to the Branch Account in the head office books, and credited or debited to Difference on Exchange Account.

Illustration

The following are the final balances of a branch in Illyria at 31st December. Convert at the fixed rate of exchange of \$4.90 to the £. The cash remitted from Illyria appeared in the London books as £98 6s. 6d. Make the necessary adjustments in the London books by journal entry, and show the Branch Account in the London books, and the London Account in the branch books.

FINAL BALANCES, 31ST DECEMBER

| | | |
|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Cash at Bank | 1,161-25 | |
| Cash in Hand | 109-59 | |
| Stock, 31st December | 5,387-02 | |
| Plant | 4,931-94 | |
| Office Furniture | 470-59 | |
| Provision for Bad Debt | | 810-82 |
| Land and Premises | 11,524-75 | |
| Debtors | 8,389-49 | |
| Profit and Loss Account - Profit for year | | 991-04 |
| Creditors | | 10,935-45 |
| Remittances to London | 480-19 | |
| Head Office Account - Balance at 1st January | | 19,717-51 |
| | \$32,454-82 | \$32,454-82 |

RULE FOR CONVERTING CURRENCY INTO STERLING WHEN THE RATE IS PER £

Divide the currency figure by the rate of exchange, and the quotient will be £ sterling: the decimal remainder must then be converted into shillings and pence.

FINAL BALANCES, 31ST DECEMBER, CONVERTED AT \$4.90 PER £

| | £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------|----------|---------------|-----------|----------|
| Cash at Bank | 236 | 19 | 9 | | | |
| Cash in Hand | 22 | 7 | 4 | | | |
| Stock 31st December | 1,099 | 7 | 10 | | | |
| Plant | 1,096 | 10 | 4 | | | |
| Office Furniture | 96 | 0 | 9 | | | |
| Provision for Bad Debts | | | | 165 | 9 | 6 |
| Land and Premises | 2,351 | 19 | 9 | | | |
| Debtors | 1,712 | 2 | 10 | | | |
| Profit and Loss Account - Profit for year | | | | 202 | 5 | 1 |
| Creditors | | | | 2,231 | 14 | 6 |
| Remittances to London (actual rate) | 98 | 6 | 6 | | | |
| Head Office Account - Balance at 1st January | | | | 4,023 | 19 | 7 |
| Difference in Exchange (Profit) | | | | | 6 | 5 |
| | <u>£6,623</u> | <u>15</u> | <u>1</u> | <u>£6,623</u> | <u>15</u> | <u>1</u> |

LONDON JOURNAL

| | | £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. | |
|---------|----------------------------------------------|-----|-----|----|---|-----|----|---|
| Dec. 31 | Illyria Current Account | Dr | | 6 | 5 | | | |
| | To Difference on Exchange Account | | | | | 6 | 5 | |
| | Being difference in exchange on remittances. | | | | | | | |
| Dec. 31 | Illyria Current Account | Dr. | 202 | 5 | 1 | | | |
| | To Profit and Loss Account | | | | | 202 | 5 | 1 |
| | Being 991 04 profit for year @ \$4.90 per £. | | | | | | | |

LONDON LEDGER
ILLYRIA ACCOUNT

| | Dollars | Sterling | | Dollars | Sterling |
|----------------------------------|------------------|--------------------|------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| | | £ s. d. | | | £ s. d. |
| Jan. 1 To Balance | 19,717 51 | 4,023 19 7 | Dec. 31 By Remittances | 480-19 | 98 6 6 |
| Dec. 31 " Difference on Exchange | | 6 5 | " Balance | 20,228 36 | 4,128 4 7 |
| " Profit and Loss Account: | | | | | |
| Profit for year | 991-04 | 202 5 1 | | | |
| | <u>20,708 55</u> | <u>£4,226 11 1</u> | | <u>£20,708 55</u> | <u>£4,226 11 1</u> |
| Jan. 1 To Balance | 20,228 36 | 4,128 4 7 | | | |

ILLYRIA LEDGER
LONDON ACCOUNT

| | Dollars | | Dollars |
|------------------------|------------------|------------------------------------|------------------|
| Dec. 31 To Remittances | 480 19 | Jan. 1 By Balance | 19,717 51 |
| " Balance | 20,228 36 | Dec. 31 " Profit and Loss Account: | |
| | | Profit for year | 991 04 |
| | <u>20,708 55</u> | | <u>20,708 55</u> |
| | | Jan. 1 By Balance | 20,228 36 |

Note

It is not usual to provide memoranda sterling columns in the branch books, though this can be done if desired.

(b) Branches working on a fluctuating rate of exchange

Where the exchange is of such a fluctuating nature that to work on a fixed basis would give a misleading result, the branch balances are usually converted on the following principles:

(1) *Fixed assets* at the rate prevailing when they were purchased (if they were purchased from currency funds) or at the actual cost of a remittance sent by head office for the purpose of the purchase. Renewals of, and additions to, fixed assets will be converted on the same principle, but where small additions are made throughout the year the average rate for the year could be used therefor. It may also be necessary to take an average for a period where major additions are paid for by instalments.

The charge for depreciation of fixed assets must be converted at the same rate as the assets concerned.

It is obvious that a fixed asset, having been converted at a rate that remains in force from year to year, so far as that asset is concerned, the depreciation must be converted at the same rate, if the sterling value is to be written off or reduced to scrap value over the requisite period. Where exchanges have fluctuated greatly, however, it may be necessary, in order to avoid misleading results, to charge the depreciation to Profit and Loss Account at the average rate for the period. Any difference between the amount so charged and the amount credited to the Provision for Depreciation Account is then credited to Reserve (if a profit) or debited to the Appropriation Account (if a loss).

Illustration (1)

Fixed plant purchased for 750,000 bancos when the banco was at 75, stands in the branch books at 450,000 bancos. During the year under review, the branch wrote off 90,000 bancos depreciation. The average rate for the year was 106. How should the depreciation be converted into sterling?

For the purposes of the Asset Account, the depreciation must be converted at 75, giving a sterling figure of £1,200. For the purposes of the Profit and Loss Account, however, it would preferably be converted at 106, giving a sterling figure (approx.) of £849. Appropriation Account should be debited with the difference of £351.

It will be seen that the above treatment is accurate when it is considered that by writing off depreciation, the branch is setting aside current revenue (converted at the average rate), and if the head office does not provide an equivalent amount, the two sets of books may show grossly misleading results.

- (2) *Long-term liabilities* on the same basis as fixed assets, but a provision may become necessary to meet a fall in the value of the £ when this is permanent (*see* below).
- (3) *Current assets and liabilities* at the rate ruling at the date of the Balance Sheet, i.e., at the rate which would give the amount of sterling which would be received or paid if the assets were realised and the liabilities paid on that date.
- (4) *Revenue* balances at the average rate for the period to which they relate.
- (5) *Remittances* at their actual cost or realised sterling.

The reason why fixed assets continue to be converted at the same rate from year to year, although the exchange may vary, is that such assets remain in the country itself, and are not, in the ordinary way, subject to conversion into cash in the same manner as current assets. Even though the rate of exchange depreciates permanently, it may not be necessary to make a special provision for such loss on exchange in the case of fixed assets, if the rate at which such assets are being depreciated is a satisfactory one and will reduce their sterling cost to nil or scrap value at the end of their effective life.

Where, however, the asset will have to be replaced at the end of its effective life, a provision is desirable, and may be created by the expedient already mentioned, of charging depreciation at current rates to Profit and Loss Account. Then, when the fixed asset is replaced out of current assets, the difference on exchange will be met by the provision.

Illustration (2)

Plant was purchased for 500,000 francs when the franc stood at 200 to the £, and has been depreciated over 10 years by 50,000 francs per annum. Today the plant is replaced at a cost of 530,000 francs, the franc being quoted at 106 to the £.

In the branch books, the depreciation written off has provided 500,000 francs, leaving only 30,000 francs to be found out of capital. In the head office books, however, 530,000 francs, included therein as current assets converted at 106 = £5,000 has been capitalised, although only 500,000 francs, converted at 200 = £2,500, has been provided over the life-time of the plant. If, however, the depreciation has been provided as suggested above, at the current rates year by year, there will be a provision to meet the difference, *e.g.*, if the average rate for ten years has been 80, the position will be that Profit and Loss Account has been debited with £6,250, the Plant Account credited with £2,500, and provision with £3,750. £2,500 of the latter will meet the additional expenditure. From this it will be seen that the allocation to provision should have ceased when it amounted to the total current value of the original plant, the excess depreciation in these years being written back to the credit of Appropriation Account.

In the case of long-term liabilities which have to be repaid out of current assets, it is essential to provide out of Appropriation Account over a period of years for any permanent depreciation in sterling exchange.

Illustration (3)

A loan of 2,000,000 francs was contracted when the franc was quoted at 200 and therefore appears in the head office accounts at £10,000. The franc appreciated to 75, and later depreciated to 130. The loan is repayable shortly.

On repayment, there will be disbursed from the branch currency 2,000,000 francs, which, as current assets with the franc at 130, stand in the head office books at £15,385. If no provision has been made, there will remain a 'loss' of £5,385 in the head office books. Obviously, therefore, provision should have been made year by year as the franc appreciated (*i.e.*, sterling depreciated), to ensure that this loss does not fall on any one year. Equally obviously, the loss cannot be forecast exactly, but must be provided for as accurately as possible.

The average rate for the conversion of revenue balances will be taken either from the average of the rates published at regular intervals, or by taking the rate at a given day of each month during the period, adding such rates together and dividing the total by the number of months.

These general rules are subject to modifications in certain circumstances, *e.g.*, in connection with Stores and Stock Accounts, which it is customary to adjust on a standard basis, so that no profit or loss on exchange is written off in respect of the conversion of the stocks in hand at the end of each balancing period. It may also be necessary to 'weight' the average where an unduly large number of transactions, or transactions greatly varying in amount, have taken place during a particular period.

The branch Trial Balance will be ruled with two additional sterling columns, a further column being provided for the appropriate rate of exchange, and each item will be converted at its proper rate, with the exception of the opening balance on the Head Office Account, which will be taken at the sterling figure as shown in the last accounts. It is convenient to show the remittances and other items relating to the head office separately in the branch Trial Balance, and to leave the Head Office Current Account at its opening figure until the conversions have been made, owing to the different rates of exchange at which the various classes of item must be converted.

The sterling columns of the Trial Balance will be cast, and the difference thereon will represent the difference on exchange, which will be adjusted through the Branch Account in the head office books in the manner previously explained. If the difference is a profit, it is advisable to carry the amount forward on Exchange Provision Account, since the fluctuation of the exchange may possibly result in a loss during the succeeding period; if the difference is a loss, it should be written off to the Exchange Provision Account (if any) or to Profit and Loss Account.

Whilst in practice foreign branches would most probably prepare their own Profit and Loss Accounts locally, details of income and expenditure must be supplied to the head office to enable the conversion at the appropriate rates to be effected.

Illustration (4)

The following is the London trial balance of the Ruritania Trading Co., Ltd., at 31st December:

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|--------|
| Share Capital: | | | |
| Authorised, 50,000 Shares of £1 each | | | |
| Issued, 33,000 Shares fully paid | | | 33,000 |
| Office Expenses | 250 | | |
| Directors' Fees | 500 | | |
| Sundry Creditors | | | 100 |
| Salaries | 300 | | |
| Profit and Loss Account - Balance brought forward | | | 887 |
| Cash at Bank | 2,000 | | |
| Remittances from Ruritania | | | 2,750 |
| Ruritania Branch Account | 33,915 | | |
| Difference on Exchange Account - Balance at 1st January | | | 228 |
| | <u>£36,965</u> | <u>£36,965</u> | |

The following is the trial balance as at 31st December, sent to the head office by the Ruritania Branch:

| | Crowns | Crowns |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Stock as at 1st January | 65,000 | |
| Purchases | 120,000 | |
| do. Returns | | 6,000 |
| Sales | | 190,000 |
| Wages and Salaries | 18,000 | |
| Office Expenses | 15,000 | |
| Carriage and Insurance | 5,000 | |
| Bad Debts | 3,000 | |
| Depreciation, Leasehold Premises | 4,000 | |
| do. Furniture and Fittings | 500 | |
| Cash at Bank | 12,000 | |
| Sundry Creditors | | 32,000 |
| Sundry Debtors | 35,500 | |
| Leasehold Premises | 66,000 | |
| Furniture and Fittings | 2,000 | |
| Remittances to Head Office | 11,200 | |
| Head Office Account | | 129,200 |
| | <u>Cr. 357,200</u> | <u>Cr. 357,200</u> |

Stock on hand at 31st December was valued at 60,000 Crowns.

The leasehold premises were acquired when the rate of exchange was 4/10 per crown, and furniture and fittings at an average rate of 4/11. The rate ruling on 1st January was 5/3, on 31st December, 4/9, and the average rate during the year was 5/-.

Convert the foreign trial balance, showing the difference on exchange. Prepare Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet of the company, and show the Branch Account in the head office books, and the Head Office Account in the branch books.

CONVERSION OF RURITANIA TRIAL BALANCE

| | Rate of Exchange | Dr. Crowns | Cr. Crowns | Dr. Sterling | Cr. Sterling |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| | s. d. | | | £ s. d. | £ s. d. |
| Stock as at 1st January | 5 3 | 65,000 | | 17,062 10 0 | |
| Purchases | 5 0 | 120,000 | | 30,000 0 0 | |
| do. Returns | 5 0 | | 6,000 | | 1,500 0 0 |
| Sales | 5 0 | | 190,000 | | 47,500 0 0 |
| Wages and Salaries | 5 0 | 18,000 | | 4,500 0 0 | |
| Office Expenses | 5 0 | 15,000 | | 3,750 0 0 | |
| Carriage and Insurance | 5 0 | 5,000 | | 1,250 0 0 | |
| Bad Debts | 5 0 | 3,000 | | 750 0 0 | |
| Depreciation, Leasehold Premises | 4 10 | 4,000 | | 966 13 4 | |
| do. Furniture and Fittings | 4 11 | 500 | | 122 18 4 | |
| Cash at Bank | 4 9 | 12,000 | | 2,850 0 0 | |
| Sundry Creditors | 4 9 | | 32,000 | | 7,600 0 0 |
| Sundry Debtors | 4 9 | 35,500 | | 8,431 5 0 | |
| Leasehold Premises | 4 10 | 66,000 | | 15,950 0 0 | |
| Furniture and Fittings | 4 11 | 2,000 | | 491 13 4 | |
| Remittances to Head Office | | 11,200 | | 2,750 0 0 | |
| Head Office Account | | | 129,200 | | 33,915 0 0 |
| Difference on Exchange | | | | 1,640 0 0 | |
| | | <u>357,200</u> | <u>357,200</u> | <u>£90,515 0 0</u> | <u>£90,515 0 0</u> |
| Stock on Hand at 31st December | 4 9 | | 60,000 | | 14,250 0 0 |

RURITANIA BRANCH PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | | £ s. d. |
|--------------------------------------------|------------|--------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| To Stock | | 17,062 10 0 | By Sales | 47,500 0 0 |
| " Purchases | 30,000 0 0 | | " Stock | 14,250 0 0 |
| Less Returns | 1,500 0 0 | | | |
| | | 28,500 0 0 | | |
| | | 16,187 10 0 | | |
| " Balance, being Gross Profit c/d. | | <u>£61,750 0 0</u> | | <u>£61,750 0 0</u> |

RURITANIA BRANCH PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT (*continued*)

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------------------------------------------|---------|----|----|-------------------------|---------|----|----|
| To Wages and Salaries | 4,500 | 0 | 0 | By Balance b/d. | 16,187 | 10 | 0 |
| " Office Expenses | 3,750 | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| " Carriage and Insurance | 1,250 | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| " Bad Debts | 750 | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| " Depreciation, Leasehold Premises | £966 | 13 | 4 | | | | |
| " Furniture and Fittings | 122 | 18 | 4 | | | | |
| | 1,089 | 11 | 8 | | | | |
| " Balance, Net Profit at Branch c/d. .. | 4,847 | 18 | 4 | | | | |
| | £16,187 | 10 | 0 | | £16,187 | 10 | 0 |
| <hr/> | | | | <hr/> | | | |
| To London Office Expenses: | | | | | | | |
| Office Expenses | 250 | 0 | 0 | By Balance b/d | 4,847 | 18 | 4 |
| Directors' Fees | 500 | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| Salaries | 300 | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| " Difference on Exchange | 1,412 | 0 | 0 | | | | |
| " Balance, being Net Profit carried forward | 2,385 | 18 | 4 | | | | |
| | £4,847 | 18 | 4 | | £4,847 | 18 | 4 |
| | <hr/> | | | | <hr/> | | |

HEAD OFFICE BOOKS
RURITANIA BRANCH ACCOUNT

| | Crowns | Sterling | | | Crowns | Sterling |
|------------------------------------|---------|--------------|-----------------------------|---------|--------------|----------|
| | | £ s. d. | | | | £ s. d. |
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/f. .. | 129,200 | 33,915 0 0 | Dec. 31 By Remittances .. | 11,200 | 2,750 0 0 | |
| Dec. 31 " Profit and Loss Account: | | | " Difference on Exchange .. | | 1,640 0 0 | |
| Profit for Year .. | 25,500 | 4,847 18 4 | " Balance c/d. .. | 143,500 | 34,372 18 4 | |
| | 154,700 | £38,762 18 4 | | 154,700 | £38,762 18 4 | |
| | <hr/> | | | <hr/> | | |
| Jan. 1 To Balance b/d. .. | 143,500 | 34,372 18 4 | | | | |

RURITANIA BRANCH BOOKS
HEAD OFFICE ACCOUNT

| | Crowns | | | Crowns |
|---------------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|---------|--------|
| | | | | |
| Dec. 31 To Remittances .. | 11,200 | Jan. 1 By Balance b/f. .. | 129,200 | |
| " Balance c/d. .. | 143,500 | Dec. 31 " Profit and Loss Account .. | 25,500 | |
| | 154,700 | | 154,700 | |
| | <hr/> | | <hr/> | |
| | | Jan. 1 By Balance b/d. .. | 143,500 | |

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. |
|-----------------------------|--------|----|----|---------|----|----|-------------------------------|--------|----|----|---------|----|----|
| Authorised Share Capital: | | | | | | | Leasehold Premises .. | 16,916 | 13 | 4 | | | |
| 50,000 Shares of £1 each .. | 50,000 | 0 | 0 | | | | Less Depreciation for year .. | 966 | 13 | 4 | 15,950 | 0 | 0 |
| Issued Share Capital: | | | | | | | Furniture and Fittings .. | 614 | 11 | 8 | | | |
| 33,000 Shares of £1 each | | | | | | | Less Depreciation for year .. | 122 | 18 | 4 | 491 | 13 | 4 |
| fully paid | | | | 33,000 | 0 | 0 | Stock on hand | | | | 14,250 | 0 | 0 |
| Profit and Loss Account: | | | | | | | Sundry Debtors | | | | 8,431 | 5 | 0 |
| Balance at 1st Jan | 887 | 0 | 0 | | | | Cash at Bank: | | | | | | |
| Profit for year | 2,385 | 18 | 4 | | | | Ruritania | 2,850 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | | | 3,272 | 18 | 4 | London | 2,000 | 0 | 0 | 4,850 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | 36,272 | 18 | 4 | | | | | | | |
| Sundry Creditors: | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ruritania | 7,600 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| London | 100 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | 7,700 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | |
| | | | | £43,972 | 18 | 4 | | | | | £43,972 | 18 | 4 |

Notes

- (1) Since there was a loss on exchange during the year, this has been written off, after taking into account the credit balance on Difference on Exchange Account brought forward.
- (2) The currency figure representing profit for the year inserted in the Branch Account at the head office is ascertained by extracting the profit and loss items from the branch trial balance.
- (3) It should be observed that the final sterling balance of the Ruritania Branch Account does not represent the conversion of the currency balance at any of the rates given, since it is composed of various assets and liabilities converted at different rates. The sterling balance of the Branch Account must always agree with the sterling figures of the net assets at the branch concerned.
- (4) Bad debts incurred during the year must be converted into sterling at the average rate. A bad debts provision, however, created against the outstanding debtors, must be converted at the same rate as the debtors to which it relates, viz., the rate at the date of the Balance Sheet.

In the preceding illustration the opening and closing stocks have been converted at the opening and closing rates of exchange respectively, while the purchases and sales have been converted at the average rate for the period. The effect of converting Trading Account figures at different rates is to cause the gross profit in terms of sterling to be vitiated by the intrusion of exchange variations, and thereby to render the accounts less effective as a means of comparison with other periods, and of control. The practice is frequently adopted, therefore, of converting all items entering into the Trading Account either at a fixed rate, or at the average rate for the period, at the same time converting the closing stock *for the purposes of the Balance Sheet* at the rate ruling at the date of the Balance Sheet. By this means, the gross profit is not distorted by exchange fluctuations, but any difference on exchange affecting stock valuations is reflected in the Profit and Loss Account, and the correct basis of valuation of the stock is employed for the purpose of the Balance Sheet.

Illustration (5)

During the year ended 31st March, P Ltd. opened a foreign branch for the purpose of trading in the company's products. The branch converts head office invoices for goods at a fixed exchange rate of 80 unitas to the £.

The branch trial balance at 31st March was as follows:

| | | | | | | Dr. Unitas | Cr. Unitas |
|---------------------------------|----|----|----|----|----|---------------|---------------|
| Balance at Bank | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 366,400 | |
| Creditors | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 235,800 |
| Debtors | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 777,600 | |
| Local Expenses | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 754,200 | |
| Head Office Account (for goods) | | | .. | .. | .. | | 3,524,800 |
| Remittances to head office | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 2,690,000 | |
| Purchases | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | 3,524,800 | |
| Sales | .. | .. | .. | .. | .. | | 4,352,400 |
| | | | | | | U.8,113,000 | U.8,113,000 |

Stocks at 31st March, U.1,045,600.

The average rate of exchange during the period was 90, and the closing rate 100. The remittances realised £35,000.

You are required to:

- (a) prepare the converted trial balance of the branch for incorporation in the head office books;
- (b) to show the Trading and Profit and Loss Account of the branch; and
- (c) to show the Branch Account in the head office books.

(a)

BRANCH TRIAL BALANCE

| | Dr. Units | Cr. Units | Rate | Dr. £ | Cr. £ |
|----------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Balance at Bank .. | 366,400 | | 100 | 3,664 | |
| Creditors .. | | 235,800 | 100 | | 2,358 |
| Debtors .. | 777,600 | | 100 | 7,776 | |
| Local Expenses .. | 754,200 | | 90 | 8,380 | |
| Head Office Account | | 3,524,800 | 80 | | 44,060 |
| Remittances to Head Office | 2,690,000 | | Actual | 35,000 | |
| Goods from Head Office | 3,524,800 | | 80 | 44,060 | |
| Sales .. | | 4,352,400 | 80 | | 54,405 |
| Stocks 31st March: | | | | | |
| For Trading Account | | 1,045,600 | 80 | | 13,070 |
| .. Balance Sheet | 1,045,600 | | 100 | 10,456 | |
| | <u>U.9,158,600</u> | <u>U.9,158,600</u> | | <u>109,336</u> | <u>113,893</u> |
| Loss on Exchange | | | | 4,557 | |
| | | | | <u>£113,893</u> | <u>£113,893</u> |

(b)

BRANCH TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31st MARCH

| | Units | £ | | Units | £ |
|-------------------------|--------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| To Purchases .. | 3,524,800 | 44,060 | By Sales .. | 4,352,400 | 54,405 |
| .. Gross Profit c/d. .. | 1,873,200 | 23,415 | .. Stock .. | 1,045,600 | 13,070 |
| | <u>5,398,000</u> | <u>£67,475</u> | | <u>5,398,000</u> | <u>£67,475</u> |
| To Local Expenses .. | 754,200 | 8,380 | By Gross Profit .. | 1,873,200 | 23,415 |
| .. Net Profit .. | 1,119,000 | 15,035 | | <u>U.1,873,200</u> | <u>£23,415</u> |
| | <u>U.1,873,200</u> | <u>£23,415</u> | | | |

(c)

BRANCH ACCOUNT

| | Units | £ | | Units | £ |
|------------------|--------------------|----------------|------------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| To Goods .. | 3,524,800 | 44,060 | By Remittances .. | 2,690,000 | 35,000 |
| .. Net Profit .. | 1,119,000 | 15,035 | .. Loss on Exchange .. | | 4,557 |
| | | | .. Balance c/f. .. | 1,953,800 | 19,538 |
| | <u>U.4,643,800</u> | <u>£59,095</u> | | <u>U.4,643,800</u> | <u>£59,095</u> |
| To Balance b/d. | U.1,953,800 | £19,538 | | | |

Notes

- (1) The balance brought down in the Branch Account is represented by the net assets of the branch, as follows:

| | Units | £ |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| Balance at Bank .. | 366,400 | 3,664 |
| Debtors .. | 777,600 | 7,776 |
| Stock .. | 1,045,600 | 10,456 |
| | <u>2,189,600</u> | <u>21,896</u> |
| Less Creditors | 235,800 | 2,358 |
| | <u>U.1,953,800</u> | <u>£19,538</u> |

- (2) The loss on exchange is credited to Branch Account and debited to the General Profit and Loss Account.
- (3) It will be observed that all the items in the Trading Account are converted at the fixed rate of 80, so that the gross profit is not affected by exchange fluctuations. For the purpose of the Balance Sheet, however, the closing stock is converted at the rate prevailing at the date of the Balance Sheet, in the same way as the other current assets, and the Balance Sheet position is therefore not misrepresented.

Where it is the practice for the head office to invoice goods to the branch at a price in excess of cost, the debit to the Branch Trading Account in respect of such goods will include an element of profit for which credit has been taken in the Trading Account of the head office. In such a case, a Branch Stock Adjustment Account should be maintained in the head office books for the purpose of eliminating from the profit disclosed by the accounts the unrealised profit at which the branch stock at the date of the Balance Sheet has been brought into account. This may be done by debiting Profit and Loss Account and crediting the Branch Stock Adjustment Account with the profit loading included in the valuation of the branch stock, from which the amount of such provision will be deducted for Balance Sheet purposes. Where a provision for unrealised profit has been brought forward from the previous year, it will only be necessary, in the accounts for the current year, to make such an adjustment through the Profit and Loss Account as will be necessary to increase or reduce the balance on the Adjustment Account to the amount of the unrealised profit included in the closing stock of the branch.

Illustration (6)

B Ltd. has an authorised capital of £50,000 in shares of £1 each. It carries on a merchanting business at its head office in London and a branch in Australia.

All goods are purchased by the head office. Those for sale in Australia are invoiced to the branch at cost, including insurance and freight, plus 10 per cent.; the invoices are entered in the branch books when the goods are received there.

The branch books are kept in Australian currency, £A125 being taken as equal to £100 sterling.

The trial balances as on 31st December, 19... are as follows:

| | Head Office | | Branch | |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------|---------|----------|-------|
| | Dr. | Cr. | Dr. | Cr. |
| | £ | £ | £A | £A |
| Capital issued and fully paid: | | | | |
| 40,000 shares of £1 each | | 40,000 | | |
| 5 per cent. Mortgage Debentures | | 12,000 | | |
| Freehold warehouses at valuation | 31,500 | | 5,550 | |
| Furniture and Fittings, at cost | 6,300 | | 2,250 | |
| Depreciation of Furniture and Fittings | | 875 | | 320 |
| Debtors and unexpired payments | 15,863 | | 4,275 | |
| Creditors and accrued expenses | | 17,471 | | 225 |
| General Reserve | | 16,000 | | |
| Profit and Loss Account – 1st January | | 2,153 | | |
| Debenture interest – net | 345 * | | | |
| Carried forward | £54,008 | £88,499 | £A12,075 | £A545 |

| | | | | Head Office | | Branch | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|----|----|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | | | | Dr. | Cr. | Dr. | Cr. |
| | | | | £ | £ | £A | £A |
| | Brought Forward | .. | .. | 54,008 | 88,499 | 12,075 | 545 |
| Purchases | .. | .. | .. | 126,578 | | | |
| Sales | .. | .. | .. | | 130,251 | | 55,093 |
| Goods sent to branch | .. | .. | .. | | 33,440 | 39,765 | |
| Insurance and freight thereon | .. | .. | .. | 2,106 | | | |
| General expenses | .. | .. | .. | 19,043 | | 8,165 | |
| Stock on 1st January | .. | .. | .. | 31,054 | | 12,320 | |
| Taxation Account | .. | .. | .. | | 8,180 | | |
| Cash and bank balances | .. | .. | .. | 10,261 | | 1,548 | |
| Branch Account | .. | .. | .. | 18,216 | | | |
| Head Office Account | .. | .. | .. | | | | 18,235 |
| Branch Stock Adjustment Account | .. | .. | .. | | 896 | | |
| | | | | <u>£261,266</u> | <u>£261,266</u> | <u>£A73,873</u> | <u>£A73,873</u> |

You are given the following information:

- (1) There were in transit on 31st December goods sent to branch invoiced at £1,628 and a draft from branch to head office for £A2,500.
- (2) Stock valuations as on 31st December were: head office, at cost, £27,559 and branch, at invoiced prices, £A13,222.
- (3) A case of goods received at the branch in December invoiced at £2,156, was recorded in the branch books and included in the Stock valuation, but when the case was opened it was found that the goods had been rendered valueless by damage at sea. Head office claimed for £1,960 (£1,870 for the cost of the goods and £90 for insurance and freight) from the insurers and this sum was agreed. No record of the damage or the claim had been made in the head office or branch books.
- (4) Depreciation of furniture and fittings is to be provided for at 4 per cent. of cost.
- (5) Interest on the debentures is payable half-yearly on 30th June and 31st December.
- (6) Included in the head office General Expenses are directors' fees £1,500 and audit fee (fixed by the directors) £315.
- (7) The manager of the branch is entitled to a commission of 10 per cent. of the profit shown by the Branch Profit and Loss Account after providing for that commission.
- (8) To provide for United Kingdom taxation on profits to date, including £8,000 for future income tax, a credit balance of £19,000 is to be carried forward on Taxation Account. Australian taxation is to be ignored.
- (9) The directors propose to transfer £2,000 to General Reserve and to pay a dividend of 25 per cent, less tax.

You are required to prepare:

- (a) Trading and Profit and Loss Accounts in columnar form showing the net trading profit of the head office and the branch respectively for the year ended 31st December;
- (b) The Company's Profit and Loss Account for the year ended 31st December and Balance Sheet as at that date, in a form suitable for presentation to the members.

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNTS
FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER 19..

| | London £ | Australia £A | | London £ | Australia £A |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| To Stocks, 1st January | 31,054 | 12,320 | By Sales | 130,251 | 55,093 |
| „ Purchases | 124,708 | | „ Goods sent to Branch | 31,284 | |
| „ Goods from London | | 37,070 | „ Stocks, 31st December | 27,559 | 10,527 |
| „ Gross Profit c/d. | 33,332 | 16,230 | | | |
| | <u>£189,094</u> | <u>£65,620</u> | | <u>£189,094</u> | <u>£65,620</u> |
| To Insurance and Freight on goods to Branch | 2,016 | | By Gross Profit | 33,332 | 16,230 |
| „ General Expenses | 17,228 | 8,165 | | | |
| „ Depreciation | 252 | 90 | | | |
| „ Manager's Commission, 10% on £7,250 | | 725 | | | |
| „ Branch Stock Adjustment Account | | | | | |
| „ Provision for unrealised profit | 18 | | | | |
| „ Net Trading Profit for year | 13,818 | 7,250 | | | |
| | <u>£33,332</u> | <u>£16,230</u> | | <u>£33,332</u> | <u>£16,230</u> |

(b) **B LTD.**
PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT FOR YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------------|
| PROFIT FOR YEAR, BEFORE TAXATION | | 17,203 |
| After charging: | | |
| Depreciation | 324 | |
| Debenture interest | 600 | |
| Directors' fees | 1,500 | |
| Audit fee | 315 | |
| Deduct: UNITED KINGDOM TAXATION, based on profits for year: | | |
| Income tax | | 10,565 |
| PROFIT FOR YEAR AFTER TAXATION | | 6,638 |
| Add BALANCE BROUGHT FORWARD | | 2,153 |
| AVAILABLE PROFIT | | 8,791 |
| Deduct: APPROPRIATIONS OF PROFIT: | | |
| Transfer to General Reserve | 2,000 | |
| Dividend proposed, 25 per cent of £40,000, less tax at 8s 6d. in £ | 5,750 | |
| | | 7,750 |
| BALANCE, CARRIED FORWARD | | <u>£1,041</u> |

B LTD.
BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|----------------------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| SHARE CAPITAL, in shares of £1 each: | | | FIXED ASSETS: | | |
| Authorised | 50,000 | | Freehold Warehouses at valuation | | 35,940 |
| Issued and fully paid | | 40,000 | Furniture and Fittings: | | |
| REVENUE RESERVES | | | Cost | 8,100 | |
| General Reserve | 18,000 | | Provision for depreciation | 1,455 | |
| Profit and Loss Account | 1,041 | | | | 6,645 |
| | | 19,041 | | | 42,585 |
| | | 59,041 | CURRENT ASSETS: | | |
| FUTURE INCOME TAX | | 8,000 | Stocks in hand and in transit, at cost | 36,694 | |
| 5 PER CENT. MORTGAGE DEBENTURES | | 12,000 | Debtors and prepayments | 19,283 | |
| | | | Insurance claim | 1,960 | |
| CURRENT LIABILITIES: | | | Cash and Bank Balances | 13,500 | |
| Trade Creditors and Expenses | 18,231 | | | | 71,437 |
| Current Income Tax | 11,000 | | | | |
| Proposed Dividend (less tax) | 5,750 | | | | |
| | | 34,981 | | | |
| | | <u>£114,022</u> | | | <u>£114,022</u> |

Notes.

- (1) No provision for depreciation has been made on the Freehold Warehouses.
- (2) The assets and liabilities in Australia have been converted at the rate of £A125 to £100.

(1) The Current Accounts will appear as follows: *Workings.*

BRANCH ACCOUNT IN LONDON BOOKS

| | £A | £ | | £A | £ |
|----------------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| To Balance b/f. | 22,770 | 18,216 | By Goods in transit | 2,035 | 1,628 |
| | | | " Cash in transit | 2,500 | 2,000 |
| | | | " Adjusted Balance | 18,235 | 14,588 |
| | <u>£22,770</u> | <u>£18,216</u> | | <u>£22,770</u> | <u>£18,216</u> |
| To Balance | 18,235 | 14,588 | By Damaged Goods returned | 2,695 | 2,156 |
| " Profit and Loss Account: | | | " Balance c/f. | 22,790 | 18,232 |
| Profit for year | 7,250 | 5,800 | | | |
| | <u>£25,485</u> | <u>£20,388</u> | | <u>£25,485</u> | <u>£20,388</u> |

LONDON ACCOUNT IN BRANCH BOOKS

| | £A | £ | | £A | £ |
|---------------------------|----------------|---|----------------------------------|----|----------------|
| To Damaged Goods returned | 2,695 | | By Balance b/f | | 18,235 |
| " Balance c/f | 22,790 | | " Profit and Loss Account Profit | | 7,250 |
| | <u>£25,485</u> | | | | <u>£25,485</u> |

The closing balance is represented by net assets of the branch, incorporated in the company's Balance Sheet, as follows:

| | £A | £ |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Freehold Warehouse | 5,550 | 4,440 |
| Furniture, etc. | £2,250 | £1,800 |
| <i>Less Depreciation</i> | 410 | 328 |
| | 1,840 | 1,472 |
| Debtors | 4,275 | 3,420 |
| Stocks | 10,527 | 8,421 |
| Cash | 1,548 | 1,239 |
| | <u>23,740</u> | <u>18,992</u> |
| Less Creditors | 225 | |
| Commission | 725 | |
| | 950 | 760 |
| | <u>£22,790</u> | <u>£18,232</u> |

(2) In the London books the damaged goods are treated as returns from the branch, being credited to Branch Account and debited to Goods sent to Branch at the invoiced price, £2,156. The transfer to Trading Account in respect of Goods sent to the branch is thus $£(33,440 - 2,156) = £31,284$.

In regard to the insurance claim, the Insurance company is debited with the £1,960. Purchases being credited with the cost price of the goods, £1,870, and Insurance and Freight Account with £90. The charges to Trading and Profit and Loss Account are accordingly reduced by these amounts.

(3) The closing stock of the branch is reduced by the invoiced price of the damaged goods, viz., $£2,156 \times \frac{125}{100} = £A2,695$.

(4) General Expenses charged in the head office Profit and Loss Account are reduced by the directors, and audit fees, which are charged in the general Profit and Loss Account of the company.

(5) The profit for the year, before taxation, shown in the Profit and Loss Account is made up of:

| | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| London Trading Profit | 13,818 |
| Australia Trading Profit $\frac{100}{125} \times £7,250$.. | 5,800 |
| | <hr/> |
| | 19,618 |
| Less Debenture Interest | £600 |
| Directors' Fees | 1,500 |
| Audit Fee | 315 |
| | <hr/> |
| | 2,415 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £17,203 |
| | <hr/> |

(6) The charge to Profit and Loss Account in respect of the provision for unrealised profit is computed as follows:

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Branch Stock. £A10,527 $\times \frac{100}{125}$.. | £8,421 |
| Goods in transit | 1,628 |
| | <hr/> |
| | $\frac{100}{110} \times £10,049$ £914 |
| | <hr/> |
| Less Provision brought forward .. | 896 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £18 |
| | <hr/> |

(7) Creditors and accrued expenses:

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| London | £17,471 |
| Australia (as in (1) above) .. | 760 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £18,231 |
| | <hr/> |

(8) Stocks:

| | |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| London | £27,559 |
| Australia (as in (6) above) .. | 8,421 |
| Goods in transit | 1,628 |
| | <hr/> |
| | 37,608 |
| Less Unrealised profit | 914 |
| | <hr/> |
| | £36,694 |
| | <hr/> |

CHAPTER XI

MECHANISED ACCOUNTING

§ 1. Principles

The aims and limitations of mechanised systems of accounting are well described in the following extract from the Report of the Mechanised Accounting Sub-Committee of the Taxation and Financial Relations Committee of the Institute of Chartered Accountants.

The use of machines for accounting is not different in principle from the use of machines in a factory. The objects are to reduce the man-power required and time taken for a given process and to reduce the possibility of error; in other words, to increase efficiency. To achieve these objects machines tended by trained operators are used to carry out work which would otherwise require manual labour and mental exertion. Specialisation of function is developed extensively and emphasis is transferred from the skill of individual book-keepers to the control exercised over the feeding of material to machines and over their output. Ultimately, the purpose of accounting is to present information for the benefit of interested persons – whether shareholders, directors, managers or others – and for this purpose the personal skill of the accountant is essential. Mechanisation can be applied only to the accounting processes involved in preparing the material from which the final information can be presented. Accounting skill and effective control are vital.

In deciding whether or not to mechanise it is necessary to consider what are the products of the existing system, in the form of accounting documents and records for internal and external use, and to ask the following questions:

- (a) Are those products actually used or necessary and, if so, do they satisfactorily fulfil their purpose?
- (b) Would other documents and information be of value and, if so, could they be obtained from the existing system?
- (c) Is the existing system capable of producing the essential records and documents at the time when they are required and at reasonable cost?
- (d) What are the possibilities of material variations in the load on the existing system and will that system enable substantial expansion of activity to be dealt with?

If the answers to those questions are satisfactory, further consideration of mechanisation is unlikely to serve any useful purpose. If the answers indicate that an improvement may be possible it is then necessary to analyse the accounting operations of the business and to consider whether mechanisation could effect the improvement.

Accounting operations comprise four main processes carried out within a framework of accepted principles:

- (a) Recording transactions (for example, cash receipts and payments, purchases and sales).
- (b) Adding and calculating.
- (c) Sorting or analysing, including ledger posting.
- (d) Reproducing records (for example, copying of documents, preparation of sales ledger statements, trial balance).

Machines are capable of carrying out all these processes, but it is not necessarily advantageous to use machines in all cases because, *inter alia*, it may not be possible to utilise time

saved on manual operations in other profitable ways. Where the number of transactions is small, or where there are few entries of uniform type, mechanisation to any great extent is generally unsuitable. Mechanisation depends for its success on the grouping of transactions so that each group contains a large number of transactions requiring similar entries. Given a sufficiently large number of entries of uniform type, accounting processes can be mechanised extensively. Each process should be examined and divided into its component operations, involving a review of peak loads and the collation of different operations which may consist in part of similar accounting processes. Care is necessary to distinguish between transactions that are genuinely identical and those that are only superficially so, and it should be borne in mind that abnormal items must usually be treated separately, probably by manual methods.

From an examination in the foregoing manner it will be possible to decide whether or not mechanisation would be beneficial. Frequently it is found that whilst mechanisation would be helpful in certain directions, it is unnecessary or even undesirable in others and an endeavour must be made to weigh impartially the advantages and disadvantages. Moreover, machines may be introduced for special purposes only, or for general convenience, without causing any major change in the accounting system. Examples of 'special purpose' machines are cash registers for use in shops, postal franking machines, cheque-writing machines, time-recording clocks (attendance and job) for use in connection with the payment and analysis of wages. Examples of 'general convenience' machines are calculating, adding and listing machines, some of which require trained operators while others can be operated easily without special training. Even in the smallest of businesses the use of one (or more) 'general' or 'special purposes' machine(s) has come to be regarded almost as a normal part of the clerical arrangements.

In a limited sense mechanised accounting means the use of machines designed to carry out the routine processes of double-entry book-keeping. Of such processes those most amenable to mechanisation are the posting and balancing of the personal ledgers, the writing up of cash received and cash paid books coincidentally with the preparation of official receipt forms and the drawing of cheques respectively, and the analysis and tabulation of data.

The work of the book-keeper is, however, dependent upon many subsidiary processes which, in many cases, are carried out in the same office and to a certain extent (and subject to the limitations imposed by an adequate system of internal check) by the same clerks. These auxiliary processes include the preparation of advice notes and invoices for goods sold, the checking of invoices for goods and services purchased, the preparation of pay rolls (including the necessary P.A.Y.E. calculations) the maintenance of stock records, the evaluation of stock inventories and many others which are all susceptible to mechanisation in some degree. In the fullest sense, therefore, the study of mechanised accounting includes a consideration of many different office machines and appliances.

§ 2. Writing and Copying Devices

In modern offices the use of the typewriter extends far beyond its original purpose of writing letters. The following developments and improvements of the original form of typewriter afford examples of the mechanisation of office routines:

(a) The use of *continuous* or '*fan-fold*' stationery in a machine adapted for the purpose facilitates such repetitive processes as invoicing. Much the same result is achieved by the use of forms fastened together in sets. A set of forms designed for invoicing might comprise the following:

- (i) Invoice (Top copy, with suitable printed heading).
- (ii) Customer's advice or delivery note. (First carbon copy also with suitable printed heading.)
- (iii) Warehouse advice note. (The second and subsequent carbon copies are flimsies on which a minimum of printed matter appears.)
- (iv) Posting slips.
- (v) Sales office copy (this may also constitute a form of sales day book.)

Each form in a set bears the same serial number as its fellows. The use of different coloured paper helps to distinguish the various parts of the set and facilitates their subsequent distribution to the departments concerned.

(b) *Carbon smearing* ('carback') on the back of all forms except the last of a set, makes the use of loose carbon papers unnecessary. This facilitates selective copying, as it is not always necessary to reproduce all the original data on every copy. For example, advice notes prepared as copies of invoices may omit the price of the goods and the amount of the invoices, dealing only with the quantity and description of the goods to be delivered.

The method also results in a substantial saving of operator's time that would otherwise be occupied by inserting and removing loose carbon papers. As an alternative to the use of carbacked forms chemically treated paper is obtainable, such as N.C.R. (No Carbon Required) paper, which provides a copy of handwriting or typescript when brought under pressure.

(c) *Stencil copying*. When more than a relatively small number of copies of an original document are required the typewriter may be used either to cut a stencil or plate or to back the original with a chemical negative from which copies may be run off on a spirit duplicator. The latter machine may be used to prepare copies of accounts and forms when the numbers required are not such as to justify the cost of orthodox printing.

(d) *Photocopying*. The problem of storage space in offices handling a large volume of records has led to the practice of making and storing microfilm copies of all original documents. This is capable of being applied with equal facility to documents received from outside sources (*e.g.* suppliers' invoices) as to internal ones (*e.g.* sales invoices). Carbon or other copies of documents produced in the office will be prepared in the usual way but can be destroyed after they have fulfilled their normal functions of providing posting media, etc.

(e) '*Collating Carriage*' typewriters are provided with a 'front-feed' in addition to the normal means of inserting forms at the rear of the roller platen. This enables one form or set of forms to be retained in the machine and thus to record a series of transactions while other forms are inserted before and withdrawn after each single

entry. With the addition of suitable adding mechanism such a typewriter becomes a book-keeping machine; without this facility it can nevertheless be used for many subsidiary book-keeping processes, *e.g.*, receipt writing combined with the preparation of a cash received sheet, cheque writing combined with the preparation of a cash paid sheet, etc.

The application of such a method to the recording of cash receipts produces at one operation four distinct records, as follows:

- (i) *Receipts*. These are printed either in sheets of 20 or more or as a continuous roll or fan-fold. As part of the system of internal check, the serial numbers are printed on the receipts but are typed on the control sheet (cash received book) by the operator.
- (ii) *Posting Slip*. This, like the receipt form, is perforated between each entry so that the slips can be sorted into account order and distributed to the various ledger keepers.
- (iii) *Cash Received Book*. This is the 'control sheet' since it receives the full record. The entries here are in single spacing, although on the receipt forms they are about 1 inch apart. Each receipt and posting slip may be detached after completion but the control sheet remains in the machine and is spaced up to receive the next entry.
- (iv) *Bank Pay In-Advice*. This is used only where the customers pay by cheque, as in a wholesale house. Where there are also many cash items for which receipts have to be given, they will preferably be dealt with separately, possibly by a form of cash register.

If the machine is fitted with suitable 'adding boxes' or incorporates sufficient registers, the 'amount' and 'discount' columns in the cash received book will be totalled automatically.

A book-keeping machine that is provided with a typewriter keyboard may be used for receipt-writing or cheque-writing and on the more comprehensive accounting machines these functions may be combined with ledger posting. Thus two more documents are added to the list of those created; these are a ledger account (perhaps together with a statement or remittance advice) and also a ledger posting summary. The ledger card is set up beside the receipt (or cheque) and collated stationery, and the figures are transferred mechanically across to the ledger card. This automatically ensures agreement between the amount shown in the cash book and the amount posted to the ledger. The posting slip, that would otherwise have been produced as a carbon copy of the receipt or cheque, is then unnecessary.

(f) '*Split Platen*' typewriters and accounting machines enable two forms to be inserted side by side in the machine so that they can be spaced up either independently or in unison. This is not to be confused with the front feed or collating carriage; in certain types of apparatus the two features are found in the same machine.

'Peg Board' methods enable many of the principles of mechanised accounting to be applied manually. The peg board is a comparatively simple device which enables forms to be superimposed on each other in the position required by the operator and to retain their relative positions while each entry is made. The method may be explained in relation to a process for which it has proved particularly suitable – the preparation of pay sheets and income tax (P.A.Y.E.) records:

Three forms are normally used:

- (i) Employee's personal record which, by arrangement with the Inland Revenue is an approved alternative to the tax deduction card normally used. Each sheet contains a complete record for one fiscal year of the pay and tax deductions of the employee to whom it relates.
- (ii) Pay roll, recording the pay and tax deductions of all employees for one week.
- (iii) A carbon copy of the pay roll perforated between each line of entries so that the details applicable to each individual employee can be detached and inserted in his pay packet for that week.

(ii) and (iii), interleaved with carbon paper, are placed on the board and remain in the same position until the whole page or the entries for the week have been completed. The personal record (i) for the first employee on the pay roll is then placed over (ii) so that the spaces in which the entry is to be made come into alignment. A sheet of carbon paper has, of course, previously been inserted between (i) and (ii). After the appropriate entry has been made, this personal record sheet is removed and the next one inserted one space lower on the board, the tax calculations and entry for the second employee are completed, and so on.

The advantages of such a method are not restricted to time saving. Errors that might be involved in the normal process of entering gross wages on tax deduction cards and then transferring the tax deduction back to the pay roll are eliminated. Automatic agreement of the tax deduction for the year as shown by the individual records and in the financial books should be secured.

Further examples of the mechanisation of those processes which involve writing or some similar record are:

(1) *Cheque writing machines*, which by the use of special pin-point type and/or acid proof ribbons cause the wording to be impregnated into the body of the paper on which the cheque form is printed. An unauthorised alteration of a cheque already drawn is thus made impossible.

The system of internal check must be such that the stock of unused cheque forms is in responsible custody and the use of the machine is strictly controlled.

(2) *Cheque signing machines* which enable a facsimile signature or signatures to be applied to batches of cheques and other documents. A very strict system of control is of course essential and the bank on which the cheques are drawn will normally require an indemnity against losses arising from the unauthorised use of such a device.

It may be possible to provide for the paying bank to be given lists of all the cheques signed in this way before they are issued, so that they can be checked by the bank against such lists before they are paid.

(3) *Addressing machines* designed primarily to facilitate the rapid addressing of correspondence, circulars, etc., (and providing at the same time a convenient permanent record of names and addresses) but having uses that go far beyond that original purpose. The data are recorded on a stencil or metal plate of convenient size and the stencils thus prepared provide a form of 'card index'. In company share registration work where this system is used, the stencils will provide the master record of shareholders' names and addresses; on receipt of a notice of change of address the old stencil is withdrawn and a new one prepared. They can be used for writing up the first column of dividend lists, as a basis for the annual return, for inserting names and addresses in the two parts of dividend warrants and for many other purposes in addition to the routine task of addressing envelopes either to individual members or to the shareholders (or one class of them) as a whole.

§ 3. Adding and Calculating Machines

Machines which add or subtract figures, giving a result which can be read from the machine but do not produce a permanent record of the amounts or the result constitute the first type of adding machine to be considered.

These machines normally have a full keyboard, as illustrated on page 446, and the result appears in a row of small 'windows' at the foot of the machine. The simplest models have no operating keys other than the number keys shown in the diagram plus a lever for 'clearing' the machine at the end of each operation. The depression of a key or a group of keys operates the mechanism directly and the result (*i.e.*, the sum of all the numbers or amounts recorded since the machine was last cleared) appears at once in the windows.

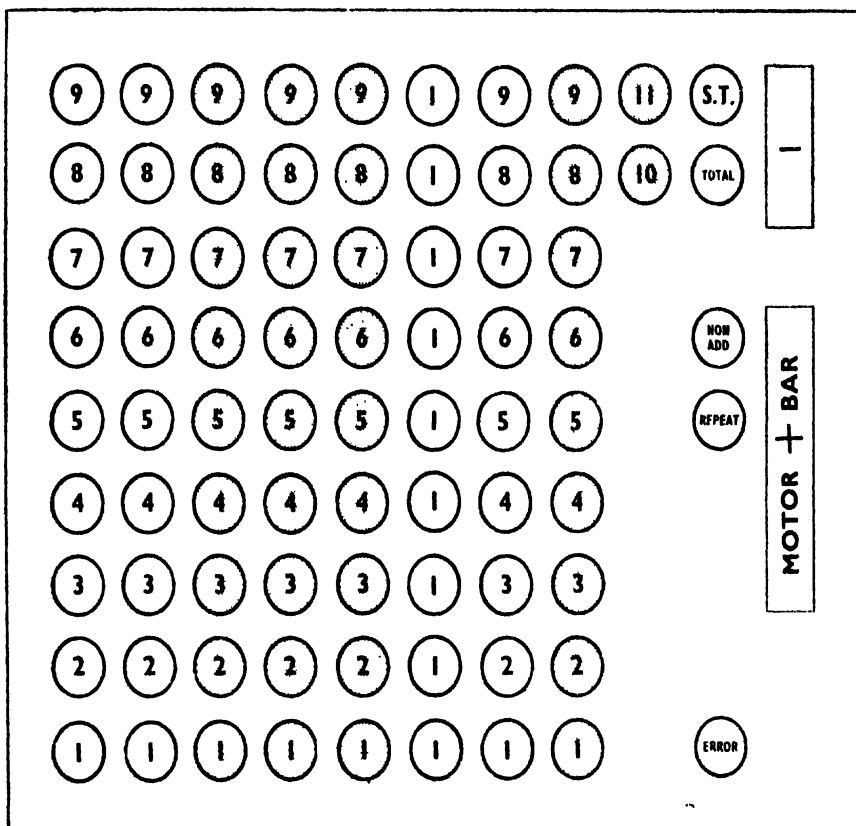
With such a machine subtraction has to be effected by adding the 'complement' of the number to be subtracted, this being the difference between 9 for each digit and the number itself. Thus the subtraction of 231 from 698 is obtained, in effect, by adding 768 (*i.e.*, $999 - 231$) to 698. The result (1,466) given by the machine has to be corrected by discarding the first digit, 1, and adding 1 to the final digit, giving the correct result, 467.

Other machines may be provided with several operating keys in addition to the number keys as shown in the diagram. With these a number is first 'set up' by depressing the number keys and is then added to the existing total by pulling a lever in a hand operated machine or depressing a motor bar in one provided with an electric motor. With such machines direct subtraction is usually possible, a 'subtract' operating key being provided.

Illustration (1)

The number and position of the operating keys vary according to the make and purpose of the machine. The keyboard illustrated here is suitable for an adding-listing machine.

FORM OF FULL KEYBOARD



Adding machines with a full keyboard (and particularly those with a direct action, such as the Comptometer) can be used for multiplication and division by the process of repeated addition or subtraction, as explained below.

Half Keyboard Machines

A type of adding machine that is becoming increasingly used in auditing practice because of its lightness and compactness (it fits into a very small attaché case) has a keyboard on which five rows of numbers appear instead of nine, the highest digit being 5 (with a 6 in the pence column). Amounts containing higher digits than 5 are obtained by successive depression of the appropriate keys (e.g., 7 by recording 4 and then 3, and so on).

Adding-Listing Machines

For many office routines a machine which produces a typewritten record (usually on a roll of paper which can be torn off at the conclusion of each operation) is much more useful than a simple adding machine. Such a machine normally records amounts only, but sometimes has a 'split keyboard' which, in combination with a 'non-add' control enables, say, the first three columns of figures to be recorded as reference numbers, which are not added, while the remaining columns deal with the amounts in

the usual way. The machine may also have a platen, like a typewriter, so that forms can be inserted instead of the roll of machine 'tape'.

The action of an adding-listing machine is always two-fold, *i.e.*, the amount is first set up on the number keys and the depression of a separate operating key or handle then causes the amount to be typed and to be added to the total already recorded in the mechanism. (In some modern machines the use of a separate operating key is made unnecessary by what is known as the 'live keyboard' feature. Every key on the number keyboard has two pressures; the amount is set up in the normal way on the first pressure but the second pressure is exerted on the last key to be set up, and this causes the whole amount to be added.) The result of the addition, however, is not visible at this stage but is obtained when required by depressing a total or a sub-total key. In the first case (total key) the total is typed at the foot of the column and is then cleared from the machine. In the second case (sub-total key) the total is printed but remains in the machine and will be included in some subsequent total or sub-total. To avoid confusion different symbols are printed automatically against each total or sub-total. Even so it is always advisable to commence a new list by depressing the total key. Assuming that the machine has been properly cleared at the end of the previous operation a 0 followed by the 'Total' symbol will be printed. This precaution is unnecessary if, as is becoming more usual, the machine is equipped with a 'clear' symbol to indicate that it was empty when the first item was entered. This symbol appears against the first item to be listed following the totalling and clearing of the previous list.

Adding-listing machines are particularly useful for the operation of 'pre-listing' which is an essential part of mechanised ledger posting systems (*q.v.*).

Twelve-Key Keyboard

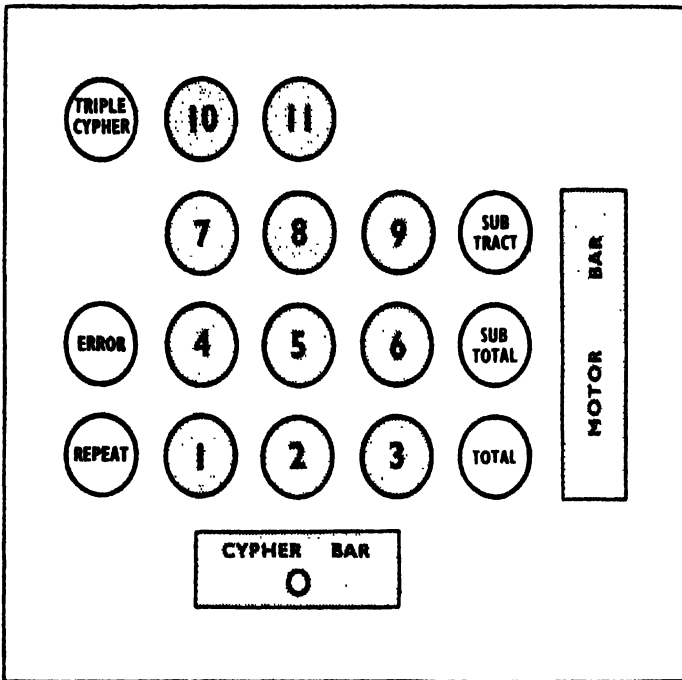
Although many adding-listing machines have the full keyboard, the fact that an amount has to be set up before the actual operation is effected has made possible the twelve-key keyboard shown in the following illustration.

Illustration (2)

The keys appropriate to a number are depressed in their natural order, *e.g.*, to set up £1,023 6s. 7d. the keys 1, 0, 2, 3, 0, 6, 7, are depressed in that order. It will be observed that where the number of shillings is below 10, the cipher (0) key has to be used in the ten shillings position; if the keys 1, 0, 2, 3, 6, 7 had been pressed the result would have appeared as £102 16s. 7d. (in the antepenultimate position any key other than 0 records as 1). Depression of the + bar on an electric model or the pulling of a handle on a manual machine will cause the amount to be typed and recorded in the adding mechanism. The next amount set up will be typed and either added to or deducted from the existing total according to whether the + or — key is depressed. In fact, apart from the routine of setting up an amount, the operation of the machine is similar to that of the full keyboard type.

Other operating keys, in addition to + and — provide either a total or a sub-total; 'non-add' (*e.g.*, an amount is typed but not added to the existing total, which remains

FORM OF TWELVE-KEY KEYBOARD



undisturbed); 'whole number' which cuts out the shillings and pence and which in conjunction with the non-add mechanism also enables reference numbers to be recorded; and 'correction' which enables a number which is known to have been wrongly set up to be deleted before the adding mechanism is operated. Where an error is discovered after an amount has been added in it can only be corrected by subtracting the same wrong amount or by clearing the machine and starting again.

A disadvantage of this keyboard as compared with the full keyboard is the fact that all ciphers have to be recorded, whereas on a full keyboard model they are ignored. It has the advantage of compactness and an unskilled operator can use it with ease and speed.

Duplex Machines

A machine with two distinct adding mechanisms or 'registers' is known as a duplex machine. It has many advantages as compared with a simplex or single register machines. For example, a simple analysis may be made of amounts under two headings, with their respective totals or amounts which commonly go in pairs, such as cash and discount or goods and purchase tax, may be listed in two columns at the same operation. Alternatively, by automatic transfer of totals from one register to the other, the machine may be used to list items in a number of different batches and to give a grand total automatically.

Splits

As an alternative (or in addition) to the provision of two or more distinct adding mechanisms, it may be possible to 'split' one mechanism into two or more sections.

Most adding machines have a capacity far in excess of the amounts normally listed on them, e.g., the capacity of a machine may be £9,999,999 19s. 11d. in the amount keys, with one or two additional columns in the 'total' register, whereas the amounts listed may rarely exceed £100. It is possible by a 'split' mechanism (which may be either fixed or variable) to secure that, say, the four left hand columns do not receive any carry over from the columns to their right. The left hand group of figures may then be used to record a reference number or quantity while the remaining columns to the right of the split deal with the amounts in the usual way.

A 'cipher split' has the effect of eliminating all 0's from the shillings and pence columns, except where an amount of 10s. is involved. This enables the 'pounds' columns of the machine to be used for listing and adding whole numbers.

When the adding mechanism is incorporated in an accounting machine the process of splitting may be varied according to the position of the carriage of the machine at any given time. In some columns the machine will then record whole numbers only and in others full amounts in pounds, shillings and pence. The mechanical device which secures this result is known as hammer blocking.

Calculating Machines

Calculating machines fall into two main groups, the full keyboard type and the barrel type.

A *full keyboard* machine is an adding machine of the direct operation type (e.g., Comptometer) on which a group of keys constituting a number (or amount) can be depressed rapidly from one to nine times, according to the multiplier. Movement of the operator's fingers from left to right or *vice versa* reflects, as it were, the positions of the decimal point in relation to the various digits in the multiples (1234 multiplied by 56 being the same as 12340 multiplied by 5 plus 1234 multiplied by 6). Division is similarly effected by a process of repeated subtraction. For satisfactory results the services of a highly trained operator are required; given this, all ordinary commercial calculations can be carried out with extreme speed and accuracy.

Machines of the *barrel type* also operate by successive addition (which is, of course, the basis of all multiplication), but this is effected in a different way. In the first place the multiplicand is set up in the machine by moving levers or depressing number keys, which causes a row of cogs to emerge to a greater or less degree from a cylinder. This mechanism is, of course, under cover and cannot be seen during the ordinary operation of a machine; a brief account of the mechanism is necessary, however, to explain the method.

The cylinder can be rotated either by turning a handle or by depressing one of a second set of number keys which causes an electric motor to rotate it the required number of times. At each rotation the cogs that have emerged from the cylinder engage with the teeth of what is, in effect, an ordinary row of adding wheels which can be observed through the result windows of the machine. This part of the mechanism slides from left to right according to the position in the multiplier of whatever digit is being dealt with. Thus to multiply 7654 by 32, the multiplicand 7654 is first

set up on the machine, the barrel is rotated twice in the units position and the slide is then moved one place to the right before the barrel is again rotated three times.

Rotation in the reverse direction subtracts. Decimalisation is essential; the machine cannot set up or cope with shillings and pence.

The number of turns of the barrel in successive positions of the slide is recorded in a further row of dials which for multiplication show the number of positive turns but for division can be altered to record positively the number of negative turns. Thus at any given time the machine shows, in relation to multiplication:

- (i) The multiplicand that was set up in the machine;
- (ii) The multiplier (*i.e.*, the number of rotations of the barrel);
- (iii) The result:

and in relation to division:

- (i) The dividend that was set up in the machine;
- (ii) The divider (*i.e.*, the number of negative or subtractive rotations of the barrel);
- (iii) The result.

All these dials must be cleared before the next operation is commenced, unless the multiplicand (or dividend) is common to more than one set of products, when it is possible to pass from one multiplier to the next without clearing.

For example, suppose it is desired to calculate a dividend of $21\frac{1}{4}\%$ on holdings of 125, 140, 150 and 175 shares. $21\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. is expressed as a decimal $\cdot 2125$ and set up as the multiplicand. The first result is obtained by multiplying by 125. Without clearing the machine, five additional turns in the units position plus one in the tens position show the result for 140 shares; one more turn in the tens position converts this into 150 and so on. For repetitive calculations of this sort or for calculations involving large numbers (the capacity is often $999,999,999 \times 999,999,999$) these machines are unrivalled.

§ 4. Ledger Posting Machines

Machines of this kind usually combine some of the characteristics of typewriters and adding machines. In early models an ordinary type-writing mechanism was provided with 'adding boxes' which added or subtracted amounts as they were typed. The operator had to read the result from the dials of the adding box and type it on to the form or account. Modern machines perform the mathematical processes, tabulate to the correct positions for the successive operations and type the results (*i.e.*, the new balances on the accounts) automatically. They also provide a control sheet or record of all the postings in a batch and total and 'prove' this automatically.

Where a full typewriter keyboard is provided the figuring is usually done by a row of number keys (one for each digit) operating in the same way as the twelve figure keyboard. Alternatively a full number keyboard may be provided in conjunction with a limited number of keys which use a few standard abbreviations such as CSH, DIS, GDS to record the narration. Some machines have full keyboard and typewriter.

Any form of mechanical ledger posting is based on the principle of the 'slip system', *i.e.*, the ledger is 'posted' from the original documents or copies (posting slips) while the control sheet, which is a carbon copy of the whole of a batch of postings, takes the place of the day book and provides the necessary totals for completing Control Accounts and impersonal ledger postings. Where two copies of the ledger account are made one serves the purpose of a monthly statement (sales ledger) or payment advice note (bought ledger). Different machines and systems vary in some respects, but the following may be regarded as typical.

A machine posted ledger differs from the orthodox form of handwritten ledger in that it shows the balance on each account after each posting (or batch of postings to the same account on the same occasion). The first operation, therefore, is the 'picking up' of the existing balance; the amount being posted is then added or, where appropriate, subtracted.

In the case of a sales ledger, the existing balance is normally a debit balance, which is increased by debit postings for goods sold and reduced by credit postings for cash received and discount allowed. An adding mechanism, known as a 'crossfooter' receives the amount of the 'pick up' (*i.e.*, the old balance) adds to it any amount now recorded in the debit column, deducts from it any credit posting, and causes the result to be recorded in the balance column, where it represents the new balance of the account. A special routine may be necessary to pick up old 'credit balances' on a Sales Ledger Account.

It must be borne in mind that the terms 'debit' and 'credit' have no meaning, in themselves, in relation to adding mechanism; amounts are either positive or negative, and are added or subtracted accordingly. A Bought Ledger Account normally has a credit balance to which credit postings have to be added while debit postings are, in this case, negative. Where the same machine is used for bought and sales ledger postings it is often found, therefore, that the bought ledger cards are printed in reverse, in the following form:

| Date | Narrative | Credit | Debit | Balance |
|------|-----------|--------|-------|---------|
|------|-----------|--------|-------|---------|

This avoids frequent alteration of the set up of the machine.

Sources of Error

So far from eliminating all possibility of error, a machine system may introduce some new ones (*e.g.*, in the pick up of the existing balance, which does not arise when ledgers are posted by hand). Any well designed system, however, is provided with a number of checks, which enable errors to be detected and rectified almost as soon as they have been made, and the reduction in the physical and mental burden of writing and

arithmetic reduces the chances of errors being made. The following are the more important sources of error and the steps which should be taken to prevent or detect them.

(1) The operator may select the wrong ledger card and then post to the wrong account. This risk can be minimised by:

- (a) Sorting the posting media into account order before a batch of postings is commenced and either 'stuffing' them into the appropriate places in the racks of cards or 'pulling' all the cards required in advance.
- (b) Providing suitable racks or trays which facilitate the handling and selection of the ledger cards.
- (c) By giving each account a number, which is made part of the typed record of each posting. If the wrong card is used a 'wrong number' will show up in the account number column of the ledger card. The operator must, of course, be trained to type the account number from the posting medium and not from the card itself unless the machine is of the type in which the card, after insertion, is not visible to the operator.

It may be noted that unless the account name (only possible with full typewriter keyboard machines) or number is made an integral part of each posting, the control sheet will only constitute an imperfect day book, for the amounts appearing on it will not be identified with the accounts to which they relate.

(2) The existing balance may be picked up incorrectly, giving rise to a corresponding error in the amount of the new balance.

Different systems overcome this in different ways but most depend on the 'double pick up', *i.e.*, after the posting has been completed, but before the card is withdrawn from the machine, the old balance is picked up again. In some systems the machine has two crossfooters, one of which receives the first pick up and the other the second (as a negative amount); the other operations (*i.e.*, the postings themselves) are received by both, but one records negatively what the other records positively and *vice versa*. Thus, provided the same old balance was picked up on each occasion, the new balances recorded by the two crossfooters will be equal in amount but opposite in sign. In the clearing of the machine when the card is withdrawn the one balance is added into the other, cancelling it and causing a 'O' (or 'OT') to be printed on the control sheet; this is therefore known as the 'cipher proof'. If the two pick ups were not of the same amount the final balances would differ and some amount other than 'O' would be printed. Of course, if the operator were to take the second pick up from the entry just made for the 'old balance' there would be a compensating error and the check would be valueless. It is therefore, usual to find that the record of the first pick up is not visible when the second pick up is made, and whereas the first pick up comes at the beginning of the sequence, the second is made to come at the end.

(3) The amount to be posted (say of a sales invoice) may be copied incorrectly from the posting medium.

This is detected by the process of 'pre-listing' – i.e., the amounts only of the batch of posting media are run off and totalled independently on an adding-listing machine. The system of internal check is strengthened if the pre-list is prepared by someone other than the ledger posting machine operator.

In addition to the crossfooter the machine may be provided with one or more 'registers' each of which totals all the amounts entered in one particular column of the control sheet. When the invoices have been posted the total of the sales ledger debit column postings can be compared with the pre-list and unless compensating errors have been made an error in posting will be revealed.

Control Accounts

An overall check on the accuracy of the ledger postings is obtained by maintaining Control Accounts which follow the ordinary principles of self-balancing ledgers. The control sheet totals for each batch of postings provide the amounts to be posted to the Control Accounts.

Where large numbers of accounts are concerned they should be controlled sectionally; otherwise the time spent in looking for a difference may outweigh the advantage of keeping Control Accounts.

It must be remembered that while each control sheet shows the new balance on the accounts affected by that batch of postings it does not give a complete list of all balances on accounts in that ledger or section. The ledgers are therefore 'balanced' against the Control Account by running out the balances on an adding-listing machine. This cannot usually be done more than once a month so that a Control Account does *not* provide a day by day check on the accuracy of the entries.

Double Run

Instead of taking a carbon copy of the ledger card as a statement (or *vice versa*), the statement can be prepared independently by a second operator using the same posting media. This strengthens the system of internal check and is much used by banks for preparing customers' statements (which are not then carbon copies of the ledger accounts but independently produced records). With such a system the double pick up of old balances and the pre-listing of posting media become unnecessary, and an effective check against posting to the wrong account is obtained.

§ 5. Punched Card Systems

Accounting machines can be divided broadly into two main categories, firstly, there is that group comprising machines which are usually key-operated and which simulate the manual book-keeping processes but relieve the operator of the mental arithmetic, and secondly, there is the punched card group. In the latter class the basic data is first recorded in the form of perforations in cards which, subsequently, are manipulated entirely mechanically and automatically.

In punched card systems one card is normally used to record the basic data relating to one transaction and it is the location of the perforations that gives them a corresponding numerical or alphabetical significance.

The cards can be mechanically sorted into any desired grouping and subsequently passed through a tabulator which 'reads' the perforations and prints the information on to the usual accounting forms, invoices, statements, ledger sheets, etc. Addition or subtraction can be carried out simultaneously with the printing operation.

The great advantage of the punched card technique is that once the card is punched and verified an accurate and unalterable record is established from which any accounting or statistical statement can be rapidly obtained mechanically. The automatic machines used for processing the punched cards eliminate the human element almost entirely and function at very high speeds.

There are three main systems now in use in this country and these are generally known under the names of the manufacturers B.T.M. (Hollerith), I.B.M., and Power-Samas. The first two makes concentrate largely on one size range of machines, whereas, Power-Samas make several sizes some of which are mainly mechanical but others use electrical and electronic principles.

The Cards

The recording capacity of the cards is expressed in columns and the 'standard' size card (7.325" × 3.25") is capable of holding 80 columns of information. From top to bottom each column – on each card – has twelve punching positions. They are usually designated A, B, C, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9, and can be used singly to record twelve base numbers such as the months of the year or 0-11 pence.

Alternatively, the 1-9 positions are used to record 10 base numbers (it is not essential to punch zeros in some systems) and the upper A, B, C, positions can be allocated values of 10, 20 or 30, so in conjunction with a lower hole any value from 1 to 39 can be accommodated in one column. The days of the month are frequently recorded in this manner.

Perforations to represent the letters of the alphabet and special signs are made in the same way, Z for example (the 26th letter), being punched as a combination of the B and 6 positions.

Cards known as 'dual purpose' cards are frequently used as original documents (stores requisitions for example). They are first written out and later the same information is punched in the same card form.

Punching the Cards

Perforating the cards to correspond with the original data is accomplished in a variety of machines which are described in later paragraphs, but it is simpler first to describe the one machine which is essential in most installations but which is used to a lesser degree in those which are highly mechanised. This is the Universal Automatic Key Punch, which is operated much in the same way as a typewriter but it punches holes instead of writing characters. Also, it is power-driven and this enables the operator to repeat such items as the date into any number of cards.

There is also a manually driven Hand Punch but this is only used for very short runs or for making corrections.

The punching of cards by means of these machines is the only operation in the entire system which is dependent on manual dexterity. It is, however, extremely rapid and provided the information is presented in suitable form and order, can be faster than any other means of original recording. It is customary therefore to have such items as account number, commodity number, etc., already coded and recorded on the original document ready for the Punch operator.

Verifying

Since the original cards will be used to produce mechanically all subsequent records it is essential for the accuracy of the initial punching to be ensured. There are several ways of achieving this, but for checking original punching the usual principle that two operators will not repeat the same mistake is followed.

In the Power-Samas system the first punching produces round holes. A second passage through the punching machine with a control lever set to 'verify' causes the original holes to be 'ovalised' if the second operator depresses the same keys as the first. If there are any differences in the two sets of depressions some round holes will remain.

The batch of cards is then passed through an Automatic Verifier which detects cards with errors and inserts a signal card to indicate their location so that they can be easily extracted and corrected.

There is also a Hand Verifier, a very simple machine, which locks if the key depressions made by a second operator do not correspond with the holes made by the first. Such machines are only used for small quantities of work.

Sorting

Having been punched and verified the cards form a medium which can be processed physically rather than by the mental processes usually associated with book-keeping. They can be mechanically sorted and re-grouped as often as may be required and it is this facility of automatic sorting that provides the great advantage of punched card systems.

Thus after tabulating invoices when the cards may be in no particular order, they can be sorted at speeds of up to 60,000 per hour, into say, Commodity order or Salesman's order for the preparation of statistics.

Sorting is done column by column, so if account numbers run to four digits (9999) it is necessary to run the cards through the machine four times. In each run, the machine groups all cards with a common number in the column being sorted and at the same time puts all groups into numerical sequence.

Tabulating

After the punched cards have been sorted into the required sequence and grouping they are ready for the third (and usually, final) operation known as 'tabulating', a term which covers the mechanical production of the various accounting records from the punched cards.

The cards are fed into the Tabulator, which automatically senses the perforations in the cards and prints, in normal characters, all the information punched in each card

on continuous forms, loose leaf sheets or, in fact, any orthodox business stationery. Simultaneously the Tabulator accumulates quantities and amounts (both debit and credit) and automatically prints totals and balances where required.

The punching in all the columns of each card is sensed simultaneously and one complete line of type representing all the information punched in a card is printed at one stroke as compared with the step by step methods of manual or other machine methods.

In the Power-Samas system the wide flexibility of application of the Tabulator is achieved by the 'Connection Box' which controls the location of the printed result in relation to the perforations in the cards. By means of the Connection Box the order in which the printed information appears may be varied from the sequence in which it is punched; for example, the information punched in column 1 of the card may be printed in, say, column 4 of the tabulation. In some installations a number of different tabulations, such as invoices, statements or payroll may be produced with one Connection Box; in others there may be several. In any case the boxes provide a means of changing the set up of the tabulator which can be carried out in a few seconds and which cannot be done incorrectly.

Ancillary Machines

The machines already described, *i.e.*, the Punches, the Sorter and the Tabulator, are the basic machines in all punched card installations and comprise the essentials. The punches described, and to a lesser degree the sorters, are now largely supplemented by other ancillary machines which make the processing even more automatic.

The Reproducing Punch

This machine reproduces punched data from one set of cards into a new set. Thus unchanging data in, say, payroll cards, man's number, man's name, department, rate of pay, etc., can be reproduced from last week's cards into those of the current week without manual effort.

Electronic Calculator

This machine, which works at very high speed, replaces an earlier mechanical model and is used for extensions and cross-adding or deduction. It will, for example, sense from a punched card an employee's rate per hour and hours worked, multiply the two and punch the product into the same card. Simultaneously, bonus items could be added and tax deducted to arrive at the net wage.

Summary Card Punch

This is an entirely automatic slave machine which is coupled to a Tabulator. As the latter machine lists out and adds information from groups comprising maybe hundreds or thousands of detail cards, every time it strikes a total or balance, the Summary Card Punch punches a card to correspond. This greatly reduces the number of cards to be subsequently tabulated for further summaries or analyses.

The Interpreter

The Interpreter prints, on the face of a punched card, an interpretation, in ordinary characters, of the perforations in the card. Special models of the Interpreter provide

for 'posting' the interpretation of the punched card on to another card immediately following. It can thus be used, for example, for the posting of periodical payments to card records.

The Interpolator

This machine is designed to save sorting time and will accomplish in one passage of the cards what a Sorter may require several to do. It will, for example, in one passage interpolate opening balance cards into another pack comprising account movement cards, and should there be cards for unmoved balances they will be ejected. It is used for any work where matching (or marrying) is involved or for the segregation of unmatched cards.

Applications

The punched card machine installations differ from those with key operated machines in one important respect, namely, that it is unusual to find one installation devoted to one class of work. Except in very large organisations, therefore, one installation will be found to be doing quite a number of jobs such as invoicing, ledger posting, stores, payroll, and so on. The punched card lends itself to this way of working as once it has been punched it can be re-analysed for any number of tabulations and so it is quite usual to find invoicing and stores accounts, for example, produced from the same initial cards.

Invoicing

There are various methods of preparing invoices with punched card machines and naturally the procedure will vary according to the nature of the business but all, broadly, involve the use of:

- (a) Name and Address cards, one card for each line and one set for each customer.
- (b) Item cards, *i.e.*, one card which will print one line, for every item to be included on the invoice.

The Item cards can be prepared in a number of ways, the simplest being to use a pre-printed salesman's order for the original data and to punch the cards on an Automatic Key Punch.

If an electronic calculator is available it can be used to extend the price by quantity automatically. Similarly, discounts can be calculated and deducted from the gross value.

It may be possible to assemble the Name and Address and Item cards as the work proceeds or they may be sorted together mechanically. In any case, the grouped cards are then passed through the Tabulator to print out the invoice. The machine adds the values and prints out the totals automatically.

Simultaneously, a coupled Summary Card Punch will perforate a summary card which will contain all the identifying matter, Account No., etc., and the total amount to be debited to the customer's account. This summary card is filed until the appropriate time when it will be used for the preparation of the ledger account and statements.

An alternative method of obtaining the Item cards is known as 'pre-punching' and this involves setting up files of pre-punched cards which physically represent the actual stock in hand. The cards are punched as the stock is received and a white card might represent a single item, a green card one dozen and a yellow card one gross.

If a sale of thirty-nine items is made, three green cards and three white cards would be extracted from the file to tabulate the invoice and the balance of cards left in the file represents the balance of goods left in stock. This method eliminates manual pricing and extending as well as punching at invoicing time and where it can be applied is very economical.

The following is a comparatively simple example of a card which records the balance brought forward on a ledger account on 1st July:

Illustration

[illegible]

For ledger posting work a card similar to the above must be prepared for each entry to be made in the account. The principal debit cards, *i.e.*, those for goods

supplied, will be available as a by-product of the invoicing process, as mentioned above. Other cards for Cash, Discount Allowed, Journal, etc., are usually punched on the Automatic Key Punch. For the time being these cards, which are stored in convenient trays, constitute the current ledger. The actual work of reproducing the ledger in written form is normally a monthly routine which is made to coincide with the preparation of customers' statements in the case of the sales ledger or payment advice sheets in the case of the bought ledger. There are two procedures in common use – the 'open item' method and the 'balance card' method.

Open Item Method

All the cards relating to each account are filed together in trays until a remittance is received (or, in the case of the bought ledger, a payment is made) which relates to specific items in the account. The cards for these specific items are then withdrawn or 'pulled' from the 'unpaid' tray and tabulated with the cash (and discount if applicable) card to prove by revealing 'nil' balances that the correct cards have been pulled and that the correct amount has been received or paid. The cards that have been pulled are then filed away in a 'paid' tray.

Where a payment 'on account' is received so that it does not clear specific items, the cash card itself is filed in customer and date order in the 'unpaid' tray.

At the end of the month, the cards in the 'unpaid' tray are merged with the name and address cards. this process being carried out most efficiently by the use of an 'interpolator' particularly where many of the accounts may not be 'active' each month. Name and address cards, arranged strictly in account number order, are inserted in the machine at one end while the pack of ledger cards, also in account number order, is inserted at the other end. The machine senses the account number holes in the first (*i.e.*, bottom) card of both packs. If they agree all the name and address cards followed by all the account cards relating to that one account are directed into one 'box' while if they do not agree (because the first name and address card is for an account for which there are no cards in the 'unpaid' ledger pack) the name and address cards only are discarded into a second box. The same machine is later used to separate the name and address cards from the account cards.

When all the 'unpaid' cards have been merged with name and address cards they are tabulated to produce a separate statement in duplicate for each customer. The tabulator automatically calculates and prints the balances and accumulates them to provide at the end of the run a grand total for agreement with the Ledger Control Accounts.

After the statements have been tabulated, and the name and address cards have been sorted out of the pack, the other cards are returned to the 'unpaid' tray and these constitute, in effect, the opening balances ready to recommence the cycle of operations next month. The carbon copies of the statements are filed in a sales ledger binder but these copies only show outstanding items on each customer's account and do not give any record of cash payments and completed transactions. To provide this information the cards from the 'paid' tray are posted by the tabulator on to individual customers' History Sheets, which are, in effect, the sales ledger record of all past and settled

transactions. After this posting has been completed all the 'paid' cards are filed away and are available for providing any statistics which may subsequently be required.

When the open item method is used 'balance' cards such as the one illustrated above will be prepared only in exceptional cases.

Balance Card Method

All the cards relating to each sales ledger account for the current month, including those recording cash settlements and a balance card recording the opening balance, are filed in the current ledger tray in account number order. At the end of the month they are merged with name and address cards and tabulated to produce a statement in duplicate, the total of the balances also being accumulated in the tabulator and agreed with the Control Account. The top copies of the statements are despatched to the customers while the carbon copies are filed to provide the permanent Sales ledger.

New balance cards having been prepared (if a Summary Card Punch is connected to the tabulator they will be prepared automatically; if not they must be punched by hand) and filed in the current trays as a starting point in the next month's routine, and the name and address cards having been withdrawn and returned to their file, the item cards for the past month are filed away.

Other applications

It would be quite beyond the scope of this work to attempt to describe in detail the large number of office routines that have been adapted to the punched card technique, many of them having only a remote connection with book-keeping in the ordinary sense. The following may, however, be noted:

- The maintenance of stock methods.

- The evaluation of stock in total by the method of 'digitizing'.

- Wages, including P.A.Y.E. routines.

- Costing Systems.

- Dividend and share transfer work.

§ 6. Electronic Computers

Computer techniques naturally follow on from punched cards and differ therefrom mainly in that more operations are carried on within one machine and consequently there is less physical handling of the media (punched cards or tapes) and corresponding savings in time. The electronic computer can also make certain decisions on its own and so needs less manual attention on the part of the operator.

There are now two main groups of machines. One group is designed to function in conjunction with orthodox punched card machines such as those already described. The data to be processed is punched into cards which are fed into the machine in the normal way and results are punched into cards which are later tabulated to obtain printed records.

The second group comprises larger machines which have the raw data fed in on perforated or magnetic tapes as well as punched cards. Such is their phenomenal speed (and some can accept up to 15,000 digits per second) that it is necessary to feed

in a number of tapes and batches of cards at the same time if full advantage is to be taken of potential calculating speeds. These large and very rapid machines are, however, unlikely to be justifiable, on the grounds of cost, except in the largest organisations.

Punched card computers, however, are coming into quite wide use and the main advantage of such machines is their speed which enables them to take into account many more factors than can be economically handled by other methods.

In the case of a wages application, for example, the storage (memory) accommodation in the machine can be used to hold the rates of income tax and the stages of taxable income at which they should be applied. Thus when a card is fed into the machine and the taxable income is compared with the taxable stages, it can decide if tax is chargeable and, if so, calculate how much the charge should be. This is done in single stages as the machine can only choose between two alternatives and if there are many it must make many attempts.

If, for example, tax is chargeable on the following simple imaginary scale:

First £200 income at 1s. in £1,

£201 - £400 income at 2s. in £1,

£401 - £600 income at 3s. in £1,

then if an individual's earnings are, say, £550, the computer will compare this with £400 (in the memory) and finding it greater will deduct and find £150 is to be taxed at 3s. in the £1.

Then the next stage will compare the balance with £200 and finding a difference of £200 calculate tax at 2s. in £1. After all such comparisons and calculations are made the items of tax are added together and deducted from the gross pay.

As an example of the speed of these medium sized computers the Power-Samas P.C.C. (Program Controlled Computer) can effect all the calculations in connection with an individual's pay in one-half-second. Such a machine does not print but records its results on punched cards which in turn are printed out on a tabulator.

CHAPTER XII

THE DOUBLE ACCOUNT SYSTEM

§ 1. Definition

The Double Account system is not a system of book-keeping but a method of presenting final accounts, the object of which is to show clearly the total amount of capital that has been raised for the purpose of the undertaking and the manner in which that capital has been applied in the acquisition of fixed assets and other forms of capital expenditure. In order to do this, the Balance Sheet is divided into two parts. The first part is called the Capital Account and shows on the credit side all capital receipts (including receipts from debentures and loans), and on the debit side all capital expenditure to date. The balance of the Capital Account is carried to the Balance Sheet proper, which contains, in addition to such balance, particulars of the current assets and liabilities, revenue balances, reserves, etc.

Until a few years ago, the double account system was used compulsorily by such public utility concerns as railways, gas, electricity and water companies, which, in consideration of the monopolies given by the special Acts of Parliament under which they were constituted, were required to present their accounts in the form laid down by those Acts.

Most of these undertakings have now been brought under state ownership, and the statutes by which they were nationalised do not prescribe the use of the double account system, but merely require that the accounts shall be prepared in a form which conforms with the best commercial standards.

The expression 'double account' must not be confused with 'double entry'. Double entry is applied to the double account system in the same way as to the single account system, and ledger accounts are kept of each class of capital expenditure and capital receipt. The Capital Account itself is not a ledger account, but is prepared from balances standing in the books. For this purpose it is convenient to utilise a separate capital ledger containing only those items which go to make up the Capital Account. Thus it will be seen that the outstanding features in the double account system only become apparent in the preparation of the final accounts, and do not affect the actual book-keeping.

Illustration

THE OLD LAKE WATER COMPANY CAPITAL ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30TH JUNE, 1949

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| To Expenditure brought forward .. | 2,309,607 | By 7% Ordinary Stock .. | 1,000,000 |
| „ Expenditure during year ended 30th June .. | 63,206 | „ 5% Ordinary Stock .. | 200,000 |
| „ Balance (carried to Balance Sheet) .. | 25,187 | „ 4½% Preference Stock .. | 500,000 |
| | | „ 3% Redeemable Debenture Stock .. | 500,000 |
| | | | 2,200,000 |
| | | „ Premiums less Discounts .. | 200,000 |
| | <u>£2,400,000</u> | | <u>£2,400,000</u> |

REVENUE ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30TH JUNE, 1959

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| To Pumping and Engine Charges .. | 141,214 | By Water Rates and Charges .. | 521,385 |
| " Softening of Water .. | 42,180 | " Registration Fees .. | 52 |
| " Maintenance and Repairs of Works .. | 26,510 | " Rents .. | 4,273 |
| " Maintenance and Repairs of Mains .. | 55,789 | | |
| " Salaries .. | 35,200 | | |
| " Rates .. | 69,172 | | |
| " Insurance .. | 2,930 | | |
| " Directors' Fees .. | 5,000 | | |
| " Auditors' Fees .. | 750 | | |
| " Superannuation Fund .. | 1,800 | | |
| " Contributory Pension Fund .. | 12,850 | | |
| " General Establishment Charges .. | 11,524 | | |
| " Legal and Parliamentary Charges .. | 2,500 | | |
| | <u>407,419</u> | | |
| .. Balance (carried to Net Revenue Account) .. | 118,291 | | |
| | <u>£525,710</u> | | <u>£525,710</u> |

NET REVENUE ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| To Interest on Debenture Stock (Net) .. | 8,625 | By Balance brought forward .. | 59,280 |
| " Dividend on Preference Stocks (Net) .. | 12,938 | Less Final Dividend on Ordinary Stock for | |
| " Interim Dividend on Ordinary Stocks (Net) .. | 23,000 | previous year .. | 23,000 |
| " Income Tax .. | 5,982 | | |
| " Provision for Discounts and Expenses of Issue .. | 250 | | |
| " Balance (carried to Balance Sheet) .. | 63,526 | " Profit for year ended 30th June .. | 36,280 |
| | | " Profit on Sale of Investments .. | 1,250 |
| | | " Interest on Investments .. | 4,500 |
| | <u>£160,321</u> | | <u>£160,321</u> |

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 30TH JUNE, 1959

| | £ | | £ |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Capital Account .. | 25,187 | Stores on hand .. | 43,444 |
| Net Revenue Account .. | 63,526 | Debtors .. | 45,276 |
| Contingency Fund Account .. | 65,820 | Investments, at cost .. | 112,618 |
| Reserve Fund Account .. | 101,000 | Contingency Fund Investments, at cost .. | 52,500 |
| Creditors .. | 135,275 | Reserve Fund Investments, at cost .. | 102,760 |
| | <u>£390,808</u> | Cash and Bank Balances .. | 34,210 |
| | | | <u>£390,808</u> |

§ 2. Treatment of Capital Losses

Under the strict theory of the double account system all capital expenditure is shown in the Capital Account, whether or not it continues to be represented by assets. Losses on Capital Account, therefore, occasioned by the abandonment of assets which can be no longer profitably utilised, or by depreciation of assets which are not required to be renewed, need not, in strict theory, be provided for. Since this would usually be unsound from a financial point of view, although no provision is made for writing off such losses in the statutory forms of account, it is desirable that they should be ultimately provided for out of revenue, and in most cases, in practice, it is found that capital losses are actually written off, either by being deducted in the Capital Account, or by the creation of a reserve of equal amount, the former method being the more common. The loss is debited either to a Reserve Account previously created, or direct to the Revenue Account. If too large to be written off in any one year it may be written off over a period.

§ 3. Renewal and Depreciation Funds

It has already been said that depreciation of assets requiring renewal is not provided for in the usual manner by debiting revenue and crediting the asset account, but that all repairs, renewals and replacements are charged to revenue as and when they arise, and that this rule is subject to variation in practice.

It will be apparent that if no provision were made for large renewals and replacements until they actually occurred, the revenue of that period would be burdened with a charge out of all proportion thereto, which in many cases might have the effect of preventing the payment of a dividend in respect of that period, although in fact a profit had been earned.

During the early years of an undertaking working under this system, the renewals and replacements in respect of the principal assets, such as plant, etc., will be comparatively light, and unless provision is made for the future renewals, the profit will appear to be considerably greater than if provision for depreciation were taken into consideration, and will admit of dividends being paid which would not be possible if proper provision for renewals had been made. In actual cases where this policy has been pursued, dividends on the ordinary stocks have had to be greatly reduced, and in some cases suspended altogether, as soon as heavy replacements became necessary.

Although there is no statutory compulsion to provide for future renewals, there is nothing to prevent companies working under the double account system from forming proper renewal funds during the early years of the undertaking for the future replacement of their assets, and this should certainly be done, and is in fact done by all companies which are managed on the most prudent lines.

After a certain period, if the undertaking is sufficiently large, the renewals will reach a steady average from year to year, and further additions to the renewal fund may cease to be necessary.

In many instances replacements take place which involve an extension of the original asset, and the question then arises as to what proportion of the replacement can be charged to capital as representing the value of the extension, and what proportion should be charged to revenue as representing a replacement of the original asset. In such cases, many concerns adopt the usual principle of capitalising the whole of the excess of the cost over that of the original asset. Under the strict double account system, however, the method described and illustrated below is adopted.

The present cost of replacing the asset as it stands is estimated, and this amount is charged to revenue, whether or not it is more than the original cost of the asset. The balance of the expenditure is then charged to capital as representing the cost of the extension. Under either method, the amount received in respect of the break-up value of the asset replaced should be credited to revenue against the cost of replacement. Any of the old materials used in the new structure should be valued, and charged to the cost, being credited to revenue.

Illustration

A building originally costing £60,000 is replaced by a new and enlarged building costing £140,000, £6,000 being realised from the sale of old materials. The estimated cost of replacing

the old building as it stood was £75,000. How should the £140,000 be apportioned as between capital and revenue?

Under the strict double account system, £75,000, the estimated cost of replacement of the building as it stands, should be charged to revenue, as against which can be set the £6,000 realised from the sale of old materials, leaving a net charge of £69,000. £65,000 will be debited to capital as representing the cost of extension, making the total debit to capital in respect of the building £125,000.

In practice, however, it will often be found that the book value of the old asset is written off to revenue, and the whole cost of the new asset capitalised in the same way as under the single account system.

CHAPTER XIII
**BANKRUPTCY, LIQUIDATION AND RECEIVERSHIP
ACCOUNTS**

§ 1. The Preparation of a Statement of Affairs in Bankruptcy

Within three days of the making of the receiving order, if made on the debtor's own petition, or within seven days if made on a creditor's petition, the debtor must lodge with the Official Receiver his Statement of Affairs. This must be compiled in the official form, and be accompanied by the following schedules of particulars:

- A. Unsecured creditors.
- B. Creditors fully secured.
- C. Creditors partly secured.
- D. Liabilities of debtor on bills discounted other than his own acceptances for value.
- E. Contingent or other liabilities.
- F. Creditors for rent, etc., recoverable by distress.
- G. Preferential creditors for rates, taxes and wages.
- H. Property.
- I. Debts due to the Estate.
- J. Bills of Exchange, Promissory Notes, etc., available as assets.
- K. Deficiency Account.

In the illustration that follows, a *pro forma* example of the front sheet of a Statement of Affairs and the Deficiency Account is given.

The method of preparing this Statement of Affairs follows very much the lines of the preparation of a Statement of Affairs for the purpose of placing a system of books on a double entry basis. Where, however, the books have been kept on a double entry system, although the preparation of the statement will be greatly facilitated thereby, at the same time many points will require to be dealt with which would not arise in the preparation of a Balance Sheet in the ordinary manner. The principal of these are as follows:

(a) Unsecured Creditors

A schedule of these creditors must be prepared in the prescribed form, containing particulars of name, address and occupation, the amount of the debt, the date when contracted, and the consideration given. All liabilities, whether in respect of trading operations or otherwise, which cannot be listed in any of the other schedules, must be included here, particularly bills payable on which the debtor is liable as acceptor for value, the necessary particulars of each bill being inserted; bank overdraft if unsecured; balance of rent, etc., not recoverable by distress; and of creditors for wages,

etc., in excess of the limit allowed as a preferential payment. Where there is a contra account against a creditor, only the net balance must be included, the debt being reduced to the extent of the contra.

(b) Creditors fully secured

The schedule of these creditors, in addition to containing the same information as is necessary in respect of unsecured creditors, must also contain particulars of the security held, the date when the security was given, the estimated value of the security, and the estimated surplus. On the liabilities side of the statement of affairs these creditors will be entered in short, the security being shown as a deduction, and the surplus carried to the assets side. If, however, partly secured creditors have a second charge on any or all of such surplus, the amount so charged is deducted from the surplus (only the balance of which (if any) is carried to the assets side), and added to the securities of the partly secured creditors (*see* (c) below).

Where the creditor holds security of a third party for the liability of the debtor, such security must be ignored; the asset forming the security does not belong to the debtor, and the creditor, so far as the bankrupt's estate is concerned, is unsecured.

If the debtor has given security for the debt of a third party, the creditor of that third party is a fully secured creditor of the debtor giving the security. In such a case, the creditor should be included here, but his claim must be reduced by the amount expected to be paid by such third party, *i.e.*, if the third party is solvent, there will be no debt to rank here, and the securities will appear among the assets in the statement of affairs. Full details will, of course, appear in the schedule of liabilities.

(c) Creditors partly secured

Similar particulars must be afforded in this schedule, and the unsecured balance shown. In the Statement of Affairs these creditors are shown in short on the liabilities side, the security being deducted, together with any surplus from fully secured creditors over which the partly secured creditors have a second charge, and the balance unsecured, which ranks against the estate, extended.

(d) Liabilities on Bills Discounted other than Debtor's own Acceptances for value

The schedule of these bills must contain in respect of each bill particulars of the acceptor's name, address and occupation, whether the debtor is liable as drawer or indorser, the date when the bill falls due, the amount of the bill (accommodation bills being separated from other bills), the name, address and occupation of the holder (if known), and the amount expected to rank against the estate for dividend.

Bills receivable discounted by the debtor with his bank or other parties will be included here, since the debtor will be liable on the bills as drawer or indorser. If, however, it is expected that the acceptor will meet these bills in due course, nothing will be extended to rank against the estate for dividend.

The case of accommodation bills is more complicated, especially where there have been cross-transactions between the debtor and another party. Briefly, the whole of the accommodation bills must be inserted, whether the debtor is liable as drawer,

acceptor, or indorser. Each accommodation bill must be examined, to ascertain the precise nature of the liability attaching to it as regards the estate. Where the accommodation bill was accepted by the debtor, the amount ranking for dividend will be the face value less the amount expected to be recovered from any person who shared in the proceeds of discounting it. If there is no such estimated recovery, the full face value will rank for dividend, unless the bill has not been negotiated. If the debtor is only liable as drawer or indorser, it will depend on the financial position of those primarily liable on the bill how much (if any) of the amount should be extended as ranking for dividend. If the party primarily liable dishonours the bill and becomes bankrupt, the holder will have a right of proof to the full extent of the bill against the estates of both parties, though he will not be entitled to receive dividends exceeding the total face value of the bill, together with interest and expenses.

As previously stated, liabilities on bills payable accepted by the debtor for value will be included in the list of unsecured creditors, and not in this schedule. In the Statement of Affairs the gross amount of liabilities on bills discounted other than the debtor's own acceptances for value is shown in short, and only the amount expected to rank for dividend extended.

(e) Contingent or other liabilities

The chief claims under this heading will be under contracts of guarantee or suretyship, claims for dilapidations under leases, uncalled capital on partly-paid shares, etc. In these cases the gross amount is inset and only the amount expected to rank for dividend extended. Any amount recoverable from other persons will be considered when arriving at the amount expected to rank.

(f) Creditors for Rent, etc., recoverable by distress, and Preferential Creditors

The schedules of these items must contain full particulars, and disclose the difference between the gross amounts of the claims and the amounts recoverable by distress, or payable in full under the Bankruptcy Act. The amounts not so recoverable or payable in full will be included in the list of unsecured creditors. In the Statement of Affairs the amount recoverable or payable in full will be shown in short on the liabilities side, and deducted from the gross assets on the assets side.

The landlord is entitled to recover by distress any rent in arrear, up to a maximum of six months' rent, accrued due up to the date of the adjudication order, and since the statement of affairs is usually prepared prior to this date, if any rent is accrued due, such amount, but not exceeding six months' rent, should be included. Any balance should be included with the amounts due to unsecured creditors.

If the landlord distrains within three months of the receiving order, preferential debts are a first charge upon the goods or proceeds of sale, the landlord having the same rights of priority in place of the persons preferred. If, therefore, there are insufficient assets to cover the preferential debts and the rent accrued within the six months, the landlord's claim will be restricted to the excess of the available assets over the preferential debts.

The Bankruptcy Act, 1914, as amended by Sec. 115, Companies Act, 1947, provides

for certain classes of liabilities to be paid in priority to others, and these should be treated as indicated above. The following is a list of such preferential debts:

(1) Parochial and local rates due at the date of the receiving order and having become due and payable within the twelve months next before the receiving order. If the rates are payable by instalments, only the instalments *due* should be entered. If the premises have been vacated prior to the receiving order, only the apportioned rates to the date of vacating the premises should be included, since no rates are payable when the premises are not occupied.

(2) All land tax, income tax, surtax, or other assessed taxes assessed on the debtor up to the 5th April next before the receiving order, not exceeding one year's assessment. Where more than one year's assessment is in arrear, the highest amount will be treated as preferential, the balance being unsecured.

The expression 'assessed up to 5th April next before the receiving order' includes tax due for the period up to the previous 5th April, even though not actually assessed before that date (*Gowers v. Walker* (1930), 1 Ch. 262).

(3) Any tax deducted from emoluments under P.A.Y.E. for the twelve months next before the receiving order (*Finance Act*, 1952, § 30).

(4) Any unpaid purchase tax which became due to the Crown in the twelve months preceding the date of the receiving order.

(5) Wages or salary of any clerk, servant, labourer or workman in respect of services rendered during the four months before the receiving order, with a maximum of £200 for each individual. Holiday or sick pay ranks as payment in respect of services.

(6) Any sum ordered to be paid under the Reinstatement in Civil Employment Act, 1944, by way of compensation, not exceeding £200 for any individual. Similar compensation ordered under the National Service Act, 1948 or the Reinstatement in Civil Employment Act, 1950, not exceeding £50.

(7) All accrued holiday remuneration becoming payable to any clerk, servant, workman or labourer (or in case of his death to any other person in his right) on the termination of his employment before or by reason of the receiving order.

(8) Under the Workmen's Compensation Act, 1925, any sum due in respect of compensation, the liability whereof accrued before the date of the receiving order in satisfaction of a right which arose in respect of employment before 5th July, 1948 (unless the debtor was insured, in which case his rights under the policy are transferred to the workman, who is then an ordinary creditor to the extent that the insurance is insufficient).

(9) Under the National Insurance Act, 1946 and the National Insurance (Industrial Injuries) Act, 1946, all contributions payable during the twelve months prior to the

receiving order by the debtor as an employer of any person.

The following claims rank even before the above:

- (1) Funds belonging to a friendly society or trustee savings bank, which are in the hands of the debtor as an officer of the society.
- (2) The proportion of an articulated clerk's premium, as the trustee shall decide, where the employer becomes bankrupt, and the trustee does not transfer the Articles to some other person.
- (3) Reasonable funeral and testamentary expenses in the case of a deceased insolvent debtor.
- (4) The expenses properly incurred by the trustee under a deed of arrangement which was avoided by the bankruptcy of the debtor.

(g) Deferred Debts

The following classes of debts do not rank for dividend until all other unsecured creditors have been paid in full:

- (1) Money lent by a married woman to her husband for the purpose of his trade or business, or by a husband to his wife in similar circumstances.
- (2) Money lent to a firm, the lender to receive a share in the profits instead of interest, or a rate of interest varying with the profits; or money due to the vendor of goodwill (where he is being paid by way of an annuity or share of profits).
- (3) Beneficiaries under an ante-nuptial agreement to settle after-acquired property, if the agreement becomes void against the trustee should the settlor become bankrupt.
- (4) Interest on debts in excess of 5 per cent. In bankruptcy (but not in liquidation), this is not payable until all creditors have been paid in full. 4 per cent interest is also payable on all debts from the date of the receiving order to the final payment when all the debts are paid in full and all other claims for interest have been met.

Deferred debts must, nevertheless, be included in the list of unsecured creditors, since the question of postponement is dealt with when proofs of debts are scrutinised for voting and dividend purposes, and not at this early stage. The deferred debts are therefore not distinguished in the Statement of Affairs.

In all cases, the gross liabilities must be entered in the 'gross liabilities' column, whether secured or not, and even though part may be met by third parties.

(h) Valuation of Assets

All assets should be brought into the Statement of Affairs at a fair estimate of their realisable value. Care must be taken to see that the debtor does not over-estimate the break-up value. Stock must be valued with particular reference to the conditions under which a forced realisation might have to be made. Similar considerations apply to the valuation of other assets, such as freehold and leasehold properties, machinery and plant, fixtures, furniture, etc. Private assets, such as furniture and investments, must be included, as these are available to satisfy any liability of the debtor.

DEFICIENCY ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|
| Excess of Assets over liabilities one year previously . . . | £ 2,000 | Drawings . . . | £ 1,000 |
| Net Profit . . . | 500 | Loss on realization of assets . . . | 2,000 |
| Balance, being Deficiency as per Statement of Affairs . . . | 700 | Additional liabilities . . . | 200 |
| | <u>£3,200</u> | | <u>£3,200</u> |

It will thus be seen that the Deficiency Account must be credited with the amounts by which the estimated realizable value of assets as shown by the Statement of Affairs fall short of their book values, and with any amounts by which the liabilities estimated to rank against the estate, as shown by the Statement of Affairs, exceed book values. Similarly, if the estimated realizable value of an asset is greater, or the amount of a liability proves to be less, than its book value, the Deficiency Account must be debited with the amount of the difference, the credit for which has, in effect, been made in the Statement of Affairs.

Illustration

A filed his petition on 31st December, 19 , and his Statement of Affairs was composed of the following figures:

£

(A) Creditors unsecured 75,000

The excess of liabilities expected to rank against the estate over the net assets available to meet those liabilities is termed the 'deficiency', or in the event of the assets exceeding the liabilities, the 'surplus'. A Deficiency Account is prepared in order to disclose how the deficiency or surplus has arisen.

On reference to the form of this account shown in the subsequent example, it will be seen that the account starts with what is in effect either the capital of the debtor at a given date, or the deficiency at that date; the date in question being either one year prior to the date of the receiving order, or such other date as the official receiver may fix.

On the debit side of the Deficiency Account will be found the various items which go to make up the total amount to be accounted for. These are as follows:

- (1) Excess of assets over liabilities at commencement of period under review (if any).
Care must be taken to bring in private as well as business capital.
- (2) Net profits (if any) from the business during the period under review, before charging interest on capital or proprietor's salary.
- (3) Any other receipts. There must also be included any gifts, *e.g.*, legacies received during the period.
- (4) Deficiency (if any), as per Statement of Affairs.

The total of these will be accounted for on the credit side of the Deficiency Account as follows:

- (1) Excess of liabilities over assets (if any) at the commencement of the period under review.
- (2) Net loss (if any) from carrying on business during the period.

receiving order by the debtor as an employer of any person.

The following claims rank even before the above:

- (1) Funds belonging to a friendly society or trustee savings bank, which are in the hands of the debtor as an officer of the society.
- (2) The proportion of an articulated clerk's premium, as the trustee shall decide, where the employer becomes bankrupt, and the trustee does not transfer the Articles to some other person.
- (3) Reasonable funeral and testamentary expenses in the case of a deceased insolvent debtor.
- (4) The expenses properly incurred by the trustee under a deed of arrangement which was avoided by the bankruptcy of the debtor.

(g) Deferred Debts

The following classes of debts do not rank for dividend until all other unsecured creditors have been paid in full:

- (1) Money lent by a married woman to her husband for the purpose of his trade or business, or by a husband to his wife in similar circumstances.
- (2) Money lent to a firm, the lender to receive a share in the profits instead of interest, £3,000 a rate of interest varying with the profits; or money due to the vendor of goods, £1,000, by drawings of £1,000, the Statement of Affairs would reveal a surplus, on the basis of book values, of £1,000, which would correspond with the surplus disclosed by the Deficiency Account.

STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|--------|---------------|
| Liabilities | £ | Assets | £ |
| Surplus | 3,000 | | 4,500 |
| | 1,500 | | |
| | <u>£4,500</u> | | <u>£4,500</u> |

DEFICIENCY ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Excess of Assets over Liabilities one year previously | £ | Drawings | £ |
| Profits | 2,000 | Balance, being surplus as per Statement of Affairs | 2,500 |
| | 500 | | 1,500 |
| | <u>£2,500</u> | | <u>£2,500</u> |

If, however, it is now found that the realisable value of the assets is only £2,500, the Statement of Affairs will, in effect, be debited with the loss of £2,000 and the Deficiency Account must be credited with the same amount. Again, if additional liabilities of £200 come to light, the Statement of Affairs must be debited and the Deficiency Account credited with that amount. The effect of these entries would be to convert the surplus of £1,500 into a deficiency of £700, thus:

STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS

| | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|------------|---------------|
| Liabilities | £ | Assets | £ |
| Additional Liabilities | 3,000 | Deficiency | 2,500 |
| | 200 | | 700 |
| | <u>£3,200</u> | | <u>£3,200</u> |

DEFICIENCY ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Excess of Assets over liabilities one year previously | £ 2,000 | Drawings | £ 1,000 |
| Net Profit | 500 | Loss on realization of assets | 2,000 |
| Balance, being Deficiency as per Statement of Affairs | 700 | Additional liabilities | 200 |
| | <u>£3,200</u> | | <u>£3,200</u> |

It will thus be seen that the Deficiency Account must be credited with the amounts by which the estimated realizable value of assets as shown by the Statement of Affairs fall short of their book values, and with any amounts by which the liabilities estimated to rank against the estate, as shown by the Statement of Affairs, exceed book values. Similarly, if the estimated realizable value of an asset is greater, or the amount of a liability proves to be less, than its book value, the Deficiency Account must be debited with the amount of the difference, the credit for which has, in effect, been made in the Statement of Affairs.

Illustration

A filed his petition on 31st December, 19 , and his Statement of Affairs was composed of the following figures:

| | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Creditors unsecured | 75,000 |
| Creditors partly secured by lien on Shares | 40,000 |
| Creditors fully secured by lien on Stock | 100 |
| Liability on Bills Receivable (estimated to rank £3,500) .. | 7,000 |
| Mortgage on Mill | 10,000 |
| Creditors payable in full | 3,000 |
| Book Debts, good | 20,000 |
| Book Debts, doubtful (estimated to produce £2,000) .. | 4,000 |
| Book Debts, bad | 6,000 |
| Consignments, good | 5,000 |
| Stock (estimated to realise £40,000) | 60,000 |
| Shares (cost and estimated to realise) | 16,000 |
| Cash at Bankers | 200 |
| Bills of Exchange | 1,300 |
| Mill of the value of | 11,000 |
| Machinery (estimated to realise £12,000) | 15,000 |
| Fixtures (estimated to realise £1,500) | 3,000 |
| Cottages (estimated to realise £3,000) | 3,500 |

One year previously he had a capital of £20,000. A loss of £700 was made in the year, after allowing interest on capital £1,200, and withdrawals amounted to £3,600.

Prepare the Statement of Affairs and Deficiency Account.

Court of

19

In the
IN BANKRUPTCY

RE A

No. 46

Statement of Affairs

STATEMENT OF AFFAIRS
At 31st December 19... date of Receiving Order

| Gross Liabilities | Liabilities (as stated and estimated by Debtor) | Expected to Rank | Assets (as stated and estimated by Debtor) | Estimated to produce |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| £ | £ | £ | Property as per List (H), viz.: | £ |
| 75,000 | Unsecured Creditors as per List (A) .. | 75,000 | (a) Cash at Bankers .. | 200 |
| 10,100 | Creditors fully secured, as per List (B) | 10,100 | (b) Cash in hand .. | .. |
| | Estimated value of securities .. | 11,100 | (c) Cash deposited with Solicitor for Costs of Petition .. | 39,900 |
| | Surplus .. | 1,000 | (d) Stock-in-trade (cost £60,000) .. | 12,000 |
| | Less amount thereof carried to Sheet (C) .. | | (e) Machinery .. | 1,500 |
| | Balance thereof to contra .. | £1,000 | (f) Trade fixtures, fittings, utensils, etc. .. | .. |
| | | | (g) Farming stock .. | .. |
| | | | (h) Growing crops and tenant rights .. | .. |
| | | | (i) Furniture .. | .. |
| | | | (j) Life Policies .. | .. |
| | | | (k) Other property, viz.: | .. |
| | | | Cottages .. | 3,000 |
| | | | Consignments .. | 5,000 |
| 40,000 | Creditors partly secured, as per List (C) | 40,000 | | .. |
| | Less estimated value of securities .. | 16,000 | | .. |
| | Liabilities on Bills discounted other than Debtor's own acceptances for value, as per List (D), viz.: | 24,000 | Total as per List (H) .. | 61,600 |
| | On Accommodation Bills as Drawer, Acceptor, or Indorser .. | | | .. |
| | On other Bills as Drawer or Indorser .. | | | .. |
| 3,500 | Contingent or other Liabilities as per List (E) .. | 7,000 | Book Debts as per List I, viz.: | 20,000 |
| | | £7,000 | Good .. | .. |
| | | | Doubtful .. | £4,000 |
| | | | Bad .. | 6,000 |
| | | | | £10,000 |
| | Of which it is expected will rank against the estate for dividend .. | 3,500 | Estimated to produce .. | 2,000 |
| | Contingent or other Liabilities as per List (F) .. | | Bills of Exchange or other similar securities on hand, as per List (J) .. | .. |
| | | | | £1,300 |
| | | | Estimated to produce .. | 1,300 |
| 3,000 | Creditors for rent, etc., recoverable by Debtor as per List (F) .. | 3,000 | Surplus from securities in the hands of Creditors fully secured (per contra) | 1,000 |
| | Creditors for rates, taxes, wages, etc., payable in full, as per List (F) .. | | Deduct Creditors for disclaimable rent, and preferential rates, taxes, wages, sheriff's charges, etc. (per contra) .. | 85,900 |
| | Sheriff's charges payable under § 41 of the Bankruptcy Act, 1914, estimated at .. | | | 3,000 |
| | Deducted contra .. | £3,000 | Deficiency explained in Statement (K) .. | 82,900 |
| £131,600 | | £102,500 | | 19,600 |
| | | | | £102,500 |

No. 46

Statement of Affairs

List K

K
DEFICIENCY ACCOUNT

| Excess of assets over liabilities on the (1) 1st day of January, 19... (if any) | £ | Excess of liabilities over assets on the (1) 1st day of January, 19... (if any) | £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Net profit (if any) arising from carrying on business from the (1) 1st day of January, 19... to date of Receiving Order, after deducting usual trade expenses | 20,000 | Net loss (if any) arising from carrying on business from the (1) 1st day of January, 19... to date of Receiving Order, after deducting from Profits the usual trade expenses | |
| Income or profit from other sources (if any) since the (1) day of 19... | 500* | Bad debts (if any) as per Schedule '1' (2) | 8,000 |
| Deficiency as per Statement of Affairs | 19,600 | Expenses incurred since the (1) 1st day of January, 19... other than usual trade expenses, viz., household expenses of self and (3) | 3,600 |
| | | (4) Other losses and expenses (if any) | |
| | | On Stock-in-Trade | 20,000 |
| | | Machinery | 3,000 |
| | | Fixtures | 1,500 |
| | | Cottages | 500 |
| | | Bills Receivable Discounted | 3,500 |
| | | Surplus as per Statement of Affairs (if any) | 28,500 |
| Total amount to be accounted for | £40,100 | Total amount accounted for | £40,100 |
| | (5) | | (5) |

Signature

Dated

19

Notes

- (1) This date should be 12 months before date of Receiving Order, or such other time as Official Receiver may have fixed.
- (2) This Schedule must show when debts were contracted.
- (3) Add 'wife and children' (if any), stating number of latter.

(4) Here add particulars of other losses or expenses (if any), including depreciation in the value of stock and effects or other property as estimated for realisation, and liabilities (if any) for which no consideration received.

(5) These figures should agree.

* The profit before charging Interest on Capital was £1200—£700 = £500.

(I) Bankruptcy of Partnerships

When a partnership is made bankrupt, the trustee of the joint estate becomes also the trustee of the separate estate of each partner. A Statement of Affairs, with Deficiency Account, must be prepared for the firm, and separate Statements of Affairs and Deficiency Accounts for each partner. Distinct accounts must be kept of the joint and separate estates, the separate creditors of each estate being first paid out of the assets of that estate. In the event of there being a surplus on any of the separate estates, this will form an asset of the joint estate, but the joint creditors cannot receive more than the full amount of their debts, together with 4 per cent. per annum interest from the date of the order. Any surplus on the joint estate will be divided between the partners, according to their rights under the partnership agreement and each partner's share will be included as an asset of his separate estate.

Where a partner has given personal security as collateral to his guarantee of a debt due from the firm, the creditor can prove against the firm as an unsecured creditor for the whole debt, and against the partner as a creditor for the excess of his debt over the value of the security, the difference representing the liability of the separate estate in respect of the guarantee (*Re Turner, ex parte West Riding Bank* (1881) 19 Ch. D. 105.) Dividends declared in respect of the separate estate will be withheld until it is ascertained what amount the creditor will receive from the joint estate, as he cannot receive, in the aggregate, more than 20s. in the £.

Illustration

X and Y are in partnership and file their petition in bankruptcy. From the following particulars, prepare the Statements of Affairs and Deficiency Accounts of the joint estate and the separate estates of the partners.

BALANCE SHEETS

| | X & Y | X | Y | | X & Y | X | Y |
|---------------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| | £ | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ |
| Mortgage of Freehold .. | 3,000 | | | Freeholds | 6,000 | | |
| Bank Overdraft .. | 3,000 | | | Plant | 6,500 | | |
| Sundry Creditors .. | 12,400 | 1,500 | 2,900 | Furniture .. | 400 | 1,000 | 1,200 |
| Preferential Creditors .. | 100 | | | Stock | 5,500 | | |
| Capital X .. | 3,000 | | | Debtors | 5,000 | | |
| .. Y .. | 2,000 | | | Investments .. | | 2,500 | 800 |
| Surplus .. | | 5,000 | 1,100 | Cash | 100 | | |
| | | | | Capital in X and Y | | 3,000 | 2,000 |
| | <u>£23,500</u> | <u>£6,500</u> | <u>£4,000</u> | | <u>£23,500</u> | <u>£6,500</u> | <u>£4,000</u> |

The bank overdraft was secured by a second mortgage on freeholds, and by Y's personal guarantee, supported by the deposit of Y's investments as collateral security.

The firm's assets are estimated to realise the following: Freeholds, £4,500; Plant, £3,000; Furniture, £150; Stock, £3,100; Debtors, good, £2,575; doubtful (£1,000) 10s. in £; bad (£1,425) nil. X's assets: Furniture, £600; Investments, £2,000. Y's assets: Furniture, £800; Investments, £300.

STATEMENTS OF AFFAIRS

(Note. In practice each would be on a separate form)

| | X & Y | X | Y | | X & Y | X | Y |
|-------------------------------------------|---------|--------|--------|-------|----------------------------|---------|--------|
| | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ | £ |
| Unsecured Creditors .. | | 12,400 | 1,500 | 2 900 | Cash | 100 | |
| Fully Secured Creditor .. | 3,000 | | | | Stock | 3,100 | |
| Estimated value of security .. | 4,500 | | | | Plant | 3,000 | |
| Surplus to partly secured Creditor .. | 1,500 | | | | Furniture | 150 | 600 |
| | | | | | Investments .. | | 2,000 |
| | | | | | Surplus from X's Estate .. | 1,100 | |
| Partly Secured Creditor .. | 3,000 | | 1,500 | | | 7,450 | 2,600 |
| Estimated value of security .. | 1,500 | | 300 | | Debtors Good .. | 2,375 | |
| Preferential Creditors deducted contra .. | 100 | 1,500 | 1,200 | | Doubtful .. | £1,000 | |
| | | | | | Bad | 1,425 | |
| | | | | | | £2,425 | |
| Surplus carried to Joint Estate .. | | 1,100 | | | Estimated to produce .. | 500 | |
| | | | | | | 10,525 | 2,600 |
| | | | | | Less Preferential debts .. | 100 | |
| | | | | | | 10,425 | 2,600 |
| | | | | | Deficiency | 3,475 | 800 |
| | | | | | | | 3,300 |
| | £13,900 | £2,600 | £4,100 | | | £13,900 | £2,600 |
| | | | | | | | £4,100 |

Note.

As the joint estate will be able to pay the creditors only 15s. in the £, the bank will take over the whole of Y's investments towards the balance remaining (£375). The bank will, however, be entitled to prove in Y's estate for the full amount of £1,500, less £300, the value of the investments. It cannot, however, receive, in the aggregate, more than 20s. in the £. The proof would be made in the firm's estate for £1,500, the value of the investments not being deducted, as they were lodged by and belonged to Y, and did not form part of the estate of the firm.

DEFICIENCY ACCOUNTS

| | X & Y | X | Y | | X & Y | X | Y |
|-------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|
| | £ | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ |
| Capital | 5,000 | 5,000 | 1,100 | Losses: Stock | 2,400 | | |
| Surplus from X's Estate .. | 1,100 | | | Plant | 3,500 | | |
| Deficiency as per Statement of Affairs .. | 3,475 | | 3 300 | Furniture | 250 | 400 | 400 |
| | | | | Debtors | 1,925 | | |
| | | | | Freeholds | 1,500 | | |
| | | | | Investments | | 500 | 500 |
| | | | | Guarantee | | | 1,500 |
| | | | | Capital in X and Y .. | | 3,000 | 2,000 |
| | | | | Surplus as Statement of Affairs .. | | 1,100 | |
| | £9,575 | £5,000 | £4,400 | | £9,575 | £5,000 | £4,400 |

§ 2. The Accounts of a Trustee in Bankruptcy

Detailed accounts must be kept by the trustee in a cash book of all his receipts and payments. This book must be in the prescribed form, and contain columns for every class of receipt and payment. The following is the form provided:

If the trustee carries on the business of the debtor, he must keep a Trading Account recording simply the cash receipts and payments. This account must be kept in the prescribed form, and only the weekly total of the receipts and payments need be inserted in the general cash book.

At the date of declaring the first and each subsequent dividend, and at the date of application by the trustee for release, he must prepare a summarised statement of receipts and payments in the prescribed form, showing the position of the estate at the date in question. A copy of this statement must be sent to each creditor who has proved, and to the debtor.

§ 3. Deeds of Arrangement

Where a trustee is appointed under a private deed of arrangement, it is usual for a Statement of Affairs to be presented to the creditors, drawn up more or less on the lines of a Statement of Affairs in bankruptcy, but disclosing considerably less detail. A list of creditors is also usually furnished.

The trustee under a deed of arrangement is not compelled to keep a columnar cash book similar to that required to be kept by a trustee in bankruptcy; but he must, within 30 days after the expiration of 12 months from the date of the registration of the deed, and again on finally ceasing to act; transmit to the Board of Trade an account of his receipts and payments as trustee, sufficient indication being given of each receipt and payment to explain its nature.

Where trading is carried on, a separate Trading Account must be kept, and the totals entered in the cash account.

By Section 14 of the Deeds of Arrangement Act, 1914, it is provided that every trustee under a deed of arrangement must send, every six months from the registration of the deed, to each creditor who has assented to the deed, a statement in the prescribed form, of the trustee's accounts and of the proceedings under the deed to the date of the statement. This is in addition to the Statement of Accounts sent annually to the Board of Trade, or (as provided by Section 13 of the Deeds of Arrangement Act, 1914), at such times as may be prescribed.

Illustration

The following are the forms which have been prescribed in connection with the accounts of trustees under deeds of arrangement.

[illegible]

[illegible]

TRUSTEE'S ACCOUNT OF RECEIPTS AND PAYMENTS

[illegible]

§ 4. The Preparation of a Statement of Affairs of a Company in Compulsory Liquidation

Within fourteen days from the date of the winding-up order, or of the appointment of a provisional liquidator, a Statement of Affairs in the prescribed form must be submitted by the directors or secretary, or one of the chief officers of the company. If necessary, the official receiver may require some other employee of the company

competent to do so, to prepare the statement, or even an employee of a company which is an officer, *e.g.*, secretary, of the company in liquidation

The form of this statement is prescribed by the Companies (Winding-up) Rules, 1949, and is somewhat different from that used in bankruptcy, since it is designed to show not only the estimated surplus or deficiency as regards creditors of the company, but also the estimated surplus or deficiency so far as the members are concerned. The statement must be accompanied by the following schedules:

- A. Assets not specifically pledged.
- B. Secured creditors, and assets specifically pledged to them.
- C. Preferential creditors.
- D. Debenture holders secured by a floating charge.
- E. Unsecured creditors.
- F. Issued and called-up capital (Preference Shares).
- G. Issued and called-up capital (Ordinary Shares).
- H. Deficiency or Surplus Account.

In the case of a winding-up where the relevant date is after 30th June, 1948, the following debts are preferential (§ 319). For this purpose the expression 'the relevant date' means:

(i) in the case of a company ordered to be wound up compulsorily, the date of the appointment (or first appointment) of a provisional liquidator, or, if no such appointment was made, the date of the winding-up order, unless in either case the company had commenced to be wound up voluntarily before that date; and

(ii) in any other case the date of the passing of the resolution for the winding up of the company.

(a) The following rates and taxes:

- (i) all local rates due from the company at the relevant date, and having become due and payable within twelve months next before that date;
- (ii) all land tax, income tax, profits tax, excess profits levy or other assessed taxes assessed on the company up to the 5th April next before that date (including tax *due* for the period to 5th April although not yet assessed (*Gowers v. Walker*)), and not exceeding in the whole one year's assessment. (The Crown may select any one year's assessment; they are not confined to the year immediately preceding the relevant date);
- (iii) the amount of any purchase tax due from the company at the relevant date, and having become due within twelve months next before that date.
- (iv) any sums due at the relevant date by the company on account of tax deductions under P.A.Y.E. for the twelve months next before that date (*Finance Act, 1952, § 30*).

- (v) any estate duty payable by a company in respect of assets of a company deemed to pass on a death by virtue of Section 46, Finance Act, 1940 (*Finance Act*, 1940, § 54).
- (b) All wages or salary (whether or not earned wholly or in part by way of commission) of any clerk or servant in respect of services rendered to the company during four months next before the relevant date and all wages (whether payable for time or for piece work) of any workman or labourer in respect of services so rendered. Any remuneration in respect of a period of holiday or of absence from work through sickness or other good cause is deemed to be wages in respect of services rendered to the company during that period.
- (c) Any sum ordered under the Reinstatement in Civil Employment Act, 1944, to be paid by way of compensation where the default by reason of which the order for compensation was made occurred before the relevant date, whether or not the order was made before that date.

The sum to which priority is to be given under paragraphs (b) and (c) above respectively is not, in the case of any one claimant to exceed £200. Where, however, a claimant under paragraph (b) is a labourer in husbandry who has entered into a contract for the payment of a portion of his wages in a lump sum at the end of the year of hiring, he has priority in respect of the whole of such sum, or a part thereof, as the court may decide to be due under the contract, proportionate to the time of service up to the relevant date.

- (d) All accrued holiday remuneration becoming payable to any clerk, servant, workman or labourer (or in the case of his death to any other person in his right) on the termination of his employment before or by the effect of the winding-up order or resolution.

The expression 'accrued holiday remuneration' includes, all sums which, by virtue either of his contract of employment or of any enactment (including any order made or direction given under any Act), are payable to any person on account of the remuneration which would, in the ordinary course, have become payable to him in respect of a period of holiday had his employment with the company continued until he became entitled to be allowed the holiday.

References to remuneration in respect of a period of holiday include any sums which, if they had been paid, would have been treated for the purposes of the National Insurance Act, 1946, or any enactment repealed by that Act as remuneration in respect of that period.

- (e) Unless the company is being wound up voluntarily merely for the purposes of reconstruction or of amalgamation with another company, all amounts due in respect of contributions payable during the twelve months next before the relevant date by the company as the employer of any person under the National Insurance Acts.

(f) Unless the company is being wound up voluntarily merely for the purposes of reconstruction or of amalgamation with another company, or unless the company has, at the commencement of the winding up, under such a contract with insurers as is mentioned in Section 7 of the Workmen's Compensation Act, 1925, rights capable of being transferred to and vested in the workman, all amounts due in respect of any compensation under the said Act, which have accrued before the relevant date in satisfaction of a right which arises or has arisen in respect of employment before the fifth day of July, 1948.

(g) the amount of any debt which, by virtue of subsection (5) of Section 3 of the Workmen's Compensation (Coal Mines) Act, 1934, is due from the company to an insurer in respect of a liability in respect of the satisfaction of a right falling within the last foregoing paragraph.

Where any compensation under the Workmen's Compensation Act, 1925, is a weekly payment, the amount due in respect thereof, for the purposes of paragraph (f) above, is to be taken to be the amount of the lump sum for which the weekly payment could, if redeemable, be redeemed if the employer made an application for that purpose under the said Act.

Where any payment has been made:

(a) to any clerk, servant, workman or labourer in the employment of a company, on account of wages or salary; or

(b) to any such clerk, servant, workman or labourer, or, in the case of his death, to any other person in his right, on account of accrued holiday remuneration;

out of money advanced by some person for that purpose, the person by whom the money was advanced has a right of priority in respect of the money so advanced and paid up to the amount by which the sum in respect of which the clerk, servant, workman or labourer, or other person in his right, would have been entitled to priority in the winding up has been diminished by reason of the payment having been made.

The foregoing debts:

(a) rank equally among themselves and are to be paid in full, unless the assets are insufficient to meet them, in which case they are to abate in equal proportions; and

(b) in the case of a company registered in England, so far as the assets of the company available for payment of general creditors are insufficient to meet them, have priority over the claims of holders of debentures under any floating charge created by the company, and be paid accordingly out of any property comprised in or subject to that charge.

Subject to the retention of such sums as may be necessary for the costs and expenses of the winding up, the foregoing debts are to be discharged forthwith so far as the assets are sufficient to meet them, and in the case of the debts to which priority is given by paragraph (e) formal proof thereof is not required except in so far as is otherwise provided by general rules.

In the event of a landlord or other person distraining or having distrained on any goods or effects of the company within three months next before the date of a winding up order, the debts to which priority is given by this section are a first charge on the goods or effects so distrained on, or the proceeds of the sale thereof; but, in respect of any money paid under any such charge, the landlord or other person has the same rights of priority as the person to whom the payment is made.

Unpaid calls on shares are treated in the Statement of Affairs as an asset at the amount they are expected to realise, the balance being entered as a loss in the Deficiency Account. The nominal amount of unpaid capital liable to be called up is not shown as an asset, but is given as a note at the foot of the Statement of Affairs.

The Deficiency Account covers a period commencing on a date not less than three years before the date of the winding-up order, or, if the company was formed within the three years, the date of formation of the company. It sets out in detail all items contributing to the deficiency (or reducing the surplus) commencing with the excess (if any) of capital and liabilities over assets (*i.e.*, any debit balance on Profit and Loss Account) three years previously. From the total of these items is deducted the total of all items reducing the deficiency (or contributing to the surplus), and the balance represents the deficiency or surplus disclosed by the statement of affairs. A note is appended of the items taken into account in arriving at the amount of the net trading profits or losses shown in the account.

Illustration

From the following particulars prepare statement of affairs of the General Trading Company, Limited, as at 31st December, 1958, the date of the Winding-up Order:

| | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Land and Premises (book value £13,000) valued at | £ |
| Secured Creditors holding First Mortgage on Land and Premises | 11,210 |
| Partly Secured Creditors holding Second Mortgage on Land and Premises | 8,090 |
| Unsecured Creditors | 4,510 |
| 100 6% Mortgage Debentures of £100 each, carrying a floating charge on the assets, interest payable 30th June and 31st December, paid to 30th June, 1958 | 10,160 |
| Liabilities on Bills discounted | 1,400 |
| Of which it is expected to rank | 420 |
| Managing Director's Salary, owing for five months | 200 |
| Weekly Wages unpaid (4 weeks) | 140 |
| Debtors: Good | 9,265 |
| " Doubtful, estimated to produce 6s. 8d. in the £ | 2,940 |
| " Bad | 1,750 |
| Bills Receivable: Good | 320 |
| Bank Overdraft | 26 |
| Cash in Hand | 3 |
| Stock (cost £15,000) valued at | 11,000 |
| Issued Capital: | |
| 100 Founders' Shares of £1 each, 10s. called up. | |
| 15,000 Ordinary Shares of £1 each, issued as fully paid. | |
| 5,000 Preference Shares of £1 each, fully called up, on which there are Calls in arrear of £150, estimated to produce £100. | |

The debit balance on Profit and Loss Account on 31st December, 1955, was £2,200. Net trading losses for the 3 years ended 31st December, 1958, after charging £600 depreciation, £1,800 interest on debentures and £6,000 directors' fees, and crediting £50 transfer fees and profit on sale of investments £120, were £8,848.

STATEMENT AS TO THE AFFAIRS OF
GENERAL TRADING COMPANY, LIMITED,
ON THE 31ST DECEMBER, 1958, THE DATE OF THE WINDING-UP ORDER
SHOWING ASSETS AT ESTIMATED REALISABLE VALUES AND LIABILITIES
EXPECTED TO RANK

| | Estimated Realisable Values £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| ASSETS NOT SPECIFICALLY PLDGED (as per List 'A') | |
| Balance at Bank | 3 |
| Cash in Hand | |
| Marketable Securities | 320 |
| Bills Receivable | 10,245 |
| Trade Debtors | |
| Loans and Advances | |
| Unpaid Calls | 100 |
| Stock in Trade | 11,000 |
| Work in Progress | |
| Freehold Property | |
| Leasehold Property | |
| Plant and Machinery | |
| Furniture, Fittings, Utensils, etc. | |
| Patents, Trade Marks, etc. | |
| Investments other than marketable securities | |
| Other property, viz.: | |

| | (a) Estimated Realisable Values | (b) Due to Secured Creditors | (c) Deficiency ranking as Unsecured (see next page) | Surplus carried to last column |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| ASSETS SPECIFICALLY PLEDGED (as per List 'B') | | | | |
| Freehold Property | £ 11,210 | £ 12,600 | £ 1,390 | £ — |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | £11,210 | £12,600 | £1,390 | £— |

Estimated surplus from Assets specifically pledged

**ESTIMATED TOTAL ASSETS AVAILABLE FOR PREFERENTIAL CREDITORS, DEBENTURE HOLDERS
SECURED BY A FLOATING CHARGE, AND UNSECURED CREDITORS* (carried forward to
next page)** £ 21,668

| | | (d) £ |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|--|-----------------|
| SUMMARY OF GROSS ASSETS | | |
| Gross realisable value of assets specifically pledged | | 11,210 |
| Other Assets | | 21,668 |
| GROSS ASSETS | | £ 32,878 |

| | | | | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|------------|
| ESTIMATED TOTAL ASSETS AVAILABLE FOR PREFERENTIAL CREDITORS, DEBENTURE HOLDERS SECURED BY A FLOATING CHARGE, AND UNSECURED CREDITORS* (brought forward from preceding page) | | | | | 21,668 |
| (e) | LIABILITIES | | | | |
| Gross Liabilities | (to be deducted from surplus or added to deficiency as the case may be) | | | | |
| £ | | | | | |
| | SECURED CREDITORS (as per List 'B') to extent to which claims are estimated to be covered by Assets specifically pledged (item (a) or (b) on preceding page, whichever is the less) | | | | |
| 11,210 | (Insert in 'Gross Liabilities' column only.) | | | | |
| 140 | PREFERENTIAL CREDITORS (as per List 'C') | | | | 140 |
| | Estimated balance of assets available for Debenture Holders secured by a floating charge, and Unsecured Creditors* | | | | £ 21,528 |
| 10,300 | DEBENTURE HOLDERS secured by a floating charge (as per List 'D') | | | | 10,300 |
| | Estimated SURPLUS as regards Debenture Holders* | | | | £ 11,228 |
| | UNSECURED CREDITORS (as per List 'E'): | | | | £ |
| 1,390 | Estimated unsecured balance of claims of Creditors partly secured on specific assets, brought from preceding page (c) | | | | 1,390 |
| 10,160 | Trade Accounts | | | | 10,160 |
| | Bills Payable | | | | |
| 200 | Outstanding Expenses | | | | 200 |
| 26 | Bank Overdraft | | | | 26 |
| | Contingent Liabilities (State nature): | | | | |
| 420 | Bills Discounted | | | | 420 12,196 |
| ESTIMATED DEFICIENCY AS REGARDS CREDITORS* | | | | | |
| being difference between: | | | | | £ |
| GROSS ASSETS brought from preceding page (d) | | | | | 32,878 |
| and GROSS LIABILITIES as per column (e) | | | | | 33,846 |
| £33,846 | | | | | 968 |
| ISSUED AND CALLED-UP CAPITAL | | | | | £ |
| 5,000 preference shares of £1 each | | | | | 5,000 |
| £1 called-up (as per List 'F') | | | | | |
| 15,000 ordinary shares of £1 each | | | | | 15,000 |
| £1 called-up (as per List 'G') | | | | | |
| 100 founders' shares of £1 each | | | | | |
| 10s. called-up | | | | | 50 |
| | | | | | 20,050 |
| ESTIMATED DEFICIENCY AS REGARDS MEMBERS* (as per List 'H') | | | | | £ 21,018 |

*These figures must be read subject to the following notes:

(1) (f) There is no unpaid capital liable to be called up or

(g) The nominal amount of unpaid capital liable to be called-up is £50, estimated to produce £50, which is charged in favour of Debenture Holders.

Strike out
(f) or (g)

(2) The estimates are subject to costs of the winding-up and to any surplus or deficiency on trading pending realisation of the Assets.

LIST 'H' - DEFICIENCY OR SURPLUS ACCOUNT

The period covered by this Account must commence on a date not less than three years before the date of the winding-up order (or the date directed by the official receiver) or, if the company has not been incorporated for the whole of that period, the date of formation of the company, unless the official receiver otherwise agrees.

ITEMS CONTRIBUTING TO DEFICIENCY (OR REDUCING SURPLUS):

1. Excess (if any) of Capital and Liabilities over Assets on the 31st December, 1955, as shown by Balance Sheet (copy annexed) .. £ 2,200
2. Net dividends and bonuses declared during the period from .. —
3. Net trading losses (after charging items shown in note below) for the same period .. 9,018
4. Losses other than trading losses written off or for which provision has been made in the books during the same period (give particulars or annex schedule) .. —
5. Estimated losses now written off or for which provision has been made for the purpose of preparing the Statement (give particulars or annex schedule) .. 9,970
6. Other items contributing to Deficiency or reducing Surplus: .. —

ITEMS REDUCING DEFICIENCY (OR CONTRIBUTING TO SURPLUS):

7. Excess (if any) of Assets over Capital and Liabilities on the (copy annexed) .. £ 21,188
8. Net trading profits (after charging items shown in note below) for the period from the .. 19 .. to the ..
9. Profits and income other than trading profits during the same period - Transfer Fees .. 50
- Profit on Sales of Investments .. 120 170
10. Other items reducing Deficiency or contributing to Surplus .. 170

DEFICIENCY/SURPLUS as shown by Statement .. £ 21,018

NOTE AS TO NET TRADING PROFITS AND LOSSES:

Particulars are to be inserted here (so far as applicable) of the items mentioned below, which are to be taken into account in arriving at the amount of net trading profits or losses shown in this Account:

Provisions for depreciation, renewals, or diminution in value of fixed assets .. £ 600

Charges for United Kingdom income tax and other United Kingdom taxation on profits .. 1,800

Interest on debentures and other fixed loans .. 6,000

Payments to directors made by the company and required by law to be disclosed in the accounts .. —

Exceptional or non-recurring expenditure: .. —

Less: Exceptional or non-recurring receipts: .. £ 8,400

Balance, being other trading profits or losses .. £ 8,400

Net trading profits or losses as shown in Deficiency or Surplus Account above .. £ 9,018

Signature

Schedule of Losses now written off

| | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| Land and Buildings .. | £1,790 |
| Stock .. | 4,000 |
| Book Debts .. | 3,710 |
| Calls .. | 50 |
| Bills discounted .. | 420 |
| | <u>£9,970</u> |

Dated 14th January, 1959

At the expiration of six months from the date of the winding-up order, and every succeeding six months until his release, the liquidator must send to the Board of Trade a duplicate copy of the cash book for such period, together with the necessary vouchers, and copies of the certificate of audit of the committee of inspection. One copy of the cash book so required will be in the form shown above, the other copy being simply a summarised form without detailed columns.

If the liquidator carries on business for the company, he must keep a Trading Account, recording simply the cash receipts and payments. This account must be kept in the prescribed form, and the weekly totals of receipts and payments on Trading Account must be incorporated in the cash book.

The liquidator must transmit to the Board of Trade with his accounts a summary thereof in the prescribed form, copies of which are sent out to creditors and contributories.

At the date of application by the liquidator for release, he must prepare a summarised statement of receipts and payments in the prescribed form, showing the position of the company at that date.

Under Section 342, Companies Act, 1948, if the winding-up has not been completed within one year, the liquidator must make the returns to the registrar required by the section in the prescribed form.

§ 6. The Accounts of a Liquidator in Voluntary Liquidation

Where it is proposed to wind up a company voluntarily, the directors (or a majority if there are more than two) may make a statutory declaration that they have made a full enquiry into the affairs of the company and have formed the opinion that the company will be able to pay its debts in full within such period, not exceeding twelve months, from the commencement of the winding-up as is stated in the declaration. Such a statement, to be effective, must be made within the five weeks preceding the date of the passing of the resolution for winding-up and be filed with the registrar of companies before that date, and must embody a statement of the company's assets and liabilities at the latest practicable date prior to the declaration. The winding-up will then be a 'members' voluntary winding-up'; if the declaration is not made, it will be 'a creditors' voluntary winding-up'. There are heavy penalties for making such a declaration without reasonable grounds; if the company does not pay or provide for its debts in full within the period stated in the declaration, it will be presumed that the directors did not have reasonable grounds for that opinion, unless the contrary is shown (§ 283, Companies Act, 1948).

The statement of assets and liabilities must be in the following form:

If the liquidator is at any time of opinion that the company will not be able to pay its debts in full within the period stated in the above mentioned declaration, he must forthwith summon a meeting of creditors and lay before it a statement of the assets and liabilities in a form identical to that of the Statement of Affairs shown on pages 486-7, except that the date as at which the assets and liabilities are stated is left open, since the liquidator may have been continuing the company's business and have fresh assets and liabilities to disclose (Companies Act, 1948, Section 288).

In a creditors' voluntary winding-up, the company must summon a meeting of creditors for the day, or the day next following the day on which the resolution for winding-up is proposed to be passed. The directors must lay before that meeting a full statement of the company's affairs and a list of the creditors and their estimated claims (Section 293, Companies Act, 1948). No form of statement is laid down, but it can conveniently follow that shown on pages 486-7.

In any voluntary winding-up, the liquidator is required to keep an account of his receipts and payments.

If the liquidation continues for more than one year, the liquidator must summon a general meeting of the company at the end of the first year (unless a meeting under Section 288 of the Companies Act, 1948, was held within 3 months before the end of that year), and of each succeeding year from the commencement of the winding-up, or as soon thereafter as may be convenient, and lay before the meeting an account of his receipts and payments.

When the liquidation is finally completed, a general meeting must be summoned by the liquidator, and an account laid before it showing the way in which the property of the company has been disposed of.

The account must be in the following form:

No. 110 (RULE 182)

No. of Company

The Companies Act, 1948

LIQUIDATOR'S STATEMENT OF ACCOUNT (MEMBERS' OR CREDITORS' VOLUNTARY WINDING-UP)
(Pursuant to Sections 290 and 300)

Statement showing how the winding-up has been conducted and the property of the company has been disposed of

Name of Company

Limited (in liquidation)

Presented by

LIQUIDATOR'S STATEMENT OF ACCOUNT [MEMBERS] * [CREDITORS] VOLUNTARY WINDING-UP

Statement showing how the winding-up has been conducted and the property of the company has been disposed of

From 19. (Commencement of Winding-up) to 19 (Close of Winding-up)

| | Statement of Assets and Liabilities | Receipts | Payment |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| | £ | £ s. d. | £ s. d. |
| Receipts: | | | |
| Cash at Bank | | | Costs of Solicitor to Liquidator |
| Cash in Hand | | | Other law costs |
| Marketable Securities | | | Liquidator's remuneration: £ s. d. |
| Sundry Debtors | | | When applicable { |
| Stock in Trade | | | ... % on £ realised |
| Work in Progress | | | ... % on £ distributed |
| Freehold Property | | | By whom fixed |
| Leasehold Property | | | Auctioneers' and valuers' charges |
| Plant and Machinery | | | Costs of possession and maintenance of estate |
| Furniture, fittings, utensils, etc. | | | Costs of notices in Gazette and local papers |
| Patents, trade marks, etc. | | | Incidental Outlay |
| Investments other than marketable securities | | | Total costs and charges £ s. d. |
| Surplus from securities | | | (i) Debenture holders: |
| Unpaid calls at commencement of winding-up | | | Payment of £ |
| Amounts received from calls on contributories made in the winding-up | | | per £ debenture |
| Receipts per trading account | | | Payment of £ |
| Other property viz.: | | | per £ debenture |
| | £ | | £ s. d. |
| Less | £ | | (ii) Creditors: |
| Payments to redeem securities | | | ... * Preferential |
| Costs of execution | | | ... * Unsecured: |
| Payments per trading account | | | Dividend(s) of £ s. d. in £ on £ |
| | | | (The estimate of amount expected to rank for dividend was £) |
| | | | (iii) Returns to contributories: |
| Net realisations | £ | | £ s. d. |
| | | | ... s. d. per £ |
| | | | † share |
| | | | ... s. d. per £ |
| | | | † share |
| | | | ... s. d. per £ |
| | | | † share |
| | | | Balance |
| | £ | | £ |

(1) Assets, including, show in the statement of assets and liabilities and estimated to be of the value of £. have proved to be unrealisable.

(2) State amount paid into the Companies Liquidation Account in respect of :

(a) unclaimed dividends payable to creditors in the winding-up

(b) other unclaimed distributions in the winding-up

(c) moneys held by the company in trust in respect of dividends or other sums due before the commencement of the winding-up to any person as a member of the company

(3) Add here any special remarks the Liquidator thinks desirable:

Dated this

day

of

19

(Signature of liquidator(s))
(address)

* State number. Preferential creditors need not be separately shown if all creditors have been paid in full

† State nominal value and class of share.

Returns to the registrar under Section 342, Companies Act, 1948, must be made by the liquidator if the winding-up is not completed within one year.

Illustration

The X Company Limited, went into voluntary liquidation on the 31st December, with preferential creditors £408, other unsecured creditors £3,375, and 6 per cent. debentures £4,000, secured by a floating charge on the undertaking, the interest on which was paid to 30th June.

The assets realised £7,255, being £4,200 from sale of stock, £3,030 from books debts and £25 cash in hand at the commencement of liquidation. The debentures were paid off on 30th June of the following year, and a first and final dividend distributed to creditors. Cost of liquidation amounted to £95 2s. 0d.

Prepare the liquidator's final Statement of Account for presentation to the shareholders, his remuneration being at the rate of 3 per cent. on the amount realised and 2 per cent. on the amount distributed to unsecured creditors. Ignore Income Tax.

THE X COMPANY, LIMITED (IN LIQUIDATION) LIQUIDATOR'S STATEMENT OF ACCOUNT

| RECEIPTS | | | £ s. d. | | | PAYMENTS | | | £ s. d. | | | | | |
|---------------------------|----|----|---------|---|---|----------|---|--------------------------------|---------|----|----|--------|----|---|
| To Realisation of Assets: | | | | | | By Costs | | | | | | | | |
| Cash | .. | .. | 25 | 0 | 0 | | | Liquidator's Remuneration: | | | 95 | 2 | 0 | |
| Stock | .. | .. | 4,200 | 0 | 0 | | | 3% on £7,230 realised .. | 216 | 18 | 0 | | | |
| Book Debts .. | .. | .. | 3,030 | 0 | 0 | | | 2% on £2,250 distributed | 45 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | | | | | 7,255 | 0 | 0 | | | | 261 | 18 | 0 |
| | | | | | | | | Preferential Creditors .. | | | | 408 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | | | Debenture-holders .. | 4,000 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | Interest to date of payment .. | 240 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | 4,240 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | | | Unsecured Creditors: | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | First and Final Dividend of | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | 13s. 4d. in the £ on £3,375 | | | | 2,250 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | £7,255 | 0 | 0 | | | | £7,255 | 0 | 0 |

Note.

The first part of the liquidator's remuneration will be calculated on the amounts *realised* by him. He will not, therefore, be entitled to any percentage on the cash in hand at the commencement of the liquidation. His remuneration will, however, be calculated on the *gross* amounts realised before deducting expenses.

Rule 159 of the Winding-Up Rules, which applies only to a winding-up by the court, provides that this percentage shall be on the amount realised 'after deducting the sums (if any) paid to secured creditors (other than debenture holders) out of the proceeds of their securities'.

Applying this principle to this example, the liquidator will be entitled to remuneration on the full £7,230, before deducting the amounts paid to the debenture holders.

The second portion of the liquidator's remuneration is computed on the amount distributed to unsecured creditors.

The cash to be divided between the liquidator and the unsecured creditors amounts to £2,295. Since the commission is to be 2% on the amount distributed (*i.e.*, after deducting such commission), it will be equal to $\frac{2}{102}$ of £2,295, *viz.*, £45, leaving £2,250 (equivalent to a dividend of 13s. 4d. in the £) available for the unsecured creditors.

§ 7. Return to Shareholders

In the event of some shares being fully paid up and others only partly paid up, it will become necessary for the liquidator to adjust the rights of the contributories between themselves, and this may involve the making of a call on those shareholders whose

shares are only partly paid up. It is essential that the amounts finally contributed by shareholders in any one class should be equal as between themselves.

If a surplus remains after all costs and liabilities have been discharged, such surplus must be distributed between the shareholders according to their rights under the memorandum and articles of association.

Shares which have preference as to repayment of capital should be paid off first (if necessary out of the proceeds of a call made on shares of an inferior degree); if there remains a surplus after all the shareholders have received the nominal amount of their shares, it would appear from the decision of the House of Lords in *Scottish Insurance Corporation Ltd. v. Wilsons and Clyde Coal Co., Ltd.* (1949), which overruled the previous decision in *Re William Metcalfe & Sons, Ltd.* that unless on a true construction of the articles the preference shareholders are entitled to share in such surplus, it belongs to the ordinary shareholders. If the articles give the preference shareholders the rights to priority as to the return of capital, the presumption is that they are not entitled to any further share in the assets.

In regard to any arrears of preference dividend, the basic rule is that in the absence of some provision in the articles to the contrary preference shareholders have no right to arrears of dividend unless declared before the commencement of the winding up (*Re Crichton's Oil Co. Ltd.* (1902) 2 Ch. 86). It would seem, however, that any indication that the shares are to be preferential as to dividend on a winding-up may be sufficient to exclude this rule. In *Re E. W. Savory, Ltd.* (1951), 2 All E.R. 1036, where the articles stated that 'the preference shares . . . shall confer on the holders the right to a fixed cumulative preference dividend at the rate of 6 per cent per annum on the capital paid up thereon and shall rank both as regards dividends and capital in priority to all other shares, both present and future' it was held that the preference shareholders were entitled to arrears of dividend on winding-up although no dividends had been declared. The arrears are calculated up to the commencement of the winding-up and not to the date of repayment of capital. Income tax is not deductible from arrears of preference dividends payable in a winding-up (*Re Dominion Tar and Chemical Co. Ltd.* (1929), 2 Ch. 387).

Illustration (1)

The capital of The Motor Company, Limited (in voluntary liquidation), consists of:

- 2,000 Preference Shares of £5 each, fully paid up.
- 8,000 Ordinary Shares of £5 each, fully paid up.
- 6,000 Ordinary Shares of £5 each, £4 per share paid up.
- 2,000 Deferred Shares of £5 each, £4 per share paid up.

Under the articles of association, the preference shares have priority as to repayment of capital over the ordinary shares, and the ordinary shares priority over the deferred shares.

The costs of liquidation, including the liquidator's remuneration, amounted to £700, and the creditors to £8,900.

The assets realised £18,700. The call made by the liquidator on the deferred shareholders for the adjustment of the rights of shareholders *inter se* was fully paid. A call of 10s. per share was made on the partly-paid ordinary shareholders, which was duly paid, with the exception of that on 200 Shares, which was irrecoverable.

Prepare the liquidator's final Statement of Account.

THE MOTOR COMPANY, LIMITED (IN LIQUIDATION)
LIQUIDATOR'S FINAL STATEMENT OF ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Realisation of Assets | 18,700 | By Costs of Liquidation | £ 700 |
| .. Proceeds of Call of £1 per Share on | | .. Creditors paid in full | 8,900 |
| .. 2,000 Deferred Shares of £5 each | 2,000 | .. Return to Shareholders: | |
| .. Call of 10s. per Share on 6,000 Ordinary | | .. £5 per Share on 2,000 Preference | |
| .. Shares of £5 each, to make them | | .. Shares of £5 each, being return in | |
| .. £4 10s. paid | 3,000 | .. full | 10,000 |
| .. Less Call unpaid on 200 Shares | 100 | .. 10s. per Share on 8,000 Ordinary | |
| | | .. Shares of £5 each, leaving £4 10s. | |
| | | .. per Share paid | 4,000 |
| | 2,900 | | 14,000 |
| | <u>£23,600</u> | | <u>£23,600</u> |

Notes.

- (1) The 200 shares in respect of which the call is irrecoverable will be forfeited.
- (2) The call from the holders of the partly-paid ordinary shares makes the partly-paid shares £4 10s. 0d. paid, and the proceeds must be applied in payment of 10s. per share to holders of fully-paid ordinary shares, which leaves all the ordinary shares £4 10s. 0d. paid.

There would be no point in calling up 15s. per share on the partly-paid shares and then paying back 5s. The effect is obtained by merely calling up 10s. per share.

Illustration (2)

A company having the following issued share capital went into voluntary liquidation:

40,000 6 per cent. preference shares of £1 each, 15s. paid.

2,000,000 ordinary shares of 2s. each, 9d. paid.

The articles gave the preference shareholders a preferential right to dividends, but were silent as to repayment of capital.

The assets were realised, and the liquidator's expenses and remuneration and the preferential creditors paid. It was then found that the remaining balance was insufficient by the sum of £3,000 to pay the unsecured creditors.

Advise the liquidator as to his procedure in raising calls on the members.

The liquidator should be advised as follows:

The shareholders will all rank *pari passu*, and it will therefore be necessary to call up on some and repay on others. Care must be taken to compute the exact amounts in each case, since it would be inexpedient to make unnecessary calls on members entitled to a repayment.

Ascertain first what would be available if all the uncalled capital were called up. This would produce:

| | |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 5s. per share on 40,000 £1 preference shares | £10,000 |
| 1s. 3d. „ „ 2,000,000 2s. ordinary shares | 125,000 |
| | <u>£135,000</u> |
| Deduct amount to meet balance of creditors | 3,000 |
| | <u>£132,000</u> |

Since the paid-up capital would then be:

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| 40,000 £1 preference shares | £40,000 |
| 2,000,000 2s. ordinary shares | 200,000 |
| | <u>£240,000</u> |

The amount available would make possible a repayment of $\frac{138800}{140000}$ in the £ on the whole capital, or 11s. in the £.

This amounts to 11s. per preference share, and 1s. 1-2d. per ordinary share.

There would be no point, however, in calling up 5s. per preference share and repaying 11s. per share, so no call would be made on these shares, the net balance of 6s. being repaid. Similarly, instead of calling up 1s. 3d. per ordinary share, and repaying 1s. 1-2d. per share, a net call of 1-8d. per share would be made.

The final advice therefore would be:

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Call up 1-8d. per share on 2,000,000 ordinary shares, producing.. | £15,000 |
| Pay balance of liabilities | 3,000 |
| Repay 6s. per share on 40,000 preference shares | 12,000 |
| | <hr/> £15,000 |

In practice, of course, provision would have to be made for any calls not expected to be received. An adjustment of the call can easily be made on this account.

§ 8. The Accounts of a Receiver

Where a receiver or manager of the whole or substantially the whole of the property of a company is appointed on behalf of any debentures secured by a floating charge, he must forthwith send notice to the company of his appointment, and there shall, within fourteen days after receipt of the notice, or such longer period as may be allowed by the court or by the receiver, be made out and submitted to the receiver a statement in the prescribed form as to the affairs of the company. The prescribed form is similar in all respects to that used in a compulsory winding-up, and shown on pages 486-7, except that the relevant date is the date of the appointment of the receiver (§ 372 (1)).

The accounts to the court of a receiver appointed by the court take the form of a record of his receipts and payments, supported by vouchers, and made out in the prescribed manner. The accounts must be verified by affidavit, and will be passed periodically as directed by the order appointing the receiver. Separate accounts must be kept of real estate and personal estate, the forms of which are as follows (the forms must be varied as circumstances may require, e.g., if there are receipts in respect of leasehold properties, the wording can be varied to correspond to the facts):

Illustration – (With *pro forma* entries):

FORM OF RECEIVER'S ACCOUNT
REAL ESTATE – RECEIPTS

| No. of Item | Date when received | Tenant's Name | Description of Premises | Annual Rent | due at June 24, 19.. | due at June 24, 19.. | | Amount received | | Arrears remaining due | | Observations |
|-------------|--------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------|-----------------|-------|-----------------------|-------|--------------|
| | | | | | | £ | s. d. | £ | s. d. | £ | s. d. | |
| 1 | 19.. July 2 | John Jones | Home Farm in the Parish of Ex. in the County of Oxford | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | House at Ex. aforesaid | 400 | 100 | 100 | 0 0 | 125 | 0 0 | 75 | 0 0 | |
| 2 | " 3 | James Doe | | 50 | | 12 | 10 0 | 12 | 10 0 | | | |

PAYMENTS AND ALLOWANCES ON ACCOUNT OF REAL ESTATE

| No. of Item | Date of Payment or Allowance | Names of Persons to whom paid or allowed | For what purpose paid or allowed | Amount |
|-------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| | 19.. | | | £ s. d. |
| 1 | June 25 | A.B. Insurance Office .. | One year's insurance of Home Farm and House in the Parish of Ex. in the County of Oxford .. | 7 9 |
| 2 | July 1 | A. Decorator | Bill for repairs to House let to James Doe .. | 6 4 2 |
| 3 | " 2 | John Jones | Allowance for Year's Income Tax paid by him on 15th April 19.. .. | 87 10 0 |

PERSONAL ESTATE

[illegible]

SUMMARY

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|---------|---------|
| | | | £ s. d. | £ s. d. |
| Amount of balance due from receiver on account of real estate on last account | .. | .. | | |
| Amount of receipts on the above account of real estate | .. | .. | | |
| | | | £ s. d. | _____ |
| Balance of last account paid into Court | .. | .. | | |
| Amount of payments and allowances on the above account of real estate | .. | .. | | |
| Amount of receiver's costs of passing this account as to real estate | .. | .. | | |
| | | | | _____ |
| | | | | _____ |
| | | | | £ _____ |
| | | | | |
| Amount of balance due from receiver on last account of personal estate | .. | .. | | |
| Amount of receipts on the above account of personal estate | .. | .. | | |
| | | | £ s. d. | _____ |
| Balance of last account paid into Court | .. | .. | | |
| Amount of payments and allowances on the above account of personal estate | .. | .. | | |
| Amount of receiver's costs of passing this account as to personal estate | .. | .. | | |
| | | | | _____ |
| | | | | _____ |
| | | | | £ _____ |

[Rules of the Supreme Court, Appendix L, form 14]

A receiver of the whole of the company's property appointed on behalf of debenture holders secured by a floating charge must within two months, or such longer period as the court may allow after the expiration of twelve months from the date of his appointment, and of every subsequent twelve months, and within two months or such longer period as the court may allow after he ceases to act as receiver or manager of the property of the company, send to the registrar of companies, to any trustees of the debenture holders on whose behalf he was appointed, to the company and (so far as he is aware of their addresses) to all such debenture holders, an abstract in the prescribed form of his receipts and payments during the period of twelve months or.

where he ceases to act, during the period from the end of the period to which the last preceding abstract related up to the date of his so ceasing, and the aggregate amounts of his receipts and payments during all preceding periods since his appointment.

Where the receiver is appointed under the powers contained in any instrument, for references in the preceding paragraph to the court, references to the Board of Trade should be substituted.

Where the receiver is appointed under the powers contained in any instrument and is not a receiver of the whole or substantially the whole of the property of the company under a floating charge, the only requirement is that abstracts must be sent to the registrar within one month of the receiver's appointment, and thereafter at intervals of six months, and within one month after the receiver ceases to act. This applies to receivers appointed out of court under a fixed charge.

Every receiver or manager who makes default in complying with the provisions of this section is liable to a fine not exceeding £5 for every day during which the default continues.

The following is the form of accounts prescribed:

Number of
Certificate

FORM No

THE COMPANIES ACT, 1948

[No Registration
Fee Payable]

RECEIVER OR MANAGER'S ABSTRACT OF RECEIPTS AND
PAYMENTS

(Pursuant to Section 372 (2) and 374 (1) of the Companies Act, 1948)

Name of Company

Limited.

Name and Address of
Receiver or Manager

Date and description
of instrument under
which Receiver or
Manager is appointed

Period covered by the
Abstract

From

To

Presented by

ABSTRACT

[illegible]

Signature.....

Dated the..... day of.....19....

CHAPTER XIV
MISCELLANEOUS ACCOUNTS

§ 1. Hire-Purchase Agreements and Agreements to pay by Instalments

A hire-purchase agreement must be distinguished from an agreement to pay by instalments. In the former, the property in the goods does not pass until the final instalment has been paid, or some other condition in the contract has been complied with, and if default in the payment of any instalment is made, the person supplying the goods can, normally, demand the return of the goods. In the latter case, however, the property in the goods passes immediately on delivery thereof, and in the event of default in payment of any of the instalments, the goods cannot be recovered by the vendor, but an action can be brought for the amount of the purchase price unpaid. Many modern hire-purchase agreements are drawn up so as to preserve remedies against the person as well as against the goods, but a discussion of such agreements is beyond the scope of this work.

(a) Hire-Purchase Agreements

The methods of recording hire-purchase transactions vary according to the nature of the goods, the volume of transactions, the size of the business, and the facts generally. Set out below are the more usual methods which can be adapted to fit the circumstances.

Where the goods are of considerable value, the following method can conveniently be adopted:

- (1) **BUYER'S BOOKS:** Ascertain the cash price of the goods and the rate of interest which is added to arrive at the hire-purchase price. Debit the Asset Account and credit the Vendor's Account with such cash price. Debit the Vendor's Account and credit Cash with the instalments paid. Debit Interest Account and credit the Vendor's Account with the accruing interest on the balance at each due date for payment of an instalment.

The Asset Account is then depreciated in the usual manner. In each Balance Sheet, the asset will appear at its depreciated value, less the amount standing to the credit of the vendor, thus showing the equity in the asset which has been paid for to date. The amount shown in the Balance Sheet is thus the depreciated present value of the option to purchase, and is a proper amount to include in the Balance Sheet in view of the intention to complete the purchase in due course.

Illustration (1)

A company acquires wagons on the hire-purchase system over a term of two years, commencing 1st January. The instalments of £400 each are payable half-yearly. The present cash value of the wagons is £1,487, and the wagon company compute interest at the rate of 6 per cent. per annum, working on half-yearly rests. Show the ledger accounts in the books of the buyers writing off depreciation at $7\frac{1}{2}$ per cent.

WAGONS ACCOUNT

| 19... | | £ | s. | d. | 19... | | £ | s. | d. |
|--------|------------------------------|---------------|----------|----------|---------|-------------------------|---------------|----------|----------|
| Jan. 1 | To Wagon Company--Cash Value | 1,487 | 0 | 0 | Dec. 31 | By Depreciation Account | 111 | 10 | 6 |
| | | | | | | „ Balance c/d. | 1,375 | 9 | 6 |
| | | <u>£1,487</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> | | | <u>£1,487</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 1,375 | 9 | 6 | Dec. 31 | By Depreciation Account | 103 | 3 | 3 |
| | | | | | | „ Balance c/d. | 1,272 | 6 | 3 |
| | | <u>£1,375</u> | <u>9</u> | <u>6</u> | | | <u>£1,375</u> | <u>9</u> | <u>6</u> |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 1,272 | 6 | 3 | | | | | |

VENDOR'S ACCOUNT

| 19... | | £ | s. | d. | 19... | | £ | s. | d. |
|---------|----------------|---------------|-----------|----------|---------|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------|----------|
| June 30 | To Cash | 400 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By Wagons Account--Cash Value | 1,487 | 0 | 0 |
| | „ Balance c/d. | 1,131 | 12 | 2 | June 30 | „ Interest Account | 44 | 12 | 2 |
| | | <u>£1,531</u> | <u>12</u> | <u>2</u> | | | <u>£1,531</u> | <u>12</u> | <u>2</u> |
| Dec. 31 | To Cash | 400 | 0 | 0 | July 1 | By Balance b/d. | 1,131 | 12 | 2 |
| | „ Balance c/d. | 765 | 11 | 2 | Dec. 31 | „ Interest Account | 33 | 19 | 0 |
| | | <u>£1,165</u> | <u>11</u> | <u>2</u> | | | <u>£1,165</u> | <u>11</u> | <u>2</u> |
| June 30 | To Cash | 400 | 0 | 0 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d. | 765 | 11 | 2 |
| | „ Balance c/d. | 388 | 10 | 6 | June 30 | „ Interest Account | 22 | 19 | 4 |
| | | <u>£788</u> | <u>10</u> | <u>6</u> | | | <u>£788</u> | <u>10</u> | <u>6</u> |
| Dec. 31 | To Cash | 400 | 0 | 0 | July 1 | By Balance b/d. | 388 | 10 | 6 |
| | | <u>£400</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> | Dec. 31 | „ Interest Account | 11 | 9 | 6 |
| | | | | | | | <u>£400</u> | <u>0</u> | <u>0</u> |

NOTE. (i) A small adjustment of the interest on the last instalment is made necessary to balance.

(ii) For simplicity depreciation has been shown as a credit to the Wagons Account. In practice, of course, the credit would be to a Provision for Depreciation of Wagons Account.

In the Balance Sheet, the items would appear as follows:

First year:

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| Wagons at cost, less depreciation | £1,375 | 9 | 6 |
| Less Hire purchase instalments not yet due | | | |
| (present value) | 765 | 11 | 2 |
| | <u>£609</u> | <u>18</u> | <u>4</u> |

Second year :

| | | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------|---|---|
| Wagons at cost, less depreciation | £1,272 | 6 | 3 |
|-----------------------------------|--------|---|---|

An alternative method is to make no entry in respect of the hire-purchase until the first payment becomes due, when a journal entry is passed through the books crediting the vendor with the full amount of the payment, and debiting an Interest on Hire-Purchase Account with the proportion thereof which, on the assumption that the agreement will eventually be completed, represents the cost of hiring the goods during the period covered by the payment. The difference between the total of each payment and the amount thereof debited to Interest Account will represent the proportion of the asset actually purchased in respect of that payment, presuming, as in the case of interest, that the agreement will ultimately be fulfilled. The apportionment of each instalment as between interest and capital will be calculated as follows:

The buyer should ascertain what it would cost to purchase the article for cash;

this figure will represent the present cash value, and will form the basis for the calculation of interest. He will also ascertain the rate of interest which is being charged by the seller in respect of the hire. As regards the first instalment, interest at the ascertained rate will be calculated on the present value of the article for the period of the rest. The figure thus arrived at will represent the charge to revenue, and the balance of the instalment will be treated as capital. In the second instalment, interest at the fixed rate will be calculated on the cash value of the article, less the proportion of the first instalment which was treated as capital. All further instalments will be dealt with in a similar manner. After the last instalment has been paid, the balance on the Asset Account will be found to equal the original cash value; but as this figure will be in excess of the true value of the asset at that date, provision for depreciation should have been made during the term of the agreement, the calculation being based on the cash value, and not on the amounts paid.

This method gives the same ultimate result as the first, but is more cumbersome to operate, as memorandum computations are required to arrive at the figures, whereas under the first method the accounts themselves contain the required information.

Illustration (2)

A company acquires wagons on the hire-purchase system over a term of two years, commencing 1st January. The instalments of £400 each are payable half-yearly. The present cash value of the wagons is £1,487, and the Wagon Company compute interest at the rate of 6 per cent. per annum, working on half-yearly rests.

Make the necessary journal entries to record these transactions in the books of the purchasing company, distinguishing between capital and revenue.

| | | Dr. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------|---------|
| June 30 | Sundries .. | | | |
| | To Wagon Co. | | | 400 0 0 |
| | Wagon Account | | 355 7 10 | |
| | Wagon Hire Account (6% for 6 months on £1,487) .. | | 44 12 2 | |
| Dec. 31 | Sundries .. | | | |
| | To Wagon Co. | | | 400 0 0 |
| | Wagon Account | | 366 1 0 | |
| | Wagon Hire Account (6% for 6 months on £1,131 12s. 2d.) .. | | 33 19 0 | |
| June 30 | Sundries .. | | | |
| | To Wagon Co. | | | 400 0 0 |
| | Wagon Account | | 377 0 8 | |
| | Wagon Hire Account (6% for 6 months on £765 11s. 2d.) .. | | 22 19 4 | |
| Dec. 31 | Sundries .. | | | |
| | To Wagon Co. | | | 400 0 0 |
| | Wagon Account | | 388 10 6 | |
| | Wagon Hire Account (6% for 6 months on £388 10s. 6d.) .. | | 11 9 6 | |

A third method of recording the transactions is to debit the Asset Account with the cash value, credit the vendor with the total amount of the instalments, and debit the difference, representing the *total* interest, to an Interest Suspense Account. The instalments, as paid, are debited to the Vendor's Account, and the interest accrued is computed and transferred from the Suspense Account to Interest Account.

For Balance Sheet purposes, the balance on the Interest Suspense Account is deducted from the balance on the Vendor's Account, and the net result deducted from the balance of the Asset Account.

(2) SELLER'S BOOKS :

The seller should keep a special sales day book for all sales under hire-purchase agreements, and enter therein full particulars of the terms. The amounts extended in this book should be the present cash value of each sale, which should be debited to the buyer and credited to Sales Account. As each instalment falls due, an entry should be passed through a special interest journal, debiting the customer with interest calculated upon the balance of the account. The total of this special journal will be posted periodically to the credit of Interest Account. It will be seen that by this method the seller takes credit through the Sales Account for profit equal to that which he would have made had he sold the articles in question for cash; and as regards the interest, he takes credit for a proportionate amount as each instalment becomes due.

Alternatively, the buyer may be debited with the total hire-purchase price, the excess of this figure over the cash price, representing interest, being credited to an Interest Suspense Account, from which it will be transferred to Interest Receivable Account as it accrues due. The ultimate result is, of course, the same.

Under the systems described above credit is taken for the gross profit on the whole transaction in the accounting period in which the agreement is entered into, only the interest being deferred until earned.

It may, however, be considered that as the sale is not completed until the whole of the instalments have been paid, the profit on the transaction should be spread over the period of the contract, the balance of the cash price outstanding from time to time being regarded, not as an amount owing by a debtor, but as stock out on hire. If this view is taken provision should be made, when preparing the final accounts, of a sum equal to the proportion of the balances on hirers' accounts representing unrealised profit. The provision should be adjusted to the requisite amount at the end of each year, in the same way as a provision for bad debts, and deducted from the total of the hirers' accounts, the balance being shown in the Balance Sheet not as debtors but as stock out on hire.

In any event, as the seller may have to take the goods back should the buyer default in payment of any instalments, provision should be made against possible loss arising from such a contingency.

Illustration (3)

P. White enters into a hire-purchase agreement with Messrs. A, B & Co., extending over a period of two years from 1st January. *

P. White agrees to pay half-yearly instalments of £20 each. The present cash value of the goods is £74 7s. 0d., and the interest charged is at the rate of 6 per cent. per annum.

Show P. White's Account in the books of Messrs. A, B & Co.

P. WHITE .

Agreement No. 72 (four half-yearly payments of £20)

| | | | | | |
|---------|---------------------|-----------------|---------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Sales Account | £ s. d. | June 30 | By Cash | £ s. d. |
| June 30 | .. Interest Account | 74 7 0 | | .. Balance c/d. | 20 0 0 |
| | | 2 4 7 | | | 56 11 7 |
| | | <u>£76 11 7</u> | | | <u>£76 11 7</u> |
| July 1 | To Balance b/d. | 56 11 7 | Dec. 31 | By Cash | 20 0 0 |
| Dec. 31 | .. Interest Account | 1 13 10 | | .. Balance c/d. | 38 5 5 |
| | | <u>£58 5 5</u> | | | <u>£58 5 5</u> |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 38 5 5 | June 30 | By Cash | 20 0 0 |
| June 30 | .. Interest Account | 1 2 11 | | .. Balance c/d. | 19 8 4 |
| | | <u>£39 8 4</u> | | | <u>£39 8 4</u> |
| July 1 | To Balance b/d. | 19 8 4 | Dec. 31 | By Cash | 20 0 0 |
| Dec. 31 | .. Interest Account | 11 8 | | | 20 0 0 |
| | | <u>£20 0 0</u> | | | <u>£20 0 0</u> |

In the above example, assuming that A.B & Co. make up their accounts to 31st December each year, and that a gross profit of $33\frac{1}{3}$ per cent. is included in the cash price of the article sold, in order that the profit on the transaction may be spread over the period of the instalments a provision of one-third of £38 5s. 5d. = £12 15s. 2d. should be made in respect of unrealised profit on this transaction at the end of the first year, by debiting Profit and Loss Account and crediting Provision for Unrealised Profit Account. The amount so provided would be transferred from the Provision Account to the credit of Profit and Loss Account at the end of the second year when the profit had been realised.

In practice, as has already been stated, the provision would be calculated on the total of the balances outstanding on all hire-purchase contracts, and would be adjusted up or down at the end of each year by a transfer to Profit and Loss Account of such an amount as will leave a balance on the Provision Account equal to the unrealised profit included in the balances on all hire-purchasers' accounts at the year end.

In cases where the calculation of the exact interest accruing each year cannot conveniently be computed separately for each item, owing to the number of transactions or the great variations in their nature and terms, it is sometimes convenient to approximate the interest to be charged each year by taking an ascertained percentage of the total interest for all contracts entered into in the year. In this case an Interest Suspense Account will be raised for each year, to which the total interest will be credited. The ascertained percentage (found by computing the average interest earned on an average contract) will be written off at the end of each year that the contract is outstanding; the percentage will, of course, be at its highest in the first year, and will decrease as the years go on, since the principal is being repaid.

Illustration (4)

A hire-purchase agreement for the sale of an asset provided that the first payment of £25 be made six months after the date of the agreement, and five subsequent payments of £25 at

half-yearly intervals thereafter. Interest was computed at 5% per annum in arriving at the price.

The following table indicates how the interest can be worked out 'backwards'. Interest at $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ per half year is $\frac{2\frac{1}{2}}{102\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{1}{41}$ of the balance at the beginning of each half year, plus such interest (which must equal the closing balance plus the instalment for the half-year which is credited before arriving at such balance). The table can thus be constructed as follows:

| Half-year. | Final Balance. | Instalment. | Total. | Interest included therein. | Opening Balance. |
|------------|----------------|-------------|---------|----------------------------|------------------|
| | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. |
| 6 | nil | 25 0 0 | 25 0 0 | of £25 0 0 | 24 7 10 |
| 5 | 24 7 10 | 25 0 0 | 49 7 10 | of £49 7 10 | 48 3 9 |
| 4 | 48 3 9 | 25 0 0 | 73 3 9 | of £73 3 9 | 71 8 1 |
| 3 | 71 8 1 | 25 0 0 | 96 8 1 | of £96 8 1 | 94 1 1 |
| 2 | 94 1 1 | 25 0 0 | 119 1 1 | of £119 1 1 | 116 3 0 |
| 1 | 116 3 0 | 25 0 0 | 141 3 0 | of £141 3 0 | 137 14 2 |

The cash price of the asset is therefore £137 14s. 2d. as can be proved by writing up the purchaser's account in the form explained earlier.

| Half year. | | £ s. d. | Half year. | | £ s. d. |
|------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 | To H.-P. Sales-- Cash Price | 137 14 2 | 1 | By Cash | 25 0 0 |
| | „ Interest $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ | 3 8 10 | | „ Balance c/d. | 116 3 0 |
| | | <u>£141 3 0</u> | | | <u>£141 3 0</u> |
| 2 | To Balance b/d. | 116 3 0 | 2 | By Cash | 25 0 0 |
| | „ Interest $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ | 2 18 1 | | „ Balance c/d. | 94 1 1 |
| | | <u>£119 1 1</u> | | | <u>£119 1 1</u> |
| 3 | To Balance b/d. | 94 1 1 | 3 | By Cash | 25 0 0 |
| | „ Interest $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ | 2 7 0 | | „ Balance c/d. | 71 8 1 |
| | | <u>£96 8 1</u> | | | <u>£96 8 1</u> |
| 4 | To Balance b/d. | 71 8 1 | 4 | By Cash | 25 0 0 |
| | „ Interest $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ | 1 15 8 | | „ Balance c/d. | 48 3 9 |
| | | <u>£73 3 9</u> | | | <u>£73 3 9</u> |
| 5 | To Balance b/d. | 48 3 9 | 5 | By Cash | 25 0 0 |
| | „ Interest $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ | 1 4 1 | | „ Balance c/d. | 24 7 10 |
| | | <u>£49 7 10</u> | | | <u>£49 7 10</u> |
| 6 | To Balance b/d. | 24 7 10 | 6 | By Cash | 25 0 0 |
| | „ Interest $2\frac{1}{2}\%$ (say) | 12 2 | | | |
| | | <u>£25 0 0</u> | | | <u>£25 0 0</u> |

In practice the interest would be computed actuarially.

It will be seen that the interest arises as follows:

| | £ s. d. | % |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| Over the first year of the contract | £3 8 10 + £2 18 1 = | 6 6 11 51.63 |
| „ „ second „ „ „ | £2 7 0 + £1 15 8 = | 4 2 8 33.62 |
| „ „ third „ „ „ | £1 4 1 + 12 2 = | 1 16 3 14.75 |
| | <u>£12 5 10</u> | <u>100%</u> |

If the accounts of the business were made up to 31st December in each year, and all contracts entered into on the first day of the accounting period, i.e., 1st January, assuming

the foregoing to be a representative contract, the above percentages of the total interest would be earned in the three accounting periods. In practice, however, contracts will begin on various dates, and the average date should be ascertained, *e.g.*, by taking the average due date of the monthly sales. If the average date were 1st July, only half the first year's interest would be earned in the first accounting period, and the percentages earned could be distributed as follows:

| | | | | % | % |
|-------------------------|------------------------------|-----|-----|-------|-------|
| First accounting period | $\frac{1}{2}$ of 51.63% | ... | ... | ... | 25.82 |
| Second | " " do. | ... | ... | 25.81 | |
| | plus $\frac{1}{2}$ of 33.62% | ... | ... | 16.81 | |
| | | | | | 42.62 |
| Third | " " do. | ... | ... | 16.81 | |
| | plus $\frac{1}{2}$ of 14.75% | ... | ... | 7.38 | |
| | | | | | 24.19 |
| Fourth | " " do. | ... | ... | | 7.37 |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | 100 % |

Alternatively, the computation could be made by reference to the actual interest earned in each period.

A separate Interest Suspense Account will be opened for each financial year, to which will be credited the interest included in all contracts entered into in the year, the Purchaser's Account being debited with the hire price and Sales Account credited with the cash price.

Applying this method to the example, and assuming the sale to take place at the beginning of the first financial period, the accounts would appear as follows:

H. P. SALES

| Half-year. | | £ | s. | d. | Half-year. | | £ | s. | d. |
|------------|--------------------|-----|----|----|------------|--------------|-----|----|----|
| 1 | To Trading Account | 137 | 14 | 2 | 1 | By Purchaser | 137 | 14 | 2 |

PURCHASER

| | £ | s. | d. | | £ | s. | d. |
|-----------------------------|-----|----|----|-----------|----|----|----|
| 1 To Sales | 137 | 14 | 2 | 1 By Cash | 25 | 0 | 0 |
| " Interest Suspense Account | 12 | 5 | 10 | 2 " " | 25 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | 3 " " | 25 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | 4 " " | 25 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | 5 " " | 25 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | 6 " " | 25 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | | | | | |

INTEREST SUSPENSE ACCOUNT

| Year. | | | £ | s. | d. | Year. | | | £ | s. | d. |
|-------|----------------------------|-----|----|----|----|-------|----|----|---|--------------|---------|
| 1 | To Profit and Loss Account | ... | 51 | 63 | % | 6 | 6 | 11 | | | |
| 2 | do. | | 33 | 62 | % | 4 | 2 | 8 | 1 | By Purchaser | 12 5 10 |
| 3 | do. | | 14 | 75 | % | 1 | 16 | 3 | | | |

What is true of one account is obviously true of the accounts as a whole, provided the average date is taken. At any Balance Sheet date, there will always be three Suspense Accounts open, *e.g.*, the contracts entered into in 1955 will extend into 1958, and in the 1957 Balance Sheet will appear balances on the Suspense Accounts for 1955, 1956 and 1957.

In this illustration half-yearly payments have been taken; the same principles apply to monthly or quarterly payments.

In the buyer's books, it may be convenient to write off the interest on a similar basis.

The following alternative method is frequently adopted by hire-purchase traders, particularly where the volume of hire-purchase transactions is considerable. The personal accounts are treated as memorandum accounts, totals only being recorded in the financial books. The memorandum books comprise a hire purchase day book and hire-purchase personal ledger. The former is ruled with columns to show No. and date of agreement, name and address of hire-purchaser, cost and selling prices of the goods and the amount of the deposit and the number and amount of the instalments payable. Particulars are recorded in this book as the agreements are entered into.

Periodically, the total of the cost price column of the hire-purchase day book is debited to a Stock out on Hire Account and credited to General Trading Account, thus transferring therefrom the cost of goods sent out on hire-purchase.

The personal accounts in the memorandum ledger are debited with the selling price of the goods sent out, and credited with the cash received from the purchasers, the cash book being debited.

So far the only entries which have been made in the *financial* books are the debit to Stock out on Hire Account, the credit to General Trading Account in respect of the cost price of the goods sent out on hire contracts and the debits in the cash book for the deposits and instalments received. Periodically the total of the amounts received is credited to the Stock out on Hire Account, thus completing the double entry in the financial books for the cash realised

It will be seen that the Stock out on Hire Account is, in effect, a Hire-purchase Trading Account, which has been debited with the cost price of all goods forming the subject of hire-purchase contracts, and credited with the cash actually received in respect thereof, representing realised sales. To ascertain the profit on the hire contract for the period it will now be necessary to credit the account with the equivalent of the closing stock, viz., the *cost* price of the instalments not yet due on all uncompleted hire contracts, in respect of which the cost price of the goods has been debited to the Stock on Hire Account. This figure is found by computing, in respect of each contract, the proportion of the cost price of the goods which the total amount of the instalments still outstanding bears to the total amount payable under the contract. Thus, if the cost price of the goods forming the subject of a contract were £130, and the total sale price £200, payable by an initial deposit of £20 and 18 instalments of £10 each, of which 10 had been paid, leaving £80, not yet due, the outstanding instalments would be valued and brought into account as stock out on hire at $\frac{80}{200}$ of £130 = £52.

When a contract is broken by the purchaser making default in the payment of instalments, so that the goods have to be taken back by the seller, the Stock out on Hire Account should be credited, and a Stock Returned from Hire Account debited with the cost price (computed as above) of the instalments outstanding at the date

on which the goods were returned. The Stock Returned from Hire Account will, at the close of the accounting period, be transferred to the debit of Trading Account in the same way as sales returns.

Such a system is convenient where the transactions are numerous and by its use detailed calculations in respect of each individual contract are avoided. By this method, not only the interest, but also the true gross profit, is spread over all the instalments, the proportion taken as earned being that on the instalments received or due.

Illustration (5)

STOCK ON HIRE ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| | | £ | | | £ |
| Jan. 1 | To Cost Value of Stock in hand of Customers b/f. | 3,000 | Dec. 31 | By Cash, Amounts paid under Hire Purchase Agreements during ... | 13,000 |
| Dec. 31 | Cost of Stock sent out on Hire Purchase during the year | 8,000 | | Cost value of Stock in hands of Hire Purchasers c/f. | 4,000 |
| | Profit and Loss Account: transfer of profit for year | 6,000 | | | |
| | | <u>£17,000</u> | | | <u>£17,000</u> |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | 4,000 | | | |

NOTES.—(1) The opening balance of £3,000 represents the cost value of the outstanding instalments on hire purchase contracts at 1st January brought forward from the preceding year.

(2) The figure of £8,000 debited to the account comprises the total of the cost price column of the hire purchase day book for the year.

(3) The closing stock of £4,000 is ascertained by reducing to cost the instalments not yet due on hire purchase contracts at 31st December.

The system described above is frequently modified in many details. One of the most important methods, whereby the whole of the accounts are contained in the financial books proper as part of the double entry, is dealt with hereunder.

Illustration (6)

To make the example clear, a new business is assumed. During the period, the following sales on hire purchases were made: to A, a piano costing £80, sold for £120, payable by a deposit of £12 and 36 instalments of £3 each; to B, a suite costing £50, sold for £100 payable by a deposit of £10 and 45 instalments of £2 each; and to C a radiogram, costing £60, sold for £80 payable by a deposit of £8 and 9 instalments of £8 each. A had paid the deposit and 7 instalments; B the deposit and 9 instalments, and C the deposit and 2 instalments, one instalment being due from C but unpaid. Ordinary sales amounted to £8,000, total purchases to £6,690, and stock in hand to £500. Write up the accounts for the period and prepare the Hire Purchase Trading Account and the General Trading Account.

HIRE PURCHASE DAY BOOK

| No. | Date. | Name and Address | Article. | Folio. | Hire Purchase Price. | Cost Price. | Amount of deposit | No. of Instalments. | Amount of each Instalment. | Remarks. |
|-----|-------|------------------|-----------|--------|----------------------|-------------|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|----------|
| 1 | | A | Piano ... | | £ 120 | £ 80 | £ 12 | 36 | £ 3 | |
| 2 | | B | Suite ... | | 100 | 50 | 10 | 45 | £ 2 | |
| 3 | | C | Radiogram | | 80 | 60 | 8 | 9 | £ 8 | |
| | | | | | <u>£300</u> | <u>£190</u> | <u>£30</u> | | | |

MISCELLANEOUS ACCOUNTS
HIRE PURCHASE PERSONAL LEDGER

A

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|
| To Piano | £ 120 | By Cash | £ 12 |
| | | " " | 3 |
| | | " " | 3 |
| | | " " | 3 |
| | | " " | 3 |
| | | " " | 3 |
| | | " " | 3 |
| | | " Balance c/d. | 87 |
| | <u>£120</u> | | <u>£120</u> |
| To Balance b/d. | 87 | | |

B

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|---------|-------------|
| To Suite | £ 100 | By Cash | £ 10 |
| | | " " | 2 |
| | | " " | 2 |
| | | " " | 2 |
| | | " " | 2 |
| | | " " | 2 |
| | | " " | 2 |
| | | " " | 2 |
| | | " " | 2 |
| | | " " | 72 |
| | <u>£100</u> | | <u>£100</u> |
| To Balance b/d. | 72 | | |

C

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------|---------------------|-----------|
| To Radiogram | £ 80 | By Cash | £ 8 |
| | | " " | 8 |
| | | " " | 8 |
| | | " Balance c/d.— | |
| | | Instalment due | 8 |
| | | Instalments not due | 48 |
| | <u>£80</u> | | <u>80</u> |
| To Balance b/d.— | | | |
| Instalment due | 8 | | |
| Instalments not due | 48 | | |

SCHEDULE OF CLOSING BALANCES

| | Amount Due | Amount Not due | Sale Price | Cost Price | Proportion not due | Cost Price of Instalments Not due |
|---|------------|----------------|-------------|------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A | £ | £ 87 | £ 120 | £ 80 | £ 87/120 | £ 58 |
| B | | 72 | 100 | 50 | 72/100 | 36 |
| C | 8 | 48 | 80 | 60 | 48/80 | 36 |
| | <u>£8</u> | <u>£207</u> | <u>£300</u> | | | <u>£130</u> |

HIRE PURCHASE TRADING ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------|-------------|
| To General Trading Account— | £ | By Hire Purchase Deposits and Instalments | £ |
| Cost price of articles sold on hire | | for period | 93 |
| purchase during period | 190 | " Instalments not due reduced to cost, being | |
| " Gross Profit carried to Profit and Loss | | stock out on hire purchase | 130 |
| Account | 33 | | |
| | <u>£223</u> | | <u>£223</u> |
| To Stock out on hire purchase b/d. | 130 | | |

HIRE PURCHASE SALES ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|-------------|
| To Hire Purchase Trading Account, Amount due for period | £ 93 | By Sundry Hire Purchasers | £ 300 |
| .. Balance, being instalments not due, c/d. | 207 | | |
| | <u>£300</u> | | <u>£300</u> |
| | | By Balance b/d. | 207 |

It will be observed that a provision is carried forward on the Hire Purchase Sales Account equal to the debtors for instalments not due. For Balance Sheet purposes, this is deducted from the hire purchase debtors, leaving only £8, the instalment due, to appear as a debtor.

The Stock out on Hire Purchase appears as an asset on the balance sheet.

GENERAL TRADING ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------|---------------|
| To Purchases | £ 6,690 | By Sales | £ 8,000 |
| Less Transferred to Hire Purchase Trading Account | 190 | .. Stock | 580 |
| | <u>6,500</u> | | |
| .. Gross Profit | 2,000 | | |
| | <u>£8,500</u> | | <u>£8,500</u> |

By eliminating the goods sold on hire purchase in the manner shown, this account shows the true gross profit on ordinary sales.

Sometimes the two Trading Accounts are combined, but they are better separated.

Hire Purchase Finance

Frequently retailers do not carry the risk of their own hire-purchase contracts, but assign them to finance companies which are engaged solely in financing such transactions. The finance company to whom the benefit of a contract is assigned pays the trader the whole or the major part of the contract price (subject to a deduction for its charges) and collects the instalments, as they become due, from the hire purchaser. The trader debits cash and credits his Trading Account with the sum received from the finance company and thus treats the transaction as a completed sale, but provision should be made for the contingency of a loss being sustained by the hirer failing to pay the instalments, in which event the trader would have to indemnify the finance company and take the goods back.

In other cases the manufacturer of the article takes over the contract by crediting the trader with the amount of the hire-purchase price, less the deposit (if any) paid by the hire-purchaser. In such a case the debit will be to the manufacturer's account, instead of to cash, thus reducing the liability of the trader to the manufacturer for purchases.

(b) Agreements to pay by Instalments

In a contract for the sale of goods, the price of which is to be paid by instalments, the property in the goods passes to the buyer on delivery, and the seller becomes a creditor for the price. The transactions may be recorded as follows:

(1) **BUYER'S BOOKS:** When the agreement to purchase goods on the instalment principle is entered into, the buyer should pass an entry through his journal, crediting the vendor with the total amount to be paid, debiting the Asset Account

with the present cash value of the article and an Interest Suspense Account with the difference, representing the total interest.

As each instalment becomes due, an amount should be written off the Interest Suspense Account representing the proportion of the total interest included in the instalment, and debited to Profit and Loss Account. When the instalment is paid, cash is credited, and the Vendor's Account debited.

Alternatively, the interest may be dealt with as already explained in connection with hire-purchase, being credited to the vendor as it accrues, no Suspense Account being opened.

Depreciation should be provided for in the usual way, on the full cash value of the asset.

Illustration

X purchases on 1st January some goods which he arranges to pay for over a period of two years by half-yearly instalments of £120. The company supplying the goods charges interest at the rate of 6 per cent. per annum, and the present cash value of the goods is £446 1s. 0d.

Show the Interest Suspense Account in the books of X.

INTEREST SUSPENSE ACCOUNT

| | £ | s. | d. | | | £ | s. | d. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------------------------------------------|------------|-------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Sundries | 33 | 19 | 0 | June 30 | By Profit and Loss Account— 6% on £446 1 0 | 13 | 7 8 |
| | | | | | „ Balance c/d. | | 20 | 11 4 |
| | | <u>33</u> | <u>19</u> | <u>0</u> | | | <u>£33</u> | <u>19 0</u> |
| July 1 | To Balance b/d. | 20 | 11 | 4 | Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account— 6% on £339 8 8 | 10 | 3 8 |
| | | | | | „ Balance c/d. | | 10 | 7 8 |
| | | <u>£20</u> | <u>11</u> | <u>4</u> | | | <u>£20</u> | <u>11 4</u> |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d | 10 | 7 | 8 | June 30 | By Profit and Loss Account— 6% on £229 12 4 | 6 | 17 9 |
| | | | | | „ Balance c/d. | | 3 | 9 11 |
| | | <u>£10</u> | <u>7</u> | <u>8</u> | | | <u>£10</u> | <u>7 8</u> |
| July 1 | To Balance b/d | 3 | 9 | 11 | Dec. 31 | By Profit and Loss Account— 6% on £116 10 1 | 3 | 9 11 |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | <u>£3</u> | <u>9</u> | <u>11</u> | | | <u>£3</u> | <u>9 11</u> |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | £ | s. d. |
| The total amount of the instalments comes to | ... | ... | ... | ... | | | 480 | 0 0 |
| From which must be deducted the present cash value of the goods | ... | ... | ... | ... | | | 446 | 1 0 |
| Leaving the total charge for interest | ... | ... | ... | ... | | | £33 | 19 0 |

(2) SELLER'S BOOKS. The Buyer's Account is debited at the outset with the full amount payable under the contract, Sales Account being credited with the present cash value of the goods, and Interest Suspense Account with the total amount of interest. As each instalment becomes due, a proportionate amount of the interest

is transferred from Interest Suspense Account to the credit of Profit and Loss Account. On the payment of instalments, cash is debited, and the Buyer's Account credited. Alternatively, the Interest Suspense Account can be dispensed with, the Buyer's Account being debited with the cash value and interest as it accrues, in the manner first described in connection with hire-purchase.

By the above methods the seller takes credit through the Sales Account for profit equal to that which he would have made had he sold the article in question for cash, and as regards the interest, he takes credit for a proportionate amount as each instalment becomes due. The balance of the Buyer's Account at any time will show the balance still payable under the agreement, or, if the second method is adopted, the balance subject to interest.

It will be necessary to make ample provision in respect of possible bad debts on these transactions, and, unless the seller is in possession of sufficient working capital, it may be inadvisable to take credit for the whole profit on the sale in the Profit and Loss Account of the year in which the sale was affected. Any proportion of the profit thus carried forward should be credited to a special Suspense Account.

§ 2. Mine, etc. Rents and Royalties

The rent of a mine or quarry is rarely fixed in amount, but is generally in the nature of a royalty based on the output. In such cases there is usually a clause in the lease fixing a minimum or dead rent, which must be paid, whatever the output may be. This minimum rent merges into a royalty rent, so that the actual rent paid is either the minimum rent or the royalty rent, whichever is the greater. Another clause frequently found in such leases is that dealing with short workings, which provides that where the royalty rent based on the output is less than the minimum rent, the difference may be recouped subsequently when the royalty rent exceeds the minimum rent. A fixed limit of time is usually prescribed within which to recoup these short workings, or, as they are sometimes called, redeemable dead rents. It should be remembered that the landlord will not in any period receive in cash an amount less than the minimum rent for that period. Income tax is deductible from royalties in the same way as from annual interest.

The entries in the books will be as follows:

- (a) Where the minimum rent for any particular period exceeds the royalty rent**
- (1) Compute the amount of the royalty rent, debit Royalties Account and credit the Landlord's Account therewith. The Royalties Account will be written off to Profit and Loss Account.
 - (2) Debit Short Workings Account and credit the Landlord's Account with the amount by which the royalties fall short of the minimum rent.
 - (3) Debit the Landlord's Account and credit cash with the amount paid, and Income Tax Account with the tax deducted.

Some accountants prefer to pass the transactions through a 'Minimum Rent Account,' in years in which only the minimum rent is paid. In which event the entries are as follows:

- (1) Debit Royalties Account and credit Minimum Rent Account with the amount of the royalties.
- (2) Debit Minimum Rent Account and credit the Landlord's Account with the minimum rent.
- (3) Debit Short Workings Account and credit Minimum Rent Account with the balance of the Minimum Rent Account.
- (4) Debit Landlord's Account and credit cash with the cash paid and Income Tax Account with the tax deducted.

(b) Where the royalty rent exceeds the minimum rent

- (1) Debit Royalties Account and credit Landlord's Account with the amount of the royalties. The royalties account will be written off to Profit and Loss Account.
- (2) Debit the Landlord's Account and credit Short Workings Account with the short workings recoverable in the year (if any).
- (3) Debit the Landlord's Account and credit cash with the amount paid, and Income Tax Account with the tax deducted.

Where it is impossible to recoup short workings within the specified period, the balance of Short Workings Account can no longer be treated as an asset in the Balance Sheet, but must be written off to Profit and Loss Account. In practice, the balance of the Short Workings Account, although treated as an asset in the Balance Sheet, is generally provided for to the full amount. If there is no reasonable expectation of its being recouped, it should be written off at once.

Illustration (1)

A company leased a mine at a minimum rent of £1,500 per annum, merging into a royalty of sixpence per ton. The short workings were recoverable during the first five years of the lease only. The output for the first six years was 36,000, 52,000, 58,000, 72,000, 76,000 and 96,000 tons of mineral, respectively. Show the accounts recording these transactions, ignoring income tax.

ROYALTIES ACCOUNT

| 1st Year | To Landlord's Account | £ 900 | 1st Year | By Profit and Loss Account | £ 900 |
|-------------|-----------------------|----------|-------------|----------------------------|----------|
| | | £ | | | £ |
| 2nd | | 1,300 | 2nd | | 1,300 |
| 3rd | | 1,450 | 3rd | | 1,450 |
| 4th | | 1,800 | 4th | | 1,800 |
| 5th | | 1,900 | 5th | | 1,900 |
| 6th | | 2,400 | 6th | | 2,400 |

LANDLORD'S ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|----------|----------------------------|---------------|----------|---------------------------|---------------|
| 1st Year | To Cash and Income Tax ... | £ 1,500 | 1st Year | By Royalties Account ... | £ 900 |
| | | | | .. Short Workings Account | 600 |
| | | <u>£1,500</u> | | | <u>£1,500</u> |
| 2nd " | " " " " " " " " | £ 1,500 | 2nd " | By Royalties Account ... | £ 1,300 |
| | | | | .. Short Workings Account | 200 |
| | | <u>£1,500</u> | | | <u>£1,500</u> |
| 3rd " | " " " " " " " " | £ 1,500 | 3rd " | By Royalties Account ... | £ 1,450 |
| | | | | .. Short Workings Account | 50 |
| | | <u>£1,500</u> | | | <u>£1,500</u> |
| 4th " | To Cash and Income Tax ... | £ 1,500 | 4th " | By Royalties Account | £ 1,800 |
| | .. Short Workings Account | 300 | | | |
| | | <u>£1,800</u> | | | <u>£1,800</u> |
| 5th " | To Cash and Income Tax ... | £ 1,500 | 5th " | " " " " | £ 1,900 |
| | .. Short Workings Account | 400 | | | |
| | | <u>£1,900</u> | | | <u>£1,900</u> |
| 6th " | To Cash and Income Tax ... | £ 2,400 | 6th " | " " " " | £ 2,400 |
| | | | | | |

SHORT WORKINGS ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|----------|-----------------------|-------------|----------|----------------------------|-------------|
| 1st Year | To Landlord's Account | £ 600 | 4th Year | By Landlord's Account | £ 300 |
| 2nd " | " " " " " " " " | 200 | 5th " | " " " " " " " " | 400 |
| 3rd " | " " " " " " " " | 50 | | .. Profit and Loss Account | 150 |
| | | <u>£850</u> | | | <u>£850</u> |

There are instances where mining rights held on lease are sub-let, in whole or in part, possibly at an enhanced royalty. In such a case, the first lessee remains liable to the head lessor for the agreed royalty on the full output, irrespective of the arrangements made between the lessee and the sub-lessee, and where the latter is entitled to recoup short workings, the lessee must take care to provide therefor, otherwise he may find himself paying royalties on the output of the sub-lessee in respect of which he has had the latter's royalties (in the shape of minimum rent) in earlier years, *e.g.*, if A leased land for mining at a minimum rent of £200 merging in a royalty of 6d. per ton, and A sub-leased half the land to B at a minimum rent of £120 merging in a royalty of 8d. per ton, with the right to recoup short workings, and in the first year B produced 3,000 tons, A would receive the minimum rent of £120 (equivalent to 8d. per ton on 3,600 tons), but (subject to his own output plus the output of B exceeding A's minimum rent) would pay to his landlord in respect of B's output, 3,000 tons at 6d. = £75. A must then face the fact that, in due course, B may recoup the deficiency, but when he does so, A will still have to pay 6d. per ton on B's full output. Accordingly A should provide for such potential liability on 600 tons at 6d. = £15. There is no need for him to provide the full deficiency of 600 tons at 8d. = £20, since credit for the profit of 2d. per ton can be taken in the year in which it is received; nevertheless, it is probably better to carry it forward so long as it is available for recoupment, so as to have a complete record of the position as regards the sub-lessee.

Illustration (2)

A B Co., Ltd., work minerals under a lease from C D. The lease is for a period of 20 years from 1st January, 19..., and the rent payable is a minimum of £2,000 a year, merging in a royalty of 6d. a ton, payable half-yearly on 30th June and 31st December.

A B Co., Ltd., granted a sub-lease to R S Co., Ltd., of one-third of the area, for a period of 10 years from the following 1st July, for a minimum rent of £750 a year merging in a royalty of 9d. a ton, payable half-yearly on 30th June and 31st December.

A B Co., Ltd., are entitled under their lease from C D to recoup short workings out of subsequent excess workings throughout the term of the lease, but R S Co., Ltd., are only entitled, by their sub-lease, to recoup short workings out of excess workings in any of the four half-years immediately following that in which the short workings accrued.

Minerals were worked as follows:

| | By A B Co., Ltd. | By R S Co., Ltd. |
|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1st half-year | 30,000 tons | — |
| 2nd „ | 32,000 „ | 4,000 tons |
| 3rd „ | 40,000 „ | 8,000 „ |
| 4th „ | 36,000 „ | 10,000 „ |
| 5th „ | 30,000 „ | 15,000 „ |
| 6th „ | 35,000 „ | 12,000 „ |
| 7th „ | 25,000 „ | 10,000 „ |

Show the Royalties Account and Short Workings Accounts, under the lease and the sub-lease, in the books of A B Co., Ltd., which are closed yearly on 30th June.

How should the balances, if any, on the above accounts be dealt with in the annual balance sheets and accounts of A B Co., Ltd.?

ROYALTIES ACCOUNT

| | | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|---------------|---------------------|----------------------------|---------------|
| 1st Year June 30 | To Landlord | £ 750 | 1st Year June 30 | By Profit and Loss Account | £ 750 |
| 2nd Year Dec. 31 | To Landlord | 900 | 2nd Year Dec. 31 | By R. S. Co., Ltd. | 150 |
| June 30 | „ Landlord | 1,200 | June 30 | „ R. S. Co., Ltd. | 300 |
| | | <u>£2,100</u> | | „ Profit and Loss Account | 1,650 |
| | | | | | <u>£2,100</u> |
| 3rd Year Dec. 31 | To Landlord | 1,150 | 3rd Year Dec. 31 | By R. S. Co., Ltd. | 375 |
| June 30 | „ Landlord | 1,125 | June 30 | „ R. S. Co., Ltd. | 563 |
| | | <u>£2,275</u> | | „ Profit and Loss Account | 1,337 |
| | | | | | <u>£2,275</u> |
| 4th Year Dec. 31 | To Landlord | 1,175 | 4th Year Dec. 31 | By R. S. Co., Ltd. | 450 |
| June 30 | „ Landlord | 875 | June 30 | „ R. S. Co., Ltd. | 375 |
| | | <u>£2,050</u> | | „ Profit and Loss Account | 1,225 |
| | | | | | <u>£2,050</u> |

SHORT WORKINGS ACCOUNT, C D

| | | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1st Year June 30 | To Landlord | £ 250 | 2nd Year June 30 | By Landlord | £ 200 |
| 2nd Year Dec. 31 | do. | 100 | 3rd Year Dec. 31 | „ do. | 150 |
| | | <u>£350</u> | | | <u>£350</u> |
| 4th Year June 30 | To Landlord | 125 | | | |

SHORT WORKINGS ACCOUNT, R S CO., LTD.

| | | | | | |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------|
| 2nd Year June 30 | To Balance c/d. | £ 300 | 2nd Year Dec. 31 | By R S Co., Ltd. | £ 225 |
| | | | June 30 | .. R S Co., Ltd. | 75 |
| | | £300 | | | £300 |
| 3rd Year June 30 | To R S Co., Ltd. | 188 | 3rd Year July 1 | By Balance b/d. | 300 |
| | .. Balance c/d. | 112 | | | |
| | | £300 | | | £300 |
| 4th Year Dec. 31 | To R S Co., Ltd. | 75 | 4th Year July 1 | By Balance b/d. | 112 |
| June 30 | .. Profit and Loss Account, Short Workings for half-year ended 30th June, no longer recoup- able | 37 | | | |
| | | £112 | | | £112 |

Note. The whole amount of the short workings of R S Co. Ltd. has been carried forward each year, although it would be permissible to reduce the carry forward to 6d. per ton on the short workings, this being the amount of the liability of A B Co. Ltd., to its landlord in due course when the minerals are won. The above treatment is more conservative, however, and ensures a record of the short workings in A B Ltd.'s books, comparable with the records in the books of R S Co. Ltd.

§ 3. Farmers' Accounts

The Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries has issued a booklet explaining, in very simple language, how the farm books should be kept and how the profit or loss arising from the farming operations should be ascertained.

The farmer should make an inventory and valuation of his farm assets, such as livestock, growing crops, foodstuffs, manures, seeds, etc., at the beginning and end of each year, the basis of valuation being cost or market value, whichever is the lower. In the case of livestock, where the farmer is unable to estimate the actual cost of home-bred cattle, sheep or pigs, they may be brought in at 75 per cent. of the current market value of each animal at the time of the valuation. The cost figure of home grown grain, straw, hay, roots, etc., may be taken at market (or controlled) price, less 15 per cent.

A record must be kept of all receipts and payments which, for the purposes of the Profit and Loss Account must be analysed under appropriate heads, adjustment being made at the end of each accounting period for outstandings and accruals in the usual way. As a general rule, only two-thirds of the amount of the rent (or, in the case of an owner-occupier, of the net Schedule A value) of the farmhouse may be charged in the farm accounts, one-third being attributable to personal use. There must also be credited to the Profit and Loss Account and debited to the farmer's Current (or Drawings) Account the estimated value of the farm produce, etc., consumed by the farmer and his family. Depreciation of Machinery and Plant should be provided for, but in the case of small tools, in respect of which capital allowances are not given for income tax purposes, the cost of replacement should be charged.

The following illustration shows the form in which the farm Profit and Loss Account may be prepared.

Illustration

J. SMITH
THE MEADOW FARM
PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT FOR YEAR ENDED 31st DECEMBER

| | £ | £ | | £ | £ |
|--------------------------------------|-------|---------|---------------------------------------|-------|---------|
| To Valuation at 1st January : | | | By Sales : | | |
| Dairy Herd and other Cattle ... | 3,200 | | Corn, Vegetables, etc. ... | 1,800 | |
| Horses ... | 120 | | Milk ... | 3,900 | |
| Hay and Straw ... | 51 | | Cattle ... | 950 | |
| Corn, Roots and Stores ... | 577 | | Fruit ... | 200 | |
| Cultivations and Manures applied | 403 | | | | 6,850 |
| Manures on hand ... | 100 | | Own Consumption | 75 | |
| | | 4,451 | Subsidies and grants | 62 | |
| Livestock Purchases : | | | | | 137 |
| Cattle ... | 120 | | Valuation at 31st December : | | |
| Horses ... | 50 | 170 | Dairy Herd and other Cattle | 3,500 | |
| General Purchases : | | | Horses ... | 150 | |
| Fertilisers ... | 642 | | Hay and Straw ... | 180 | |
| Seeds ... | 390 | | Corn, Roots and Stores | 300 | |
| Feeding Stuff ... | 1,260 | 2,292 | Cultivations and Manures ap- plied | 1,200 | |
| Labour Charges : | | | Manures on Hand | 130 | |
| Wages and National Insurance | 2,800 | | | | 5,460 |
| Sub-contracted work ... | 180 | 2,980 | Net Loss for year | | 1,661 |
| General Expenses : | | | | | |
| Motor and Tractor Running | 800 | | | | |
| Repairs and Maintenance | 960 | | | | |
| Tool Usage | 105 | | | | |
| Rent, Lighting, Heating, etc. | 1,250 | 3,115 | | | |
| Depreciation | | 1,100 | | | |
| | | £14,108 | | | £14,108 |

§ 4 Fire Claims for Stock

Where stock in-trade is destroyed by fire and the exact value thereof is unknown, the usual method of ascertaining the amount of the claim is to prepare an estimated Trading Account for the period since the last accounts were drawn up. The average rate of gross profit on turnover for past years will be ascertained, and the percentage so arrived at, calculated on the sales for the particular period under review, will be considered to represent the estimated gross profit for the period. The balance of the account will then show the estimated stock which was damaged and destroyed.

Where the books of account have been destroyed, it becomes more difficult to obtain the details necessary to prepare the estimated Trading Account. In order to arrive at the approximate amount of sales, all known customers should be circularised. From the replies and the knowledge of the proportion of cash sales, the approximate sales for the period can be estimated.

Similarly, all suppliers should be circularised, and an estimate of the total purchases thus obtained. Copies of previous Profit and Loss Accounts and Balance Sheets will usually be available in the hands of auditors or Inspectors of Taxes, so there should be no difficulty in arriving at the opening stock value or the usual percentage of gross profit.

In circularising the customers and suppliers, care should be taken to ask for the corresponding figures for the previous year, in order that estimates can be made by comparison. The bank statements will assist in building up estimates, particularly in respect of wages, where wages are charged in the Trading Account.

Any partially destroyed stock will be valued, and the amount deducted from the amount of the estimated total stock. The resulting figure will represent the claim to be made against the insurance company. If uninsured, the cost of the stock lost must be charged to Profit and Loss Account.

Illustration (1)

John Smith carries on business as a timber merchant. On 31st March, a fire occurred at his yard, and the greater portion of his stock was destroyed, the value of the portion salvaged being £600. His books, however, were saved, and from these it appeared that on 1st January, his stock amounted to £3,000. The purchases to 31st March, were £5,000, whilst the sales were £7,200. From an examination of his accounts for the previous three years it appears that the gross profit on the sales was 25 per cent. He is insured against fire.

Prepare a statement showing what amount he should claim from the insurance company.

JOHN SMITH ESTIMATED TRADING ACCOUNT FOR THREE MONTHS ENDED 31ST MARCH

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|---------------|
| To Stock at 1st January | £ 3,000 | By Sales | £ 7,200 |
| „ Purchases | 5,000 | „ Estimated Stock at 31st March | 2,600 |
| „ Estimated Gross Profit, being 25% on sales of £7,200 | 1,800 | | |
| | <u>£9,800</u> | | <u>£9,800</u> |

The above account shows the stock to be of the estimated value of £2,600 at the date of the fire. The value of the stock salvaged being agreed at £600, a claim will be made against the insurance company for £2,000.

Frequently the salvaged stock can be made saleable after it has been reconditioned. Its value should be credited to the Trading Account and debited to Salvaged Stock Account, any expenses incurred being charged to the latter account. As sales are effected they should be credited to the Salvaged Stock Account, the ultimate profit or loss on which should be transferred to Profit and Loss Account (*not* to Trading Account, since this is not an ordinary trading transaction). If any of the salvaged stock remains on hand at a Balance Sheet date, it must be valued (at cost or market value, whichever is lower) and carried down on the account.

Illustration (2)

Taking the facts in the previous illustration, assume that £200 was spent in re-conditioning the stock. Sales were effected to an amount of £900, and at the Balance Sheet date the stock was valued at £125. Write up the account.

SALVAGED STOCK ACCOUNT

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| To Trading Account | £ 600 | By Sales | £ 900 |
| „ Expenses | 200 | „ Stock c/d. | 125 |
| „ Profit and Loss Account—profit | 225 | | |
| | <u>£1,025</u> | | <u>£1,025</u> |
| To Stock b/d. | 125 | | |

§ 5. Claims under Loss of Profits (Consequential Loss) Insurance Policies

Insurance policies are frequently effected to provide compensation for loss of profits consequent upon the disorganisation of a business in consequence of a fire. It is usual for such a policy to cover the loss of net profit, together with standing charges and

any increased cost of working, such as the renting of temporary premises, until the turnover of the business reaches normal conditions.

The contemplated period of disorganisation for which the insurance is effected is known as the 'period of indemnity' and its length will vary with the nature of the business and the delay anticipated in obtaining new machinery, equipment, etc. The longer the period of indemnity for which cover is required the greater will be the amount of the premium charged.

The normal method of calculating a claim under such a policy is by way of a percentage on loss of turnover, such percentage being either a rate agreed by the terms of the policy or based on certified accounts of the year preceding the year in which the fire occurred. The loss of turnover is the difference between the turnover for the period of indemnity covered by the policy and the turnover for the corresponding period in the preceding year. The agreed percentage on this difference represents the loss suffered, to which may be added any specified increased costs of working, covered by the policy, to arrive at the total claim.

Illustration (1)

The principles underlying the claim can readily be seen from the following comparative accounts.

TRADING AND PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNTS

| | | Year | | | | Year | |
|---------------------------------------|--|----------------|----------------|-----------------|--|----------------|----------------|
| | | 1955 | 1956 | | | 1955 | 1956 |
| | | £ | £ | | | £ | £ |
| To Stock | | 3,000 | 2,000 | By Sales | | 40,000 | 28,000 |
| „ Purchases | | 29,000 | 21,500 | „ Stock | | 2,000 | 2,500 |
| „ Gross Profit | | 10,000 | 7,000 | | | | |
| | | <u>£42,000</u> | <u>£30,500</u> | | | <u>£42,000</u> | <u>£30,500</u> |
| To Expenses fluctuating with turnover | | 2,000 | 1,400 | By Gross Profit | | 10,000 | 7,000 |
| „ Standing Charges | | 6,100 | 6,500 | „ Net Loss | | | 900 |
| „ Net Profit | | 1,900 | | | | | |
| | | <u>£10,000</u> | <u>£7,900</u> | | | <u>£10,000</u> | <u>£7,900</u> |

The result of the fall in turnover plus the increase in standing charges has been to convert a profit of £1,900 into a loss of £900, the business thus being worse off to the extent of £2,800. In order to meet the normal standing charges and to make the normal profit, a percentage on turnover must be earned equal to the total of those two items. Assuming

1955 to be the basic year, the percentage on turnover must be $\frac{£6,100 + £1,900 \times 100}{40,000 \times 1} = 20\%$.

(The amount to be earned is thus equal to gross profit less charges which fluctuate with turnover, viz., £10,000-£2,000 = £8,000. Where there is no turnover, there will be no variable expenses, but many standing charges will continue whilst the business is carried on.)

The effect of the fall in turnover is thus:

| | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Loss of 20% on fall in turnover, 20% on (£40,000-£28,000) = | £2,400 |
| Increase in Standing Charges | 400 |
| Total | <u>£2,800</u> |

What is true of a whole year is true of part of a year, provided the same period in each year is taken to ascertain the fall in turnover.

Illustration (2)

Date of Fire, 1st June.

Amount Insured, £12,000.

Percentage of net profit and standing charges to turnover, 12 per cent.

| | Turnover prior to fire. | Turnover after fire. | Decrease |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|----------|
| | £ | £ | £ |
| June | 12,000 | Nil. | 12,000 |
| July | 13,000 | 500 | 12,500 |
| August | 11,500 | 1,500 | 10,000 |
| September | 12,500 | 5,000 | 7,500 |
| October | 13,000 | 8,000 | 5,000 |
| November | 12,700 | 10,000 | 2,700 |
| Total decrease | | | £49,700 |
| Claim 12% on Total Decrease | | | £5,964 |

When formulating a claim for loss of profits the following factors must *inter alia* be borne in mind:

(a) The turnover of the corresponding period of the previous year is not necessarily a true indication of the turnover which would have been obtained during the current year had the fire not taken place. It may be shown that there has been a definite upward or downward trend in sales which would have continued during the period, which has now suffered by reason of the fire, in which case, appropriate adjustments are essential to compare actual turnover with that which could properly have been expected.

(b) The percentage of net profit plus standing charges based on turnover as shown by past accounts may not reflect the present earning capacity of the business. A change in the cost of materials, selling prices, manufacturing operations, nature of the product sold, etc., will each cause a variation in the percentage of profit earned.

In order to follow the formula laid down in the modern standard policy, it is necessary to have regard to the following definitions used in the contract:

(i) *Gross Profit*: The sum produced by adding to the net profit the amount of the insured standing charges, or if there be no net profit, the amount of the insured standing charges less such a proportion of any net trading loss as the amount of the insured standing charges bears to all the standing charges of the business.

The insured standing charges are those charges specified in the policy which the insured desires to recover in the event of damage.

(ii) *Turnover*: The money paid or payable to the insured for goods sold and delivered and for services rendered in the course of the business at the premises.

Net profit and standing charges bear a direct relationship to the turnover of a business. Consequently, turnover as a basis for measuring the loss sustained provides a reliable guide.

(iii) *Indemnity Period*: The period beginning with the occurrence of the damage and ending not later than months thereafter during which the results of the business shall be affected in consequence of the damage.

The period chosen sets the limit on the time during which compensation is payable under the policy.

(iv) *Rate of Gross Profit*: The rate of gross profit earned on the turnover during the financial year immediately before the date of the damage.

(v) *Annual Turnover*: The turnover during the twelve months immediately before the date of the damage.

(vi) *Standard Turnover*: The turnover during that period in the twelve months immediately before the date of the damage which corresponds with the indemnity period.

(vii) *Average*: The 'average clause' reads: 'provided that if the sum insured by the policy be less than the sum produced by applying the rate of gross profit to the annual turnover the amount payable shall be proportionately reduced'.

This is a simple condition of average. If the company insures for only a proportion of its gross profit, then it can only expect to recover a corresponding proportion of the loss.

Illustration (3)

The premises of Conflagration Ltd. were partially destroyed by fire, and as a result the business was disorganised from 1st March to 31st August. The company is insured under the terms of a tariff 'standard' Loss of Profits Policy for £11,000. The period of indemnity specified in the policy was six months.

The accountants to Conflagration Ltd. certified the following information extracted from the books of the insured:

| | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| 1. Actual Turnover during the period of dislocation (March/August) ... | 7,000 |
| 2. Turnover for the corresponding period in the twelve months immediately before the fire (i.e. the standard turnover) | 20,000 |
| 3. Turnover for the twelve months immediately preceding the fire (i.e. the 'annual turnover') | 50,000 |
| 4. Net profit, plus standing charges of last <i>financial year</i> | 12,000 |
| 5. Turnover for the last <i>financial year</i> | 48,000 |

Due to a substantial increase in trade before and up to the time of the fire, it was agreed that an adjustment of 10 per cent. should be made in respect of the disclosed upward trend in turnover (as stipulated in the adjustments clause in the policy), so as to bring the pre-fire figures up to the level that could reasonably have been expected during the indemnity period if the fire had not occurred.

The company incurred additional expenses amounting to £500 immediately after the fire which avoided or reduced the shortage in turnover that would otherwise have occurred. It was also ascertained that a saving of £250 was made in *insured standing charges* in consequence of the fire during the indemnity period.

Compute the claim by Conflagration Ltd. under the policy.

PARTICULARS OF CLAIM

| | | | | | | | | | | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------------|
| <i>Shortage of Turnover</i> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Turnover for six months (March/August) in previous year (standard turnover) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 20,000 |
| Add expected increase of 10 per cent. (as agreed) | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2,000 |
| | | | | | | | | | | <u>22,000</u> |
| Less actual turnover during the period of indemnity | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 7,000 |
| | | | | | | | | | | <u>15,000</u> |
| <i>Annual Turnover</i> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Turnover for the twelve months immediately preceding the fire | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 50,000 |
| Add increase of 10 per cent., as agreed | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 5,000 |
| | | | | | | | | | | <u>55,000</u> |

Rate of Gross Profit

$$\frac{\text{Net profit, plus insured Standing Charges for last financial year}}{\text{Turnover for last financial year}} = \frac{12,000}{48,000} = 25\%$$

FORMULA FOR STATEMENT OF CLAIM

| | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1. Clause (a) Loss through reduction in turnover, 25 per cent. of £15,000 ... | £3,750 |
| (b) Loss incurred through increase in cost of working | 500 |
| | <hr/> 4,250 |
| 2. Less saving in insured Standing Charges | 250 |
| | <hr/> 4,000 |
| 3. <i>Average</i> .—Since the sum insured, viz., £11,000, is less than the adjusted 'gross profit' for the year, ascertained as above, viz., 25 per cent. on £55,000 | £13,750 |
| the insured must bear a proportionate part of the loss sustained, and the amount payable under the policy is therefore, reduced to | |
| Sum Assured, £11,000 | |
| Adjusted Gross Profit, £13,750 | × £4,000 |
| | <hr/> £3,201 |

Notes

- (1) If the company had omitted to cover one or more of its standing charges e.g., if the total of all standing charges had been £13,000, but an item of £1,000 was not included in the cover, the proportion payable in relation to the extra cost of working shown in clause (b) in the above claim would be reduced to :

$$\frac{\text{Net profit, plus insured standing charges, £12,000}}{\text{Net profit, plus all standing charges, £13,000}} \times £500 = £461$$
 and this amount would have been taken into consideration in arriving at the loss.
- (2) It will be noticed that the *whole* of the saving in insured standing charges must go to reduce the ascertained loss in accordance with the terms of the policy.

§ 6. Claims for Compensation

Professional accountants are often required to prepare accounts substantiating claims for compensation, either for personal injuries sustained, or for damages in respect of the destruction or disturbance of a business, e.g. as a result of the compulsory acquisition of premises by a local authority or Government department.

In the case of a claim for damages in respect of personal injuries sustained, the chief points to be considered are:

- (1) The claimant's actual income from his business.
- (2) The extent of the injuries sustained. If the accident results in total disablement of the claimant and inability to attend to his business, he will be entitled to a much larger sum by way of damages than if the disablement were only partial.
- (3) Whether the claimant can easily realise the full amount of the capital in his business, or whether a loss will be made.

Where the claim for compensation is on account of destruction or disturbance of business, the chief points to take into account are:

- (1) The loss on trading which it is anticipated will be sustained.
- (2) If it is a question of compulsory sale of a lease, the unexpired period and terms of the lease, and the possibilities of obtaining alternative (and may be better) accommodation
- (3) The probable loss on sale of fixtures and fittings.
- (4) The loss in respect of compulsory sale of stock (if any).
- (5) Loss of beneficial interest through compulsory removal, and the effect on goodwill.

Illustration

A B, an ironmonger, carried on business for upwards of 15 years in premises situate in High Street, held under a lease, of which 9 years are unexpired, and at an annual rent of £250. The property being required for street improvements, and A B, having received due notice from the proper authority, he claims compensation for disturbance. If A B's Solicitor were to instruct you to prepare a Statement of Claim, what accounts would you prepare?

State the grounds upon which the claims would be based, and, by means of assumed figures, make out a statement showing the items of which it would be composed.

Trading and Profit and Loss Accounts for three to five years, according to the circumstances of the case, would be produced in support of the claim. The compensation claimed would be in respect of the following losses:

- (1) Loss of beneficial interest through compulsory removal, which may or may not amount to the entire goodwill, according to the circumstances of the case.
- (2) The present value of the lease, plus a percentage for compulsory removal.
- (3) Loss on fixtures according to the facts of the case.
- (4) Loss in respect of compulsory sale of stock (if any).

The Statement of Claim might take the following form:

| STATEMENT OF CLAIM | | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|---------|
| FOR COMPENSATION IN RESPECT OF COMPULSORY REMOVAL | | | |
| Loss in respect of Beneficial Interest, 6 years' average super-profits as per accounts enclosed | .. | .. | £ 6,000 |
| Present Value of Lease, plus 10% for compulsory removal | .. | .. | 550 |
| Loss on Fixtures | .. | .. | 750 |
| Loss in respect of compulsory sale of Stock | .. | .. | 1,000 |
| Total Claim | | | £8,300 |

§ 7. Bankers' Accounts

The principal functions of a joint stock bank are:

- (1) To receive deposits from customers and collect cheques, bills of exchange and other credit instruments on their behalf; and to pay on demand cheques drawn on

current accounts, and repay deposit accounts, after the required period of notice has expired.

- (2) To discount bills of exchange and promissory notes on behalf of customers and others.
- (3) To grant loans and overdrafts. Some banks prefer to advance a fixed sum on loan account, crediting the amount thereof to the customer's current account so that he can draw against it. In other cases the required accommodation is given by way of overdraft, *i.e.*, the customer is allowed to draw cheques up to a specified limit in excess of the amount standing to the credit of his current account. Interest is charged on the amount of the fixed loan, or on the amount of the overdraft for the time being, as the case may be.
- (4) Agency services, such as the collection of foreign cheques, bills of exchange, dividend warrants and other credit instruments; the payment of 'standing orders' for subscriptions, insurance premiums and other regularly recurring liabilities on behalf of customers; the purchase and sale, through the bank's brokers, of stock exchange securities for customers; the services of the new issue department in connection with raising of fresh capital by a limited company (mainly the receipt of the application monies and financial business up to the allotment of the securities); the specialised services of the executor and trustee department; etc.
- (5) Miscellaneous services, including the transaction of foreign exchange business, issuing traveller's cheques, letters of credit, etc.; the receipt for safe custody of plate, jewellery, title deeds to property, stock and share certificates and other valuables on behalf of customers.

Apart from balances with the Bank of England and other British banks, and cheques in the course of collection, the banks' resources are used for the purpose of earning income, in such a way, however, that a sufficient proportion of the assets is in a form in which they can be easily and speedily realised.

The total amount which banks will lend at any time is determined by the ratio of their cash Reserves (*i.e.*, cash and notes in the till plus balances at the Bank of England) to their liabilities. The experience of bankers teaches them that of the total amounts deposited by customers, only a small proportion is likely to be demanded at any given time, and every net increase in deposits will thus enable the banks to grant loans or overdrafts of a considerably larger amount. If, for example, it is the policy of the banks to maintain cash reserves equal to 8 per cent. of their liabilities, every increase of £100 in their *net* deposits (*i.e.*, deposits less withdrawals) will enable them to grant credits to the extent of a further £1,150, which, with the liability to customers for the £100 increased net deposits, will make up the ratio of 12½ : 1 of liabilities to cash reserves.

The typical bank Balance Sheet shows clearly how the bank's funds are employed, the various assets being set out in order of liquidity.

A banking company which is incorporated under one of the Companies Acts must comply with the requirements of Part III of the Eighth Schedule to the Companies

Acts, 1948, as respects the information to be disclosed in the accounts laid before its members. These requirements are indicated in Chapter VIII (§ 15 (c) and (e)).

A copy of the latest available published accounts of one of the 'big five' of the joint stock banks will be found in the Appendix.

Illustration

X BANK LTD.

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER, 19...

| | £ | | £ | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| Share Capital Authorised: 2,000,000 Shares of £10 each | 20,000,000 | Coin, Bank Notes and Balances with the Bank of England | | 26,500,000 |
| Share Capital Issued: 2,000,000 Shares of £10 each, £2 10s. paid | 5,000,000 | Balance with, and cheques in course of collection on, other Banks, and Cheques, Drafts, etc., in transit | | 17,500,000 |
| Reserve Fund | 2,000,000 | Money at Call and Short Notice | | 27,000,000 |
| Balance of Profit and Loss Account | 500,000 | Bills Discounted: | | |
| | 7,500,000 | British Government Treasury Bills | 64,000,000 | |
| Dividend payable, less Income Tax | 200,000 | Bills payable by British Firms and Institutions in the United Kingdom | 1,500,000 | |
| Current, Deposit and other Accounts, in- cluding Contingency Reserves and pro- vision for Taxation | 345,000,000 | Other Bills | 200,000 | |
| Acceptances and Confirmed Credits on account of Customers | 11,000,000 | | | 65,700,000 |
| Engagements on account of Customers | 3,000,000 | Investments: | | |
| | | British Government Securities | 100,000,000 | |
| | | Other Quoted Securities, including Securities of Dominion and Colonial Governments, British Public Boards and British Municipal Corporations | 800,000 | |
| | | | | 100,800,000 |
| | | Advances to Customers and other Accounts | | 110,200,000 |
| | | Shares in Subsidiary Banks and Companies | | 2,000,000 |
| | | Bank Premises, at cost, less amounts written off | | 3,000,000 |
| | | Liabilities of Customers for Acceptances, Endorsements, Engagements, etc., as per contra | | 14,000,000 |
| | | | | £366,700,000 |
| | £366,700,000 | | | |

The following notes are given with regard to those items in the above Balance Sheet which are not self-explanatory

1. *Current, Deposit and other Accounts.* This item represents the total amounts standing to the credit of customers on Current and Deposit Accounts.

2. *Acceptances, Confirmed Credits and Engagements on account of Customers.* These items represent the liability which the bank has undertaken by the acceptance and endorsement of bills of exchange, by guarantees given to third parties, credits issued, and other obligations undertaken on behalf of customers. They are balanced on the other side of the Balance Sheet by assets representing the liabilities of the customers to the bank in respect of the obligations so undertakes.

3. *Coin, Bank Notes and balances with the Bank of England.* This item includes bank notes and coin in the tills and vaults of the Head Office and the branches of the bank, and the balance standing to the credit of the bank at the Bank of England.

4. *Money at Call and Short Notice.* This item represents advances repayable at call or at short notice, made to stock jobbers, bill brokers, and others, on the security of bills of exchange and investments.

5. *Treasury Bills.* These are instruments issued by the Treasury for periods of three or six months by tender. Bills are for a minimum denomination of £5,000

and tenders are not accepted for less than £50,000. They carry no interest but are issued at a discount.

6. *Advances to Customers and other Accounts.* This item includes all loans and overdrafts granted to customers, and normally forms the largest asset of the bank.

7. *Liabilities of Customers for Acceptances, Endorsements, etc.* This item represents the liability of customers to the bank in respect of the obligations undertaken on their behalf and appearing on the opposite side of the Balance Sheet.

§ 8. Voyage Accounts

The owner or charterer of a ship, in addition to ascertaining the profit or loss from carrying on his business for a period, should be in a position to determine the exact result of each voyage made. In order to do this, it is usual to open a separate account for each voyage, the accounts referring to each voyage being numbered consecutively.

The account should be charged with all expenses actually incurred in respect of the particular voyage, and with a proper proportion of all other charges which are attributable to the voyages generally, such as premiums on time policies, manager's remuneration, etc., and should be credited with the freight and other income earned. The final balance of the account will represent the profit or loss on the voyage.

The Voyage Account will be in the form of an ordinary Profit and Loss Account.

Illustration

The 'Glenisla' Steamship Company, Limited, own one 'tramp steamer', the s.s. 'Glenisla' which was chartered on 27th February, as follows:

(a) Cardiff to Genoa with general cargo at £3 per ton. The charter stipulates for an address commission to the charterers of 2 per cent. on the freight, payable on signing bill of lading, together with a brokerage of 5 per cent. to the charterers' agents, of which one-third is repayable to the vessel.

(b) Agua Amarga to Barrow with Ore at £1 10s. 0d. per ton. Address commission of 2 per cent. on freight payable to charterers and a brokerage of one-third of 5 per cent. payable to charterers' agents on signing charter.

The vessel was insured at Lloyd's on 29th April, the inclusive premium for one year being £3,000, and the managing owners' remuneration was fixed by the articles of association at 5 per cent. of gross freight charges.

The following are the particulars from which the accounts are to be made up:

| | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Freight on 3,000 tons general cargo to Genoa, and on 3,500 tons Ore to Barrow | 14,250 |
| Stores Account | 560 |
| Port Charges, etc., Cardiff | 350 |
| Captain's Accounts for Harbour Wages, etc., Cardiff | 150 |
| Bunker Coals | 1,600 |
| Discharging at Genoa | 145 |
| Agents' Disbursements, Genoa | 75 |
| Captain's Expenses, Genoa | 15 |
| Stevedores at Agua Amarga | 420 |
| Provisions | 640 |
| Repairs on voyage | 125 |
| Captain's Expenses, Amarga | 10 |
| Agents' Accounts for Port Charges, Agency, etc., exclusive of Address Commission and Brokerage | 150 |
| Wages | 1,750 |
| Port Charges and Discharging at Barrow | 1,150 |
| Captain's Portage Bill | 325 |
| Proportion of annual provision for repairs and replacement | 2,500 |

The voyage terminated on 28th April.

Prepare the Voyage Account, apportioning where necessary in months.

VOYAGE ACCOUNT, 27TH FEBRUARY TO 28TH APRIL

| | £ | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------------|-------|---------|-------------------------------------------|---------|
| To Stores Account | | 560 | By Freight: | |
| " Port Charges, etc. | | 350 | Outward—3,000 tons of general cargo from | |
| " Captain's Account, Cardiff | | 150 | Cardiff to Genoa at £3 per ton (a) | 9,000 |
| " Bunker Coals | 1,600 | | Homeward—3,500 tons of Ore to Barrow at | |
| " Wages | 1,750 | | £1 10s. per ton (b) | 5,250 |
| " Discharging at Genoa | 145 | | " Brokerage refunded on (a): | |
| " Agents' Disbursements, Genoa | 75 | | One-third of £450 | 150 |
| " Captain's Expenses, Genoa | 15 | | | |
| " Stevedores at Agua Amarga | 420 | | | |
| " Provisions | 640 | | | |
| " Repairs | 125 | | | |
| " Captain's Expenses | 10 | | | |
| " Port Charges, Agency, etc. | 150 | | | |
| " Port Charges, etc., at Barrow | 1,150 | | | |
| " Captain's Portage Bill | 325 | | | |
| " Address Commissions: | | | | |
| 2% on £9,000 | 180 | | | |
| 2% on £5,250 | 105 | | | |
| | | 285 | | |
| " Brokerage: | | | | |
| (a) 5% on £9,000 | 450 | | | |
| (b) One-third of 5% on £5,250 | 87 | | | |
| | | 537 | | |
| " Insurance Premium for 2 months | | 500 | | |
| " Managing Owners' Commission | | 712 | | |
| " Provision for Repairs and Replacement | | 2,500 | | |
| " Profit on Voyage | | 2,401 | | |
| | | <hr/> | | |
| | | £14,400 | | £14,400 |

§ 9. Marine Insurance Accounts

There are three parties to be considered in dealing with these accounts:

- (1) The person for whom the insurance is effected.
- (2) The marine insurance broker.
- (3) The underwriter.

When a person wishes to insure a ship or cargo, he will communicate his wishes to an insurance broker, who will discuss with the underwriters with whom he desires to place the insurance the premium they require.

This premium, in the case of cargo insurance, is subject to brokerages of 5 per cent., 10 per cent., and $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent., each percentage being calculated on the premium less the preceding percentage. Thus, if the premium were £100 the brokerage would be 5 per cent. of £100 + 10 per cent. of £95 + $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. of £85 10s. 0d. = £16 12s. 9d. The total brokerage is deducted by the broker from the payment which he makes to the underwriter and the broker allows a discount of $9\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. to the person for whom the insurance has been effected. In the case of insurance of the ship itself, i.e., on the 'hull', the brokerages are 5 per cent. and 10 per cent.

When a claim is made under a policy, it is the business of the insurance broker to collect the amount of the loss on behalf of his client, from the various underwriters *pro rata*, receiving for his services a commission calculated at an agreed percentage on the total amount of the claim. Thus the broker will collect the full amount of the loss from the underwriters, and pay this to his client, less the agreed collecting commission.

Owing to the nature of the contract of underwriting, it is necessary for each year's account to be kept open for three years. There are, therefore, always three accounts

open, except at the date of the Balance Sheet, when the first of the three accounts then open will be closed.

Illustration

The following are the balances on 31st December, 1958, in the books of A. Wreck, an underwriter at Lloyds:

| | | 1956 Account £ | 1957 Account £ | 1958 Account £ |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Premiums (<i>less</i> Returns and Reinsurances) ... | 1st year | 201,800 | 202,000 | 262,100 |
| | 2nd " | 72,300 | 68,400 | — |
| | 3rd " | 6,145 | — | — |
| Salvages ... | 1st " | 8,560 | 9,010 | 2,130 |
| | 2nd " | 7,860 | 8,170 | — |
| | 3rd " | 925 | — | — |
| Taxed Dividends and Interest received during | 1953 | 1,115 | — | — |
| | 1954 | 1,250 | 1,310 | — |
| | 1955 | 1,440 | 1,545 | 1,215 |
| Claims ... | 1st year | 38,370 | 68,500 | 64,750 |
| | 2nd " | 169,600 | 191,000 | — |
| | 3rd " | 32,140 | — | — |
| Expenses (including Commission) ... | | 15,300 | 19,150 | 18,140 |
| Reinsurances to close 1956 Account ... | | 10,200 | — | — |
| Investments (all accounts) at cost ... | | | 52,825 | |
| Creditors ... | | | 10,300 | |
| Debtors ... | | | 42,400 | |
| Balance at Bank ... | | | 215,200 | |
| Capital Account: Balance on 1st January, 1958 | | | 70,000 | |

Prepare Underwriting Accounts to 31st December, 1955, and Balance Sheet as on that date.

A. WRECK
UNDERWRITING ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR 1956

| 1956 | £ | 1956 | £ |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Dec. 31 To Claims ... | 38,370 | Dec. 31 By Premiums (net) ... | 201,800 |
| " Expenses ... | 15,300 | " Salvages ... | 8,560 |
| " Balance carried down ... | 157,805 | " Taxed Dividends and Interest ... | 1,115 |
| | <u>£211,475</u> | | <u>£211,475</u> |
| 1957 | | 1957 | |
| Dec. 31 To Claims ... | 169,600 | Jan. 1 By Balance brought down ... | 157,805 |
| " Balance carried down ... | 69,615 | Dec. 31 " Premiums (net) ... | 72,300 |
| | <u>£239,215</u> | " Salvages ... | 7,860 |
| | | " Taxed Dividends and Interest ... | 1,250 |
| | | | <u>£239,215</u> |
| 1958 | | 1958 | |
| Dec. 31 To Claims ... | 32,140 | Jan. 1 By Balance brought down ... | 69,615 |
| " Reinsurances ... | 10,200 | Dec. 31 " Premiums (net) ... | 6,145 |
| " Profit and Loss Account ... | 35,785 | " Salvages ... | 925 |
| | <u>£78,125</u> | " Taxed Dividends and Interest ... | 1,440 |
| | | | <u>£78,125</u> |

UNDERWRITING ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR 1957

| 1957 | | £ | 1957 | | £ |
|---------|-------------------------------|-----------------|---------|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Claims | 68,500 | Dec. 31 | By Premiums (net) | 202,000 |
| | " Expenses | 19,150 | | " Salvages | 9,010 |
| | " Balance carried down | 124,670 | | " Taxed Dividends and Interest | 1,310 |
| | | <u>£212,320</u> | | | <u>£212,320</u> |
| | | | | | |
| 1958 | | £ | 1958 | | £ |
| Dec. 31 | To Claims | 191,000 | Jan. 1 | By Balance brought down | 124,670 |
| | " Balance carried-down | 11,785 | Dec. 31 | " Premiums (net) | 68,400 |
| | | | | " Salvages | 8,170 |
| | | | | " Taxed Dividends and Interest | 1,545 |
| | | <u>£202,785</u> | | | <u>£202,785</u> |
| | | | | | |
| | | | 1959 | | |
| | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance brought down | 11,785 |

UNDERWRITING ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR 1958

| 1958 | | £ | 1958 | | £ |
|---------|-------------------------------|-----------------|---------|---------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Claims | 64,750 | Dec. 31 | By Premiums (net) | 262,100 |
| | " Expenses | 18,140 | | " Salvages | 2,130 |
| | " Balance carried down | 182,555 | | " Taxed Dividends and Interest | 1,215 |
| | | <u>£265,445</u> | | | <u>£265,445</u> |
| | | | | | |
| | | | 1959 | | |
| | | | Jan. 1 | By Balance brought down | 182,555 |

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31st DECEMBER, 1958

| | | £ | | | £ |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| Capital Account: | | | Balance at Bank | | 215,200 |
| | Balance at 1st January, 1958 | 70,000 | | Investments at cost | 52,825 |
| | Profit from 1956 account | 35,785 | | Debtors | 42,400 |
| | | <u>105,785</u> | | | |
| Underwriting Accounts: | | | | | |
| | 1957 | 11,785 | | | |
| | 1958 | 182,555 | | | |
| | | <u>194,340</u> | | | |
| Creditors | | 10,300 | | | |
| | | <u>£310,425</u> | | | <u>£310,425</u> |

§ 10. Ledger Accounts for Investments

Where investments are numerous, the interest and dividends arising therefrom should be passed through the Investment Accounts in the ledger, so that it can be seen at a glance whether or not all the income due on each investment has been received. The best way of carrying this into effect is to have the Investment Accounts ruled with two columns on either side, one column for income and the other for capital. In most cases it is also convenient to have a third column for the nominal value or number of shares or units. In the case of fixed interest bearing stocks or shares the dates when dividends or interest fall due should be noted at the head of the account.

When income is received, cash is debited and the income column of the Investment Account credited, and, at the end of the period, the total income received from each investment is transferred to an Income from Investments Account. In cases where the income at the end of the period, although accrued due, has not actually been received, but can be computed, the amount of such accrual may be carried down

on the income column of the Investment Account. This should not, however, be done in trust accounts, in which credit should only be taken for income actually received.

Illustration (1)

An investment company held during the whole of the year, £1,000 4 per cent. debentures costing £987, in the Phoenix Iron Company, the interest being payable on the 30th June and 31st December in each year.

Show in the books of the company the Phoenix Iron Company Investment Account. Ignore income tax.

THE PHOENIX IRON COMPANY FOUR PER CENT. DEBENTURE ACCOUNT INTEREST PAYABLE 30TH JUNE AND 31ST DECEMBER

| Date. | Particulars. | £s. | Nominal Value. | Income. | Capital. | Date. | Particulars. | £s. | Nominal Value. | Income. | Capital. |
|---------|---------------------------------------------|-----|----------------|---------|----------|---------|-------------------------------|-----|----------------|---------|----------|
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/f. | | £ 1,000 | £ | £ 987 | June 30 | By Cash | | £ | £ | £ |
| Dec. 31 | „ Interest on Investments Account | | | 40 | | Dec. 31 | „ ½ year's interest | | | 20 | |
| | | | | | | | „ Balance c/d. | | 1,000 | 20 | 987 |
| | | | £1,000 | £40 | £987 | | | | £1,000 | £40 | £987 |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/d. | | 1,000 | | 987 | | | | | | |

It is usual in Investment Accounts, to carry down the balances at cost, and not adjust them to the current market value of the investments. In the case of companies holding a large number of investments, the practice is for a schedule to be prepared, showing the book value and the market value of each investment at the date of the Balance Sheet, a general provision being made for depreciation, if the total market value is less than the total book value. If the market value exceeds the book value, no credit should be taken for the excess, as this is not a realised profit. Under the Companies Act, 1948, a note of the market value of quoted investments must be made on the Balance Sheet of a company in which investments appear as an asset.

The profit or loss resulting on the sale of investments should be adjusted when the sale takes place. Where only a portion of the investment is sold, the balance remaining should be brought down at the price at which it stood in the books, and the difference on the account will then represent profit or loss on the portion of the investment sold, which should be transferred to a Profit and Loss on Investments Account.

Where investments are sold *cum div.* (which implies that the whole of the next dividend will go to the purchaser), some portion of the amount received will represent the dividend (less tax) accrued to the date of sale on the stock sold, and, strictly speaking, the amount received should be apportioned accordingly, the amount representing accrued income to date being credited to the income column, and the balance to the capital column of the Investment Account.

In the same manner, when stocks are purchased *cum div.*, the portion of the purchase price representing the accrued dividend (less) tax may be debited to the income column of the Investment Account, the balance being debited to the capital column. As the stock is purchased *cum div.*, the whole of the next dividend will be received, and should be credited in the income column, against which there will be a set-off on the debit side of the amount accrued to the date of purchase.

Most British Government and Municipal Corporation stocks are quoted *ex div.* about one month before the interest thereon is payable. Industrial securities are quoted *ex div.* at the commencement of dealings for the Stock Exchange account preceding the first day on which the company closes its transfer books. It will frequently be found that shares of large companies are quoted *ex div.* many weeks before the dividend is due, as it is necessary for such companies to close their transfer books long before dividends are payable owing to the volume of work involved in preparing and issuing the dividend warrents.

In arriving at the *ex div.* price, the full dividend (less tax) is deducted from the *cum div.* price. Accordingly, the price paid for the stock is short by the amount of the dividend accruing from the date of the transaction to the dividend date.

When stocks are bought *ex div.* therefore, it is permissible to debit the capital column and credit the income column of the Investment Account with interest from the date of purchase to the next dividend date; and when stocks are sold *ex div.*, correspondingly to debit income and credit capital. In the latter case the adjustment is sometimes effected by apportioning the dividend, when received.

In the case of stocks and shares which do not carry a fixed rate of interest, the adjustments between capital and income cannot be made on purchase or sale, since the amount of the dividend receivable is not then known. Any adjustment in such cases is therefore made when the next dividend is received.

Although in theory these adjustments should always be made, they are usually ignored in practice when the purchase and sale of investments is only incidental to the main purpose of the business carried on.

In the case of British Government securities having five years or less to run to maturity, dealings are subject to the accrued or accruing interest being accounted for between buyer and seller, up to the day for which the bargain is done. In these cases, therefore, the accrued or accruing dividend is known exactly from the contract.

Illustration (2)

On 1st March a trust company purchased £10,000 3 per cent. Government Stock (Interest payable 1st April, 1st July, 1st October and 1st January) at 87½ *cum div.* On 1st August, £2,000 stock is sold at 87 *cum div.*, and on 1st September, £2,000 stock is sold at 88½ *ex div.* On 31st December, the date of the Balance Sheet, the market price was 88.

Show the ledger account of the investment for the year, ignoring income tax, brokerage and stamps, and making apportionments in months.

GOVERNMENT 3 PER CENT.

| Date | | Nominal Value | Income | Capital | Date | | Nominal Value | Income | Capital | |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------|---------|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------|---------|-------|
| | | £ | £ | £ | | | £ | £ | £ | |
| Mar. 1 | To Cash - Purchase at 87½ <i>cum div.</i> (2 months accrued income £50) | 10,000 | 50 | 8,700 | Apr. 1 | By Cash - 3 months Interest, | | 75 | | |
| " | Transfer to Profit on Sale of Investments Account ... | | | 29 | July 1 | " Cash - 3 months Interest, | | 75 | | |
| " | Transfer to Income on Investments Account | | 205 | | Aug. 1 | " Cash - Sale at 87 <i>cum div.</i> (accrued Income 1 month £5) ... | 2,000 | 5 | 1,735 | |
| | | | | | Sep. 1 | " Cash - Sale at 88½ <i>ex div.</i> ... | 2,000 | | 1,765 | |
| | | | | | Oct. 1 | " Cash - Interest on £8,000, £60 (1 month on £2,000 sold <i>ex div.</i> £5 to capital) | | | | |
| | | | | | Dec. 31 | " Balance c/d | 6,000 | 55 | 5,220 | |
| | | | | | | " Balance 3 months accrued interest on £6,000 c/d .. | | 45 | | |
| | | £ | 10,000 | 255 | 8,725 | | £ | 10,000 | 255 | 8,725 |
| Jan. 1 | To Balances b/d ... | 6,000 | 45 | 5,220 | | | | | | |

Notes.

(1) The above method of adjusting the accrued dividend when posting the capital items can only be utilised when the rate of dividend or interest is fixed; otherwise the adjustment will be made when the dividend is received.

(2) Where stock is purchased or sold, the *cum div.* price may be apportioned so as to give to income the amount of interest which is included in the price.

(3) Where stock is sold *ex div.*, interest thereon from the date of the sale to the due date of the dividend may be credited to capital, as the full interest, and not merely the amount accrued to date, was deducted from the *cum div.* to arrive at the *ex div.* price, which is therefore *less* than the true capital proceeds by the amount of interest accruing after the sale. In this case, the dividend received on 1st October in respect of the £2,000 stock sold on 1st September has been so apportioned.

(4) The balance of stock remaining in hand is brought down at the net cost, *i.e.* £8,700 as shown by the capital column (and not at the *cum div.* price at which it was purchased).

Where further amounts of the same stock are purchased, and sales take place during the same or subsequent periods, it is convenient to value the balance at the average cost of all the purchases during the period, plus those in hand at the beginning of the period. No objection can be taken, however, to using the 'first in first out' principle, and regarding the balance as being made up of the latest purchases, or even identifying the sales with the purchases more closely by seeing which specific items have, in fact, been parted with.

(5) The above practice is not the method adopted in connection with trusts, where the rights of parties are defined by specific legal rules, as to which, see Ranking, Spicer & Pegler's 'Executorship Law and Accounts'.

(6) Credit has been taken in the account for the interest, accrued to the balancing date, which amount is carried down and will appear in the Balance Sheet as an asset.

Many companies, having financed their expansion out of profits ploughed back into the business, find that their accumulated reserves represent a very large percentage of their issued share capital; in some cases they may actually exceed their capital. As a result, dividends declared on the issued share capital appear to be at a high percentage rate, whereas in fact the dividend should be compared with the real capital employed in the company, namely, the aggregate of the issued share capital and the accumulated profits. In order to bring the share capital into line with the real

capital employed, such companies frequently make bonus issues of shares to their shareholders. It will be appreciated that the assets underlying the share capital are not in any way changed by such a bonus issue and, therefore, in theory, the increased number of shares subsequently held by a shareholder are in total of the same value as his original holding. In practice, however, it is usually found that the market value of the total holding will have increased because it is hoped that the company will continue to pay the same rate of dividend on its increased capital as it did on its original capital or that it will at least pay a dividend which represents an increase on the former rate. Another reason why the total market value of the new capital will usually be found to exceed the original value is that the number of shares available for dealing on the Stock Exchange having increased, a rather more active market is created. From the viewpoint of the recipient of such bonus shares, however, they have been acquired without cost and therefore no value should be placed upon them in the books, the only amendment required in the holder's Investment Account being an addition to the number of shares held. If, however, the shareholder sells the bonus shares he receives, it would be permissible to take credit for the profit on such a sale, as the price obtained contains some element of the profit which existed on the original holding before the allotment of the bonus shares.

Illustration (3)

J. Brown purchased 1,000 ordinary shares of £1 each in Wyezed Company Limited for £1,250, inclusive of brokerage and stamp duty. Some years later the company resolved to capitalise profits and to issue to the holders of ordinary shares one new ordinary share for every share held by them. Prior to the capitalisation, the shares of Wyezed Company Limited stood in the market at 35s. per share. After the capitalisation the company's shares were dealt in on the market at 18s. 6d. per share. J. Brown decided to sell the bonus shares he received and the sale was effected at 18s. per share net. Write up the Investment Account in respect of the aforementioned transactions.

WYEZED CO. LTD. £1 ORDINARY SHARES

| Date | Nominal | £ | Date | Nominal | £ |
|----------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| To Cash | 1,000 | 1,250 | By Cash-Sale | 1,000 | 900 |
| " Bonus | 1,000 | | " Balance c/d | 1,000 | 625 |
| " Profit transferred | | 275 | | | |
| | <u>2,000</u> | <u>£1,525</u> | | <u>2,000</u> | <u>£1,525</u> |
| To Balance b/d | 1,000 | 625 | | | |

Notes. (i) As no value is placed on the bonus shares when received the book value of the total holding is reduced from 25s. to 12s. 6d. per share.

(ii) The shares held after the sale are carried down at cost.

From time to time companies seek to raise additional capital by offering to their shareholders new shares at a price which compares very favourably with the current

market price of their existing shares. There is thus an element of bonus given to existing shareholders in that they are able to acquire free of brokerage, stamp duty, etc., further shares in the company at less than the current market price or, if they so desire, to sell their 'rights' on the market. Where a shareholder exercises his rights by taking up the shares, the cost of the additional shares he acquires will be recorded in the relevant Investment Account in the same manner as any other purchase. If, however, the shareholder decides to sell his 'rights', it is considered that the proceeds of sale should be credited to the Investment Account in the capital column thus reducing the book value of the original holding. It will be appreciated that a 'rights' issue differs from a 'bonus' issue in that under the former, additional capital is being raised by the company and an additional amount will in future be required for dividends, so that in the market the value of the original shares should tend to fall. Although in the case of a bonus issue future distributions may be greater than in the past, it is not essential that they should be, the main purpose of the bonus issue being to bring share capital into line with the real capital employed. The issue merely converts existing profits into share capital, and gives rise to a book entry without affecting the net assets of the company.

§ 11. Tabular Ledgers

In certain businesses, considerable labour can be saved by utilising tabular ledgers, particularly where the transactions concerned are numerous and do not vary in their nature.

The following are some of the more usual forms of tabular ledgers:

(a) Bought Day Book and Ledger combined

It is sometimes possible, where accounts are settled regularly on a fixed monthly pay-day, to dispense with the bought ledger altogether by having a specially ruled form of bought day book. This type of book is used with very satisfactory results by several of the large municipalities. As invoices are received, they are filed away in alphabetical order as relating to each creditor. At the end of each month the special bought day book is written up from the invoices in alphabetical order. Under the name of each creditor particulars are inserted of all the invoices relating to his account in order of date, the amounts being entered in the detail column, and the total extended into the total column. Any returns or allowances should be deducted from the invoices to which they relate, and the amounts of the invoices entered in the day book net. When cash is paid, the amount thereof, together with the discount (if any), is posted in one sum from the credit of the cash book to the cash and discount column in the bought day book opposite to the item to which it relates. Each item in the total column is extended into the proper subsidiary column to which it refers, and the totals of these columns are posted monthly to the respective nominal accounts.

The following is a convenient ruling for the book, with a few specimen entries:

Illustration

BOUGHT DAY BOOK AND LEDGER

| Date. | Invoice No. | Creditor. | Detail. | Total. | | Date Paid. | Cash and Discount. | | Materials. | Packages. | | Freight | | Repairs and Renewals. | | Trade Expenses. | |
|--------|-------------|----------------|---------|---------|---------|------------|--------------------|---------|------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|-----------------------|---------|-----------------|---------|
| | | | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. |
| Feb. 3 | 1 | Aldgate & Co. | 13 0 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| " 7 | 2 | Goods | 12 0 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| " 21 | 3 | " | 5 0 0 | 30 0 0 | Mar. 4 | 31 | 30 0 0 | 30 0 0 | | | | | | | | | |
| " 5 | 4 | Braid & Pierce | 16 0 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| " 17 | 5 | Goods | 8 0 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| " | | " | | 24 0 0 | Mar. 4 | 31 | 24 0 0 | 24 0 0 | | 24 0 0 | | | | | | | |

(b) Rental Ledger

Where a considerable number of properties is held a rental ledger should be used, which may be ruled for the purpose of recording half-yearly, quarterly or weekly rentals. An illustration is given below of a quarterly rental ledger.

To enable this book to take its place in the system of double entry, the totals of the rent and allowances columns should be posted to the credit and debit respectively of the appropriate impersonal accounts. The total of the arrears carried forward column at any date will represent the outstanding debtors for rent.

Illustration

RENTAL LEDGER

| Quarter ending..... | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------------------|---------------|-------|----------|------|-------------|-------------------------|
| No | Name of Tenant. | Particulars. | Amount of Rent. | Arrears brought forward. | Rent Payable. | Total | C.B. Fo. | Cash | Allowances. | Arrears carried forward |

(c) Hotel Visitors' Ledger

The personal accounts for visitors at an hotel can be most conveniently recorded by means of a tabular visitors' ledger, which contains similar particulars to those furnished on the accounts rendered to visitors.

The following is a form of this ledger:

| VISITORS' LEDGER | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|----------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|-----------------|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | |
| DEBITS. | | | | | | | | | | | DEBITS. Total. |
| | Name. | Name. | Name. | Name. | Name. | Name. | Name. | Name. | Name. | Name. | |
| | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | |
| Brought fd. | 2 12 7 | | | | | | | | | | Brought fd. |
| Apartments | 1 12 0 | | | | | | | | | | Apartments |
| Board, etc. | | | | | | | | | | | Board, etc. |
| Fires | | | | | | | | | | | Fires |
| Breakfasts | 7 0 | | | | | | | | | | Breakfasts |
| Luncheons, etc. | | 8 0 | | | | | | | | | Luncheons, etc. |
| Dinners | 15 0 | 10 0 | | | | | | | | | Dinners |
| Tea, Coffee, | | | | | | | | | | | Tea, Coffee, |
| Milk | 1 0 | 6 | | | | | | | | | Milk |
| Wine | 1 5 0 | | | | | | | | | | Wine |
| Spirits | | 2 6 | | | | | | | | | Spirits |
| Beer | | | | | | | | | | | Beer |
| Minerals | | 6 | | | | | | | | | Minerals |
| Cigars and | | | | | | | | | | | Cigars and |
| Cigarettes | | | | | | | | | | | Cigarettes |
| Laundry | | | | | | | | | | | Laundry |
| Paid out | | | | | | | | | | | Paid out |
| Etc. | | | | | | | | | | | Etc. |
| Total | £ 6 12 7 | 1 1 6 | | | | | | | | | Total £ |
| CREDITS. | | | | | | | | | | | CREDITS. |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Cash | 6 12 7 | | | | | | | | | | Cash |
| Allowance | | | | | | | | | | | Allowances |
| Personal | | | | | | | | | | | Personal |
| Accounts | | | | | | | | | | | Accounts |
| Bal. c/f. | | 1 1 6 | | | | | | | | | Bal. c/f. |
| Total | £ 6 12 7 | 1 1 6 | | | | | | | | | Total £ |

Notes to Illustration.

A separate page or pages are opened for each day's transactions, and a column provided therein for each visitor, numbered with the number of his room. The amount brought forward at the commencement of the page in each column represents the balance due at the commencement of the day from the visitor concerned. When an account is settled, as in column (1) of the illustration, the cash received is entered as a credit, and there will be no balance to be carried forward to the next day's page.

Where circumstances render it desirable, the amount due at any date from a visitor can be transferred to a ledger account in the personal ledger, and in this way taken out of the visitors' ledger.

The daily totals in respect of each heading, both debits and credits, are entered in the total column on the right-hand side, and transferred to a summary ledger, from which the monthly, quarterly, or half-yearly totals, as the case may be, can be obtained. These will be utilised for the purpose of the impersonal accounts.

(d) Plant Ledger

Where there are numerous items of plant it is essential that a plant ledger be kept in order that the cost and written down value of each item can be ascertained at any time. A separate account will be kept for each machine and it is useful, for record purposes, also to record thereon expenditure on repairs. To facilitate computations of capital allowances, etc., for taxation purposes it is advantageous to provide each account with columns showing the allowances received and the written down values carried forward.

The following ruling will be found convenient:

PLANT LEDGER
WRAPPING MACHINE No. 3

Rate of Depreciation 10%.

Taxation Annual Allowances 9½%.

Purchased 1st July, 1955

Cost £600

| Date | Particulars | Alterations or Additions | Repairs | Total Capital Cost | Date | Provision for Deprecia- tion | Written Down Value | Taxation Allowances | | | |
|--------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------|--------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------|---------|
| | | | | | | | | Year | Inv. or Initial | Annual | W. d.v. |
| 1955 | | £ | £ | £ | 1955 | £ | £ | | £ | £ | £ |
| July 1 | Cost - Brown & Co. | | | 600 | Dec. 31 | 30 | 570 | 1956/57 | 120 | 56 | 544 |
| Nov. 1 | Motor Repairs - X Ltd. | | 25 | | 1956 Dec. 31 | 57 | 513 | 1957/58 | | 51 | 493 |

Further columns may be provided to record the cumulative amount of depreciation provided for and the cost of repairs, etc., to date, in order that a complete history of the machine may be disclosed at a glance.

§ 12. Stock Exchange Transactions

It is the practice of the Stock Exchange to treat all dealings in Government securities on a cash basis. In the case of other stocks and shares, purchases and sales are made for the account, unless a special cash bargain is effected, and settlement normally takes place fortnightly, although occasionally the account covers three weeks.

A full description of all the financial books necessary for recording the transactions of a stockbroker's business, and of the machinery employed for settlements between members of the Stock Exchange, is outside the scope of this work. The books of prime entry are generally of elaborate design, providing for the proper recording of transactions so far as they affect persons, and for the collection of impersonal details into totals, for posting to the nominal accounts concerned.

The broker dealing in stocks or shares on behalf of a client either buys from, or sells to, a jobber. In obtaining a price from the jobber, he does not intimate whether he desires to buy or sell, and the quotation given consists generally of two prices differing slightly in amount. For instance, a stock might be quoted 101-101½. This indicates that the jobber is willing to buy at the lower price, or sell at the higher price.

When the transaction has been carried through, the broker sends a contract note to the client. In the case of a purchase, this is called a bought note, and shows the amount due from the client for the stock bought, plus commission at the authorised rate, the stamp duty on the transfer, the transfer fee charged by the company, and the cost of the contract stamp. In the case of a sale, it is called a sold note, and shows the amount due to the client for the stock sold, less commission and the cost of the contract stamp.

The commission or brokerage is according to the official scale, and generally takes the form of a percentage on the nominal value of the stock, or a fixed sum per share. In certain cases, a discretionary charge may be made, or the percentage may be calculated on the value of the stock.

The client's account is debited or credited, as the case may be, with the various amounts due from or to him in respect of these transactions. If the client does not wish to take up the stock or shares bought for him at the first settling day, it may be possible to carry the bargain over to the next settling day by arrangement with the broker, in which case the stocks concerned will be carried forward to the new account at the *making-up price*, and only the balance of the old account is then due to or from the client in cash. Making-up prices are fixed on the basis of prices ruling at the close of business on the previous day.

Where purchases are carried over in this manner, the old account must be credited and the new account debited with the stamp duty and transfer fee charged when the purchase was made, as these amounts are only payable if the stocks or shares are taken up.

The new account, in addition to being debited with the making-up price of the stock or shares carried over and the stamp duty and transfer fee brought down, is charged with the agreed *contango*, which is the consideration, in the nature of interest, payable to the broker for the accommodation, *i.e.*, for the period of the next account.

Illustration

S. Fuller enters into the following transactions with his stockbrokers:

Purchases:

On 16th July £10,000 L.N. Co. Ltd. 2nd Preference Stock at 23½. Stamp Duty, £47.

On 20th July £12,000 L.N. Co. Ltd. 4 per cent. Preference Stock at 84. Stamp Duty, £202.

On 23rd July £9,000 S. Co. Ltd. Deferred Stock at 23. Stamp Duty £42.

Sales:

On 24th July £10,000 L.N. Co. Ltd. 2nd Preference Stock at 24.

The brokers charge a commission of three-quarters per cent. on the money value of stocks. Only one commission was charged on stocks bought and sold for the same account. At the close of the account, S. Fuller carries over the remaining stocks at 83 and 23½ respectively, *contango* being charged at 5 per cent. per annum on the amount due, the following account being a 14-day account.

S. Fuller's account in the brokers' books, ignoring contract stamps and transfer fees is shown on page 440.

The broker's account in the client's books is, of course, the reverse of this account.

In the event of speculative transactions by a company, such as a finance company, being open on the Stock Exchange at the date of the company's Balance Sheet, the question arises as to how the liability attaching thereto should be stated.

Where a purchase of stock is carried over to a subsequent account, there is a liability on the part of the company to take up the stock, unless they sell it before the settling day, in which event the transaction will resolve itself into a settlement of differences. In the same manner, when stock has been sold which the company does not possess, and the transaction is carried forward, there is a liability on the part of the company to purchase the stock for delivery, and such purchase may have to be made at a higher rate than the price at which the stock was sold.

Until these transactions are closed, therefore, it is impossible to ascertain precisely the amount of any liability arising from them. Where the transaction has been closed before the preparation of the accounts, but after the date of the Balance Sheet, any loss which is found to have occurred should be provided for, and the liability can be stated precisely. Where, however, the transactions are not closed and the amount involved is material, a note should be made on the face of the Balance Sheet to the effect that there is a contingent liability in respect of transactions open on the Stock Exchange; and where a loss is expected, of which it is possible to make some estimate, a provision should be made accordingly.

§ 13. Professional Accounts

The accounts maintained by professional men present certain special features, the most important of which are dealt with hereunder:

(a) Separate Banking Accounts for Clients' and Trust Moneys

It is essential for all professional men who handle money belonging to clients to take all possible steps to ensure that there can be no danger of such moneys becoming confused with their own. This object is best attained by the maintenance of one or more special banking accounts to be used exclusively for clients' money. Although such a system is strongly to be recommended it is not obligatory, except in the case of solicitors.

Section I of the Solicitors Act, 1933 provides that the Council of the Law Society shall make rules as to the keeping by solicitors of banking accounts for clients' moneys and Section 18 (1) Solicitors Act, 1941 contains similar provisions regarding rules for banking accounts to be kept by a solicitor for trusts of which he is a sole trustee or where he is co-trustee only with a partner, clerk or servant of his. (In such circumstances the solicitor is termed a solicitor-trustee.)

The Council is empowered to take such action as may be necessary to enable them to ascertain whether or not the rules are being complied with. If a solicitor fails to comply with any of the rules, any person may make a complaint in respect of that failure to the disciplinary committee. In the case of a solicitor employed as a public officer, the above provisions as to keeping accounts do not apply so far as regards moneys received, held or paid by him in the course of his employment as such public officer.

The rules now in operation are the Solicitors' Accounts Rules, 1945, as amended by the Solicitors' Accounts (Amendment) Rules, 1959, and the Solicitors' Trust Accounts Rules, 1945, which have operated since 1st January, 1945.

The following is a synopsis of the rules referred to:

- (1) Every solicitor who holds or receives clients' money or money subject to a trust of which he is solicitor-trustee, must keep a separate banking account for clients' money, or as many such accounts as he thinks fit, and a separate account for each trust of which he is solicitor-trustee.
- (2) There may be *paid into* a client account (i.e., a current or deposit account at a bank in the name of the solicitor in the title of which the word 'client' appears):

- (a) trust money;
 - (b) the solicitor's own money, as may be necessary to open or maintain the account;
 - (c) money to replace any sum which may by mistake or accident have been drawn from the account in contravention of the rules; and
 - (d) a cheque or draft received by the solicitor, which under the rules he is entitled to split, but which he does not split.
- (3) Where a solicitor holds or receives a cheque or draft which includes client's money or trust money, he may split such cheque or draft, dealing with each part as if he had received a separate cheque or draft for that part. If he does not split the cheque or draft he must pay it into a client account, as stated in (2) (d) above.
- (4) There may be *drawn from* a client account:
- (a) in the case of client's money:
 - (i) money properly required for a payment to or on behalf of the client;
 - (ii) money properly required for or towards payment of a debt due to the solicitor from the client or in reimbursement of money expended by the solicitor on behalf of the client;
 - (iii) money drawn on the client's authority; and
 - (iv) money properly required for or towards payment of the solicitor's costs *where a bill of costs or other written intimation of the amount thereof has been delivered to the client, and the client has been notified that money held for him will be applied towards or in satisfaction of such costs;*
 - (b) In the case of trust money:
 - (a) money properly required for a payment in the execution of the particular trust; and
 - (b) money to be transferred to a separate bank account kept solely for the particular trust.
- (5) No amount shall be withdrawn from a client account which exceeds the amount held on account of the client or trust on whose behalf the cheque is drawn.
- (6) It is not necessary for a solicitor to pay in to a client account coin or bank notes received from or on behalf of a client or trust which he pays out again without delay, in the ordinary course of business, to a third party, or cheques which he endorses over to the client or to a third party on his behalf, or in the execution of the relevant trust, or which he pays into a separate banking account in the name of the client or of some person named by the client.
- (7) A solicitor shall *not* pay into a client account client's money held or received by him:
- (a) which the client for his own convenience requests the solicitor to withhold from such account; or
 - (b) which is received by him for payment of a debt due to the solicitor from the client or in reimbursement of money expended by the solicitor on behalf of the client; or
 - (c) which is paid to him expressly on account of costs incurred in respect of which a bill of costs has been delivered, or as an agreed fee for business undertaken or to be undertaken.
- (8) Every solicitor must keep properly written up such books of account as may be necessary:
- (a) to show all dealings with:
 - (i) clients' money held, received or paid by him; and
 - (ii) any other money dealt with by him through a client account; and
 - (b) to distinguish such money held, received or paid by him on account of each separate client, and to distinguish such money from other money held, received or paid by him on any other account.

(9) (a) All dealings referred to above shall be recorded in:

(i) a clients' cash-book, or a clients' column on the credit side or debit side (as may be appropriate) of a cash-book, and

(ii) a clients' ledger, or a clients' column on the credit side or debit side (as may be appropriate) of a ledger,

and no other dealings shall be recorded in such clients' cash-book and ledger, or, as the case may be, in such clients' columns, and

(b) all dealings of the solicitor relating to his practice as a solicitor other than those above referred to shall (subject to compliance with the Solicitors' Trust Accounts Rules) be recorded (as may be appropriate) in such (if any) other cash-book and ledger or such (if any) other columns of a cash-book and ledger as the solicitor may choose to maintain.

(c) In addition to the books and accounts above referred to, every solicitor shall keep a record of all bills of costs (distinguishing between profit costs and disbursements) and of all written intimations under paragraph (4) (a) (iv) above delivered by the solicitor to his clients, which record shall be contained in a bills delivered book or a file of copies of such bills and intimations.

(d) The books required may be in loose leaf or card form and must be preserved by the solicitor for at least six years from the date of the last entry therein.

(10) The council of the Law Society may require any solicitor to produce his books of account, bank statements, vouchers, etc., for the inspection of any person appointed by the council with a view to such person making a report to the council on the results of such inspection.

Every solicitor in practice must deliver to the Law Society every year a certificate, signed by a qualified accountant, stating that the rules have been complied with. The issue to the solicitor of his practising certificate for the ensuing year is dependent upon the delivery of this accountant's certificate.

Columns for client's money and office money should be provided, not only in the cash book but also in each personal account in the client's ledger. The following entries should be made:

(1) On receipt of money from or on behalf of a client (other than money referred to in paragraph (7) above) debit 'client' column in cash book and credit 'client' column in personal account.

(2) On payment of money to or on behalf of a client for whom at least an equivalent amount of money is held, credit 'client' column in cash book and debit 'client' column in personal account.

(3) If money is paid away to or on behalf of a client in excess of the amount standing to his credit in a 'client' account, credit 'office' column in cash book and debit 'office' column in personal account.

(4) When a bill of costs is rendered to a client, debit 'office' column in personal account and credit Costs Account in impersonal ledger. (This would be done in total from the costs book.)

(5) When a transfer of cash is made from a client bank account to office bank account in payment of a bill of costs rendered to a client or other amount due to the solicitor by the client, debit 'office' column and credit 'client' column in cash book.

If the solicitor's transactions are recorded in the above manner, the balance on the client bank account at any time should be equal to the total of the balances of the 'client' columns in the personal accounts in the client's ledger. At no time can there be a *debit* balance on the 'client' columns in a personal account, since no amount must be paid to or on behalf of a client in excess of the amount standing to his credit in the client bank account.

Illustration

A B & Co. keep all moneys of clients in a separate banking account used exclusively for the purpose. At the end of each month they make any necessary transfer from 'client account' to 'office account.'

On 1st July, the balance at bank on 'Office Account' was £750, and the balance at bank on 'Client Account' was £1,055, made up of the following credit balances, viz.:

| | £ | s. | d. |
|----------------------|--------|----|----|
| D & Co. | 50 | 0 | 0 |
| X Trust | 115 | 0 | 0 |
| Z & Co. | 350 | 0 | 0 |
| J & Co., Ltd. | 540 | 0 | 0 |
| | <hr/> | | |
| | £1,055 | 0 | 0 |
| | <hr/> | | |

The receipts and payments for the month of July were as follows, all receipts being banked at once:

- July 2 Received from C & Co., clients, £105 for costs as rendered.
 „ 9 Paid £5 10s. for insurance premium for D & Co.
 „ 9 Paid £9 for repairs to premises rented by E & Co. under X Trust.
 „ 15 Paid £9 for advertisements *re* J & Co. Ltd.
 „ 15 Authorised to draw £35 on account of costs *re* X trust.
 „ 15 Authorised to draw £120 on account of costs *re* J. & Co. Ltd.
 „ 16 Received from E & Co., £44 15s. rent under X Trust.
 „ 17 Cashed cheque for £10 for K from petty cash.
 „ 18 Received from F. & Co., £100 in advance on account of professional services to be rendered.
 „ 18 At the request of G. & Co., paid £1 registration fees.
 „ 19 Received £99 debt collected for H & Co.
 „ 20 Paid H & Co. £84, being amount recovered, less costs as agreed.
 „ 21 Received £45 from T & Co., being debt due to J & Co. Ltd.
 „ 23 Received from D & Co. cheque for £34. 5. 0. being balance of costs as rendered (£78 15s.), plus out-of-pockets.
 „ 31 Agreed costs with F & Co., at £120 and received their cheque for balance, of £20.
 „ 31 Paid salaries, £240, and drew petty cash, £20.

You are required:

- To write up the Cash Book and the Clients' Ledger Accounts.
- To draw a cheque on 'Client Account' for the amount due to 'Office Account' on 31st July; and
- To bring down the balances in the Cash Book, showing the agreement of the 'Client Account' bank balance with the credit balances on the Clients' Ledger.

CASH BOOK

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | </ |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|----|
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|----|

CLIENTS LEDGER D & CO.

| | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. |
|------|----|------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------|----|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| July | 9 | To Cash Insurance Premium... | 5 10 0 | | July | 1 | By Balance b/f ... | 50 0 0 |
| " | 23 | " Costs ... | | 78 15 0 | July | 23 | " Cash ... | 34 5 0 |
| " | 31 | " Office Account ... | 44 10 0 | | " | 31 | " Client account | 44 10 0 |
| | | | <u>£50 0 0</u> | <u>£78 15 0</u> | | | | <u>£50 0 0</u> <u>£78 15 0</u> |

X TRUST

| | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. |
|------|----|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------|----|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| July | 9 | To Cash - Repairs to premises rented by E & Co. ... | 9 0 0 | | July | 1 | By Balance b/f. | 115 0 0 |
| " | 15 | " Costs ... | | 35 0 0 | " | 16 | " Cash - Rent from E & Co. ... | 44 15 0 |
| " | 31 | " Office account ... | 35 0 0 | | " | 16 | " Client account | 35 0 0 |
| | | " Balance c/d. | 115 15 0 | | | | | |
| | | | <u>£159 15 0</u> | <u>£35 0 0</u> | | | | <u>£159 15 0</u> <u>£35 0 0</u> |
| | | | | | Aug | 1 | By Balance b/d. | 115 15 0 |

Z & CO.

| | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. |
|------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--|-------------------|-------------------|
| July | 1 | | By Balance b/f. | | 350 0 0 | |

J & CO. LTD.

| | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. |
|------|----|------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------|----|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| July | 15 | To Cash - Advertisements ... | 9 0 0 | | July | 1 | By Balance b/f | 540 0 0 |
| " | | " Costs ... | | 120 0 0 | " | 21 | " Cash - Debt collected from J & Co | 45 0 0 |
| " | 31 | " Office account ... | 120 0 0 | | " | 31 | " Client account | 120 0 0 |
| | | " Balance c/d. | 456 0 0 | | | | | |
| | | | <u>£585 0 0</u> | <u>£120 0 0</u> | | | | <u>£585 0 0</u> <u>£120 0 0</u> |
| | | | | | Aug | 1 | By Balance b/d. | 456 0 0 |

C & CO. LTD.

| | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. |
|------|---|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|------|---|-------------------|-------------------|
| July | 1 | To Balance b/d | | 105 0 0 | July | 1 | By Cash | 105 0 0 |

F & CO. LTD

| | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. | | | Client £ s. d. | Office £ s. d. |
|------|----|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------|----|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| July | 31 | To Costs | | 120 0 0 | July | 18 | By Cash on Account of future services | 100 0 0 |
| " | | " Office account | 100 0 0 | | " | 31 | " Client account | 100 0 0 |
| | | | | | " | | " Cash | 20 0 0 |
| | | | <u>£100 0 0</u> | <u>£120 0 0</u> | | | | <u>£100 0 0</u> <u>£120 0 0</u> |

G & CO.

| | | | |
|------|----|---------------------------------|-------|
| July | 19 | To Cash - Registration Fees ... | 1 0 0 |
|------|----|---------------------------------|-------|

H. & CO.

| | | | Client | | | Office | | | | | | Client | | | Office | | |
|------|----|------------------|----------------|----|----|----------------|----|----|------|----|--------------------------|----------------|----|----|----------------|----|----|
| | | | £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. | | | | £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. |
| July | 20 | To Costs | | | | 15 | 0 | 0 | July | 19 | By Cash - debt collected | | | | | | |
| | | " Cash | 84 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | " Client account | | | | 15 | 0 | 0 |
| | 31 | " Office account | 15 | 0 | 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | <u>£99 0 0</u> | | | <u>£15 0 0</u> | | | | | | <u>£99 0 0</u> | | | <u>£15 0 0</u> | | |

Agreement: Balances on Clients' Accounts:

| | £ | s. | d. |
|--------------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| X Trust | 115 | 15 | 0 |
| Z & Co. | 350 | 0 | 0 |
| J & Co. Ltd. | 456 | 0 | 0 |
| | <u>£921</u> | <u>15</u> | <u>0</u> |

Dr. Balance, G & Co. out of pockets £1 0 0

Amount transferred:

| | £ | s. | d. |
|------------------------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| Advance Costs, F & Co. | 100 | 0 | 0 |
| " " D & Co. | 44 | 10 | 0 |
| Costs, H & Co. | 15 | 0 | 0 |
| " X Trust | 35 | 0 | 0 |
| " J & Co. Ltd. | 120 | 0 | 0 |
| | <u>£314</u> | <u>10</u> | <u>0</u> |

Note. The out-of-pocket expenses for G & Co. must not be taken to reduce the credit balance held on behalf of clients, no money having been received from that firm.

(b) Treatment of Disbursements on behalf of Clients

Disbursements made on behalf of clients may be charged direct to the accounts of the clients concerned or debited to a Clients' Disbursements Account, pending the issue of a bill of costs. Whichever method is adopted, the costs or fees rendered book should record the following details in columnar form:

- (i) Fees chargeable.
- (ii) Disbursements on behalf of clients.
- (iii) Total.

If the first method of treating disbursements is adopted, the Client's Account will have been debited already with (ii), and will now be debited with (i) only. The total of column (i) will be credited to Fees Account, column (ii) being regarded as memoranda.

When the second method is adopted, both columns (i) and (ii) will be debited to the Client's Account. The total of column (ii) will be credited to Clients' Disbursements Account, the balance on which account should now represent debtors for disbursements not yet charged up. At the end of each accounting period the balance on Clients' Disbursements Account should be analysed to ensure that no irrecoverable items are included therein.

It is sometimes the practice to credit the gross amount of the accounts rendered to clients to the Fees Account. In these circumstances the disbursements made on behalf of clients must be debited to the Fees Account in order that the fees earned may be ascertained. When this system is adopted, the Fees Account must be credited with the amount of disbursements not yet charged up, this amount being carried down to the debit of the succeeding period. The Fees Account would appear as under:

FEES ACCOUNT

| | | | | £ | | | | | £ |
|----------|----|----------------------------------------------|-----|---------------|----------|-------------------------------------------|-----|--|---------------|
| Jan | 1 | To Disbursements on behalf of clients b/f. | ... | 362 | Jan/Dec. | By Bills Rendered | ... | | 7,896 |
| Jan/Dec. | | .. Disbursements during year | | 1,342 | Dec. 31 | .. Disbursements not yet charged out c/d. | yet | | 192 |
| Dec. | 31 | .. Profit and Loss Account: fees transferred | ... | 6,384 | | | | | |
| | | | | <u>£8 088</u> | | | | | <u>£8,088</u> |
| Jan. | 1 | To Balance b/d. | ... | 192 | | | | | |

Alternatively, the disbursements may be charged to Profit and Loss Account, the latter account being credited with the gross amount of the accounts rendered to clients. By this method, however, the credit to Profit and Loss Account may appear to be unduly large when exceptional sums have been disbursed for clients, and thus render difficult a clear appreciation of the business done by the firm.

(c) Outstanding Fees at the Balance Sheet Date

At the end of each accounting period, there will usually be a certain amount of uncompleted work in hand for which accounts have not been rendered to clients.

Before arriving at the profit or loss for the period under review, the value of this outstanding work should be taken into account, as the period in which work has been done should get the benefit of the proportionate part of the fee or at least receive credit for the cost of the work performed. It is unwise, however, to debit the clients' accounts until bills have been actually rendered, as this may very easily lead to confusion and difficulties.

The value placed upon the uncompleted work should be debited to Work in Progress Account and credited as such to the Income and Expenditure Account or to the Fees Account. In estimating the value of outstanding work, full allowance should be made for contingencies and possible reductions in accounts, and only a very conservative valuation taken into consideration.

If a special account for work in progress is not opened the amount thereof will be carried down as a debit balance on the Fees Account. The item will be shown in the Balance Sheet as an asset, under the heading of 'Uncompleted Work', or 'Work in Progress', any cash received on account thereof being shown as a deduction.

Illustration

F. Adams started in practice as a professional accountant on the 1st July. He decides to prepare accounts half-yearly, on the 30th June and 31st December, in each year.

The net fees for the first two half-years ended 31st December, and 30th June, amounted to £487 and £621 respectively, and the uncompleted work was estimated at 31st December, to be worth £126, and at 30th June, £233.

Show the Fees Account for the two periods, bringing down as a debit balance on the account the amount of uncompleted work at the end of each period.

FEES ACCOUNT

| | | | | | | |
|------|----|----------------------------|-------------|---------|---------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Dec. | 31 | To Profit and Loss Account | £ 613 | Dec. 31 | By Sundries | £ 487 |
| | | | | " | " Balance for uncompleted work c/d. | 126 |
| | | | <u>£613</u> | | | <u>£613</u> |
| Jan. | 1 | To Balance b/d. | 126 | June 30 | By Sundries | 621 |
| June | 30 | " Profit and Loss Account | 728 | " | " Balance for uncompleted work c/d. | 233 |
| | | | <u>£854</u> | | | <u>£854</u> |
| July | 1 | To Balance b/d. | 233 | | | |

(d) The ascertainment of profit on a cash basis

In some instances, professional men prefer to prepare their accounts on a *cash receipts basis*, i.e., to ignore fees earned but not yet received in cash, whether an account has been rendered therefor or not. This is the normal accounting practice of barristers owing to their inability to sue for their fees. In the case of professional firms, however, it is essential that accounts be prepared first on a normal basis in order that the true results of the year's working shall be known, adjustments being made subsequently to provide against fees not yet received in cash.

A Profit and Loss Account or Income and Expenditure Account will therefore be prepared in the usual manner, and the balance shown thereby transferred to a Receipts and Expenditure Account through which the necessary adjustments will be made.

In the latter account a reserve will be made of a sum equal to the whole amount of the debtors for fees (debtors for disbursements must not be included in this provision as the intention is not to regard the debtors as bad, but merely to ignore all fees until received in cash). A further reserve will be created in respect of the value placed upon uncompleted work, or work in progress. By debiting these two reserves to the Receipts and Expenditure Account the income included in the Income and Expenditure Account which has not yet been received in cash is deleted. The reserve created at the close of the preceding year will be credited to the Receipts and Expenditure Account. Alternatively, only the net increase or decrease required in the reserve, calculated by reference to the increase or decrease in debtors and uncompleted work during the year, may be adjusted through the account.

Illustration

A, B and C are in partnership, as solicitors, sharing profits as 3 : 2 : 1. The following Trial Balance is extracted from their books at 31st December, 19.... Prepare accounts for the year ended 31st December, 19..., together with Balance Sheet as at the latter date. The uncompleted work at 31st December, 19..., was valued at £1,539. Debts amounting to £356 are to be written off as bad.

Profits are to be divided between the partners on a cash basis, each partner being entitled to interest at 5 per cent. per annum on his capital.

TRIAL BALANCE, 31st DECEMBER, 19 .

| | £ | £ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Capital Accounts: | | |
| A | | 3,000 |
| B | | 4,000 |
| C | | 2,000 |
| Current Accounts - Drawings: | | |
| A | 1,560 | |
| B | 1,420 | |
| C | 650 | |
| Disbursements on behalf of clients (Balance not yet charged to clients.) | 1,329 | |
| Salaries | 1,852 | |
| Rent and Rates | 850 | |
| Printing and Stationery | 356 | |
| Postages, Telephones, etc. | 184 | |
| Costs charged to clients | | 9,483 |
| Work in Progress, 1st January 19 .. | 1,296 | |
| Work in Progress Provision, 1st January 19 | | 1,296 |
| Clients for moneys held on their behalf .. | | 2,000 |
| Sundry Creditors | | 492 |
| Debtors Provision, 1st January 19 .. | | 3,567 |
| Debtors (include £1,400 for disbursements) | 5,926 | |
| Sundry Office Expenses | 1,232 | |
| Furniture, Fittings and Library .. | 2,800 | |
| Cash at Bank: | | |
| Clients' Account | 2,000 | |
| Own Account | 4,283 | |
| | 6,283 | |
| Petty Cash | 100 | |
| | <u>£25,838</u> | <u>£25,838</u> |

INCOME AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNT

YEAR ENDED 31st DECEMBER, 19

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------|----------------|
| To Work in Progress, 1st January 19 .. | 1,296 | By Costs charged to clients .. | 9,483 |
| .. Rent and Rates | 850 | .. Work in Progress 31st December 19 | 1,539 |
| .. Salaries | 1,852 | | |
| .. Printing and Stationery | 356 | | |
| .. Postages, Telephones, etc. .. | 184 | | |
| .. Sundry Office Expenses | 1,232 | | |
| .. Bad Debts | 356 | | |
| .. Balance, being excess of income over expenditure for the year, c/d. .. | 4,896 | | |
| | <u>£11,022</u> | | <u>£11,022</u> |

RECEIPTS AND EXPENDITURE ACCOUNT

YEAR ENDED 31st DECEMBER, 19

| | £ | | £ |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| To Work in Progress Reserve - 31st Dec., 19 | 1,539 | By Balance from Income and Expenditure Account | 4,896 |
| .. Debtors Reserve - 31st December, 19 .. | 4,170 | .. Work in Progress Reserve 1st Jan- uary, 19 | 1,296 |
| .. Balance, being 'cash' profit c/d. .. | 4,050 | .. Debtors Reserve - 1st January, 19 .. | 3,567 |
| | <u>£9,759</u> | | <u>£9,759</u> |
| To Interest on Capital: | | By Balance b/d. | 4,050 |
| A | £150 | | |
| B | 200 | | |
| C | 100 | | |
| | 450 | | |
| .. Balance | | | |
| A one-half | £1,800 | | |
| B one-third | 1,200 | | |
| C one-sixth | 600 | | |
| | 3,600 | | |
| | <u>£4,050</u> | | <u>£4,050</u> |

A, B AND C.
BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER, 19..

| | £ | | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------|-------|---------|---|----------------------------------------|---------|
| Capital Accounts: | | | | Furniture, Fittings and Library | 2,800 |
| A | 3,000 | | | Sundry Debtors for Fees ... | 4,170 |
| B | 4,000 | | | <i>Less Debtors Reserve</i> | 4,170 |
| C | 2,000 | | | | — |
| | | 9,000 | | | |
| Current Accounts. | | | | Debtors for Disbursements | 2,729 |
| A—Interest on Capital | 150 | | | Work in Progress | 1,539 |
| Share of Profit | 1,800 | | | <i>Less Work in Progress Reserve</i> | 1,539 |
| | | | | | — |
| Less Drawings .. | 1,950 | | | Cash at Bank: | |
| | 1,560 | 390 | | Own Account | 4,293 |
| B—Interest on Capital | 200 | | | Clients' Account | 2,000 |
| Share of Profit | 1,200 | | | | 6,283 |
| | | | | Petty Cash in hand .. | 100 |
| Less Drawings .. | 1,400 | | | Current Account B—per contra | 20 |
| | 1,420 | | | | |
| Balance to contra | £20 | | | | |
| C—Interest on Capital | 100 | | | | |
| Share of Profit | 600 | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Less Drawings | 700 | | | | |
| | 650 | 50 | | | |
| Sundry Creditors: | | | | | |
| General | 492 | | | | |
| Clients for monies held on | | | | | |
| their behalf | 2,000 | 2,492 | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | £11,932 | | | £11,932 |

§ 14. Insurance Companies' Accounts

A contract of insurance is one under which, in consideration of one or more payments, called "premiums" made by the insured person to the insurer (usually a company or a Lloyd's underwriter) the insurer undertakes to pay to the insured a determinable sum of money on the happening of a specified event. This event may be one which is certain to happen (*e.g.*, the death of a person or the expiration of a specified number of years), or one which is not bound to occur, but which, if it does, will result in a loss or liability being suffered by the insured. The former type of insurance is frequently termed "assurance"; the latter is a contract of indemnity, *i.e.*, one under which the insured is indemnified against loss should the specified event occur. In practice the terms "insurance" and "assurance" are often used indiscriminately to designate both types of contract.

Insurance companies may be either "proprietary" or "mutual" companies. A proprietary company is one which has a share capital, and whose profits are applied, at least in part, in the payment of dividends to its shareholders. A mutual company has no share capital and its profits belong wholly to the policyholders. In its early days it probably has to be financed by loans. Until an adequate insurance fund has been built up part of the liability under policies will be re-insured with other companies.

In relation to fire insurance, certain companies are members of the Tariff Association which fixes the rates of premium for different types of risk and a general minimum rate below which members of the association agree not to accept business. Such companies are known as tariff offices; companies which are not members of the association are known as non-tariff offices.

Under Section 4 of the Insurance Companies Act, 1958, every insurance company to which the Act applies shall, at the expiration of each financial year, prepare in the

prescribed form, a revenue account, a balance sheet, and, except where only one class of business is carried on, a profit and loss account. The Act applies to companies carrying on the following classes of business: life assurance, industrial assurance, fire insurance, accident insurance, bond investment, motor vehicle insurance and marine, aviation and transit insurance business.

'Industrial insurance business' is that under which policies are issued for small sums (e.g., to cover funeral expenses), and on which the premiums are usually paid by weekly instalments. Such policies may be taken out by parents on the lives of their children, and the sums assured are limited by the Industrial Assurance Act, 1923.

'Bond investment business' is defined in the Insurance Companies Act, 1958, as the business of issuing bonds or endowment certificates by which the company, in return for subscriptions payable at periodic intervals of less than six months, contracts to pay the bond holder a sum at some future date, not being life assurance business, industrial assurance business, or sinking fund or capital redemption insurance business.

'Employers liability insurance business' means the issue of or the undertaking of liability under policies insuring employers against liability to pay compensation or damages to workmen in their employment, but does not include any business carried on as incidental only to marine, aviation and transit insurance business.

The titles of the remaining classes of insurance are self-explanatory.

The following are the forms of Account prescribed:

FORM APPLICABLE TO LIFE ASSURANCE BUSINESS

REVENUE ACCOUNT OF THE

FOR THE YEAR ENDED

19

IN RESPECT OF LIFE ASSURANCE BUSINESS.

| | Business within the United Kingdom | Business out of the United Kingdom | Total | | Business within the United Kingdom | Business out of the United Kingdom | Total |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------|
| | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. |
| Amount of Life Assurance Fund at the beginning of the year | | | | Claims under Policies paid and outstanding :- | | | |
| Premiums | | | | By Death | | | |
| Consideration for Annuities granted | | | | By Maturity | | | |
| | | | | Surrenders, including Surrenders of Bonuses | | | |
| Interest, Dividends and Rents | | | | Annuities | | | |
| Less Income Tax thereon | | | | Bonuses in Cash | | | |
| | | | | Bonuses in Reduction of Premiums | | | |
| Other Receipts (accounts to be specified) | | | | Commission | | | |
| | | | | Expenses of Management | | | |
| | | | | Other payments (accounts to be specified) | | | |
| | | | | Amount of Life Assurance Fund at end of the Year, as per Third Schedule | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |

NOTE 1.—Companies having separate accounts for Annuities to return the particulars of their Annuity business in a separate statement.

NOTE 2.—Companies having both Ordinary and Industrial branches to return the particulars of the business in each department separately.

NOTE 3.—Items in this Account to be net amounts after deduction of the amounts paid and received in respect of re-assurances of the Companies' risks.

NOTE 4.—If any sum has been deducted from the Expenses of Management Account, and taken credit for in the Balance Sheet as an asset, the sum so deducted to be separately shown in the above Account.

NOTE 5.—Particulars of the new Life Assurances effected during the year of account to be appended to the above Account, showing separately, as respects business within and business out of the United Kingdom, the number of Policies, the total sums assured, the amount received by way of single premiums, and the amount of the yearly renewal premium income, the items to be net amounts after deduction of the amounts paid and received in respect of re-assurances of the Company's risks. The particulars as to yearly renewal premium income need not be furnished in respect of Industrial business.

NOTE 6.—The columns headed 'Business out of the United Kingdom' in the case of Companies having their Head Office in the United Kingdom, apply only to business secured through Branch Offices or Agencies out of the United Kingdom.

FORM APPLICABLE TO FIRE INSURANCE BUSINESS.

| REVENUE ACCOUNT OF THE | | FOR THE YEAR ENDED | | 19 | , |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---|
| | | IN RESPECT OF FIRE INSURANCE BUSINESS. | | | |
| | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | | £ s. d. | |
| Amount of Fire Insurance Fund at the beginning of the year: | | | Claims under Policies and outstanding | | |
| Reserves for Unexpired risks | | | Commission | | |
| Additional Reserve (if any) | | | Expenses of Management | | |
| | | | Contributions to Fire Brigades | | |
| Premiums | | | Other Payments (accounts to be specified) | | |
| Interest, Dividends, and Rents | £ s. d. | | Amount of Fire Insurance Fund at the end of the year as per Third Schedule: | | |
| Less Income Tax thereon | | | Reserve for Unexpired risks being per cent. of | | |
| Other Receipts (accounts to be specified) | | | Additional Reserve (if any) | | |
| | | | | | |
| | £ | | | £ | |

NOTE 1.—Items in this Account to be the net amounts after deduction of the amounts paid and received in respect of re-insurances of the Company's risks.

NOTE 2.—If any sum has been deducted from the Expenses of Management Account, and taken credit for in the Balance Sheet as an asset, the sum so deducted to be separately shown in the above Account.

FORM APPLICABLE TO ACCIDENT INSURANCE BUSINESS.

| REVENUE ACCOUNT OF THE | | FOR THE YEAR ENDED | | 19 | , |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---|
| | | IN RESPECT OF ACCIDENT INSURANCE BUSINESS | | | |
| | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | | £ s. d. | |
| Amount of Accident Insurance Fund at the beginning of the year: | | | Payment under Policies, including medical and legal expenses in connection therewith | | |
| Reserve for Unexpired Risks | | | Commission | | |
| Total estimated liability in respect of outstanding claims | | | Expenses of Management | | |
| Additional Reserve (if any) | | | Other Payments (accounts to be specified) | | |
| | | | Amount of Accident Insurance Fund at the end of the year as per Third Schedule: | | |
| Premiums | | | Reserve for Unexpired Risks being per cent. of | | |
| Interest, Dividends and Rents | £ s. d. | | Premium Income for the year | | |
| Less Income Tax thereon | | | Total estimated liability in respect of outstanding claims as per Fourth Schedule (C) | | |
| Other Receipts (accounts to be specified) | | | Additional Reserve (if any) | | |
| | | | | | |
| | £ | | | £ | |

NOTE 1.—Items in this Account to be the net amounts after deduction of the amounts paid and received in respect of re-insurances of the Company's risks.

NOTE 2.—If any sum has been deducted from the Expenses of Management Account, and taken credit for in the Balance Sheet as an asset, the sum so deducted to be separately shown in the above Account.

FORM APPLICABLE TO EMPLOYERS' LIABILITY INSURANCE BUSINESS.

REVENUE ACCOUNT OF THE FOR THE YEAR ENDED 19
IN RESPECT OF EMPLOYERS' LIABILITY INSURANCE BUSINESS TRANSACTED WITHIN THE UNITED KINGDOM

| £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|---------|----|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|
| Amount of Employer's Liability Insurance Fund at the beginning of the year: | | | | | | Payment under Policies, including medical and legal expenses in connection therewith ... | | |
| Reserve for Unexpired risks ... | | | | | | Commission ... | | |
| Total Estimated Liability in respect of Outstanding Claims ... | | | | | | Expenses of Management ... | | |
| Additional Reserve (if any) ... | | | | | | Other Payments (accounts to be specified) ... | | |
| Premiums ... | | | | | | Amount of Employers' Liability Insurance Fund at the end of the year, as per Third Schedule: | | |
| Interest, Dividends, and Rents | | | £ s. d. | | | Reserve for Unexpired Risks, being per cent. of Premium Income for the year | | |
| Less Income Tax thereon | | | | | | Total Estimated Liability in respect of Outstanding Claims, as per Fourth Schedule (D) | | |
| Other Receipts (accounts to be specified) | | | | | | Additional Reserve (if any) | | |
| £ | | | | | | £ | | |

NOTE 1.—Items in this Account to be the net amounts after deduction of the amounts paid and received in respect of re-insurances of the Company's risks.

NOTE 2.—If any sum has been deducted from the Expenses of Management Account, and taken credit for in the Balance Sheet as an asset, the sum so deducted to be separately shown in the above Account.

FORM APPLICABLE TO BOND INVESTMENT BUSINESS

REVENUE ACCOUNT OF THE FOR THE YEAR ENDED 19
IN RESPECT OF BOND INVESTMENT AND ENDOWMENT CERTIFICATE BUSINESS

| £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|---------|----|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|
| Amount of Bond Investment and Endowment Certificate Fund at the beginning of the year: | | | | | | Claims under Bonds and Certificates, paid and outstanding | | |
| Additional Reserve (if any) ... | | | | | | Commission ... | | |
| Premiums ... | | | | | | Expenses of Management ... | | |
| Interest, Dividends, and Rents | | | £ s. d. | | | Other Payments (accounts to be specified) | | |
| Less Income Tax thereon | | | | | | Amount of Bond Investment and Endowment Certificate Fund at the end of the year as per Third Schedule | | |
| Other Receipts (accounts to be specified) | | | | | | Additional Reserves (if any) | | |
| £ | | | | | | £ | | |

NOTE 1.—Items in this Account to be the net amounts after deduction of the amounts paid and received in respect of re-insurances of the Company's risks.

NOTE 2.—If any sum has been deducted from the Expenses of Management Account, and taken credit for in the Balance Sheet as an asset, the sum so deducted to be separately shown in the above Account.

FORM APPLICABLE TO MOTOR VEHICLE INSURANCE BUSINESS

REVENUE ACCOUNT OF THE FOR THE YEAR ENDING 19
IN RESPECT OF MOTOR VEHICLE INSURANCE BUSINESS

| £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. | £ | s. | d. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|---------|----|----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|----|
| Amount of motor vehicle insurance fund at the beginning of the year: | | | | | | Claims under policies paid and outstanding | | |
| Reserve for unexpired risks .. | | | | | | Commission .. | | |
| Additional reserve (if any) .. | | | | | | Expenses of management .. | | |
| Premiums .. | | | | | | Other payments (accounts to be specified) | | |
| Interest, dividends, and rents | | | £ s. d. | | | Amount of motor vehicle insurance fund at the end of the year as per Third Schedule: | | |
| Less income tax thereon .. | | | | | | Reserve for unexpired risks being per cent. of premium income for the year | | |
| Other receipts (accounts to be specified) | | | | | | Additional reserve (if any) | | |
| £ | | | | | | £ | | |

NOTE 1.—Items in this Account to be the net amounts after deduction of the amounts paid and received in respect of re-insurances of the Company's risks.

NOTE 2.—If any sum has been deducted from the Expenses of management account, and taken credit for in the Balance Sheet as an asset, the sum so deducted to be separately shown in the above Account.

REVENUE ACCOUNT of _____, 19____, in respect of MARINE, AVIATION AND TRANSIT
INSURANCE BUSINESS
(being an account of income and expenditure in that year in respect of business arising (a) in that year, (b) in the last preceding year, and (c) in previous years).

| | (a) | (b) | (c) | Total. | | (a) | (b) | (c) | Total. |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------|---------|
| | Current Year. | Last Pre- ceding Year. | Pre- vious Years | | | Current Year. | Last Pre- ceding Year. | Pre- vious Years. | |
| | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. | £ s. d. |
| Amount of Marine, Aviation and Transit insurance fund at begin- ning of the year | | | | | Claims paid (less Salvages, Re- funds and Re-insurance Re- coveries) (i): | | | | |
| Premiums (less Brokerage, Dis- count, Commission, Returns and Re-insurances): | | | | | Risks other than Aviation Hull risks | | | | |
| Re-insurances): | | | | | Aviation Hull risks | | | | |
| Risks other than Aviation Hull risks | | | | | Expenses of Management (ii) | | | | |
| Aviation Hull risks | | | | | Other Expenditure (to be speci- fied) | | | | |
| Other income (to be specified) | | | | | Profit transferred to Profit and Loss Account | | | | |
| Loss transferred to Profit and Loss Account | | | | | Amount of Marine, Aviation and Transit insurance fund at end of year as shown in the Balance Sheet | | | | |

Notes: (i) This heading must include all expenses directly incurred in settling claims.

(ii) If any sum has been deducted from this item and entered on the assets side of the balance sheet, the amount so deducted must be shown separately in this account.

SECOND SCHEDULE

| PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT OF THE | | FOR THE YEAR ENDED | | 19 |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------------|---------|----|
| | £ s. d. | | £ s. d. | |
| Balance of last year's Account ... | £ s. d. | Dividends and Bonuses to Shareholders ... | £ s. d. | |
| Interest and Dividends not carried to other Accounts ... | £ s. d. | Expenses not charged to other Accounts ... | £ s. d. | |
| Less Income Tax thereon ... | £ s. d. | Loss realised (accounts to be specified) ... | £ s. d. | |
| | | Other payments (accounts to be specified) ... | £ s. d. | |
| Profit realised (accounts to be specified) ... | £ s. d. | Balance as per Third Schedule ... | £ s. d. | |
| Other Receipts (accounts to be specified) ... | £ s. d. | | | |
| | £ | | £ | |

THIRD SCHEDULE

| BALANCE SHEET OF THE | | ON THE | | 19 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|----|
| LIABILITIES. | £ s. d. | ASSETS. | £ s. d. | |
| Shareholders' Capital paid up (if any) ... | £ | Mortgages on Property within the United Kingdom ... | £ s. d. | |
| Life Assurance Fund*: ... | | Do. do. out of the United Kingdom ... | | |
| Ordinary Branch ... | | Loans on Parochial and other Public Rates ... | | |
| Industrial do. ... | | Do. Life Interests ... | | |
| Annuity Fund* ... | | Do. Reversions ... | | |
| Fire Insurance Fund ... | | Do. Stocks and Shares ... | | |
| Accident Insurance Fund ... | | Do. Company's Policies within their Surrender values ... | | |
| Employer's Liability Insurance Fund ... | | Do. Personal Security ... | | |
| Bond Investment and Endowment Certificate Fund ... | | Investments: ... | | |
| Marine Insurance Fund ... | | Deposit with the High Court (Securities to be specified) ... | | |
| Sinking Fund and Capital Redemption Fund ... | | British Government Securities ... | | |
| Profit and Loss Account ... | | Municipal and County Securities, United Kingdom ... | | |
| Other Funds (if any) to be specified ... | £ | Indian and Colonial Government Securities ... | | |
| | | Do. Provincial Securities ... | | |
| Claims admitted or intimated but not paid† | | Do. Municipal do. ... | | |
| Life Assurance ... | | Foreign Government Securities ... | | |
| Fire Insurance ... | | Do. Provincial Securities ... | | |
| Bond Investment ... | | Do. Municipal do. ... | | |
| | | Railway and other Debentures and Debenture Stocks—Home and Foreign ... | | |
| Annuities due and unpaid† ... | | Railway and other Preference and Guaranteed Stocks ... | | |
| Other sums owing by the Company† (to be stated separately under each class of business) | | Do. Ordinary Stocks ... | | |
| | | Rent Charges ... | | |
| | | Freehold Ground Rents ... | | |
| | | Leasehold do. ... | | |
| | | House Property ... | | |
| | | Life Interests ... | | |
| | | Reversions ... | | |
| | | Agents' Balances ... | | |
| | | Outstanding Premiums† ... | | |
| | | Do. Interest, Dividends, and Rents† ... | | |
| | | Interest accrued but not payable† ... | | |
| | | Bills Receivable ... | | |
| | | Cash: ... | | |
| | | On Deposit ... | | |
| | | In Hand and on Current Account ... | | |
| | | Other Assets (to be specified) ... | | |
| | £ | | £ | |

*Life Companies having separate annuity fund to show amount thereof separately.

†These items are or have been included in the corresponding items in the First Schedule.

NOTE 1.—When part of the assets of the Company are specifically deposited, under local laws in various places out of the United Kingdom, as security to holders of Policies there issued, each such place and the amount compulsorily lodged therein must be specified in respect of each class of business, except that, in the case of Fire, Accident, or Employers' Liability Insurance Business, it shall be sufficient to state the fact that a part of the assets has been so deposited.

NOTE 2.—A Balance Sheet in the above Form must be rendered in respect of each separate Fund for which separate Investments are made.

NOTE 3.—The Balance Sheet must state how the values of the Stock Exchange securities are arrived at, and a Certificate must be appended, signed by the same persons as sign the Balance Sheet, to the effect that in their belief the assets set forth in the Balance Sheet are in the aggregate fully of the value stated therein, less any Investment Reserve Fund taken into account. In the case of a Company transacting Life Assurance business or Bond Investment business, this Certificate is to be given on the occasions only when a statement respecting valuation under the Fourth Schedule is made.

NOTE 4.—In the case of a Company required to keep separate funds under section 3 of this Act, a certificate must be appended signed by the same persons as signed the Balance Sheet, and by the Auditor, to the effect that no part of any such fund has been applied, directly or indirectly, for any purpose other than the class of business to which it is applicable.

The Act provides that the fund of any particular class of business shall be as absolutely the security of the policy holders of that class as though it belonged to a company carrying on no other business than insurance business of that class, and shall not be applied directly or indirectly for any purposes other than those of the class of business to which the fund is applicable.

Where, however, an insurance company carries on, together with other business, an insurance business of only one of the classes to which the Act applies, or carries on, with or without other business, insurance business of two or more of the said classes, the receipts of that class of business, or of each of those classes of business, as the case may be, must be entered in a separate account and must be carried to and form a separate insurance fund with an appropriate name.

LIFE ASSURANCE

From observation of groups of persons over long periods, statistics have been prepared showing the average expectation of life of members of each of such groups. With this knowledge, it is possible to calculate what sum of money must be invested in each year to accumulate at compound interest (*i.e.*, by investing each year's interest with that year's contribution to the fund), to any stated amount on the average date when a member of the group would die. The share of each member of the group in this annual sum can obviously be computed by simple division. If, therefore, the group were "assured" for a given amount to be paid to each member on the date of his death, and the contributions payable by each member were invested, year by year, at compound interest, the required sum would become available. Some members would die before the average date and contribute less than their share; others would outlive the average date and the excess contributions of the latter would compensate for the deficiency of the former. The amount payable by each individual for the insurance alone, without respect to expenses and profit, is known as "pure premium." To this there must be added a "loading" to cover (*a*) the expenses of running the business, including risks incidental thereto, and (*b*) profit.

When a person desires to insure his life, the insurers require him to complete a proposal form, showing details of his age, health, family history as regards age of death, serious ailments, etc., from which they can place him in his appropriate group and compute the premium payable for the sum for which he wishes to be assured. The insured person will pay this premium annually (or by instalments at more frequent intervals if so arranged), and on his death the company will pay the sum assured to his estate, on due proof of death and representation.

From what has been said, it should be clear that the company must retain as a fund, invested at compound interest, the pure premium portion of each payment, in order to accumulate the sums necessary to meet their ultimate liability. The "loading," however, can be used to meet expenses, pay dividends, create reserves, etc. It is also obvious that without an adequate number of assured persons in each group, the company will require considerable reserves to meet contingencies.

Where the insured person desires to share in profits, he can take out a "with profits" assurance policy, in which case a further slight increase is made in the premium for the right to participate in the profits of the business. The profits made by the company are then allocated partly to policy-holders and declared in the form of "bonuses," which are normally "reversionary bonuses," *i.e.*, amounts added to the sums assured, to be paid as an addition to the moneys payable on death. Most

companies allow such bonuses to be surrendered for a present cash payment of their present worth, *i.e.*, the sum which, invested at the date of surrender at compound interest, would produce the amount of the reversionary bonus on the date of expected death. The cash value of the bonus, can, in such cases, be applied in part payment of the premium instead of being drawn in cash.

Reversionary bonuses may be "simple," *i.e.*, always calculated on the original sum assured, or "compound," *i.e.*, calculated upon the sum assured, plus the aggregate of all previous bonuses.

When a person dies, or a policy matures between valuation dates, an 'interim bonus' is usually added for the period since the last valuation, at a rate fixed at or slightly lower than the rate declared at that valuation.

So far, only whole life assurance has been considered. A popular variation thereof is the endowment policy. A pure endowment policy is a simple investment, whereby the insured pays an annual premium for a fixed capital sum payable at the end of a stated period of years, the capital sum amounting to the total of his premiums, plus a small amount of interest. Here again, by paying an increased premium, he can share in profits. The most common type of endowment, however, combines a death benefit, the sum assured being payable at the end of the stated number of years or on earlier death. The premium is naturally higher to cover the risk of death.

Pure endowments are commonly in the form of sinking fund or leasehold redemption policies. Many variations of whole life and endowment policies are met with, but the fundamental principles in each case are the same.

It is not necessary, in a general work on Book-keeping and Accounts, to describe in detail the system of book-keeping adopted by life assurance companies. This follows ordinary double entry rules, the premiums received on policies and income from invested funds being the main income, against which are charged claims paid and expenses incurred. Most of the subsidiary records are in columnar form. It is only in the final accounts that any real difficulty arises, firstly because in the form of Revenue Account prescribed by the Insurance Companies Act, 1958, income is debited and expenditure credited (whereas in other forms of Income and Expenditure Account income is credited and expenditure debited), and secondly because profits must be computed actuarially.

It will be appreciated that as each assured person becomes older and pays more premiums, the amount that is necessary for the company to retain in the assurance fund to meet the liability to the assured correspondingly increases. The fund retained to meet the aggregate liability on all policies outstanding is termed the 'Life Assurance Fund,' and until the proper amount thereof and the liability on outstanding policies has been computed, the amount of profit cannot be ascertained.

Accordingly, Section 5 of the Insurance Companies Act, 1956, prescribes that every company which carries on life assurance business, industrial insurance business or bond investment business shall at least once in every five years cause an investigation to be made into its financial condition, including a valuation of its liabilities by

an actuary and shall cause an abstract of the actuary's report to be made on the prescribed form. Many companies make the valuation more frequently, some every year. At the quinquennial (or more frequent) valuation, actuaries prepare a consolidated revenue account (in form similar to the annual one), for the period since the last valuation, and compute what sum it would be necessary to invest at compound interest to accumulate the sums insured by their due dates, *i.e.*, the present worth of the sums assured (including reversionary bonuses). From this they deduct the present worth of the pure premiums still remaining to be paid by the assured persons. The balance is the minimum amount that the company should have invested on account of the fund if it is to remain solvent. The rate of interest to be taken into account in valuations is always a conservative estimate of the yield expected from the investment of the funds, and varies from time to time.

In the years between valuations, the excess of premiums and other income over claims and expenses is carried forward as an addition to the fund. Reference should here be made to the official form of Revenue Account reproduced on p. 552 from which it will be seen that the amount of the fund at the beginning of the period is the starting point of the account, and the amount of the fund at the end of the period the balance carried forward.

From this point onwards all explanations are made on the basis of a quinquennial valuation; if more frequent valuations are made, readers can readily supply for themselves the differences which arise, the principles being unchanged.

A Consolidated Revenue Account, covering the period from the last valuation, is prepared, summarising the items appearing in the intervening accounts, in the following form:

Consolidated Revenue Account of the.....for.....years
commencing.....and ending.....

| £ s. d. | | £ s. d. | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Amount of Life Assurance Fund at the beginning of the period | | Claims under policies paid and outstanding | |
| Premiums | | By death | |
| Consideration for annuities granted | £ s. d. | By maturity | |
| Interest, dividends, and rents | | Surrenders | |
| Less income tax thereon | | Annuities | |
| Other receipts (accounts to be specified) | | Bonuses in cash | |
| | | Commission .. reduction of premiums | |
| | | Expenses of management | |
| | | Other payments (accounts to be specified) | |
| | | Amount of Life Assurance Fund at the end of the period, as per Third Schedule | |
| | £ | | £ |

Note. If any sum has been deducted from the Expenses of Management Account and taken credit for in the Balance Sheet as an asset the sum so deducted to be separately shown in the above Statement.

The profit for the quinquennium is found by means of what is called in the Insurance Companies Act a 'Valuation Balance Sheet'. This title is a misnomer; it is really a statement of affairs similar to that used in ascertaining profits from books kept by single entry.

The following is the prescribed form of Valuation Balance Sheet:

| VALUATION BALANCE SHEET OF | | AS AT | 19 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| | £ | | £ |
| To Net Liability under Life Assurance and Annuity transactions (as per Summary Statement provided in Fourth Schedule (A)) | | By Life Assurance and Annuity Funds (as per Balance Sheet under Schedule 3) .. | |
| To Surplus (if any) | | By Deficiency (if any) | |
| | £ | | £ |

The fund credited is that shown by the Consolidated Revenue Account, which is obviously the same as that in the annual Revenue Account prepared to the date of valuation. The estimated liability debited is the actuarial valuation of the amount necessary to meet all liabilities on policies outstanding, computed as already described. Obviously, if the actual fund exceeds the estimated liability, there is a surplus; if the reverse is the case there is a deficiency. The surplus, however, is not necessarily the true profit for the quinquennium, since it is not usual to distribute profits up to the hilt, and any profits brought forward from the previous period and not paid away in dividends or transferred to reserves will remain in the fund. The actual fund may and usually will therefore include undistributed surplus brought forward from the previous valuation. Moreover, there may have been bonuses paid away in cash or in reduction of premiums during the quinquennium, which have reduced the fund without reducing profits, and these must be added back.

Accordingly, to ascertain the true profits, the actuary will prepare a statement in the following form:

| | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| | £ |
| Surplus, per Valuation Balance Sheet | £ |
| Add Interim bonuses | £ |
| Total Surplus | *£ |
| Deduct Balance brought forward from last quinquennium | £ |
| Surplus earned | £ |

The allocation of the surplus then takes the following form:

| | |
|----------------------------------------|----|
| | £ |
| To the Proprietors | |
| To the Policy Holders | |
| To be allotted | £ |
| Already paid as interim bonuses | |
| Balance carried forward | £ |
| Total | *£ |

Transfers to Reserve or Profit and Loss or Dividend Accounts are made from the Revenue Account, thus reducing the fund. Reversionary bonuses, however, do not

* These two amounts obviously are the same.

† The reversionary bonuses, unless taken in cash at their present value, will remain in the fund as part thereof.

appear in the Revenue Account, except as part of the fund; they go to increase the sums assured and will therefore be taken into account as part of the sums assured at the next valuation.

The other items appearing in the Revenue Account will now be briefly described.

CONSIDERATION FOR ANNUITIES GRANTED

The capital sum required to produce a given income is more than the capital sum required to produce the same annual return if the capital itself is to be used up, *e.g.*, if a person requires £100 per annum from his capital for three years, he can obtain this by using the money himself in three ways:

(1) By setting aside £300 capital, without investment, and using £100 each year.

In this case he uses £300 capital, but has no capital left at the end of the period;

(2) By investing £2,500 capital at 4%. In this case the capital remains intact.

(3) By investing £277 10s. 2d. at 4%, realising each year a sufficient amount of the capital to make, with the interest received, £100 per annum, *i.e.*,

Year 1 Interest £11 2s. 0d. Capital Realised £88 18s. 0d. Total £100.

„ 2 Interest (on £188 12s. 2d.) £7 10s. 11d. Capital realised £92 9s. 1d.
Total £100.

„ 3 Interest (on £96 3s. 1d.) £3 16s. 11d. Capital realised £96 3s. 1d. Total
£100.

In this case the capital is used up over the period.

(It would, of course, be necessary to invest more than the amount stated in (2) and (3), as income tax would be deducted from the interest. Tax has been ignored to exemplify the principle.)

If, however, he approaches an assurance company, the company will be willing to take his capital and employ it according to the third method to pay him an annuity, not for a fixed period, but for life. The company has to consider the possibility of the annuitant outliving the period of their basic calculations and the possibility of his dying earlier. The “group” principle arises again in this case, and assurance companies can offer very attractive annuities, *e.g.*, a man aged 60 who has £10,000 capital, and could invest it at 4% would receive an income of £400 (less tax) per annum, but by purchasing an annuity would, by the loss of his capital, receive about £800 (less tax) per annum. Where there are no dependents for whom provision must be made, this proposition has its attractions.

The sums received by the assurance company for the purchase of annuities come under this heading in the Revenue Account, and the actual payments of annuities are shown as “annuities” on the other “side” of the account. Here it may be mentioned that income tax is deducted from each payment of annuity, but where the annuitant is exempt from tax by reason of allowances or is chargeable at the reduced rate only, arrangements will usually be made for no tax, or only the reduced rate of tax to be deducted. In any event, since 5th April, 1956, income tax is only deductible (in the case of a purchased annuity), from a proportion thereof; the capital element contained in the payment is not subject to income tax.

In valuing annuity business, unlike life assurance, as the annuitant gets older, the liability of the company in respect of his annuity decreases, just as an annuity to a person produces a higher return for the same cost the older the annuitant is when it is purchased.

INTEREST, DIVIDENDS AND RENTS

The amounts to be included here are the income from the investments earmarked to the Life Assurance Fund only. Income from other investments must be carried to the Revenue Account(s) of the fund(s) to which they belong, or if they are not earmarked to any fund, to Profit and Loss Account. It should be noted that a company carrying on life business only will not have a Profit and Loss Account at all; it is only where more than one class of business is carried on that this account is necessary. The interest, etc., must be stated gross (inset) and the income tax shown as a deduction.

CLAIMS

The division into claims "by death" and "by maturity" indicates the distinction between claims arising as a result of death as distinct from those arising on the expiration of the agreed periods of endowment policies.

SURRENDERS

Sometimes, through force of circumstances, an assured person decides to discontinue his contract, and arranges with the company to 'surrender' his policy. In such cases, the company will make a refund of a portion of the premiums paid, provided the policy has been in force for a minimum period, which varies with different types of policies.

The surrender value on a life policy is always less than the total premiums paid, except in the case of a 'with profits' policy that has been in existence for a considerable time, and in respect of which the present worth of reversionary bonuses compensates for the other factors mentioned below.

Bearing in mind the 'group' principle underlying assurance, it will be seen that where a policy-holder determines his contract, he disturbs the whole group. The company is entitled to take into account the potential benefit which would accrue from the possibility that the assured would have been one of those who outlived the average age, and to have regard to the fact that it has carried the risk of his death for the period that the policy has been in existence. Some deduction from the premiums paid is therefore proper on those accounts. Moreover, only the pure premium can be taken into account in arriving at the surrender value. The first premium is substantially absorbed by expenses, and the surrender value is usually fixed at a percentage of the premiums paid, excluding the first, with an addition for the present worth of bonuses.

In the case of sinking fund and other pure endowment policies, the circumstances are different; the real effect of these is as if the company had borrowed money, and the policy-holder invested it, at interest. The surrender value is therefore based on the premiums plus a small rate of interest.

BONUSES

These have already been explained. It should be noted that the only amounts appearing in the Revenue Account are the sums actually paid out in cash (or applied in reduction of premiums).

COMMISSION

This item is self-explanatory; it is the amount paid to agents remunerated on a commission basis.

OTHER RECEIPTS

Only income of the life business is to be included, *e.g.*, fines for renewing lapsed policies (*e.g.*, where the assured has not paid his premium within the fifteen days of grace customarily allowed, and has been 'fined' a sum of money which is in reality interest for the period of the arrears).

The notes to the Revenue Account reproduced on p. 552 should be observed.

Note 1 is self-explanatory. Many companies keep a separate account of annuities and therefore have a separate Annuity Revenue Account. Some companies keep a separate account for Sinking Fund Insurance.

Note 3. Where an assurance is made for a sum in excess of the company's limit for any one policy, the excess will be 're-insured' with other companies, or with re-insurance companies. Large insurances are commonly 'spread' in this way.

Note 4 applies principally to the early years of a company's existence, when part of the expenditure is capitalised on Development Account. It is prudent to write off such expenditure as soon as possible.

INDEMNITY INSURANCE

The principle of indemnity insurance is entirely different from that of life assurance. In an indemnity insurance the company undertakes, in consideration of a premium, to indemnify the insured if the event happens against the risk of which the policy is taken out. If the policy is for a larger amount than the actual loss, only the latter sum will be paid, whereas if the policy is for less than the loss, only the amount of the policy will be paid, subject to 'average' (*see* below). There is only one exception, *viz.*, where an agreed value is placed on the subject matter of the insurance, that amount will be paid irrespective of its value at the date of the loss, a higher premium being paid on such insurances.

The principle of averaging is important. In the case of all indemnity policies, other than marine (where the term 'average' has a special meaning) if the value of the property insured exceeds the amount of the policy, the insured is deemed to have insured himself for the excess, and in the event of a loss, only the proportionate amount of the loss is payable by the insurance company, unless there is a clause in the policy to delete average (in which case the premium will be increased).

The equity of averaging will be seen from the following simple illustration:

Illustration (1)

A trader had three shops in each of which he had a maximum stock at any time amounting to £1,000. He took out an insurance policy against loss of stock by fire, but, arguing that

the likelihood of all three shops being destroyed together was so remote, insured the whole stock for £1,000 only. Subsequently, one shop was destroyed, together with the stock therein, then worth £900.

Average would operate. The trader tried to cover three risks at the price of one, and must be considered as having himself carried the risk for two-thirds of the stock. The insurance company would therefore pay £300 only.

The Revenue Accounts required in the case of indemnity business are similar to the Life Revenue Account, except in respect of the funds. Life assurance is a continuing contract, with an increasing liability year by year on each individual policy until the sum assured falls due. Indemnity insurance continues from year to year, only so long as policies are renewed, *i.e.*, each year must be regarded separately, and the profit of each year can be separately ascertained. As the end of the period of insurance approaches, the risk gets less; in other words, the premium should be regarded as being earned on a day-to-day basis, *e.g.*, if a policy were taken out on 29th September, 1958, and a premium paid for the year ending 29th September, 1959, this premium could be considered as earned equally over the 365 days of the contract, and if the company prepared its accounts on 31st December, 1958, it should carry forward the unearned proportion applicable to the period 1st January, 1959, to 29th September, 1959, *i.e.*, $\frac{272}{365}$ ths of the premium.

To make a separate calculation in respect of each policy would not be worth while. The practice of fire insurances companies is to carry forward such a percentage of the net premium received for the year (*i.e.*, premiums received less re-insurance premiums paid) as is considered to be unearned at the date of the balance sheet. The proportion to be carried forward is determined by reference to past experience of claims, and is usually in the neighbourhood of 40 per cent., Many companies add to the amount carried forward an additional reserve for contingencies. The balance of the Revenue Account is the profit or loss on the fire insurance business for the year, and is transferred to the Profit and Loss Account.

Separate Revenue Accounts are required for each class of business. The forms applicable to Fire Insurance, Accident Insurance, Motor Vehicle Insurance, Employers' Liability Insurance, Bond Investment Business and Marine Aviation and Transit Insurance business are reproduced on pp. 553-55.

Burglary Insurance and General Insurance are frequently combined with Accident business, and only one Revenue Account is prepared for this department.

In Bond Investment business (which is an investment, not an indemnity business), the liability on outstanding policies or certificates is the difference between the present value of the sums assured (including bonuses) and the present value of the future annual premiums,

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT.

As already mentioned, a Profit and Loss Account is required only where more than one class of business is carried on. Where only one class is carried on, the items appearing in the form of account reproduced on p.556 would appear in the Revenue Account. Where a Profit and Loss Account is required, the profit or loss on each

fund (in life business, the amount appropriated) is transferred from the appropriate Revenue Account to the Profit and Loss Account.

The income from investments not earmarked to any particular fund appears in the Profit and Loss Account. In other respects, this account is an Appropriation Account.

BALANCE SHEET.

Since it is most important that the various funds should be represented by realisable assets, the most important assets of an insurance company are its investments, and these are shown on the prescribed balance sheet (*see* p.556) in the order of security. In other respects the balance sheet requires no particular explanation. Student readers should note that the items 'Freehold and Leasehold Ground Rents' represent the purchase price of the right to receive ground rents, acquired by the company. The notes to the Balance Sheet should be observed.

DEPOSITS.

Prior to the passing of the Assurance Companies Act, 1946, every assurance company was required by Sec. 2, Assurance Companies Act, 1909, to deposit with the Paymaster-General a sum of £20,000 for each class of business carried on. Section 4, of the Assurance Companies Act, 1946, however, discontinued that provision and the amount deposited could be withdrawn in certain circumstances.

It is now provided by the Second Schedule of the Insurance Companies Act, 1958, that where, on the application of any association of persons, whether incorporated or not, which immediately before 25th October, 1945, was not carrying on in Great Britain insurance business of the above mentioned classes, the Board of Trade are satisfied that the association:

- (a) is about to carry on long-term business in Great Britain; and
- (b) is so constituted that the whole of its divisible surplus or profit must be apportioned or applied for the benefit of the policy holders (*i.e.*, that it is a Mutual Association).

the Board may order that the provisions of Section 2 of the Act (which requires a company carrying on such classes of business to have a paid up share capital of not less than £50,000) shall not apply to the association. Where such an order is made, the association must, before commencing to carry on long-term business in Great Britain, deposit with the Accountant-General of the Supreme Court in respect of each class of business, the sum of £20,000, and must keep that sum so deposited while it continues to carry on long-term business in Great Britain. The amount deposited must be invested by the Accountant-General of the Supreme Court, and shall, together with the interest accruing thereon be deemed to form part of the fund in respect of which the deposit was made.

Section 20 of the Insurance Companies Act, 1958, provides for regulations to be made allowing an insurance company to withdraw any deposit made by it if the Board of Trade are satisfied in manner provided by the regulations:

- (a) in the case of a company carrying on general business, whether with or without long term business, that the value of the company's assets exceeds the amount of

its liabilities by the greater of £50,000 or one-tenth of the general premium income of the company in its last preceding financial year; or

(b) in the case of a company carrying on long-term business but not general business, either that it has a paid up share capital of £50,000 or more, or—

(i) in the case of a company required to keep a separate fund or funds, that the value of the assets of the fund or of each such fund exceeds the amount of the liabilities to which it may be applied and that the excess or, where more than one such fund is kept, the aggregate excess, is not less than £50,000;

(ii) in the case of a company not so required, that the value of the company's assets exceeds the amount of its liabilities by £50,000.

N.B.—'General business' means assurance business to which the Insurance Companies Act, 1958, applies, other than 'long-term business'. 'Long-term business' means life assurance business, industrial assurance business and bond investment business.

Illustration (2)

The following accounts relate to a company carrying on life assurance and fire insurance business, for the year in which the quinquennial valuation of the life assurance fund is made. The Valuation Balance Sheet and the Statement of Apportionment of the Surplus are as shown hereunder. The directors propose to appropriate £700,000 of the surplus, one-fifth being allotted to the shareholders and four-fifths to the policy holders, and to carry forward the balance.

In the case of the Fire Insurance Department, the reserve for unexpired risks carried forward is computed at 50% of the premium income, and the additional reserve is increased by £10,000.

VALUATION BALANCE SHEET

| | £ | | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| To Net Liability under Assurance and Annuity transactions as per Valuation | 4,060,451 | By Life Assurance Fund (exclusive of £15,000 Investment Reserve) as per Balance Sheet | 4,641,806 |
| .. Surplus | 721,355 | .. Proprietors' share of Surplus for 5 years ending 31st December. | 140,000 |
| | <u>£4,781,806</u> | | <u>£4,781,806</u> |

APPORTIONMENT OF SURPLUS

| | £ |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Surplus in Valuation Balance Sheet | 721,355 |
| Add Interim Bonuses paid for 5 years ended 31st December | 42,515 |
| Total Surplus as at 31st December | 763,870 |
| Deduct Balance brought forward from last quinquennium | 50,890 |
| Surplus earned for 5 years to 31st December | <u>£712,980</u> |

It is proposed that £700,000 of the above surplus be divided between the proprietors and the policy holders in the proportions of one-fifth and four-fifths, and that £12,980 be left in the fund, thereby increasing the unappropriated balance to be carried forward to £63,870 as shown hereunder.

| | | | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|----------|-----------------|
| To the Proprietors | ... | ... | ... | ... | £140,000 |
| „ „ Policy holders: | | | | | |
| To be allotted (as Reversionary | | | | | |
| Bonuses) | ... | ... | ... | £517,485 | |
| Already paid as Interim Bonuses | | | | 42,515 | |
| | | | | | 560,000 |
| | | | | | 700,000 |
| Balance carried forward | ... | ... | ... | ... | 63,870 |
| | | | | | <u>£763,870</u> |

LIFE ASSURANCE REVENUE ACCOUNT

FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19...

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Amount of Life Assurance Fund at the beginning of the year | 4,628,490 | Claims under Policies paid and outstanding— | |
| Investment Reserve at the beginning of the year | 15,000 | By Death | 199,124 |
| Premiums (Less Re-insurances) | 394,280 | Maturity | 187,789 |
| Consideration for Annuities granted | 15,221 | Surrenders including Surrenders of Bonuses | 18,827 |
| Interest, Dividends and Rents (less Income Tax) | 226,280 | Annuities | 810 |
| Fines for Renewal of lapsed Policies | 192 | Bonuses paid in Cash | 480 |
| | | Bonuses in reduction of Premiums | 17,942 |
| | | Commission | 37,727 |
| | | Expenses of Management | 1,638 |
| | | Re-assurance Balance Irrecoverable | 140,000 |
| | | Proprietors' proportion of Quinquennial Profit | 15,000 |
| | | Investment Reserve Fund at end of year | |
| | | Amount of Life Assurance Fund at end of year | 4,641,806 |
| | <u>£5,279,463</u> | | <u>£5,279,463</u> |

FIRE INSURANCE REVENUE ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Amount of Fire Insurance Fund at the beginning of the year: | | Claims paid and outstanding | 468,400 |
| Provision for unexpired risks | £452,040 | Commission | 139,384 |
| Additional Reserve | 760,000 | Expenses of Management | 276,955 |
| | 1,212,040 | Overseas Taxes | 1,530 |
| | | Transferred to Profit and Loss Account | 54,066 |
| Premiums | 887,080 | Amount of Fund at end of year: | |
| Interest, Dividends and Rents (less Income Tax) | 54,755 | Provision for unexpired risks | £443,540 |
| | | Additional Reserve | 770,000 |
| | <u>£2,153,875</u> | | 1,213,540 |
| | | | <u>£2,153,875</u> |

PROTECTOR INSURANCE COMPANY

PROFIT AND LOSS ACCOUNT FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31ST DECEMBER, 19

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Interest, Dividends and Rents (Gross) | 218,100 | United Kingdom Taxation based on the profits included in this account: | |
| Transferred from Fire Revenue Account | 54,066 | Profits Tax | £17,280 |
| Transfer Fees | 104 | Income Tax | 13,620 |
| One-fifth of Members' Portion of Quinquennial Life Profits | 28,000 | Income Tax deducted from Investment Income | 103,500 |
| | | | 134,400 |
| | | Expenses not charged to other accounts | 32,400 |
| | | Subscriptions to Charities | 1,800 |
| | | Losses on Investments realised | 1,500 |
| | | Profit for year, carried down | 130,170 |
| | <u>£300,270</u> | | <u>£300,270</u> |
| Balance of last year's Account, brought forward | 142,100 | Transferred to Staff Pensions Fund | 15,000 |
| Profit for year | 130,170 | Provision for Dividends payable (less Income Tax) | 65,000 |
| | | Balance carried forward | 192,270 |
| | <u>£272,270</u> | | <u>£272,270</u> |

PROTECTOR INSURANCE COMPANY LTD.

BALANCE SHEET AS AT 31ST DECEMBER, 19..

| | Authorised £ | Issued and Fully paid £ | | £ | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| SHAREHOLDERS' CAPITAL: | | | | | |
| 5% Preference Shares of £1 each | 250,000 | 250,000 | FIXED ASSETS: | | |
| Ordinary Shares of £1 each | 1,000,000 | 500,000 | Office Premises, at cost, less amounts written off | | 60,000 |
| | £1,250,000 | 750,000 | | | |
| RESERVES: | | | INVESTMENTS: | 1,871,760 | |
| General Reserve | 1,500,000 | | Mortgages | 529,090 | |
| Contingency Reserve | 200,000 | | Loans | 2,877,530 | |
| Members' Portion of Life Profits Accounts | 112,000 | | British Government Securities | 2,854,479 | |
| Profit and Loss Account | 192,270 | | Other Investments | | 8,132,859 |
| | | 2,004,270 | | | |
| | | 2,754,270 | | | |
| AMOUNT SET ASIDE FOR FUTURE TAXATION | | 15,000 | CURRENT ASSETS: | | |
| | | | Agents' Balances and Sundry Debtors | 345,970 | |
| POLICYHOLDERS: | | | Amounts due from other Insurance Companies | 126,250 | |
| Life Assurance Fund | 4,641,806 | | Interest and dividends accrued (less Income Tax) | 72,170 | |
| Fire Insurance Fund | 1,213,540 | | Tax Reserve Certificate | 15,000 | |
| | | 5,855,346 | Cash—On Deposit, in hand and on Current Account | 136,890 | |
| CURRENT LIABILITIES: | | | | | 696,280 |
| Claims admitted or intimated but not paid | 169,800 | | | | |
| Annuities due and unpaid | 400 | | | | |
| Sundry Creditors | 29,323 | | | | |
| Provision for Dividend (after de- duction of Income Tax) | 65,000 | | | | |
| | | 264,523 | | | |
| | | £8,889,139 | | | £8,889,139 |

NOTES: (1) The above Profit and Loss Account and Balance Sheet are in the forms adapted for publication and comply (except as regards comparative figures, which have been omitted) with the requirements of Part III, of the Eighth Schedule of the Companies Act, 1948, with regard to assurance companies, which are subject to and comply with the requirements of the Insurance Companies Act, 1958, as respects the preparation of and deposit with the Board of Trade of Balance Sheets and Profit and Loss Accounts in the forms prescribed by those Acts, as set out on pages 275-286.

(2) The items on the assets side of the Balance Sheet representing Outstanding Premiums, Outstanding Interest, Dividends and Rents and Interest accrued but not payable are included in the debits for Premiums, Interest, Dividends and Rents in the Revenue Accounts and Profit and Loss Account, which represent the total amounts accruing during the year. Similarly, the items on the liabilities side of the Balance Sheet for claims admitted but not paid, annuities due and unpaid and expenses of management due are included in the credits under these headings in the Revenue Accounts.

(3) Only so much of the surplus on the Life Assurance Fund as has actually been paid away in cash bonuses or allowed in reduction of premiums is credited to the Revenue Account. The proportion of the surplus to be allotted as reversionary bonuses is left in the fund, as it increases the liability on the policies.

(4) The £140,000 of the surplus allotted to the shareholders represents their share of the profit on the life assurance business for five years, and is credited to Revenue Account. Only one-fifth of this amount, £28,000, is taken to Profit and Loss Account for the current year, the balance of £112,000 being carried forward in the Balance Sheet as a reserve, to be spread over the next four years.

(5) In the case of the Fire Insurance Department, the balance of the Revenue Account, after carrying forward the amounts of the Fund at 31st December, represents the profit for the year, and is transferred to General Profit and Loss Account, thus becoming available for distribution as dividends.

§ 15. Treatment of Scrip Profits, etc.

In the case of finance companies which are concerned with the promotion and flotation of other companies, a substantial portion of the consideration for sale often takes the form of shares in the new company allotted as fully paid up. In many cases the shares so obtained are not quoted on the Stock Exchange, or, if so quoted, the price may be an artificial one having no relation to their actual value. The best method of recording these transactions in the books of the finance company is to regard the excess of the expenditure incurred on the promotion over the amount of the consideration received in cash as being the cost of the shares taken in satisfaction of the remainder of the consideration, and to bring them into account at that value. If the shares are not worth their cost, provision should be made accordingly.

When any of the shares are sold, the profit or loss on realisation should be adjusted. In these transactions, only realised profits should be distributed as cash dividends, due regard being had to the adequacy of the provisions against possible loss on realisation of the shares remaining unsold.

An alternative method is to bring these shares into account at their par value, and to have two columns in the Profit and Loss Account, one relating to cash and the other to scrip. The balance on the cash column will show the cash profit or loss during the period, and the balance on the scrip column the profit or loss on the shares. In cases where it is proposed to distribute a scrip dividend, this method is certainly the most suitable.

In any event the manner in which these shares have been dealt with should be clearly disclosed by the accounts.

Illustration

A finance company underwrote part of a new issue of shares, about to be made to the public by Wyezed Ltd. The issue was of 100,000 £1 shares, payable 2s. on application, 8s. on allotment, and 10s. one month later. The finance company underwrote 60%, and applied 'firm' for 20,000 shares which were duly allotted. The public applied for and were allotted 50,000 shares. The finance company had deposited with the underwriting letter a cheque for the application money on the shares underwritten, and this cheque was cleared by Wyezed Ltd. on the result of the issue becoming known. The underwriting commission was 1% in cash and $\frac{1}{2}$ % in shares, and was duly discharged.

The finance company sold 500 shares, when 10s. paid, at 9s. 9d. each, and duly paid the sums due on the balance, afterwards selling 15,000 shares at 19s. 6d. each. On their balance sheet date the shares were quoted at 19s. 9d. Write up the Underwriting Account in the finance company's books, carrying down as a reserve on the account any profit made, or writing off any loss.

UNDERWRITING WYEZED LTD. ACCOUNT

| | Shares | £ | s. | d. | | Shares | £ | s. | d. |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|---------|-----|--------------------------------------------------------|--------|---------|---------|-----|
| To Cash, Application money, 2/- per share ... | 20,000 | 2,000 | 0 | 0 | By Cash, Commission 1% on 60,000 | — | 600 | 0 | 0 |
| „ Cash, on shares taken up under underwriting agreement (2/- per share paid on 60,000) ... | 18,000 | 6,000 | 0 | 0 | „ Contra, 1% Commission received in shares ... | — | — | — | — |
| „ Cash, Allotment money : 8/- per share on 20,000 ... | 8,000 | | | | „ Cash, 500 shares 10/- paid, sold at 9/9 each ... | 500 | 243 | 15 | 0 |
| 8/- per share on 18,000 ... | 7,200 | | | | „ Cash, 15,000 shares fully paid sold at 19/6 each ... | 15,000 | 14,625 | 0 | 0 |
| Less Overpaid on application 2/- per share on 60,000—18,000 ... | 4,200 | | | | „ Balance c/d. ... | 22,800 | 22,264 | 4 | 7 |
| | 3,000 | | | | „ Profit and Loss Account—Loss to date ... | | 17 | 0 | 5 |
| | | 11,000 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |
| „ Contra, shares (fully paid) received as commission ... | 300 | | | | | | | | |
| „ Cash, Balance due 10/- per share on 37,500 shares ... | | 18,750 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |
| | | £38,300 | £37,750 | 0 0 | | | £38,300 | £37,750 | 0 0 |
| To Balance b/d. | | 22,800 | 22,264 | 4 7 | | | | | |

NOTES.

(1) There is no point in attributing a value to the shares received as commission, but they must be brought in as part of the total holding by being entered in the shares column, without any value being extended.

(2) The whole underwriting and firm application are part of a single transaction. Accordingly, the commission goes to reduce the cost of the shares to the underwriters.

(3) The underwriters applied firm for 20,000 shares and the public applied for 50,000, leaving 30,000 shares not applied for, of which the company must take up 60 per cent, or 18,000 shares, under the underwriting contract.

(4) The balance may be valued in several ways, e.g.,

(a) Ascertain what the balance would have been had no shares been sold and take a proportion thereof appropriate to the shares remaining :

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------|---------|
| 38,000 shares, £1 paid | £ | 38,000 |
| 300 „ received, fully paid | | — |
| 38,300 | | 38,000 |
| Less Commission in Cash | | 600 |
| Cost of 38,300 shares | | £37,400 |
| Value of balance of £37,400 | £22,264 | 4 7 |
| Showing a loss of | £17 | 0 5 |

(b) Since the shares are held for resale, the lower of cost or market value may be taken. Market value is 19/9 i.e., a total of £22,515. Since this exceeds cost, it must be disregarded in this case.

§ 16. Accounts of Containers

Since the cost of cases, crates and other containers in which goods are packed for delivery is often considerable, it is important that a proper system of control in respect thereof should be in force. The method to be adopted for recording containers must depend on whether or not they are charged out to customers and, if so, whether or not credit is given for them when they are returned.

When containers are not returnable the charge therefor is included in the price of the goods sold, and any profit made on the containers will automatically be included in the profit on the sale of goods.

Where, however, containers are returnable, the charges made in respect thereof should be debited to customers' accounts when the containers are sent out, and the appropriate amounts credited thereto when they are returned.

The following methods of treatment are suggested :

(a) Containers charged out to Customers.

The cost of containers purchased should be debited to a Containers Account (or Containers Stock Account) which should also be debited with the value of any stock of containers brought forward from the previous period, and credited with the stock carried forward at the end of the period.

The sales day book should contain a special column for containers, in which the charges made for containers should be entered. These amounts should be debited to the personal accounts of the customers concerned and credited in total periodically to a Containers Suspense (or Containers Charged-out) Account. Particulars of containers returned by customers should be entered either in a special column in the returns inwards book or in a separate containers returned book, from which postings should be made to the credit of the personal accounts, and in total to the debit of the Containers Suspense Account.

The balance remaining on the Containers Suspense Account at any time will represent the total of the amounts charged out in respect of returnable containers still in customers' hands, and included in the debit balances on the personal accounts of customers. For balance sheet purposes, therefore, this amount should be deducted from the figure of sundry debtors. The containers in customers' hands should then be included, at cost, less depreciation, in the value of the stock of containers at the close of the period which is credited and carried forward in the Containers Account.

The amount carried down in the Containers Suspense Account and deducted from debtors should not include the value of any containers in customers' hands in respect of which the period within which their return is permissible has expired. These may be regarded as having been sold, and the amount at which they have been credited to the Containers Suspense Account should be transferred to the credit of Containers Account.

Sometimes the credit given on the return of containers is either greater (to induce their return) or less than the price at which they are charged out. Where it is greater, the debits to the Containers Suspense Account in respect of containers returned by customers, and of the containers still in customers' hands at the end of the period, will be greater than the amounts credited to that account when the containers were charged out. The resultant debit balance on the account represents an expense to the business, which should be transferred to the debit of Containers Account.

Conversely, where the credit given for containers returned is less than the amount charged out, an immediate profit is made on each such container. Only the amount to be credited to customers in respect of outstanding containers should be debited and carried forward in the Containers Suspense Account, the profit on the containers sent out being transferred therefrom to the credit of Containers Account.

In either case, the balance remaining on Containers Account, after carrying forward at valuation the closing stocks of containers on hand and in customers' hands, will be transferred to Profit and Loss Account.

Illustration (1)

A manufacturing company sells goods in cases which it purchases for 10s. each. The cases are charged out to customers at 12s. each and credited, if returned within six months, at 8s. each. All cases are valued at stocktaking at 6s. each.

The stock in the warehouse on January 1st, was 4,000 cases, and 8,400 cases, for which the return period had not expired, were in the hands of customers. During the year ended December 31st, 6,000 cases were purchased, 12,800 sent out to customers, 9,200 were

returned, 120 were destroyed in the warehouse and 200 were sold as firewood for £10. In respect of 7,600 of the cases in the hands of customers on December 31st, the return period had not expired; the remaining cases sent to customers were retained by them.

Show the ledger accounts in the firm's books in respect of cases for the year ended December 31st.

CASES STOCK ACCOUNT

| | | Quantity | £ | | | Quantity | £ |
|--------|---------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Stocks in Warehouse ... | 4,000 | 1,200 | Dec. 31 | By Cases Destroyed ... | 120 | — |
| | „ Stocks with Customers at 6s. per case ... | 8,400 | 2,520 | | „ Cases Sold ... | 200 | 10 |
| | „ Purchases at 10s. per case | 6,000 | 3,000 | | „ Cases Suspense Account: | | |
| | „ Profit and Loss Account: | | | | Profit of 4s. per case on 12,800 cases sent to Customers ... | | 2,560 |
| | „ Net profit on cases ... | — | 1,714 | | „ Cases retained by Customers at 8s. per case ... | 4,400 | 1,760 |
| | | | | | „ Stocks in Warehouse ... | 6,080 | 1,824 |
| | | | | | „ Stocks with Customers at 6s. per case ... | 7,600 | 2,280 |
| | | <u>18,400</u> | <u>£8,434</u> | | | <u>18,400</u> | <u>£8,434</u> |

CASES SUSPENSE ACCOUNT

| | | Quantity | £ | | | Quantity | £ |
|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| Dec. 31 | To Cases Stock Account: Profit of 4s. per case on 12,800 cases issued to Customers ... | — | 2,560 | Jan. 1 | By Balance b/d: Cases in Customers' hands at 8s. ... | 8,400 | 3,360 |
| | „ Cases Stock Account: Cases retained by Customers at 8s. per case ... | 4,400 | 1,760 | Dec. 31 | „ Sundry Debtors: Cases charged to Customers at 12s. per case ... | 12,800 | 7,680 |
| | „ Sundry Debtors: Cases returned by Customers at 8s. per case ... | 9,200 | 3,680 | | | | |
| | „ Balance: Provision for Cases in Customers' hands at 8s. per case ... | 7,600 | 3,040 | | | | |
| | | <u>21,200</u> | <u>£11,040</u> | | | <u>21,200</u> | <u>£11,040</u> |

An alternative method, where returnable cases are charged out to customers at a price in excess of cost, is analogous to the system described in Chapter X, Section 3 (c) for Branch Accounts, where goods are charged by head office to branches at a fixed percentage above cost.

Under this system the following accounts are required:

Containers Stock Account

Containers sent to Customers Account

Containers Suspense (or Adjustment) Account

Provision for Depreciation on Containers Account

Profit and Loss on Containers Account.

Containers sent out are debited to Containers sent to Customers Account at the full invoiced price, Containers Stock Account being credited with the cost price and Containers Suspense Account with the 'loading'. These entries are reversed in respect of containers returned by customers. The balance on the Containers sent to Customers Account at any time will thus represent the invoiced price of containers in customers hands, and the balance on the Suspense Account the profit loading included therein. The balance carried down in the Suspense Account will accordingly be set off against

the balance carried down in the Containers sent to Customers Account to give the cost price of containers in customers' hands for balance sheet purposes, whilst the balance of the Containers Stock Account, after adjustment has been made for any containers scrapped, will be the cost price of containers in stock.

In respect of any containers retained by (*i.e.*, sold to) customers it will be necessary to debit the customers' personal accounts and credit the Containers sent to Customers Account with the full invoice price, and to transfer from the Containers Suspense Account to the credit of Profit and Loss on Containers Account, the profit included in such price.

Depreciation on the containers in stock and in customers' hands will be debited to Profit and Loss on Containers Account and credited to the Provision for Depreciation on Containers Account, the balance on the latter account being deducted from the cost price of the cases for the purposes of the balance sheet.

Illustration (2)

Containers costing £1 each are charged out at 30s. each, credit being given for the full invoiced price when the containers are returned. For balance sheet purposes all containers are valued at 10s. each.

On January 1st there were 1,000 containers in stock and 3,700 in customers' hands. During the year ended 31st December, 5,000 containers were purchased, 7,000 were sent out and 5,200 returned. 200 containers were scrapped, the proceeds of sale being £20.

The cost of repairs to containers during the year was £50. At 31st December, 500 of the containers in customers' hands were no longer returnable.

CONTAINERS STOCK ACCOUNT

| | | Quan- tity | £ | | | Quan- tity | £ |
|---------|--------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|---------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/f. | | | Dec. 31 | By Containers sent to customers (cost) | 7,000 | 7,000 |
| | Stock in hand (cost) | 1,000 | 1,000 | | Profit and Loss on Containers Account - cost of containers scrapped | 200 | 200 |
| Dec. 31 | .. Purchases (cost) | 5,000 | 5,000 | | Balance c/f. | | |
| | .. Containers returned by customers (cost) | 5,200 | 5,200 | | Containers in stock (cost) | 4,000 | 4,000 |
| | | | | | | <u>11,200</u> | <u>£11,200</u> |
| | | <u>11,200</u> | <u>£11,200</u> | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/f. | | 4,000 | | | | |

CONTAINERS SENT TO CUSTOMERS ACCOUNT

| | | Quan- tity | £ | | | Quan- tity | £ |
|---------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/f. | | | Dec. 31 | By Containers returned (invoiced price) | 5,200 | 7,800 |
| | Containers in customers' hands (invoiced price) | 3,700 | 5,550 | | Sundry Debtors, containers sold (invoiced price) | 500 | 750 |
| Dec. 31 | .. Containers sent out (invoiced price) | 7,000 | 10,500 | | Balance c/f. | | |
| | | | | | Containers in customers' hands (invoiced price) | 5,000 | 7,500 |
| | | | | | | <u>10,700</u> | <u>£16,050</u> |
| | | <u>10,700</u> | <u>£16,050</u> | | | | |
| Jan. 1 | To Balance b/f. | | 5,000 | | | | |

CONTAINERS SUSPENSE ACCOUNT

| | Quantity | £ | | Quantity | £ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Dec. 31 To Containers returned by customers - loading of 10s. . . | 5,200 | 2,600 | Jan. 1 By Balance b/f.: Loading on containers in customers' hands. . . | 3,700 | 1,850 |
| .. Profit and Loss Account - profit on containers sold. . . | 500 | 250 | Dec. 31 .. Containers sent to customers - loading of 10s. . . | 7,000 | 3,500 |
| .. Balance c/f.: Loading on containers in customers' hands. . . | 5,000 | 2,500 | | | |
| | <u>10,700</u> | <u>£5,350</u> | | <u>10,700</u> | <u>£5,350</u> |
| | | | Jan. 1 By Balance b/f. . . | 5,000 | 2,500 |

PROFIT AND LOSS ON CONTAINERS ACCOUNT

| | £ | | £ |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Dec. 31 To Containers Stock Account - cost of containers scrapped. . . | 200 | Dec. 31 By Cash - Proceeds of scrap. . . | 20 |
| .. Cash - repairs to containers. . . | 50 | .. Containers Suspense Account - profit on sales. . . | 250 |
| .. Provision for Depreciation on containers. . . | 2,150 | .. Profit and Loss Account - Net charge for containers. . . | 2,130 |
| | <u>£2,400</u> | | <u>£2,400</u> |

PROVISION FOR DEPRECIATION OF CONTAINERS

| | £ | | £ |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Dec. 31 To Balance c/f (9,000 at 10s.). . . | 4,500 | Jan. 1 By Balance b/f. (4,700 at 10s.). . . | 2,350 |
| | <u>£4,500</u> | Dec. 31 .. Containers Suspense Account: Depreciation for year. . . | 2,150 |
| | | | <u>£4,500</u> |
| | | Jan. 1 By Balance b/f. . . | 4,500 |

For Balance Sheet purposes, containers will appear as follows:

| | Number | £ |
|---------------------------------------|--------|---------------|
| Containers in Stock, at cost. . . | 4,000 | 4,000 |
| Containers in customers' hands. . . | 5,000 | £7,500 |
| Less Balance on Suspense Account. . . | | 2,500 |
| | | 5,000 |
| | | 9,000 |
| Less Provision for Depreciation. . . | | 4,500 |
| | | <u>£4,500</u> |

(b) Containers not charged up

Special columns should be ruled in the ledger to record the identification number of each container sent out but not charged up. The number should be entered on the invoice, and in the day book, and reference thereto made in the containers number column on the debit side of the particular account in the ledger, at the time when the posting of the sale is made.

When containers are returned, full particulars thereof should be recorded by the gate office foreman. It will not be necessary, however, to send out credit notes, nor will any entries be made in the containers journal. The gate office foreman's book should be called over with the various accounts in the ledger, and, as each entry is checked, the particular number of the package should be entered in the containers number column, on the credit side of the ledger account.

The ledger clerk should examine periodically the container number columns in the ledger, and cross out the numbers corresponding on the debit and credit sides. The remaining numbers should then represent the containers still in the hands of customers.

Proper stock accounts should be kept for the containers, and the balances of these accounts should show at a glance particulars of the containers in the factory, in the hands of customers charged up, and in the hands of customers not charged up. The stocktaking should be carried out without reference to these stock accounts, and compared with the balances on the stock accounts, any discrepancy being enquired into.

A Containers Account will be kept in the ledger, and any difference thereon, after adjusting opening and closing stocks brought in at cost less depreciation, will be written off to Profit and Loss Account in the usual way.

§ 17. The Accounts of Building Societies

A building society incorporated under the Building Societies Acts, 1874 to 1939, is established with the object of raising capital out of which advances may be made to members upon the security of mortgages on freehold or leasehold property. The capital is raised by means of paid-up or subscription shares which are withdrawable at short notice. Interest is paid on the shares at a rate which is changed from time to time so that it moves in step with the market long-term rate of interest.

Deposits are also accepted, again subject to withdrawal upon short notice, but a slightly lower rate of interest is paid on them than on shares. Both rates of interest are described as 'tax paid' as a result of the arrangement entered into between the building societies and the Inland Revenue. Not more than £5,000 may be invested in any one society by any person, husband and wife being treated as one for this purpose.

In addition to these funds obtained from investors, building societies also have their own internal reserves built up out of undistributed income in the past. The total funds of a society are utilized mainly in making advances on the security of land and buildings. Usually, these mortgages are repayable with interest by equal monthly or other periodic instalments over a specified term of years. Most societies also hold part of their funds in the form of investments in gilt-edged securities, cash at bank, and office premises.

The accounts of a building society must be prepared in a statutory form and a copy sent to the Registrar of Friendly Societies within fourteen days after the annual general meeting in each year. A specimen of the accounts of a building society in the statutory form will be found in the Appendix. It will be seen that separate accounts must be shown for shares, deposits, mortgages, investments and for the various reserve funds and reserve accounts maintained.

In the case of shares and deposits, the accounts are credited with the amounts invested by shareholders and depositors and debited with withdrawals. At the end of each year the total amounts of interest and dividends payable to shareholders and depositors are credited to the relevant accounts, interest on deposits being debited to Profit and Loss Account and dividends on shares to Appropriation Account.

The total of the sums advanced to borrowers on mortgage is debited to Mortgages Account, which is also debited with interest charged, survey fees, etc. (Profit and Loss Account being credited), and credited with repayments and other sums received. The balance of the account represents the total amount of mortgages outstanding.

Under the revised form of accounts, which came into operation in December 1956, particulars must be given of loans to borrowers who have more than one mortgage, where the total indebtedness exceeds £25,000, and also the number and amount of shareholdings and deposits greater than £5,000, the accounts must also show:

- (i) the cost of advertising, the total receipts from fines and the aggregate of 'other amounts paid by borrowers as consideration for advances' as separate items.
- (ii) A division of investments in British local government securities between 'quoted' and 'unquoted' investments.
- (iii) The periods covered by appropriations and provisions for income tax and profits tax.
- (iv) The amount of the special reserve (as distinct from a general reserve) created for anticipated mortgage losses.